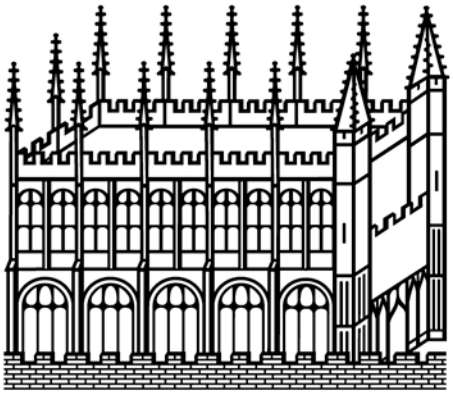


Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks

This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.

2365 e. 147

Nora Blake
Feb. 1871

A SELECTION OF WORKS,

PUBLISHED BY

WHITTAKER & CO., AVE MARIA LANE.

	£	s.	d.
ANTHON'S VIRGIL. By the Rev. F. METCALFE. New Edition. 12mo, cloth	0	7	6
BAIRD'S Classical Manual. 12mo, cloth	0	4	0
BEATSON'S Progressive Exercises on the Composition of Greek Iambic Verse. 12mo, cloth	0	3	0
BELLENGER'S French Conversations. New edition. 12mo, cloth	0	2	6
BIBLIOTHECA CLASSICA :—			
ÆSCHYLUS. With a Commentary, by F. A. PALEY, M.A.	0	18	0
CICERO'S ORATIONS. Edited by G. LONG, M.A. 4 vols. 8vo, cloth. (The volumes sold separately)	3	4	0
DEMOSTHENES. With a Commentary, by the Rev. R. WHISTON, M.A. Vol. I. 8vo, cloth	0	16	0
——— Vol. II. 8vo, cloth	0	16	0
EURIPIDES. With a Commentary, by F. A. PALEY, M.A. Vols. I., II. & III. Sold separately. 8vo, cloth, each	0	16	0
HERODOTUS. With English Notes, &c., by the Rev. J. W. BLAKESLEY, B.D. 2 vols. 8vo, cloth	1	12	0
HESIOD. With English Notes, by F. A. PALEY, M.A. 8vo, cloth	0	10	6
HOMER, The Iliad. Vol. I. Books 1 to 12. With English Notes, by F. A. PALEY, M.A. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
HORACE. With a Commentary, by the Rev. A. J. MACLEANE. 8vo, cloth	0	18	0
JUVENAL and PERSIUS. With a Commentary, by the Rev. A. J. MACLEANE. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
PLATO, PHAEDRUS of, with English Notes, &c., by W. H. THOMPSON, D.D. 8vo, cloth	0	7	6
SOPHOCLES. With a Commentary, by the Rev. F. H. M. BLAYDES, M.A. Vol. I. 8vo, cloth	0	18	0
TERENCE. With a Commentary, by the Rev. E. ST. JOHN PARRY. 8vo, cloth	0	18	0
VIRGIL. Vol. I. Containing the Eclogues and Georgics. With a Commentary, by J. CONINGTON, M.A. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
——— Vol. II. Containing Books 1 to 6 of the Æneid. With a Commentary, by J. CONINGTON, M.A. 8vo, cloth	0	14	0
*** Other volumes will shortly be published.			
BOYER and DELETANVILLE'S Complete French Dictionary. New edition. 8vo, bound	0	12	0
BOYES'S (Rev. J. F.) English Repetitions in Prose and Verse. 12mo, cloth	0	3	6
BUTTMANN'S (Dr. P.) Intermediate, or Larger Greek Grammar. New edit., by Dr. CHAS. SUPF. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
BYTHNER'S Lyre of David. By the Rev. T. DEE, A.B. New edition, by N. L. BENMOHEL, A.M. 8vo, cloth	1	4	0
CÆSAR de Bello Gallico. With English Notes, &c., by GEORGE LONG, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	5	6
———. Books 1 to 3, by G. LONG, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	2	6
CAMPAN'S (Madame) Conversations in *French and English*. New edition. 12mo, cloth	0	3	6
——— in *German and English*. 12mo, cloth	0	4	0

	£	s.	d.
CATULLUS, TIBULLUS, and PROPERTIUS. With Eng. Notes. By the Rev. A. H. Wratislaw, M.A. 12mo, cl.	0	3	6
CHEPMELL'S (Rev. Dr. H. Le M.) Course of History. First Series. 12mo, cloth	0	5	0
——— Course of History. Second Series. 2 vols. 12mo, cloth	0	12	0
——— Questions on the First Series. 12mo. sewed	0	1	0
CICERO'S Minor Works. De Officiis, &c. &c. With English Notes, by W. C. Taylor, LL.D. 12mo, cloth	0	4	6
CICERO de Amicitia, de Senectute, &c. With Notes, &c., by G. Long, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	4	6
COMSTOCK'S System of Natural Philosophy. New edition, by Lees. 18mo, bound	0	3	6
DAWSON'S Greek-English Lexicon to the New Testament. New edition, by Dr. Taylor. 8vo, cloth	0	9	0
DES CARRIERE, Histoire de France. Par C. J. Delille. 12mo, bound	0	7	0
EURIPIDES (Porson's). New edition, with Notes from Schaefer and others. 8vo, cloth	0	10	6
*** The four Plays separate. 8vo, sewed, each	0	2	6
FLUGEL'S German and English, and English and German Dictionary. New edition. 2 vols. 8vo, cloth	1	4	0
——— Abridged. 12mo, bound	0	7	6
FOREIGN CLASSICS. 12mo, cloth:—			
BIELEFELD'S German Ballads	0	3	6
CHARLES XIIth, by Direy	0	3	6
FONTAINE'S Fables, by Gasc	0	3	0
PICCIOLA, SAINTINE, by Dubuc	0	3	6
SCHILLER'S WALLENSTEIN, by Buchheim	0	6	6
TELEMAQUE, FENELON, by Delille	0	4	6
GRADUS ad PARNASSUM. Pyper. New and improved edition. 12mo, cloth.	0	7	0
GREEK TESTAMENT (The). With Notes, &c., by the Rev. J. F. Macmichael, B.A. 12mo, cloth	0	7	6
HAMEL'S French Grammar. New edit. 12mo, bound	0	4	0
——— French Exercises. New edition. 12mo, bound	0	4	0
*** Key to ditto. New edition. 12mo, bound	0	3	0
——— French Grammar and Exercises, by Lambert. 12mo, bound	0	5	6
*** Key to ditto, by Lambert. 12mo, bound	0	4	0
HEALE'S (Rev. E. M.) Manual of Geography for the Use of Military Students. 12mo, cloth	0	4	6
HINCKS' Greek and English School Lexicon. New edition, improved. square, bound	0	7	6
——— Summary of Ancient and Modern History. New edition. 18mo, cloth	0	3	0
HOBLYN'S Dictionary of Medical Terms. New edition, much enlarged. sm. 8vo	0	12	6
HOMER'S ILIAD, Abridged. With English Notes, by F. A. Paley, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	6	6
HORACE. With English Notes, by the Rev. A. J. Macleane, M.A. Abridged. 12mo, cloth	0	6	6
HOSE'S Elements of Euclid. With New and Improved Diagrams. 12mo, cloth	0	4	6

	£	s.	d.
JUVENALIS SATIRÆ XVI. With English Notes, by H. PRIOR, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	4	6
KEIGHTLEY'S History of India. 8vo, cloth	0	8	0
KOCH'S History of Europe. 8vo, cloth	0	6	0
LEBAHN'S Practice in German. 12mo, cloth	0	6	0
LE BRETON'S French Scholar's First Book. 12mo, cl.	0	3	0
LEVIZAC'S French Dictionary. New edit. 12mo, bound	0	6	6
LONG'S (George, M.A.) Atlas of Classical Geography. With copious Index, &c. 8vo, half-bound	0	12	6
——— Grammar School Atlas of Classical Geography. 8vo, cloth	0	5	0
MARTIAL'S Select Epigrams. With English Notes, by F. A. PALEY, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	6	6
MORRISON'S (C.) System of Practical Book-keeping by Single and Double Entry. New edition. 8vo, half-bd.	0	8	0
OLLENDORFF'S (Dr. H. G.) French Method. New edition. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
*** Key to ditto, by Dr. OLLENDORFF. 8vo, cloth	0	7	0
——— School edition. 12mo, cloth	0	6	6
——— German Method. Part I. New edition. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
——— Part II. New edition. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
*** Key to ditto (*both Parts*). 8vo, cloth	0	7	0
——— Introductory Book to his German Method. 12mo, cloth	0	3	6
——— Italian Method. New edit. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
*** Key to ditto, by Dr. OLLENDORFF. 8vo, cloth	0	7	0
——— Spanish Method. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
*** Key to ditto, by Dr. OLLENDORFF. 8vo, cloth	0	7	0
OVID'S FASTI. With English Notes, &c., by F. A. PALEY, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	5	0

WHITTAKER'S IMPROVED EDITIONS OF

PINNOCK'S History of England. New and revised edition. 12mo, bound roan	0	6	0
——— Rome. New edit. 12mo, bd. roan	0	5	6
——— Greece. New edit. 12mo, bd. roan.	0	5	6
——— Arithmetical Tables. 18mo. sewed. New edit.	0	0	6
——— Ciphering Book. No. 1. Fcap. 4to, swd.	0	1	0
——— No. 2. Fcap. 4to, hf.-bd.	0	3	0
——— Key to Ciphering Books. 12mo, bound	0	3	6
——— Child's First Book. 18mo, sewed	0	0	3
——— Explanatory English Reader. 12mo, bound	0	4	6
——— Introduction to ditto. 12mo, cloth	0	3	0
——— English Spelling Book. New edit. 12mo, cloth	0	1	6
——— Exercises in False Spelling. 18mo, cloth	0	1	6
——— First Spelling Book. 18mo, cloth	0	1	0
——— Juvenile Reader. 12mo, cloth	0	1	6
——— Mentorian Primer. 18mo, half-bound	0	0	6
——— (W. H.) First Latin Grammar. Ollendorff's system. 12mo, cloth	0	3	0
——— Catechisms of the Arts, Sciences, History, &c. &c. each	0	0	9

	£	s.	d.
PENROSE'S (Rev. John) Easy Exercises in Latin Elegiac Verse. New edition. 12mo, cloth	0	2	0
PLATO'S APOLOGY. With Latin Version, by STANFORD. 8vo, cloth	0	10	6
PLATT'S Literary and Scientific Class Book. New and revised edition. 12mo, bound	0	5	0
SALLUST. With English Notes, by GEORGE LONG, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	5	0
SCHINZEL'S German Preparatory Course. 12mo, cloth	0	2	6
*** Or, in two Parts. 12mo, cloth . . . each	0	1	6
SECRETARY'S (The) Assistant. New edition. 18mo, cl.	0	2	6
SHAKESPEARE. Edited by J. PAYNE COLLIER, Esq. With Portrait and Vignette. Super-royal 8vo, cloth	1	1	0
SOPHOCLES, by MITCHELL. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 2 vols. 8vo, cloth	1	8	0
*** The Plays can be had separately. 8vo, cloth . each	0	5	0
STODDART'S New Delectus. 12mo, cloth	0	4	0
TACITUS. Germania and Agricola. With English Notes, by the Rev. P. FROST. 12mo, cloth	0	3	6
TAYLOR'S (Dr. W. C.) History of France and Normandy. 12mo, bound	0	6	0
——— History of the Overthrow of the Roman Empire. 12mo, cloth	0	6	6
TYTLER'S Elements of Universal History. 8vo, cloth	0	4	6
VALPY'S GRADUS, Latin and English. royal 12mo, bound	0	7	6
——— Greek Testament, for Schools. 12mo, bound	0	5	0
——— SALLUST. New edition. 12mo, cloth	0	2	6
——— With English Notes, by HICKIE. 12mo, cloth	0	4	6
——— Cornelius NEPOS. New edition. 12mo, cloth	0	2	6
——— With English Notes, by HICKIE. 12mo, cloth	0	3	6
——— Schrevelius's Greek and English Lexicon. New edition, by Dr. MAJOR. 8vo, cloth	0	10	6
VENERONI'S Italian Grammar. New edit. 12mo, bound	0	6	0
VIRGIL. Books I.—IV. With English Notes. By the Rev. J. G. SHEPPARD, D.C.L. 12mo, cloth	0	5	6
WALKER'S DICTIONARY. Remodelled by SMART. New edition. 8vo, cloth	0	12	0
——— Epitomized by ditto. 12mo, cloth	0	6	0
WALKINGAME'S Tutor's Assistant. By FRASER. New edition. 12mo, cloth	0	2	0
*** Key to ditto. New edition. 12mo, cloth	0	3	0
WEBER'S Outlines of Universal History. Translated by Dr. M. BEHR. 8vo, cloth	0	9	0
WHITTAKER'S Florilegium Poeticum. 18mo, cloth	0	3	0
——— Latin Exercises. 12mo, cloth	0	3	0
XENOPHON'S Anabasis. With English Notes, &c., by the Rev. J. F. MACMICHAEL, B.A. 12mo, cloth	0	5	0
——— Cyropædia. With English Notes, by the Rev. G. M. GORHAM, M.A. 12mo, cloth	0	6	0
——— Memorabilia. With Notes, by the Rev. P. FROST. 12mo, cloth	0	4	6

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE TWENTY-SECOND EDITION.

THE proprietors of the improved editions of Goldsmith's three histories, of England, Rome, and Greece, have had the pleasing satisfaction of finding their cares rewarded by the universal approbation of the public, and the three volumes introduced as historical class-books into almost all the best schools in the United Kingdom. Grateful for the encouragement they have received from the public, the proprietors have spared neither labour nor expense in making each successive edition worthy of continued patronage. Every year they have added a summary of the events of the preceding, so as to bring down the history to the very day of publication. But while this edition was preparing for the press, the death of his gracious majesty George IV. produced a new epoch in the annals of England, and forced on the historian the duty of reflecting on the past, and collecting all the circumstances which could throw light upon the future. The reflections suited to the close of the reign of George III. are not very applicable to the conclusion of that which has just terminated: the literature, the policy, the feelings of the age have changed, and the system of education itself is undergoing a *silent* revolution. Abstruse science and the refinements of literature have found their way from the colleges to the schools, and the rising generation share largely in advantages, of which their predecessors were totally deprived. Impressed with these considerations, the present editor has deemed it necessary wholly to re-write the reigns of George III. and IV., in order to present, in a connected form, the successive links of that chain of events which unites the present condition of Europe with the American revolution. In performing this task, it has been his principal object to avoid giving offence to the feelings of any political party, and simply to detail the occurrences without any colouring which might prejudice or bias the youthful judgment. Youth is the season of warm feelings and strong passions; if

these be stimulated by the virulence of party spirit, the consequence will necessarily be erroneous judgment, and still more erroneous conduct. There are, however, some political considerations which may be offered to the youthful mind, not only without injury, but with positive advantage; and these are, the necessity of cherishing love for all our fellow subjects, affection for the country that gave us birth, reverence for the constitution under which our fathers have lived happily, and transmitted the inheritance of freedom and equal laws to their descendants, obedience to the sovereign and rulers of the state, and, above all, a veneration for the principles of morality and religion, seeing we are informed, on the highest authority, that "Righteousness exalteth a nation; but sin is the ruin of a people." These are the lessons which the present editor has been anxious to impress, however imperfectly, on the mind of the youthful student, conscious that, if successful, he shall have the proud reflection of having done some good in his generation, and that, even if he fails, his intention will bring its own reward.

To this edition have been added wood-cuts of the busts of the kings, collected from the most authentic sources, and executed with more care than is usually bestowed on the preparation of such illustrations.

W. C. T.

London, Jan. 1, 1831.

In the thirty-eighth edition considerable improvements were effected: the work having been carefully revised and corrected throughout, and the narrative continued to the Repeal of the Corn-laws, and the consequent close of Sir Robert Peel's administration. In the subsequent chapter on the progress of literature, science, and the arts, some interesting particulars have been introduced connected with the important inventions which have rendered the present century one of the most remarkable in the history of the world. And in the present edition (the fifty-first) the record of events has been extended to our own day.

May, 1868.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

Brief sketch of the Saxon Idols from which the Days of the Week received their names.

THE idols which our Saxon ancestors worshipped were various; but those which are delineated in the plate opposite, and from which the days of the week derive their names, were the principal objects of their adoration.

The Idol of the SUN.

This idol, which represented the glorious luminary of the day, was the chief object of their adoration. It is described like the bust of a man, set upon a pillar; holding, with outstretched arms, a burning wheel before his breast. The first day of the week was especially dedicated to its adoration, which they termed the *Sun's daeg;* hence is derived the word SUNDAY.

The Idol of the MOON.

The next, was the idol of the MOON, which they worshipped on the second day of the week, called by them *Moon's daeg:* and since by us, MONDAY.

The form of this idol is intended to represent a woman, habited in a short coat, and a hood, with two long ears. The moon which she holds in her hand designates the quality.

The Idol of TUISCO.

Tuisco was at first deified as the father and ruler of the Teutonic race, but in course of time he was worshipped as the son of the earth. From him came the Saxon words *Tuisco's daeg,* which we call TUESDAY.

He is represented standing on a pedestal, as an old venerable sage, clothed with the skin of an animal, and holding a sceptre in the right hand.

The Idol WODEN, or ODIN.

WODEN, or ODIN, was the supreme divinity of the Northern nations. This hero is supposed to have emigrated from the East, but from what country or at what time, is not known. His exploits form the greatest part of the

mythological creed of the Northern nations, and his achievements are magnified beyond all credibility. The name of the fourth day of the week, called by the Saxons *Woden's daeg*, and by us WEDNESDAY, is derived from this personage.

Woden is represented in a bold and martial attitude, clad in armour, with a broad sword, uplifted, in his right hand.

The Idol THOR.

THOR, the eldest and bravest of the sons of *Woden* and *Friga*, was, after his parents, considered as the greatest god among the Saxons and Danes. To him the fifth day of the week, called by them *Thor's daeg*, and by us THURSDAY, was consecrated.

Thor is represented as sitting on a throne, with a crown of gold on his head, adorned with a circle in front, wherein were set twelve bright burnished gold stars, and with a regal sceptre in his right hand.

The Idol FRIGA, or FREA.

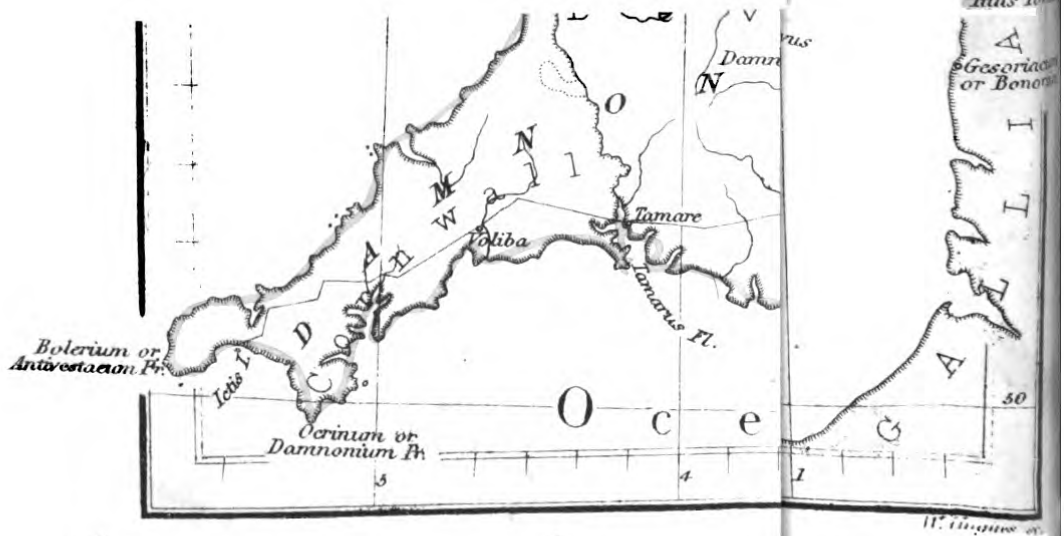
FRIGA, or FREA, was the wife of Woden, or Odin; and, next to him, the most revered divinity among the heathen Saxons, Danes, and other Northern nations. In the most ancient times, Friga, or Frea, was the same with the goddess *Hertha*, or *Earth*. To her the sixth day of the week was consecrated, which by the Saxons was written *Friga's daeg*, corresponding with our FRIDAY.

Friga is represented with a drawn sword in her right hand, and a bow in her left.

The Idol SEATER.

The Idol SEATER is represented on a pedestal, whereon is placed a *perch*, on the sharp prickled back of which he stood. His head was uncovered, and his visage lean. In his left hand he held up a wheel, and in his right was a pail of water, wherein were flowers and fruits; and his dress consisted of a long coat, girded with linen.

The appellation given to the day of his celebration is still retained. The Saxons named it *Seater's daeg*, which we call SATURDAY.


Damn
N
O
M
W
N
Tamare
Poliba
Tamarus Fl.
Bolerium or
Antivestaeum Pr.
Ictis I.
Ocrinum or
Damnonium Pr.
O c e
A
L
I
A
Gesoriacum
or Bononia
5
4
1
50
51
52
Pr:
bris

THE TWELVE CÆSARS.

LONDON
PUBLISHED BY WHITTAKER AND Co

THE TWELVE CÆSARS.

LONDON
PUBLISHED BY WHITTAKER AND Co

WHITTAKER'S

IMPROVED EDITION OF PINNOCK'S

GOLDSMITH'S

HISTORY OF ROME:

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF ROMAN HISTORY.

A VARIETY OF VALUABLE INFORMATION
ON THE MANNERS, INSTITUTIONS, AND ANTIQUITIES OF THE ROMANS,
IS ADDED THROUGHOUT THE WORK; WITH

Numerous Biographical and Historical Notes;

A DICTIONARY,
EXPLAINING THE MOST DIFFICULT WORDS, AT THE BEGINNING,
AND

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION
AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.

"Converse familiar with th' illustrious dead;
With great examples of old Greece or Rome
Enlarge thy free-born heart."—SOMERVILLE.

CORRECTED AND ENLARGED, BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL.D.

WITH SEVERAL ENGRAVINGS FROM MONTFAUCON AND OTHER AUTHORITIES.

NEW AND REVISED EDITION.

LONDON:
WHITTAKER & CO., AVE MARIA LANE.

LONDON:
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

PREFACE.

THE researches of Niebuhr and several other distinguished German scholars have thrown a new light on Roman history, and enabled us to discover the true constitution of that republic which once ruled the destinies of the known world, and the influence of whose literature and laws is still powerful in every civilized state, and will probably continue to be felt to the remotest posterity. These discoveries have, however, been hitherto useless to junior students in England; the works of the German critics being unsuited to the purposes of schools, not only from their price, but also from the extensive learning requisite to follow them through their laborious disquisitions. The Editor has, therefore, thought that it would be no unacceptable service, to prefix a few Introductory Chapters, detailing such results from their inquiries as best elucidate the character and condition of the Roman people, and explain the most important portion of the history. The struggles between the patricians and plebeians, re-

specting the agrarian laws, have been so strangely misrepresented, even by some of the best historians, that the nature of the contest may, with truth, be said to have been wholly misunderstood before the publication of Niebuhr's work: a perfect explanation of these important matters cannot be expected in a work of this kind; the Editor trusts that the brief account given here of the Roman tenure of land, and the nature of the agrarian laws, will be found sufficient for all practical purposes. After all the researches that have been made, the true origin of the Latin people, and even of the Roman city, is involved in impenetrable obscurity; the legendary traditions collected by the historians, are, however, the best guides that we can follow; but it would be absurd to bestow implicit credit on all the accounts they have given, and the Editor has, therefore, pointed out the uncertain nature of the early history, not to encourage scepticism, but to accustom students to consider the nature of historical evidence, and thus early form the useful habit of criticising and weighing testimony.

The authorities followed in the geographical chapters are principally Heeren and Cramer; the treatise of the latter on ancient Italy is one of the most valuable aids acquired by historical students within the

present century. Much important information respecting the peculiar character of the Roman religion has been derived from Mr. Keightley's excellent Treatise on Mythology; the only writer who has, in our language, hitherto explained the difference between the religious systems of Greece and Rome. The account of the barbarians in the conclusion of the volume, is, for the most part, extracted from "Koch's Revolutions of Europe;" the sources of the notes, scattered through the volume, are too varied for a distinct acknowledgment of each.

W. C. T.

London, January 1, 1832.

To the Thirteenth Edition some additions have been made, and engravings illustrative of the different periods of Roman History are inserted.

September 1, 1834.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

Geographical Outline of Italy 1

CHAPTER II.

The Latin Language and People—Credibility of the Early History 9

CHAPTER III.

The Topography of Rome 14

CHAPTER IV.

The Roman Constitution 22

CHAPTER V.

The Roman Tenure of Land—Colonial Government 28

CHAPTER VI.

The Roman Religion 31

CHAPTER VII.

The Roman Army and Navy 35

CHAPTER VIII.

Roman Law—Finance 44

CHAPTER IX.

The public Amusements and private Life of the Romans 49

CHAPTER X.

Geography of the Empire at the time of its greatest extent 55

HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Origin of the Romans 59

CHAPTER II.

From the building of Rome to the death of Romulus 64

CHAPTER III.

From the death of Romulus to the death of Numa 70

CHAPTER IV.

PAGE
From the death of Numa to the death of Tullus Hostilius 72

CHAPTER V.

From the death of Tullus Hostilius to the death of Ancus Martius 75

CHAPTER VI.

From the death of Ancus Martius to the death of Tarquinius Priscus 76

CHAPTER VII.

From the death of Tarquinius Priscus to the death of Servius Tullius 80

CHAPTER VIII.

From the death of Servius Tullius to the banishment of Tarquinius Superbus..... 85

CHAPTER IX.

From the banishment of Tarquinius Superbus to the appointment of the first Dictator 92

CHAPTER X.

From the creation of the Dictator to the election of the Tribunes. 99

CHAPTER XI.

From the creation of Tribunes to the appointment of the Decemviri.

SECTION I.

The great Volscian war 103

SECTION II.

Civil commotions on account of the Agrarian law..... 108

CHAPTER XII.

From the creation of the Decemviri to the extinction of that Office.

SECTION I.

Tyranny of the Decemviri 113

SECTION II.

The Crimes of Appius—The revolt of the army 118

SECTION III.

Election of Military Tribunes—Creation of the Censorship 123

SECTION IV.

Siege and capture of Veii—Invasion of the Gauls..... 128

SECTION V.

Deliverance of Rome from the Gauls..... 136

CHAPTER XIII.

From the wars with the Samnites to the First Punic war.

SECTION I.

PAGE
The Latin war 142

SECTION II.

Invasion of Italy by Pyrrhus, king of Epirus 147

SECTION III.

Defeat and departure of Pyrrhus 153

CHAPTER XIV.

From the beginning of the First Punic war to the beginning of the Second.

SECTION I.

Causes and commencement of the war—Invasion of Africa by Regulus 157

SECTION II.

Death of Regulus—Final triumph of the Romans 162

CHAPTER XV.

The Second Punic war.

SECTION I.

Commencement of the war—Hannibal's invasion of Italy 166

SECTION II.

Victorious career of Hannibal..... 171

SECTION III.

Retrieval of the Roman affairs—Invasion of Africa by Scipio—Conclusion of the war 179

CHAPTER XVI.

Macedonian, Syrian, Third Punic, and Spanish wars 186

CHAPTER XVII.

From the destruction of Carthage to the end of the sedition of the Gracchi.

SECTION I.

Murder of Tiberius Gracchus 192

SECTION II.

Slaughter of Caius Gracchus and his adherents 197

CHAPTER XVIII.

From the sedition of Gracchus to the perpetual Dictatorship of Sylla.

SECTION I.

The Jugurthine and Social wars 201

SECTION II.

PAGE
The cruel Massacres perpetrated by Marius and Sylla..... 206

CHAPTER XIX.

From the perpetual Dictatorship of Sylla to the first Triumvirate 212

CHAPTER XX.

From the first Triumvirate to the death of Pompey.

SECTION I.

Cæsar's wars in Gaul—Commencement of the Civil war..... 218

SECTION II.

Cæsar's victorious career 223

SECTION III.

The campaign in Thessaly and Epirus 228

SECTION IV.

The battle of Pharsalia 233

SECTION V.

Death of Pompey..... 237

CHAPTER XXI.

From the Destruction of the Commonwealth to the establishment of the first emperor, Augustus.

SECTION I.

Cæsar's Egyptian Campaign 243

SECTION II.

The African Campaign 249

SECTION III.

Death of Cæsar 255

SECTION IV.

The second Triumvirate 261

SECTION V.

The battle of Philippi 267

SECTION VI.

Dissensions of Antony and Augustus 273

SECTION VII.

The battle of Actium 279

SECTION VIII.

The conquest of Egypt 286

CHAPTER XXII.

From the accession of Augustus to the death of Domitian.

SECTION I.

The beneficent administration of Augustus 293

SECTION II.

PAGE

Death of Augustus 298

SECTION III.

The reign of Tiberius—The death of Germanicus..... 303

SECTION IV.

Death of Sejanus and Tiberius—Accession of Caligula..... 309

SECTION V.

Extravagant cruelties of Caligula—His death 315

SECTION VI.

The reign of Claudius 320

SECTION VII.

The reign of Nero 325

SECTION VIII.

Death of Nero—Reigns of Galba and Otho 331

SECTION IX.

The reigns of Vitellius and Vespasian—The siege of Jerusalem by Titus 337

SECTION X.

The reigns of Titus and Domitian 343

SECTION XI.

The assassination of Domitian 349

CHAPTER XXIII.

The five good emperors of Rome.

SECTION I.

The reigns of Nerva and Trajan..... 355

SECTION II.

The reign of Adrian..... 362

SECTION III.

The reign of Antoninus Pius 368

SECTION IV.

The reign of Marcus Aurelius..... 374

CHAPTER XXIV.

From the accession of Commodus to the change of the seat of government from Rome to Constantinople.

SECTION I.

The reigns of Commodus, Pertinax and Didius 378

SECTION II.

The reigns of Severus, Caracalla, Maximus, and Heliogabalus.... 383

SECTION III.

The reigns of Alexander, Maximin, and Gordian 390

SECTION IV.

The reigns of Philip, Decius, Gallus, Valerian, Claudius, Aurelian, Tacitus, and Probus..... 395

SECTION V.

The reigns of Carus, Carinus, Dioclesian, and Constantius—Accession of Constantine..... 401

SECTION VI.

The reign of Constantine 406

CHAPTER XXV.

From the death of Constantine to the reunion of the Roman empire, under Theodosius the Great.

SECTION I.

The reign of Constantius..... 411

SECTION II.

The reigns of Julian, Jovian, the Valentinians, and Theodosius .. 418

CHAPTER XXVI.

From the death of Theodosius to the subversion of the Western empire.

SECTION I.

The division of the Roman dominions into the eastern and western empires..... 426

SECTION II.

Decline and fall of the western empire 431

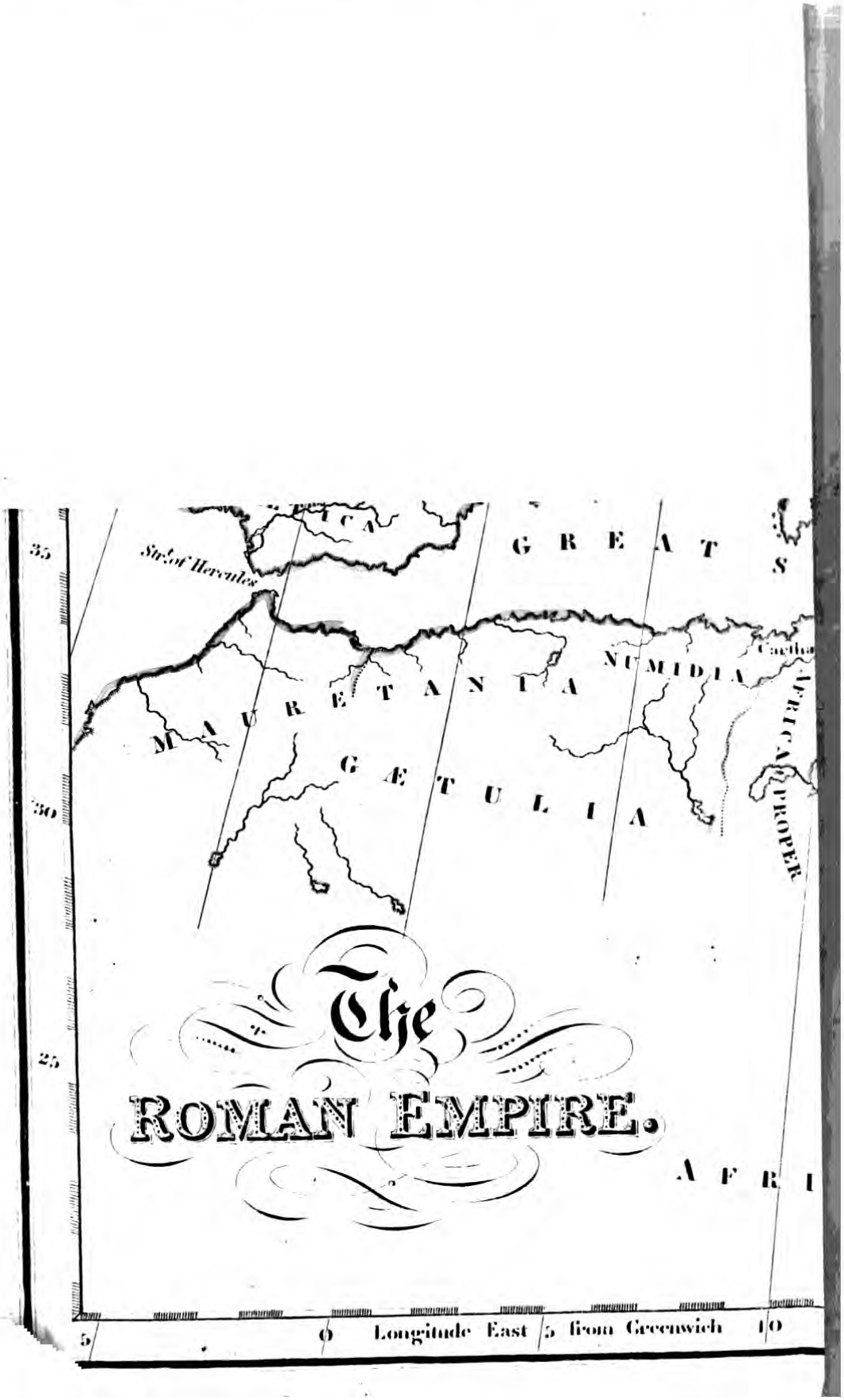
CHAPTER XXVII.

Historical notices of the different barbarous tribes that aided in overthrowing the Roman empire..... 439

CHAPTER XXVIII.

The progress of Christianity 446
Genealogical table of the Cæsars..... 450
Genealogical table of the house of Constantine..... 451

SECTION II.


GREAT S
Str. of Hercules
NUMIDIA
MAURETANIA
GÆTULIA
AFRICA PROPER
35
30
25
The
ROMAN EMPIRE.
AFRI
5
Longitude East from Greenwich
10

HISTORY OF ROME.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.—GEOGRAPHICAL OUTLINE OF ITALY.

Italia, oh, Italia! thou who hast
The fatal gift of beauty, which became
A funeral dower of present woes and past,
On thy sweet brow is sorrow plough'd by shame,
And annals traced in characters of flame. BYRON.

1. Phy'sical, *adj.* established by nature.
2. Designa'tions, *s.* names.
8. To'ga, *s.* a gown, the national dress of the Romans.
11. Subjuga'tion, *s.* conquest.
14. Intersec'ts, *v.* passes through the midst.
17. I'solated, *part.* alone, separate.
19. Divina'tion, *s.* the art of predicting the future by signs supposed to be sent by the gods.

1. THE outline of Italy presents a geographical unity and completeness which naturally would lead us to believe that it was regarded as a whole, and named as a single country, from the earliest ages. This opinion would, however, be erroneous; while the country was possessed by various independent tribes, of varied origin and different customs, the districts inhabited by each were reckoned separate states, and it was not until these several nations had fallen under the power of one predominant people that the *physical* unity which the peninsula possesses was expressed by a single name. Italy was the name originally given to a small peninsula in Brut'tium, between the Scylacean and Napetine gulfs; the name was gradually made to comprehend new districts, until at length it included the entire country lying south of the Alps, between the Adriatic and Tuscan seas. 2. The names Hespe'ria, Satur'nia, an' Œnot'ria have also been given to this country by the poets; but these *designations* are not properly applicable, for Hespe'ria was a general name for all the countries lying to the

12 9

west of Greece, and the other two names really belonged to particular districts.

3. The northern boundary of Italy, in its full extent, is the chain of the Alps, which forms a kind of crescent, with the convex side towards Gaul. The various branches of these mountains had distinct names; the most remarkable were the maritime Alps, extending from the Ligurian sea to Mount Ve'sulus (*Veso*); the Collian, Graian, Penine, Rhœtian, Tridentine, Carnic, and Julian Alps, which nearly complete the crescent; the Euganean, Venetian, and Pannonian Alps, that extend the chain to the east.

4. The political divisions of Italy have been frequently altered, but it may be considered as naturally divided into Northern, Central, and Southern Italy.

The principal divisions of Northern Italy were Ligu'ria and Cisalpine Gaul.

5. Only one half of Liguria was accounted part of Italy; the remainder was included in Gaul. The Ligurians originally possessed the entire line of sea-coast from the Pyrenees to the Tiber, and the mountainous district now called *Piedmont;* but before the historic age a great part of their territory was wrested from them by the Iberians, the Celts, and the Tuscans, until their limits were contracted nearly to those of the present district attached to Genoa. Their chief cities were Genu'a, *Genoa;* Nicœ'a, *Nice,* founded by a colony from Marseilles; and As'ta, *Asti.* The Ligurians were one of the last Italian states conquered by the Romans: on account of their inveterate hostility, they are grossly maligned by the historians of the victorious people, and described as ignorant, treacherous, and deceitful; but the Greek writers have given a different and more impartial account; they assure us that the Ligurians were eminent for boldness and dexterity, and at the same time patient and contented.

6. Cisalpine Gaul extended from Liguria to the Adriatic or Upper Sea, and nearly coincides with the modern district of Lombardy. The country is a continuous plain, divided by the Pa'dus, *Po,* into two parts; the northern, Gallia Transpada'na, was inhabited by the tribes of the Tauri'ni, In'subres, and Cenoma'nni; the southern, Gallia Cispada'na, was possessed by the Boi'i, Leno'nes, and Lingo'nes. 7. These plains were originally inhabited by a portion of the Etrurian, or Tuscan nation, once the most powerful in Italy; but at an uncertain period a vast horde

of Celtic Gauls forced the passage of the Alps, and spread themselves over the country, which thence received their name. 8. It was sometimes called Gallia Toga'ta, because the invaders conformed to Italian customs, and wore the *toga*. Cisalpine Gaul was not accounted part of Italy in the republican age; its southern boundary, the river Ru'bicon, being esteemed by the Romans the limit of their domestic empire.

9. The river Pa'dus and its tributary streams fertilized these rich plains. The principal rivers falling into the Padus were, from the north, the Du'ria, *Durance;* the Tici'nus, *Tessino;* the Ad'dua, *Adda;* the Ol'lius, *Oglio;* and the Min'tius, *Minzio:* from the south, the Ta'narus, *Tanaro,* and the Tre'bia. The Athe'sis, *Adige;* the Pla'vis, *Piave;* fall directly into the Adriatic.

10. The principal cities in Cisalpine Gaul were Roman colonies, with municipal rights; many of them have preserved their names unchanged to the present day. The most remarkable were, north of the Pa'dus, Terge'ste, *Trieste;* Aquilei'a; Patavium, *Padua;* Vincentia; Vero'na; all east of the Athe'sis: Man'tua; Cremo'na; Brix'ia, *Brescia;* Mediola'num, *Milan;* Tici'num, *Pavia;* and Augusta Turino'rum, *Turin:* all west of the Athe'sis. South of the Po we find Raven'na; Bono'nia, *Bologna;* Muti'na, *Modena;* Parma, and Placen'tia. 11. From the time that Rome was burned by the Gauls (B.C. 390), the Romans were harassed by the hostilities of this warlike people; and it was not until after the first Punic war, that any vigorous efforts were made for their *subjugation.* The Cisalpine Gauls, after a fierce resistance, were overthrown by Marcel'lus (B.C. 223), and compelled to submit, and immediately afterwards military colonies were sent out as garrisons to the most favourable situations in their country. The Gauls zealously supported Han'nibal when he invaded Italy, and were severely punished when the Romans finally became victorious.

12. North-east of Cisalpine Gaul, at the upper extremity of the Adriatic, lay the territory of the Ven'eti; they were a rich and unwarlike people, and submitted to the Romans without a struggle, long before northern Italy had been annexed to the dominions of the republic.

13. Central Italy comprises six countries, Etru'ria, La'tium, and Campa'nia, on the west; Um'bria, Pice'num, and Sam'nium, on the east.

14. Etru'ria, called also Tus'cia (whence the modern name *Tuscany*), and Tyrrhe'nia, was an extensive mountainous district, bounded on the north by the river Mac'ra, and on the south and east by the Tiber. The chain of the Apennines, which *intersects* middle and lower Italy, commences in the north of Etru'ria. The chief river is the Ar'nus, *Arno*. 15. The names Etruscan and Tyrrhenian, indifferently applied to the inhabitants of this country, originally belonged to different tribes, which, before the historic age, coalesced into one people. The Etruscans appear to have been Celts who descended from the Alps; the Tyrrhenians were undoubtedly a part of the Pelas'gi [1], who originally possessed the south-east of Europe. The circumstances of the Pelasgic migration are differently related by the several historians, but the fact is asserted by all. These Tyrrhenians brought with them the knowledge of letters and the arts, and the united people attained a high degree of power and civilization, long before the name of Rome was known beyond the precincts of Latium. They possessed a strong naval force, which was chiefly employed in piratical expeditions, and they claimed the sovereignty of the western seas. One of the earliest naval engagements recorded in history was fought between the fugitive Phocians [2], and the allied fleets of the Tyrrhenians and the Carthaginians (B.C. 539).

16. To commerce and navigation the Etruscans were indebted for their opulence and consequent magnificence; their destruction was owing to the defects of their political system. There were twelve Tuscan cities united in a federative alliance. Between the Mac'ra and Arnus were, Pi'sæ, *Pisa;* Floren'tia, *Florence;* and Fæ'sulæ: between the Ar'nus and the Tiber, Volate'rræ, *Volterra;* Volsin'ii, *Bolsena;* Clu'sium, *Chiusi;* Arre'tium, *Arezzo;* Corto'na; Peru'sia, *Perugia* (near which is the Thrasimene lake), Fale'rii, and Ve'ii. 17. Each of these cities was ruled by a chief magistrate, called *Lu'cumo,* chosen for life; he possessed regal power, and is frequently called a king by the Roman historians. In enterprises undertaken by the whole body, the supreme command was committed to one of the twelve *lucumones,* and he received a lictor from each city. But from the time that Roman history begins to assume a regular form, the Tuscan cities stand *isolated,*

[1] See Pinnock's History of Greece, Chap. I.
[2] See Historical Miscellany, Part II. Chap. I.

uniting only transiently and casually; we do not, however, find any traces of intestine wars between the several states.

18. The Etrurian form of government was aristocratical, and the condition of the people appears to have been miserable in the extreme; they were treated as slaves destitute of political rights, and compelled to labour solely for the benefit of their taskmasters. A revolution at a late period took place at Volsin'ii, and the exclusive privileges of the nobility were abolished after a fierce and bloody struggle; it is remarkable that this town, in which the people had obtained their rights, alone made an obstinate resistance to the Romans.

19. The progress of the Tuscans in the fine arts is attested by the monuments that still remain; but of their literature we know nothing; their language is unknown, and their books have perished. In the first ages of the Roman republic, the children of the nobility were sent to Etru'ria for education, especially in *divination* and the art of soothsaying, in which the Tuscans were supposed to excel. The form of the Roman constitution, the religious ceremonies, and the ensigns of civil government, were borrowed from the Etrurians.

20. La'tium originally extended along the coast from the Tiber to the promontory of Circe'ii; hence that district was called old La tium; the part subsequently added, called new La'tium, extended from Circeii to the Li'ris, *Garigliano*. The people were called Latins; but eastward towards the Apennines were the tribes of the Her'nici, the Æqui, the Mar'si, and the Sabines; and on the south were the Vols'ci, Ru'tuli, and Aurun'ci. The chief rivers in this country were the A'nio, *Teverone*, and Al'lia, which fall into the Tiber; and the Liris, *Garigliano*, which flows directly into the Mediterranean.

21. The chief cities in old Latium were Rome; Ti'bur, *Tivoli;* Tus'culum, *Frescati;* Al'ba Lon'ga, of which no trace remains; Lavin'ium; An'tium; Ga'bii; and Os'tia, *Civi'ta Vec'chia:* the chief towns in new Latium were Fun'di, Anx'ur or Terraci'na, Ar'pinum, Mintur'næ, and For'miæ.

22. Campa'nia included the fertile volcanic plains that lie between the Liris on the north, and the Sil'arus, *Selo*, on the south; the other most remarkable river was the Voltur'nus, *Volturno*. The chief cities were, Cap'ua the capital, Linter'num, Cu'mæ, Neap'olis, *Naples;* Hercula'-

neum, Pompe'ii, Surren'tum, Saler'num, &c. The original inhabitants of Campa'nia were the Auso'nes and Op'ici or Osci, the most ancient of the native Italian tribes. The Tyrrhenian Pelas'gi made several settlements on the coast, and are supposed to have founded Cap'ua. The Etruscans were afterwards masters of the country, but their dominion was of brief duration, and left no trace behind. Campa'nia was subdued by the Romans after the Volscian war.

23. The soil of Campa'nia is the most fruitful, perhaps, in the world, but it is subject to earthquakes and volcanic eruptions. Mount Vesu'vius in the early ages of Italy was not a volcano; its first eruption took place A.D. 79.

24. Um'bria extended along the middle and east of Italy, from the river Rubicon in the north, to the Æ'sis, *Gesano*, dividing it from Pice'num, and the Nar, *Nera*, separating it from Sam'nium in the south. The Umbrians were esteemed one of the most ancient races in Italy, and were said to have possessed the greater part of the northern and central provinces. They were divided into several tribes, which seem to have been semi-barbarous, and they were subject to the Gauls before they were conquered by the Romans. Their chief towns were Armi'nium, *Rimini;* Spole'tium, *Spoleto;* Nar'nia, *Narni;* and Ocricu'lum, *Otriculi.*

25. Pice'num was the name given to the fertile plain that skirts the Adriatic, between the Æ'sis, *Gesano*, and the Atar'nus, *Pescara*. The chief cities were Anco'na and Asc'ulum Pice'num, *Ascoli*. The Picentines were descended from the Sabines, and observed the strict and severe discipline of that warlike race, but they were destitute of courage or vigour.

26. Sam'nium included the mountainous tract which stretches from the Atar'nus in the north, to the Fren'to in the south. It was inhabited by several tribes descended from the Sabines[1] and Mar'si, of which the Samnites were the most distinguished; the other most remarkable sects were the Marruci'ni and Pelig'ni in the north, the Frenta'ni in the east, and the Hirpi'ni in the south. 27. The

[1] These colonies, sent out by the Sabines, are said to have originated from the observance of the Ver sacrum (*sacred Spring*). During certain years, every thing was vowed to the gods that was born between the calends (first day) of March and May, whether men or animals. At first they were sacrificed, but in later ages this cruel custom was laid aside, and they were sent out as colonists.

Samnites were distinguished by their love of war and their unconquerable attachment to liberty: their sway at one time extended over Campania, and the greater part of central Italy; and the Romans found them the fiercest and most dangerous of their early enemies. The chief towns in the Samnite territory were All'ifæ, Beneven'tum, and Cau'dium.

28. Lower Italy was also called Magna Græ'cia, from the number of Greek[1] colonies that settled on the coast; it comprised four countries, Luca'nia and Brut'tium on the west, and Apu'lia and Cala'bria on the east.

29. Luca'nia was a mountainous country between the Sil'arus, *Selo*, on the north, and the Läus, *Lavo*, on the south. The Lucanians were of Sabine origin, and conquered the Œnotrians, who first possessed the country; they also subdued several Greek cities on the coast. The chief cities were Posido'nia or Pæstum, He'lia or Ve'lia, Sib'aris and Thu'rium.

30. Brut'tium is the modern Cala'bria, and received that name when the ancient province was wrested from the empire. It included the tongue of land from the river Läus to the southern extremity of Italy at Rhe'gium. The mountains of the interior were inhabited by the Bruta'tes or Brut'tii, a semi-barbarous tribe, at first subject to the Sybarites, and afterwards to the Lucanians. In a late age they asserted their independence, and maintained a vigorous resistance to the Romans. As the Brut'tii used the Oscan language, they must have been of the Ausonian race. The chief towns were the Greek settlements on the coast, Consen'tia, *Cosenza;* Pando'sia, *Cirenza;* Croto'na, Mame'rtum, Petil'ia, and Rhe'gium, *Reggio.*

31. Apu'lia extended along the eastern coast from the river Fren'to, to the eastern tongue of land which forms the foot of the boot to which Italy has been compared. It was a very fruitful plain, without fortresses or harbours, and was particularly adapted to grazing cattle. It was divided by the river Au'fidus, *Ofanto*, into Apu'lia Dau'nia, and Apu'lia Peuce'tia, or pine-bearing Apu'lia. The chief towns were, in Dau'nia, Sipon'tum and Luce'ria: in Peuce'tia, Ba'rium Can'næ, and Venu'sia.

32. Cala'bria, or Messa'pia, is the eastern tongue of and which terminates at Cape Iapy'gium, *Santa Maria;* it

[1] The history of these colonies is contained in the Historical Miscellany, Part II. Chap. II.

was almost wholly occupied by Grecian colonies. The chief towns were Brundu'sium, *Brindisi;* Callipolis, *Gallipoli;* and Taren'tum.

33. The islands of Sicily, Corsica, and Sardinia, which are now reckoned as appertaining to Italy, were by the Romans considered separate provinces.

Questions for Examination.

1. How is Italy situated?
2. By what names was the country known to the ancients?
3. How was Italy bounded on the north?
4. What districts were in northern Italy?
5. What was the extent of Liguria, and the character of its inhabitants?
6. How was Cisalpine Gaul divided?
7. By whom was Cisalpine Gaul inhabited?
8. Why was it called Togata?
9. What are the principal rivers in northern Italy?
10. What are the chief cities in Cisalpine Gaul?
11. When did the Romans subdue this district?
12. Did the Venetians resist the Roman power?
13. What are the chief divisions of central Italy?
14. How is Etruria situated?
15. By what people was Etruria colonized?
16. What were the Tuscan cities?
17. How were the cities ruled?
18. What was the general form of Tuscan government?
19. For what were the Tuscans remarkable?
20. What was the geographical situation of Latium?
21. What were the chief towns in Latium?
22. What towns and people were in Campania?
23. For what is the soil of Campania remarkable?
24. What description is given of Umbria?
25. What towns and people were in Pice'num?
26. From whom were the Samnites descended?
27. What was the character of this people?
28. How was southern Italy divided?
29. What description is given of Lucania?
30. By what people was Bruttium inhabited?
31. What is the geographical situation of Apulia?
32. What description is given of Calabria?
33. What islands belong to Italy?

CHAPTER II.

THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND PEOPLE. — CREDIBILITY OF THE EARLY HISTORY.

Succeeding times did equal folly call,
Believing nothing, or believing all. DRYDEN.

[As this chapter is principally designed for advanced students, it has not been thought necessary to add a vocabulary or questions for examination.]

THE Latin language contains two primary elements, the first intimately connected with the Grecian, and the second with the Oscan tongue: to the former, for the most part, belong all words expressing the arts and relations of civilized life; to the latter, such terms as express the wants of men before society has been organized. We are therefore warranted in conjecturing that the Latin people was a mixed race, that one of its component parts came from some Grecian stock, and introduced the first elements of civilization, and that the other was indigenous, and borrowed refinement from the strangers. The traditions recorded by the historians sufficiently confirm this opinion; they unanimously assert that certain bodies of Pelasgi came into the country before the historic age, and coalesced with the ancient inhabitants. The traditions respecting these immigrations are so varied, that it is impossible to discover any of the circumstances; but there is one so connected with the early history of Rome, that it cannot be passed over without notice. All the Roman historians declare that after the destruction of Troy, Æneas with a body of the fugitives arrived in Latium, and having married the daughter of king Lati'nus, succeeded him on the throne. It would be easy to show that this narrative is so very improbable, as to be wholly unworthy of credit; but how are we to account for the universal credence which it received? To decide this question, we must discuss the credibility of the early Roman history, a subject which has of late years attracted more than ordinary attention.

The first Roman historian of any authority was Fa'bius Pic'tor, who flourished at the close of the second Punic war; that is, about five centuries and a half after the foundation

of the city, and nearly a thousand years after the destruction of Troy. The materials from which his narrative was compiled, were the legendary ballads, (which are in every country the first records of warlike exploits,) the calendars and annals kept by the priests, and the documents kept by noble families to establish their genealogy. Imperfect as these materials must necessarily have been under any circumstances, we must remember that the city of Rome was twice captured, once by Porsenna, and a second time by the Gauls about a century and a half before Fabius was born. On the latter occasion the city was burned to the ground, and the capitol saved only by the payment of an immense ransom. By such a calamity it is manifest that the most valuable documents must have been dispersed or destroyed, and the part that escaped thrown into great disorder. The heroic songs might indeed have been preserved in the memory of the public reciters; but there is little necessity for proving, that poetic historians would naturally mingle so much fiction with truth, that few of their assertions could be deemed authentic. The history of the four first centuries of the Roman state is accordingly full of the greatest inconsistencies and improbabilities, so much so, that many respectable writers have rejected the whole as unworthy of credit; but this is as great an excess in scepticism, as the reception of the whole would be of credulity. But if the founders of the city, the date of its erection, and the circumstances under which its citizens were assembled, be altogether doubtful, as will subsequently be shown, assuredly, the history of events that occurred four centuries previous must be involved in still greater obscurity. The legend of Æneas, when he first appears noticed as a progenitor of the Romans, differs materially from that which afterwards prevailed. Romulus, in the earlier version of the story, is invariably described as the son or grandson of Æneas. He is the grandson in the poems of Nævius and Ennius, who were both nearly contemporary with Fabius Pictor. This gave rise to an insuperable chronological difficulty, for Troy was destroyed B.C. 1184, and Rome was not founded, according to the ordinary accounts, until B.C. 753. To remedy this incongruity, a list of Latin kings intervening between Æne'as and Rom'ulus, was invented; but the forgery was so clumsily executed, that its falsehood is apparent on the slightest inspection. It may also be remarked, that the

actions attributed to Æneas are in other traditions of the same age and country ascribed to other adventurers; to Evander, a Pelasgic leader from Arcadia, who is said to have founded a city on the site afterwards occupied by Rome; or to Uly'sses, whose son Tele'gonus is reported to have built Tus'culum.

If then we deny the historical truth of a legend which seems to have been universally credited by the Romans, how are we to account for the origin of the tale? Was the tradition of native growth, or was it imported from Greece when the literature of that country was introduced into Latium? These are questions that can only be answered by guess; but perhaps the following theory may in some degree be found satisfactory. We have shown that tradition, from the earliest age, invariably asserted that Pelasgic colonies had formed settlements in central Italy; nothing is more notorious than the custom of the Pelasgic tribes to take the name of their general, or of some town in which they had taken up their temporary residence; now Æne'a and Æ'nus were common names of the Pelasgic towns; the city of Thessaloni'ca was erected on the site of the ancient Æne'a; there was an Æ'nus in Thrace[1], another in Thessaly[1]: another among the Locrians, and another in Epi'rus[1]: hence it is not very improbable but that some of the Pelasgic tribes which entered Latium may have been called the Æne'adæ; and the name, as in a thousand instances, preserved after the cause was forgotten. This conjecture is confirmed by the fact, that temples traditionally said to have been erected by a people called the Æne'adæ, are found in the Macedonian peninsula of Pall'ene[2], in the islands of De'los, Cythe'ra, Zacy'nthus, Leuca'dia, and Sa'mos, on the western coasts of Ambra'cia and Epi'rus, and on the southern coast of Sicily.

The account of several Trojans, and especially Æne'as, having survived the destruction of the city, is as old as the earliest narrative of that famous siege; Homer distinctly asserts it when he makes Neptune declare,

> ——— Nor thus can Jove resign
> The future father of the Dardan line:

[1] It is scarcely necessary to remark that the Pelas'gi were the original settlers in these countries.

[2] In all these places we find also the Tyrrhenian Pelas'gi.

> **The first great ancestor obtain'd his grace,**
> **And still his love descends on all the race.**
> **For Priam now, and Priam's faithless kind,**
> **At length are odious to the all-seeing mind;**
> **On great Æneas shall devolve the reign,**
> **And sons succeeding sons the lasting line sustain.**
>
> **ILIAD XX.**

But long before the historic age, Phrygia and the greater part of the western shores of Asia Minor were occupied by Grecian colonies, and all remembrance of Æne'as and his followers lost. When the narrative of the Trojan war, with other Greek legends, began to be circulated in La'tium, it was natural that the identity of name should have led to the confounding of the Æne'adæ who had survived the destruction of Troy with those who had come to La'tium from the Pelasgic Æ'nus. The cities which were said to be founded by the Æne'adæ were Latin Troy, which possessed empire for three years; Lavinium, whose sway lasted thirty; Alba, which was supreme for three hundred years; and Rome, whose dominion was to be interminable, though some assign a limit of three thousand years. These numbers bear evident traces of superstitious invention; and the legends by which these cities are successively deduced from the first encampment of Æne'as, are at variance with these fanciful periods. The account that Al'ba was built by a son of Æne'as, who had been guided to the spot by a white sow, which had farrowed thirty young, is clearly a story framed from the similarity of the name to Albus (*white*), and the circumstance of the city having been the capital of the thirty Latin tribes. The city derived its name from its position on the Alban mountain; for *Alb*, or *Alp*, signifies lofty in the ancient language of Italy, and the emblem of a sow with thirty young may have been a significant emblem of the dominion which it unquestionably possessed over the other Latin states. The only thing that we can establish as certain in the early history of La'tium is, that its inhabitants were of a mixed race, and the sources from whence they sprung Pelasgic and Oscan; that is, one connected with the Greeks, and the other with some ancient Italian tribe. We have seen that this fact is the basis of all their traditions, that it is confirmed by the structure of their language, and, we may add, that it is further proved by their political institutions. In all the Latin cities, as well as Rome, we find the people

divided into an aristocracy and democracy, or as they are more properly called, Patricians and Plebeians. The experience of all ages warrants the inference, which may be best stated in the words of Dr. Faber: "In the progress of the human mind there is an invariable tendency not to introduce into an undisturbed community a palpable difference between lords and serfs, instead of a legal equality of rights; but to abolish such difference by enfranchising the serfs. Hence, from the universal experience of history, we may be sure that whenever this distinction is found to exist, the society must be composed of two races differing from each other in point of origin."

The traditions respecting the origin of Rome are innumerable: some historians assert that its founder was a Greek; others, Æneas and his Trojans; and others give the honour to the Tyrrhenians: all, however, agree, that the first inhabitants were a Latin colony from Alba. Even those who adopted the most current story, which is followed by Dr. Goldsmith, believed that the city existed before the time of Rom'ulus, and that he was called the founder, from being the first who gave it strength and stability. It seems probable that several villages might have been formed at an early age on the different hills, which were afterwards included in the circuit of Rome; and that the first of them which obtained a decided superiority, the village on the Palatine hill, finally absorbed the rest, and gave its name to "the eternal city."

There seems to be some uncertainty whether Romulus gave his name to the city, or derived his own from it: the latter is asserted by several historians, but those who ascribe to the city a Grecian origin, with some show of probability assert that Romus (another form of Romulus) and Roma are both derived from the Greek ῥώμη, *strength*. The city, we are assured, had another name, which the priests were forbidden to divulge; but what that was, it is now impossible to discover. There is, however, some plausibility in the conjecture that it was Pallanteum; from the great care with which the Palladium, or image of Pallas, was preserved, it seems probable that the city was supposed to be under the care of that deity. If this conjecture be correct, the Pelasgic origin of Rome cannot be doubted, for Pallas was a Pelasgic deity.

We have thus traced the history of the Latins down to the period when Rome was founded, or at least when it

became a city, and shown how little reliance can be placed on the accounts given of these periods by the early historians. We shall hereafter see that great uncertainty rests on the history of Rome itself during the four first centuries of its existence.

CHAPTER III.

THE TOPOGRAPHY OF ROME.

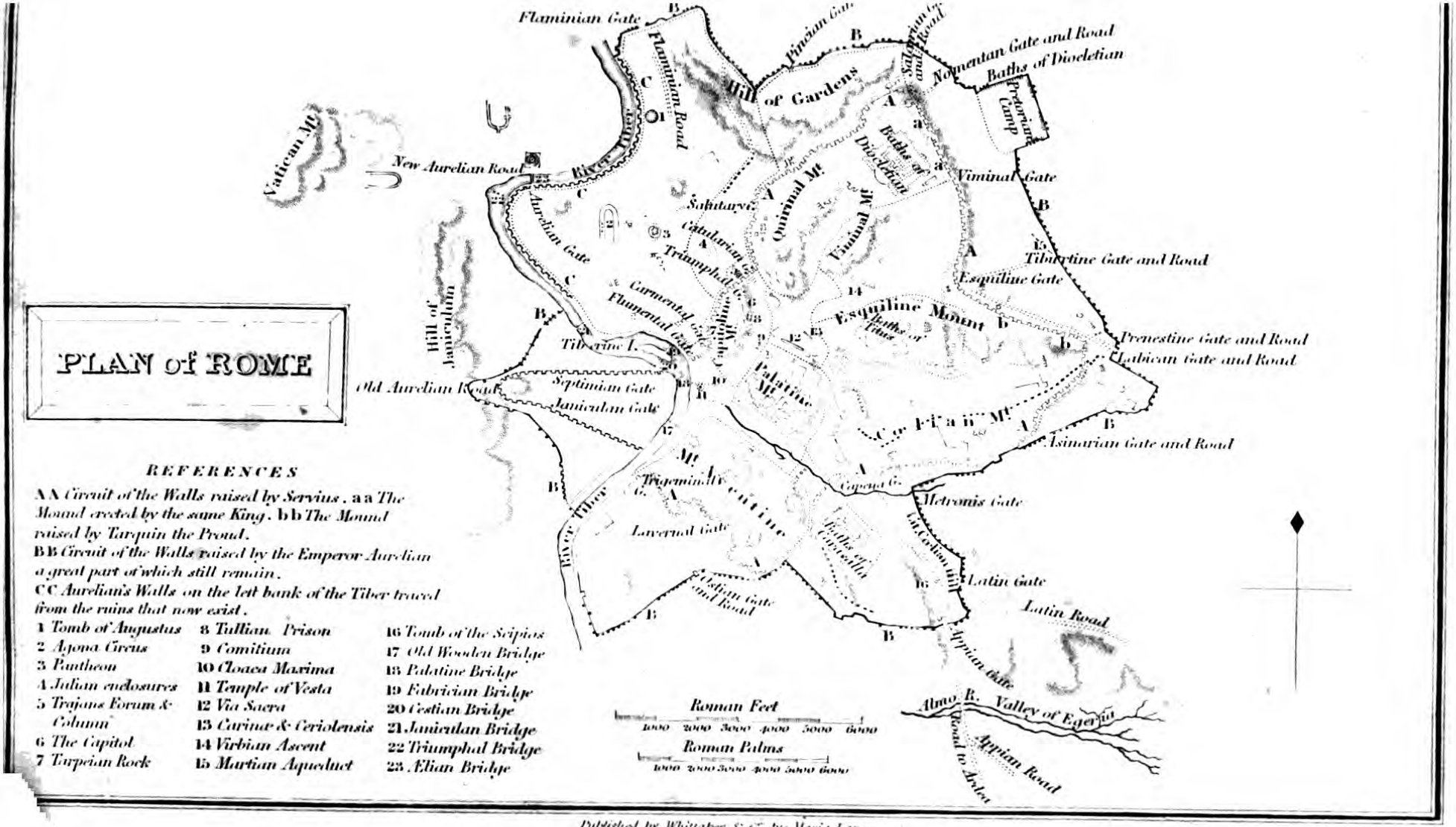
Full in the centre of these wondrous works,
The pride of Earth! Rome in her glory see.

THOMSON.

1. Var'ro, *s.* a Roman writer on chronology.
Olym'piad, *s.* a space of four years, being the interval between each celebration of the Olympic games.
4. Ja'nus, *s.* a Roman deity.
13. Asy'lum, *s.* a place of refuge for criminals.
Chronological, *adj.* relating to time.
21. Pepenno, *s.* a kind of stone.

1. THE city of Rome, according to *Varro*, was founded in the fourth year of the sixth *Olympiad*, B.C. 753; but Cato, the censor, places the event four years later, in the second year of the seventh Olympiad. The day of its foundation was the 21st of April, which was sacred to the rural goddess Pa'les, when the rustics were accustomed to solicit the increase of their flocks from the deity, and to purify themselves for involuntary violation of consecrated places. The account preserved by tradition of the ceremonies used on this occasion confirms the opinion of those who contend that Rome had a previous existence as a village, and that what is called its foundation was really an enlargement of its boundaries, by taking in the ground at the foot of the Palatine hill. The first care of Rom'ulus was to mark out the Pomœ'rium; a space round the walls of the city, on which it was unlawful to erect buildings. 2. The person who determined the Pomœ'rium yoked a bullock and heifer to a plough, having a copper share, and drew a furrow to mark the course of the future wall; he guided the plough so that all the sods might fall inwards, and was followed by others, who took care that none should lie the other way. 3. When he came to the place where it was designed to erect a gate, the plough was taken up [1], and carried to

[1] Hence a gate was called *porta*, from *porta're*, to carry. The reason of this part of the ceremony was, that the plough being deemed holy, it


PLAN of ROME
REFERENCES
A A Circuit of the Walls raised by Servius. a a The Mound erected by the same King. b b The Mound raised by Tarquin the Proud.
B B Circuit of the Walls raised by the Emperor Aurelian a great part of which still remain.
C C Aurelian's Walls on the left bank of the Tiber traced from the ruins that now exist.
1 Tomb of Augustus
2 Agona Circus
3 Pantheon
4 Julian enclosures
5 Trajans Forum & Column
6 The Capitol
7 Tarpeian Rock
8 Tullian Prison
9 Comitium
10 Cloaca Maxima
11 Temple of Vesta
12 Via Sacra
13 Curiae & Ceriolensis
14 Virbian Ascent
15 Martian Aqueduct
16 Tomb of the Scipios
17 Old Wooden Bridge
18 Palatine Bridge
19 Fabrician Bridge
20 Cestian Bridge
21 Janiculan Bridge
22 Triumphal Bridge
23 Ælian Bridge
Roman Feet
1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 6000
Roman Palms
1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 6000
Flaminian Gate
Flaminian Road
Pincian Gate
Salarian Gate and Road
Nomentan Gate and Road
Baths of Diocletian
Prætorian Camp
Hill of Gardens
Vatican Mt.
New Aurelian Road
River Tiber
Aurelian Gate
Hill of Janiculum
Viminal Gate
Tiburtine Gate and Road
Esquiline Gate
Esquiline Mount
Prænestine Gate and Road
Labican Gate and Road
Asinarian Gate and Road
Old Aurelian Road
Septimian Gate
Janiculan Gate
Tiberine I.
Palatine Mt.
Mt. Aventine
Trigeminal Gate
Lavernal Gate
Capena Gate
Metronis Gate
Latin Gate
Latin Road
Appian Gate
Almo R.
Valley of Egeria
Appian Road
Road to Ardea
Cestian Gate and Road
Published by Whittaker & Co Ave Maria Lane,

where the wall recommenced. The next ceremony was the consecration of the comit'ium, or place of public assembly. A vault was built under ground, and filled with the firstlings of all the natural productions that sustain human life, and with earth which each foreign settler had brought from his own home. This place was called *Mun'dus*, and was supposed to become the gate of the lower world; it was opened on three several days in the year, for the spirits of the dead.

4. [1] The next addition made to the city was the Sabine town, which occupied the Quirinal, and part of the Capitoline hills. The name of this town most probably was Qui'rium, and from it the Roman people received the name Quirites. The two cities were united on terms of equality, and the double-faced *Ja'nus* stamped on the earliest Roman coins was probably a symbol of the double state. They were at first so disunited, that even the rights of intermarriage did not exist between them, and it was probably from Qui'rium that the Roman youths obtained the wives [2] by force, which were refused to their entreaties. 5. The next addition was the Cœlian [3] hill, on which a Tuscan colony settled, under the command of Cœ'les Vibenna, who seems to have been the leader of a body of wandering mercenaries, ready to sell their services to any monarch that would purchase them. From these three colonies the three tribes of Ram'nes, Ti'ties, and Lu'ceres were formed. 6. The Ram'nes, or Ramnenses, derived their name from Rom'ulus; the Tities, or Titien'ses, from Titus Ta'tius, the king of the Sabines; and the Lu'ceres, from [4] Lucumo, the Tuscan title of a general, or leader. From this it

was unlawful that any thing unclean should pollute the place which it had touched; but it was obviously necessary that things clean and unclean should pass through the gates of the city. It is remarkable that all the ceremonies here mentioned were imitated from the Tuscans.

[1] This, though apparently a mere conjecture, has been so fully proved by Niebuhr, (vol. i. p. 251,) that it may safely be assumed as an historical fact.

[2] See Chapter II. of the following History.

[3] All authors are agreed that the Cœlian hill was so named from Cœles Viben'na, a Tuscan chief; but there is a great variety in the date assigned to his settlement at Rome. Some make him contemporary with Rom'ulus, others with the elder Tarquin, or Servius Tullius. In this uncertainty all that can be satisfactorily determined is, that at some early period a Tuscan colony settled in Rome.

[4] Others say that they were named so in honour of Lu'cerus, king of Ardea, according to which theory the third would have been a Pelasgo-Tyrrhenian colony.

appears that the[1] three tribes were really three distinct nations, differing in their origin, and dwelling apart.

7. The city was enlarged by[2] Tullus Hostilius, after the destruction of Alba, and the Viminal hill included within the walls; Ancus Martius added mount Aventine, and the[3] Esquiline and Capitoline being enclosed in the next reign, completed the number of the seven hills on which the ancient city stood.

8. The hill called Jani'culum, on the north bank of the Tiber, was fortified as an outwork by Ancus Martius, and joined to the city by the bridge; he also dug a trench round the newly erected buildings, for their greater security, and called it the ditch of the Quirites. 9. The public works erected by the kings were of stupendous magnitude, but the private buildings were wretched, the streets narrow, and the houses mean. It was not until after the burning of the city by the Gauls that the city was laid out on a better plan; after the Punic wars wealth flowed in abundantly, and private persons began to erect magnificent mansions. From the period of the conquest of Asia until the reign of Augustus, the city daily augmented its splendour, but so much was added by that emperor that he boasted that "he found Rome a city of brick, and left it a city of marble."

10. The circumference of the city has been variously estimated, some writers including in their computation a part of the suburbs; according to Pliny it was near twenty miles round the walls. In consequence of this great extent the city had more than thirty gates, of which the most remarkable were the Carmental, the Esquiline, the Triumphal, the Naval, and those called Tergem'ina and Cape'na.

11. The division of the city into four tribes continued until the reign of Augustus; a new arrangement was made by the emperor, who divided Rome into fourteen wards[4],

[1] We shall hereafter have occasion to remark, that the Lu'ceres were subject to the other tribes.

[2] See History, Chapter IV.

[3] The Pincian and Vatican hills were added at a much later period, and these, with Janiculum, made the number ten.

[4] They were named as follow:

1. Porta Cape'na	6. Acta Se'mita	11. Circus Max'imus
2. Cœlimon'tium	7. Via Lata	12. Pisci'na Pub'lica
3. I'sis and Sera'pis	8. Forum Roma'num	13. Aventi'nus
4. Via Sa'cra	9. Circus Flamin'ius	14. Transtiberi'na.
5. Esquili'na	10. Pala'tium	

[The

or regions. The magnificent public and private buildings in a city so extensive and wealthy were very numerous, and a bare catalogue of them would fill a volume[1]; our attention must be confined to those which possessed some historical importance.

12. The most celebrated and conspicuous buildings were in the eighth division of the city, which contained the Capitol and its temples, the Senate-house and the Forum. The Capitoline hill was anciently called Saturnius, from the ancient city of Satur'nia, of which it was the citadel; it was afterwards called the Tarpeian mount, and finally received the name Capitoline, from a[2] human head being found on its summit when the foundations of the temple of Jupiter were laid. It had two summits; that on the south retained the name Tarpeian[3]; the northern was properly the Capitol. 13. On this part of the hill Romulus first established his *asylum*, in a sacred grove, dedicated to some unknown divinity; and erected a fort or[4] citadel on the Tarpeian summit. The celebrated temple of Jupiter Capitoli'nus, erected on this hill, was begun by the elder Tarquin, and finished by Tarquin the Proud. It was burned down in the civil wars between Ma'rius and Syl'la, but restored by the latter, who adorned it with pillars taken from the temple of Jupiter at Olympia. It was rebuilt after similar accidents by Vespa'sian and Domitian, and on each occasion with additional splendour. The rich ornaments and gifts presented to this temple by different princes and generals amounted to a scarcely credible sum. The gold and jewels given by Augustus

The divisions made by Servius were named: the Suburan, which comprised chiefly the Cœlian mount; the Colline, which included the Viminal and Quirinal hills; the Esquiline and Palatine, which evidently coincided with the hills of the same name.

[1] Among the public buildings of ancient Rome, when in her zenith, are numbered 420 temples, five regular theatres, two amphitheatres, and seven circuses of vast extent; sixteen public baths, fourteen aqueducts, from which a prodigious number of fountains were constantly supplied; innumerable palaces and public halls, stately columns, splendid porticoes, and lofty obelisks.

[2] From *caput*, "a head."

[3] State criminals were punished by being precipitated from the Tarpeian rock; the soil has been since so much raised by the accumulation of ruins, that a fall from it is no longer dangerous.

[4] In the reign of Numa the Quirinal hill was deemed the citadel of Rome; an additional confirmation of Niebuhr's theory, that Quirium was a Sabine town, which being early absorbed in Rome, was mistaken by subsequent writers for Cu'res.

alone are said to have exceeded in value four thousand pounds sterling. A nail was annually driven into the wall of the temple to mark the course of time; besides this *chronological* record, it contained the Sibylline books, and other oracles supposed to be pregnant with the fate of the city. There were several other temples on this hill, of which the most remarkable was that of Jupiter Feretrius, erected by Romulus, where the *spolia opima* were deposited.

14. The Forum, or place of public assembly, was situated between the Palatine and Capitoline hills. It was surrounded with temples, basilicks[1], and public offices, and adorned with innumerable statues[2]. On one side of this space were the elevated seats from which the Roman magistrates and orators addressed the people; they were called Rostra, because they were ornamented with the beaks of some galleys taken from the city of Antium. In the centre of the Forum was a place called the Curtian Lake, either from a Sabine general called Curtius, said to have been smothered in the marsh which was once there; or from[3] the Roman knight who plunged into a gulf that opened suddenly on this spot. The celebrated temple of Ja'nus, built entirely of bronze, stood in the Forum; it is supposed to have been erected by Numa. The gates of this temple were opened in time of war, and shut during peace. So continuous were the wars of the Romans, that the gates were only closed three times during the space of eight centuries. In the vicinity stood the temple of Concord, where the senate frequently assembled, and the temple of Vesta, where the palla'dium was said to be deposited.

15. Above the rostra was the Senate-house, said to have been first erected by Tullus Hostilius: and near it the Comitium, or place of meeting for the patrician Curiæ[4]. This area was at first uncovered, but a roof was erected at the close of the second Pu'nic war.

16. The Cam'pus Mar'tius, or field of Mars, was originally the estate of Tarquin the Proud, and was, with his

[1] Basilicks were spacious halls for the administration of justice.

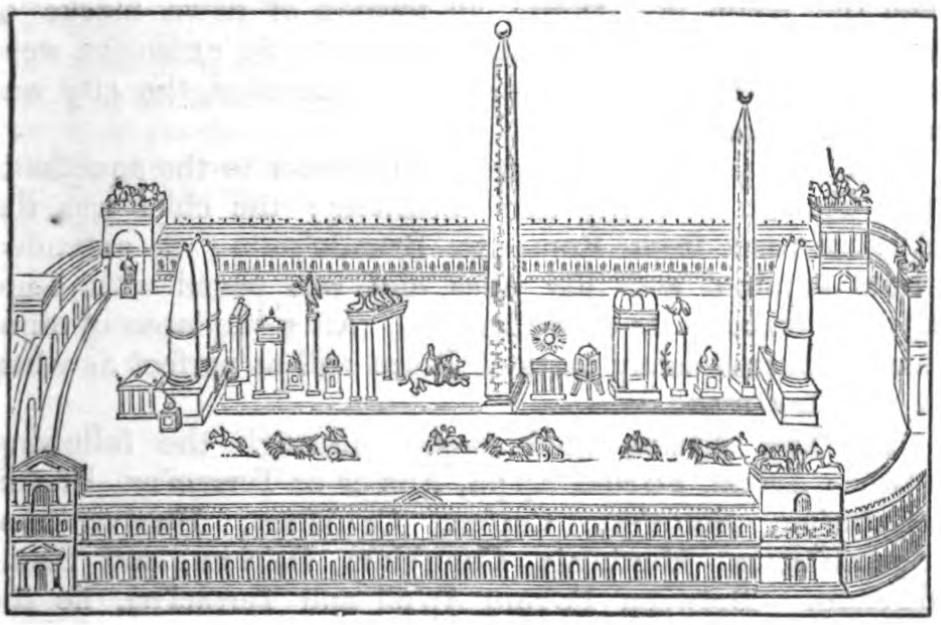
[2] It is called *Templum* by Livy; but the word templum with the Romans does not mean an edifice, but a consecrated enclosure. From its position, we may conjecture that the forum was originally a place of meeting common to the inhabitants of the Sabine town on the Quirinal, and the Latin town on the Palatine hill.

[3] See Chap. XII. Sect. V. of the following History.

[4] See the following chapter.

other property, confiscated after the expulsion of that monarch. It was a large space, where armies were mustered, general assemblies of the people held, and the young nobility trained in martial exercises. In the later ages, it was surrounded by several magnificent structures, and porticoes were erected, under which the citizens might take their accustomed exercise in rainy weather. These improvements were principally made by Marcus Agrippa, in the reign of Augustus. 17. He erected in the neighbourhood, the Panthe'on, or temple of all the gods, one of the most splendid buildings in ancient Rome. It is of a circular form, and its roof is in the form of a cupola or dome; it is used at present as a Christian Church. Near the Panthe'on were the baths and gardens which Agrippa, at his death, bequeathed to the Roman people.

18. The theatres and circi for the exhibition of public spectacles were very numerous. The first theatre was erected by Pompey the Great; but the Circus Maximus, where gladiatorial combats were displayed, was erected by Tarquinius Priscus; this enormous building was frequently enlarged, and in the age of Pliny could accommodate two hundred thousand spectators.



A still more remarkable edifice was the amphitheatre erected by Vespasian, called, from its enormous size, the Colosse'um.

19. Public baths were early erected for the use of the

people, and in the later ages were among the most remarkable displays of Roman luxury and splendour. Lofty arches, stately pillars, vaulted ceilings, seats of solid silver, costly marbles, inlaid with precious stones, were exhibited in these buildings with the most lavish profusion.

20. The aqueducts for supplying the city with water were still more worthy of admiration; they were supported by arches, many of them a hundred feet high, and carried over mountains and morasses that might have appeared insuperable. The first aqueduct was erected by Ap'pius Cœ'cus, the censor, four hundred years after the foundation of the city; but under the emperors there were not less than twenty of these useful structures, and such was the supply of water, that rivers seemed to flow through the streets and sewers. Even now, though only three of the aqueducts remain, such are their dimensions that no city in Europe has a greater abundance of wholesome water than Rome.

21. The Cloa'cæ, or common sewers, attracted the wonder of the ancients themselves; the largest was completed by Tarquin the Proud. The innermost vault of this astonishing structure forms a semicircle eighteen Roman palms wide, and as many high; this is enclosed in a second vault, and that again in a third; all formed of hewn blocks of *pepenno*, fixed together without cement. So extensive were these channels, that in the reign of Augustus, the city was subterraneously navigable.

22. The public roads were little inferior to the aqueducts and Cloa'cæ in utility and costliness: the chief was the Appian road from Rome to Brundu'sium; it extended three hundred and fifty miles, and was paved with huge squares through its entire length. After the lapse of nineteen centuries many parts of it are still as perfect as when it was first made.

23. The Appian road passed through the following towns: Ari'cia, Fo'rum Ap'pii, Anx'ur or Terraci'na, Fun'di, Mintur'næ, Sinue'ssa, Cap'ua, Cau'dium, Beneven'tum, Equotu'ticum, Herdo'nia, Canu'sium, Ba'rium, and Brundu'sium. Between Fo'rum Ap'pii and Terraci'na, lie the celebrated Pomptine marshes, formed by the overflowing of some small streams. In the flourishing ages of Roman history these pestilential marshes did not exist, or were confined to a very limited space; but from the decline of the Roman empire the waters gradually encroached, until

the successful exertions made by the Pontiffs in modern times to arrest their baleful progress. Before the drainage of Pope Sixtus, the marshes covered at least thirteen thousand acres of ground, which in the earlier ages was the most fruitful portion of the Italian soil.

Questions for Examination.

1. When was Rome founded?
2. What ceremonies were used in determining the pomœrium?
3. How was the comitium consecrated?
4. What was the first addition made to Rome?
5. What was the next addition?
6. Into what tribes were the Romans divided?
7. What were the hills added in later times to Rome?
8. Had the Romans any buildings north of the Tiber?
9. When did Rome become a magnificent city?
10. What was the extent of the city?
11. How was the city divided?
12. Which was the most remarkable of the seven hills?
13. What buildings were on the Capitoline hill?
14. What description is given of the forum?
15. Where was the senate-house and comitium?
16. What use was made of the Campus Martius?
17. What was the Pantheon?
18. Were the theatres and circi remarkable?
19. Had the Romans public baths?
20. How was the city supplied with water?
21. Were the cloacæ remarkable for their size?
22. Which was the chief Italian road?
23. What were the most remarkable places on the Appian road?

CHAPTER IV.

THE ROMAN CONSTITUTION.

By *virtue* built,
It touch'd the skies, and spread o'er shelter'd earth
An ample roof: by virtue too sustain'd,
And balanc'd steady, every tempest sung,
Innoxious by, or bade it firmer stand.
But when, with sudden and enormous change,
The first of mankind sunk into the last,
As once in virtue, so in vice extreme,
This universal fabric yielded loose,
Before ambition still; and thundering down,
At last beneath its ruins crush'd a world.—THOMSON.

1. Immigra'tion, *s.* the removal of a people from their native place into a new land.
3. Intes'tate, *adj.* without having made a will.
6. Legi'slative, *adj.* having the power of making laws.
9. Remod'elled, *v.* altered to a different form.
12. Aristocrat'ic, *adj.* belonging to the nobility.
14. Metropol'itan, *adj.* having the seat of government.
20. Equaliza'tion, *s.* the establishment of equality.

1. THE most remarkable feature in the Roman constitution is the division of the people into Patricians and Plebeians, and our first inquiry must be the origin of this separation. It is clearly impossible that such a distinction could have existed from the very beginning, because no persons would have consented, in a new community, to the investing of any class with peculiar privileges. We find that all the Roman kings, after they had subdued a city, drafted a portion of its inhabitants to Rome, and if they did not destroy the subjugated place, garrisoned it with a Roman colony. The strangers thus brought to Rome were not admitted to a participation of civic rights; they were like the inhabitants of a corporate town who are excluded from the elective franchise; by successive *immigrations*, the number of persons thus disqualified became more numerous than that of the first inhabitants, or old freemen, and they naturally sought a share in the government, as a means of protecting their persons and properties. On the other hand, the men who possessed the exclusive power of legislation, struggled hard to retain their hereditary privileges, and when forced to make concessions, yielded as little as they possibly could to the popular demands.

Modern history furnishes us with numerous instances of similar struggles between classes, and of a separation in interests and feelings between inhabitants of the same country, fully as strong as that between the patricians and plebeians at Rome.

2. The first tribes were divided by Rom'ulus into thirty *cu'riæ*, and each cu'ria contained ten *gentes* or associations. The individuals of each *gens* were not in all cases, and probably not in the majority of instances, connected by birth [1]; the attributes of the members of a *gens*, according to Cicero, were, a common name and participation in private religious rites; descent from free ancestors; the absence of legal disqualification. 3. The members of these associations were united by certain laws, which conferred peculiar privileges, called *jura gentium;* of these the most remarkable were, the succession to the property of every member who died without kin, and *intestate*, and the obligation imposed on all to assist their indigent clansmen under any extraordinary burthen [2]. 4. The head of each *gens* was regarded as a kind of father, and possessed a paternal authority over the members; the chieftaincy was both elective and hereditary [3]; that is, the individual was always selected from some particular family.

5. Besides the members of the gens, there were attached to it a number of dependents called clients, who owed submission to the chief as their patron, and received from him assistance and protection. The clients were generally foreigners who came to settle at Rome, and not possessing municipal rights, were forced to appear in the courts of law, &c. by proxy. In process of time, this relation assumed a feudal form, and the clients were bound to the same duties as vassals [4] in the middle ages.

6. The chiefs of the *gentes* composed the senate, and were called "fathers" (patres). In the time of Romulus, the senate at first consisted only of one hundred members,

[1] The same remark may be applied to the Scottish clans and the ancient Irish septs, which were very similar to the Roman *gentes*.

[2] When the plebeians endeavoured to procure the repeal of the laws which prohibited the intermarriage of the patricians and plebeians, the principal objection made by the former was, that these rights and obligations of the gentes (jura gentium) would be thrown into confusion.

[3] This was also the case with the Irish tanists, or chiefs of septs; the people elected a tanist, but their choice was confined to the members of the ruling family.

[4] See Historical Miscellany, Part III. Chap. I.

who of course represented the Latin tribe Ramnen ses; the number was doubled after the union with the Sabines, and the new members were chosen from the Titienses. The Tuscan tribe of the Lu'ceres remained unrepresented in the senate until the reign of the first Tarquin, when the *legislative* body received another hundred [1] from that tribe. Tarquin the elder was, according to history, a Tuscan lucumo, and seems to have owed his elevation principally to the efforts of his compatriots settled at Rome. It is to this event we must refer, in a great degree, the number of Tuscan ceremonies which are to be found in the political institutions of the Romans.

7. The *gentes* were not only represented in the senate, but met also in a public assembly called "comitia curiata." In these comitia the kings were elected, and invested with royal authority. After the complete change of the constitution in later ages, the "comitia curiata [2]" rarely assembled, and their power was limited to religious matters; but during the earlier period of the republic, they claimed and frequently exercised the supreme powers of the state: and were named emphatically, The People.

8. The power and prerogatives of the kings at Rome were similar to those of the Grecian sovereigns in the heroic ages. The monarch was general of the army, a high priest [3], and first magistrate of the realm; he administered justice in person every ninth day, but an appeal lay from his sentence, in criminal cases, to the general assemblies of the people. The pontiffs and augurs, however, were in some

[1] They were called "patres minorum gentium," the senators of the inferior gentes.

[2] The "comitia curiata" assembled in the comit'ium, the general assemblies of the people were held in the forum. The patrician curiæ were called, emphatically, the council of the people (concilium populi); the third estate was called plebeian (plebs). This distinction between *populus* and *plebs* was disregarded after the plebeians had established their claim to equal rights. The English reader will easily understand the difference, if he considers that the patricians were precisely similar to the members of a close corporation, and the plebeians to the other inhabitants of a city. In London, for example, the common council may represent the senate, the livery answer for the populus, patricians, or comitia curiata, and the general body of other inhabitants will correspond with the plebs.

[3] There were certain sacrifices which the Romans believed could only be offered by a king; after the abolition of royalty, a priest named the petty sacrificing king (rex sacrificulus) was elected to perform this duty.

measure independent of the sovereign, and assumed the uncontrolled direction of the religion of the state.

9. The entire constitution was *remodelled* by Ser'vius Tul'lius, and a more liberal form of government introduced. His first and greatest achievement was the formation of the plebeians into an organized order of the state, invested with political rights. He divided them into four city and twenty-six rustic tribes, and thus made the number of tribes the same as that of the curiæ. This was strictly a geographical division, analogous to our parishes, and had no connexion with families, like that of the Jewish tribes.

10. Still more remarkable was the institution of the census, and the distribution of the people into classes and centuries proportionate to their wealth. The census was a periodical valuation of all the property possessed by the citizens, and an enumeration of all the subjects of the state; there were five classes, ranged according to the estimated value of their possessions, and the taxes they consequently paid. The first class contained eighty centuries out of the hundred and seventy; the sixth class, in which those were included who were too poor to be taxed, counted but for one. We shall hereafter have occasion to see that this arrangement was also used for military purposes; it is only necessary to say here, that the sixth class were deprived of the use of arms, and exempt from serving in war.

11. The people voted in the comitia centuriata by centuries, that is, the vote of each century was taken separately and counted only as one. By this arrangement a just influence was secured to property, and the clients of the patricians in the sixth class prevented from outnumbering the free citizens.

12. Ser'vius Tul'lius undoubtedly intended that the comitia centuriata should form the third estate of the realm; and during his reign they probably held that rank; but when, by an *aristocratic* insurrection, he was slain in the senate-house, the power conceded to the people was again usurped by the patricians, and the comitia centuriata did not recover the right[1] of legislation before the laws[2] of the twelve tables were established.

[1] Perhaps it would be more accurate to say the *exclusive* right of legislation, for it appears that the comitia centuriata were sometimes summoned to give their sanction to laws which had been previously enacted by the curiæ.

[2] See Chap. XII.

13. The law which made the debtor a slave to his creditor was repealed by Ser'vius, and re-enacted by his successor; the patricians preserved this abominable custom during several ages, and did not resign it until the state had been brought to the very brink of ruin.

14. During the reign of Ser'vius, Rome was placed at the head of the Latin confederacy, and acknowledged to be the *metropolitan* city. It was deprived of this supremacy after the war with Porsen'na, but soon recovered its former greatness.

15. The equestrian rank was an order in the Roman state from the very beginning. It was at first confined to the nobility, and none but the patricians had the privilege of serving on horseback. But in the later ages, it became a political dignity, and persons were raised to the equestrian rank by the amount of their possessions.

16. The next great change took place after the expulsion of the kings; annual magistrates, called consuls, were elected in the comitia centuriata, but none but patricians could hold this office. 17. The liberties of the people were soon after extended, and secured by certain laws traditionally attributed to Vale'rius Public'ola, of which the most important was that which allowed[1] an appeal to a general assembly of the people from the sentence of a magistrate. 18. To deprive the plebeians of this privilege was the darling object of the patricians, and it was for this purpose alone that they instituted the dictatorship. From the sentence of this magistrate there was no appeal to the tribes or centuries, but the patricians kept their own privilege of being tried before the tribunal of the curiæ. 19. The power of the state was now usurped by a factious oligarchy, whose oppressions were more grievous than those of the worst tyrant; they at last became so intolerable, that the commonalty had recourse to arms, and fortified that part of the city which was exclusively inhabited by the plebeians, while others formed a camp on the Sacred Mount at some distance from Rome. A tumult of this kind was called *a secession;* it threatened to terminate in a civil war, which would have been both long and doubtful, for the patricians and their clients were probably as nume-

[1] The Romans were previously acquainted with that great principle of justice, the right of trial by a person's peers. In the earliest ages the patricians had a right of appeal to the curiæ; the Valerian laws extended the same right to the plebeians.

rous as the people. A reconciliation was effected, and the plebeians placed under the protection of magistrates chosen from their own body, called tribunes of the people.

20. The plebeians, having now authorized leaders, began to struggle for an *equalization* of rights, and the patricians resisted them with the most determined energy. In this protracted contest the popular cause prevailed, though the patricians made use of the most violent means to secure their usurped powers. The first triumph obtained by the people was the right to summon patricians before the comitia tributa, or assemblies of people in tribes; soon after they obtained the privilege of electing their tribunes at these comitia, instead of the centuria'ta; and finally, after a fierce opposition, the patricians were forced to consent that the state should be governed by a written code.

21. The laws of the twelve tables did not alter the legal relations between the citizens; the struggle was renewed with greater violence than ever after the expulsion of the decem'viri, but finally terminated in the complete triumph of the people. The Roman constitution became essentially democratical, the offices of the state were opened to all the citizens, and although the difference between the patrician and plebeian families still subsisted, they soon ceased of themselves to be political parties. From the time that equal rights were granted to all the citizens, Rome advanced rapidly in wealth and power; the subjugation of Italy was effected within the succeeding century, and that was soon followed by foreign conquests.

22. In the early part of the struggle between the patricians and plebeians, the magistracy named the censorship was instituted. The censors were designed at first merely to preside over the taking of the census, but they afterwards obtained the power of punishing, by a deprivation of civil rights, those who were guilty of any flagrant immorality. The patricians retained exclusive possession of the censorship long after the consulship had been opened to the plebeians.

23. The senate, which had been originally a patrician council, was gradually opened to the plebeians; when the free constitution was perfected, every person possessing a competent fortune, that had held a superior magistracy, was enrolled as a senator at the census immediately succeeding the termination of his office [1].

[1] The senators were called conscript fathers, (patres conscripti,) either

Questions for Examination.

1. What is the most probable account given of the origin of the distinction between the patricians and the plebeians at Rome?
2. How did Romulus subdivide the Roman tribes?
3. By what regulations were the gentes governed?
4. Who were the chiefs of the gentes?
5. What was the condition of the clients?
6. By whom were alterations made in the number and constitution of the senate?
7. What assembly was peculiar to the patricians?
8. What were the powers of the Roman kings?
9. What great change was made in the Roman constitution by Servius Tullius?
10. For what purposes was the census instituted?
11. How were votes taken in the comitia centuriata?
12. Were the designs of Servius frustrated?
13. What was the Roman law respecting debtors?
14. When did the Roman power decline?
15. What changes were made in the constitution of the equestrian rank?
16. What change was made after the abolition of royalty?
17. How were the liberties of the people secured?
18. Why was the office of dictator appointed?
19. How did the plebeians obtain the protection of magistrates chosen from their own order?
20. What additional triumphs were obtained by the plebeians?
21. What was the consequence of the establishment of freedom?
22. For what purpose was the censorship instituted?
23. What change took place in the constitution of the senate?

CHAPTER V.

THE ROMAN TENURE OF LAND.—COLONIAL GOVERNMENT.

> Each rules his race, his neighbour not his care,
> Heedless of others, to his own severe. HOMER.

[As this chapter is principally designed for advanced students, it has not been thought necessary to add a vocabulary or questions for examination.]

THE contests respecting the agrarian laws occupy so large a space in Roman history, and are so liable to be misunder-

from their being enrolled on the censor's list, or more probably from the addition made to their numbers after the expulsion of the kings, in order to supply the places of those who had been murdered by Tarquin. The new senators were at first called conscript, and in the process of time the name was extended to the entire body.

stood, that it is necessary to explain their origin at some length. According to an almost universal custom, the right of conquest was supposed to involve the right to property of the land. Thus the Normans who assisted William I. were supposed to have obtained a right to the possessions of the Saxons; and in a later age, the Irish princes, whose estates were not confirmed by a grant from the English crown, were exposed to forfeiture when legally summoned to prove their titles. The extensive acquisitions made by the Romans were either formed into extensive national domains, or divided into small lots among the poorer classes. The usufruct of the domains was monopolized by the patricians, who rented them from the state; the smaller lots were assigned to the plebeians, subject to a tax called tribute, but not to rent. An agrarian law was a proposal to make an assignment of portions of the public lands to the people, and to limit the quantity of national land that could be farmed by any particular patrician [1]. Such a law may have been frequently impolitic, because it may have disturbed ancient possessions, but it could never have been unjust, for the property of the land was absolutely fixed in the state. The lands held by the patricians, being divided into extensive tracts, were principally used for pasturage; the small lots assigned to the plebeians were of necessity devoted to agriculture. Hence arose the first great cause of hostility between the two orders; the patricians were naturally eager to extend their possessions in the public domains, which enabled them to provide for their numerous clients; and in remote districts they frequently wrested the estates from the free proprietors in their neighbourhood; the plebeians, on the other hand, deemed that they had the best right to the land purchased by their blood, and saw with just indignation the fruits of victory monopolized by a single order in the state. The tribute paid by the plebeians increased this hardship, for it was a land-tax levied on estates, and consequently fell most heavily on the smaller proprietors; indeed, in many cases, the possessors of the national domains paid nothing.

From all this it is evident, that an agrarian law only removed tenants who held from the state at will, and did not in any case interfere with the sacred right of property; but it is also plain that such a change must have been

[1] The Licinian law provided that no one should rent at a time more than 500 acres of public land.

frequently inconvenient to the individual in possession. It also appears that had not agrarian laws been introduced, the great body of the plebeians would have become the clients of the patricians, and the form of government would have been a complete oligarchy.

The chief means to which the Romans, even from the earliest ages, had recourse for securing their conquests, and at the same time relieving the poorer classes of citizens, was the establishment of colonies in the conquered states. The new citizens formed a kind of garrison, and were held together by a constitution formed on the model of the parent state. From what has been said above, it is evident that a law for sending out a colony was virtually an agrarian law, since lands were invariably assigned to those who were thus induced to abandon their homes.

The relations between Rome and the subject cities in Italy were very various. Some, called *municipia*, were placed in full possession of the rights of Roman citizens, but could not in all cases vote in the *comitia*. The privileges of the colonies were more restricted, for they were absolutely excluded from the Roman *comitia* and magistracies. The federative [1] states enjoyed their own constitutions, but were bound to supply the Romans with tribute and auxiliary forces. Finally, the subject states were deprived of their internal constitutions, and were governed by annual prefects chosen in Rome.

Before discussing the subject of the Roman constitution, we must observe, that it was, like our own, gradually formed by practice; there was no single written code like those of Athens and Sparta, but changes were made whenever they were required by circumstances; before the plebeians obtained an equality of civil rights, the state neither commanded respect abroad, nor enjoyed tranquillity at home. The patricians sacrificed their own real advantages, as well as the interests of their country, to maintain an ascendancy as injurious to themselves, as it was unjust to the other citizens. But no sooner had the agrarian laws established a more equitable distribution of property, and other popular laws opened the magistracy to merit without distinction of rank, than the city rose to empire with unexampled rapidity.

[1] The league by which the Latin states were bound (jus Latii) was more favourable than that granted to the other Italians (jus Italicum)

CHAPTER VI.

THE ROMAN RELIGION.

First to the gods 'tis fitting to prepare
The due libation, and the solemn prayer;
For all mankind alike require their grace,
All born to want; a miserable race. HOMER.

1. Mythol'ogy, *s.* the religious traditions of pagan nations.
5. Phenom'ena, *s.* appearances.
9. Palla'dium, *s.* an image of the goddess Pallas or Minerva.
13. Assimila'tion, *s.* altering any thing to accommodate it to a particular system.

1. WE have shown that the Romans were, most probably, a people compounded of the Latins, the Sabines, and the Tuscans; and that the first and last of these component parts were themselves formed from Pelasgic and native tribes. The original deities[1] worshipped by the Romans were derived from the joint traditions of all these tribes, but the religious institutions and ceremonies were almost wholly borrowed from the Tuscans. Unlike the Grecian *mythology* with which, in later ages, it was united, the Roman system of religion had all the gloom and mystery of the eastern superstitions; their gods were objects of fear rather than love, and were worshipped more to avert the consequences of their anger than to conciliate their favour. A consequence of this system was the institution of human sacrifices, which were not quite disused in Rome until a late period of the republic.

2. The religious institutions of the Romans formed an essential part of their civil government; every public act, whether of legislation or election, was connected with certain determined forms, and thus received the sanction of a higher power. Every public assembly was opened by the magistrates and augurs taking the *auspices*, or signs by which they believed that the will of the gods could be determined; and if any unfavourable omen was discovered, either then or at any subsequent time, the assembly was at once dismissed. 3. The right of taking auspices was long the peculiar privilege of the patricians, and frequently afforded them pretexts for evading the demands of the plebeians;

[1] The reader will find an exceedingly interesting account of the deities peculiar to the Romans in Mr. Keightley's very valuable work on Mythology.

when a popular law was to be proposed, it was easy to discover some unfavourable omen which prohibited discussion; when it was evident that the centuries were about to annul some patrician privilege, the augurs readily saw or heard some signal of divine wrath, which prevented the vote from being completed. It was on this account that the plebeians would not consent to place the comitia tributa under the sanction of the auspices.

4. The augurs were at first only three in number, but they were in later ages increased to fifteen, and formed into a college. Nothing of importance was transacted without their concurrence in the earlier ages of the republic, but after the second Punic war, their influence was considerably diminished[1]. 5. They derived omens from five sources; 1, from celestial *phenomena*, such as thunder, lightning, comets, &c.; 2, from the flight of birds; 3, from the feeding of the sacred chickens; 4, from the appearance of a beast in any unusual place; 5, from any accident that occurred unexpectedly.

6. The usual form of taking an augury was very solemn; the augur ascended a tower, bearing in his hand a curved stick called a *lituus*. He turned his face to the east, and marked out some distant objects as the limits within which he would make his observations, and divided mentally the enclosed space into four divisions. He next, with covered head, offered sacrifices to the gods, and prayed that they would vouchsafe some manifestation of their will. After these preliminaries he made his observations in silence, and then announced the result to the expecting people.

7. The arusp'ices were a Tuscan order of priests, who

[1] The poet Ennius, who was of Grecian descent, ridiculed very successfully the Roman superstitions; the following fragment, translated by Dunlop, would, probably, have been punished as blasphemous in the first ages of the republic:—

> For no Marsian augur (whom fools view with awe),
> Nor diviner, nor star-gazer, care I a straw;
> The Isis-taught quack, an expounder of dreams,
> Is neither in science nor art what he seems;
> Superstitious and shameless they prowl through our streets
> Some hungry, some crazy, but all of them cheats.
> Impostors, who vaunt that to others they'll show
> A path which themselves neither travel nor know,
> Since they promise us wealth if we pay for their pains,
> Let them take from that wealth and bestow what remains.

attempted to predict futurity by observing the beasts offered in sacrifice. They formed their opinions most commonly from inspecting the entrails, but there was no circumstance too trivial to escape their notice, and which they did not believe in some degree portentous. The arusp'ices were most commonly consulted by individuals; but their opinions, as well as those of the augurs, were taken on all important affairs of state. The arusp'ices seem not to have been appointed officially, nor are they recognized as a regular order of priesthood.

8. The pontiffs and fla'mens, as the superior priests were designated, enjoyed great privileges, and were generally men of rank. When the republic was abolished, the emperors assumed the office of pontifex maximus, or chief pontiff, deeming its powers too extensive to be entrusted to a subject.

9. The institution of vestal virgins was older than the city itself, and was regarded by the Romans as the most sacred part of their religious system. In the time of Numa there were but four, but two more were added by Tarquin; probably the addition made by this king was intended to give the tribe of the Lu'ceres a share in this important priesthood. The duty of the vestal virgins was to keep the sacred fire that burned on the altar of Vesta from being extinguished; and to preserve a certain sacred pledge on which the very existence of Rome was supposed to depend. What this pledge was we have no means of discovering; some supposed that it was the Trojan *Palla'dium;* others, with more probability, some traditional mystery brought by the Pelas'gi from Samothrace.

10. The privileges conceded to the vestals were very great; they had the most honourable seats at public games and festivals, they were attended by a lictor with fasces like the magistrates, they were provided with chariots when they required them, and they possessed the power of pardoning any criminal whom they met on the way to execution, if they declared that the meeting was accidental. The magistrates were obliged to salute them as they passed, and the fasces of the consul were lowered to do them reverence. To withhold from them marks of respect, subjected the offender to public odium; a personal insult was capitally punished. They possessed the exclusive privilege of being buried within the city; an honour which the Romans rarely extended to others.

11. The vestals were bound by a vow of perpetual virginity, and a violation of this oath was cruelly punished. The unfortunate offender was buried alive in a vault constructed beneath the Fo'rum by the elder Tarquin. The terror of such a dreadful fate had the desired effect; there were only eighteen instances of incontinence among the vestals during the space of a thousand years.

12. The mixture of religion with civil polity gave permanence and stability to the Roman institutions; notwithstanding all the changes and revolutions in the government, the old forms were preserved; and thus, though the city was taken by Porsenna, and burned by the Gauls, the Roman constitution survived the ruin, and was again restored to its pristine vigour.

13. The Romans always adopted the gods of the conquered nations, and, consequently, when their empire became very extensive, the number of deities was absurdly excessive, and the variety of religious worship perfectly ridiculous. The rulers of the world wanted the taste and ingenuity of the lively Greeks, who accommodated every religious system to their own, and from some real or fancied resemblance, identified the gods of Olym'pus with those of other nations. The Romans never used this process of *assimilation*, and, consequently, introduced so much confusion into their mythology, that philosophers rejected the entire system. This circumstance greatly facilitated the progress of Christianity, whose beautiful simplicity furnished a powerful contrast to the confused and cumbrous mass of divinities, worshipped in the time of the emperors.

Questions for Examination.

1. How did the religion of the Romans differ from that of the Greeks?
2. Was the Roman religion connected with the government?
3. How was the right of taking the auspices abused?
4. Who were the augurs?
5. From what did the augurs take omens?
6. What were the forms used in taking auspices?
7. Who were the aruspices?
8. What other priests had the Romans?
9. What was the duty of the vestal virgins?
10. Did the vestals enjoy great privileges?
11. How were the vestals punished for breach of their vows?
12. Why was the Roman constitution very permanent?
13. Whence arose the confusion in the religious system of the Romans?

CHAPTER VII.

THE ROMAN ARMY AND NAVY.

——— Is the soldier found
In the riot and waste which he spreads around?
The sharpness makes him—the dash, the tact,
The cunning to plan, and the spirit to act.

LORD L. GOWER.

1. Mer'cenary, *adj.* serving for hire.
2. Tac'tics, *s.* the art of arranging armies.
5. Evolu'tions, *s.* wheeling a line of soldiers into a different position without breaking the ranks.
16. Interven'tion, *s.* coming between.
23. Ave'rted, *v.* turned aside.
24. Wains, *s.* waggons.
Mag'nitude, *s.* greatness, large size.
Di'adem, *s.* a crown; sometimes it was only a fillet adorned with jewels.

1. IT has been frequently remarked by ancient writers, that the strength of a free state consists in its infantry; and also, that when the infantry in a state becomes more valuable than the cavalry, the power of the aristocracy must be diminished, and equal rights can no longer be withheld from the people. The employment of *mercenary* soldiers in modern times renders these observations no longer applicable, but in the military states of antiquity, where the citizens themselves served as soldiers, there are innumerable examples of this mutual connexion between political and military systems. It is further illustrated in the history of the middle ages, for we can unquestionably trace the origin of free institutions in Europe to the time when the hardy infantry of the commons were first found able to resist the charges of the brilliant chivalry of the nobles. 2. Rome was from the very commencement a military state: as with the Spartans, all their civil institutions had a direct reference to warlike affairs; their public assemblies were marshalled like armies; the order of their line of battle was regulated by the distinction of classes in civil society. It is, therefore, natural to conclude, that the *tactics* of the Roman armies underwent important changes when the revolutions mentioned in the preceding chapters were effected, though we cannot trace the alterations with precision, because no historians appeared until the military system of the Romans had been brought to perfection.

3. The strength of the Tuscans consisted principally in their cavalry; and if we judge from the importance attributed to the equestrian rank in the earliest ages, we may

suppose that the early Romans esteemed this force equally valuable. It was to Ser'vius Tul'lius, the great patron of the commonalty, that the Romans were indebted for the formation of a body of infantry, which, after the lapse of centuries, received so many improvements, that it became invincible.

4. The ancient battle array of the Greeks was the phalanx: the troops were drawn up in close column, the best armed being in front. The improvements made in this system of tactics by Philip are recorded in Grecian history; they chiefly consisted in making the evolutions of the entire body more manageable, and counteracting the difficulties which attended the motions of this cumbrous mass.

5. The Romans originally used the phalanx; and the lines were formed according to the classes determined by the centuries. Those who were sufficiently wealthy to purchase a full suit of armour, formed the front ranks; those who could only purchase a portion of the defensive weapons, filled the centre; and the rear was formed by the poorer classes, who scarcely required any armour, being protected by the lines in front. From this explanation, it is easy to see why in the constitution of the centuries by Servius Tullius, the first class were perfectly covered with mail, the second had helmets and breast-plates but no protection for the body, the third, neither a coat of mail, nor greaves. 6. The defects of this system are sufficiently obvious; an unexpected attack on the flanks, the breaking of the line by rugged and uneven ground, and a thousand similar accidents, exposed the unprotected portions of the army to destruction; besides, a line with files ten deep was necessarily slow in its movements and *evolutions*. Another and not less important defect was, that the whole should act together; and, consequently, there were few opportunities for the display of individual bravery.

7. It is not certainly known who was the great commander that substituted the living body of the Roman legion for this inanimate mass; but there is some reason to believe that this wondrous improvement was effected by Camil'lus. Every legion was in itself an army; combining the advantages of every variety of weapon, with the absolute perfection of a military division.

8. The legion consisted of three lines or battalions; the *Hasta'ti*, the *Prin'cipes*, and the *Tria'rii*; there were besides two classes, which we may likewise call battalions, the

Rora'rii, or *Veli'tes*, consisting of light-armed troops; and the *Accen'si*, or supernumeraries, who were ready to supply the place of those that fell. Each of the two first battalions contained fifteen *mani'puli*, consisting of sixty privates, commanded by two centurions, and having each a separate standard (*vexil'lum*) borne by one of the privates, called vexilla'rius; the *mani'puli* in the other battalions were fewer in number, but contained a greater portion of men; so that in round numbers, 900 men may be allowed to each battalion, exclusive of officers. If the officers and the troop of 300 cavalry be taken into account, we shall find that the legion, as originally constituted, contained about five thousand men. The Romans, however, did not always observe these exact proportions, and the number of soldiers in a legion varied at different times of their history[1].

In the accompanying representation of legionaries fording a stream, it will be seen that the standards differed from each other in shape, and consequently that it was easy for a soldier to recognize the division to which he belonged.

9. A cohort was formed by taking a manipulus from

[1] This is virtually the same account as that given by Niebuhr, but he excludes the Accensi and cavalry from his computation, which brings down the amount to 3600 soldiers.

each of the battalions; more frequently two *manipuli* were taken, and the cohort then contained six hundred men. The cavalry were divided into *tur'mæ*, consisting each of thirty men.

10. A battle was usually commenced by the light troops, who skirmished with missile weapons; the hasta'ti then advanced to the charge, and if defeated fell back on the prin'cipes; if the enemy proved still superior, the two front lines retired to the ranks of the tria'rii, which being composed of veteran troops, generally turned the scale. But this order was not always observed, the number of divisions in the legion made it extremely flexible, and the commander-in-chief could always adapt the form of his line to circumstances.

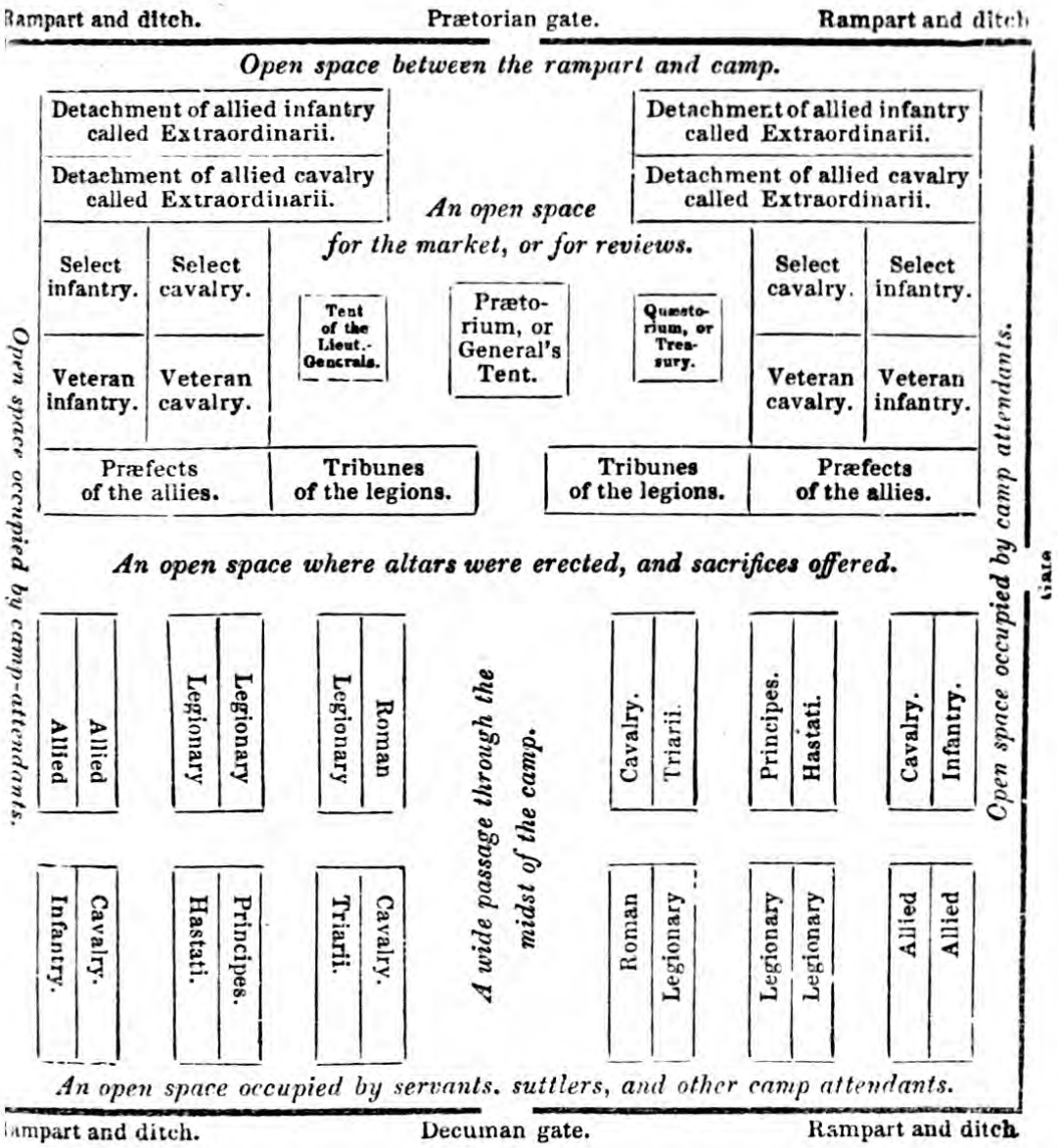
11. The levies of troops were made in the Cam'pus Mar'tius by the tribunes appointed to command the legions. The tribes which were to supply soldiers were determined by lot, and as each came forward, the tribunes in their turn selected such as seemed best fitted for war. Four legions were most commonly the number in an army. When the selected individuals had been enrolled as soldiers, one was chosen from each legion to take the military oath of obedience to the generals, the other soldiers swore in succession to observe the oath taken by their foreman.

12. Such was the sacredness of this obligation, that even in the midst of the political contests by which the city was distracted, the soldiers, though eager to secure the freedom of their country, would not attempt to gain it by mutiny against their commanders. On this account the senate frequently declared war, and ordered a levy, as an expedient to prevent the enactment of a popular law, and were of course opposed by the tribunes of the people.

13. There was no part of the Roman discipline more admirable than their form of encampment. No matter how fatigued the soldiers might be by a long march, or how harassed by a tedious battle, the camp was regularly measured out and fortified by a rampart and ditch, before any one sought sleep or refreshment. Careful watch was kept during the night, and frequent picquets sent out to guard against a surprise, and to see that the sentinels were vigilant. As the arrangement in every camp was the same, every soldier knew his exact position, and if an alarm occurred, could easily find the rallying point of his division. To this excellent system Polyb'ius attributes the superiority

of the Romans over the Greeks, for the latter scarcely ever fortified their camp, but chose some place naturally strong, and did not keep their ranks distinct.

ROMAN CAMP.



14. The military age extended from the sixteenth to the forty-sixth year, and under the old constitution, no one could hold a civic office who had not served ten campaigns. The horsemen were considered free after serving through ten campaigns, but the foot had to remain during twenty. Those who had served out their required time were free for the rest of their lives, unless the city was attacked,

when all under the age of sixty were obliged to arm in its defence.

15. In the early ages, when wars were begun and ended in a few days, the soldiers received no pay; but when the conquest of distant countries became the object of Roman ambition, it became necessary to provide for the pay and support of the army. This office was given to the quæstors, who were generally chosen from the younger nobility, and were thus prepared for the higher magistracies, by acquiring a practical acquaintance with finance.

16. The soldiers were subject to penalties of life and limb, at the discretion of the commander-in-chief, without the *intervention* of a court-martial; but it deserves to be recorded that this power was rarely abused. 17. There were several species of rewards to excite emulation; the most honourable were, the civic crown of gold to him who had saved the life of a citizen; the mural crown to him who had first scaled the wall of a besieged town; a gilt spear to him who had severely wounded an enemy; but he who had slain and spoiled his foe, received, if a horseman, an ornamental trapping, if a foot soldier, a goblet.

18. The lower classes of the centuries were excused from serving in the army, except on dangerous emergencies; but they supplied sailors to the navy. We learn from a document preserved by Polyb'ius, that the Romans were a naval power at a very early age. 19. This interesting record is the copy of a treaty concluded with the Carthaginians, in the year after the expulsion of the kings. It is not mentioned by the Roman historians, because it decisively establishes a fact which they studiously labour to conceal, that is, the weakness and decline of the Roman power during the two centuries that followed the abolition of royalty, when the power of the state was monopolized by a vile aristocracy. In this treaty Rome negotiates for the cities of La'tium, as her dependencies, just as Carthage does for her subject colonies. But in the course of the following century, Rome lost her supremacy over the Latin cities, and being thus nearly excluded from the coast, her navy was ruined.

20. At the commencement of the first Punic war, the Romans once more began to prepare a fleet, and luckily obtained an excellent model in a Carthaginian ship that had been driven ashore in a storm. 21. The vessels used for war were either long ships or banked galleys; the

former were not much used in the Punic wars, the latter being found more convenient. The rowers of these sat on banks or benches, rising one above the other like stairs; and from the number of these benches, the galleys derived their names; that which had three rows of benches was called a *trireme*; that which had four a *quadrireme*; and that which had five a *quinquireme*. Some vessels had turrets erected in them for soldiers and warlike engines; others had sharp prows covered with brass, for the purpose of dashing against and sinking their enemies.

22. The naval tactics of the ancients were very simple; the ships closed very early, and the battle became a contest between single vessels. It was on this account that the personal valour of the Romans proved more than a match for the naval skill of the Carthaginians, and enabled them to add the empire of the sea to that of the land.

23. Before concluding this chapter, we must notice the triumphal processions granted to victorious commanders. Of these there were two kinds; the lesser triumph, called an *ovation* [1], and the greater, called, emphatically, the triumph. In the former, the victorious general entered the city on foot, wearing a crown of myrtle; in the latter he was borne in a chariot; and wore a crown of laurel. The ovation was granted to such generals as had *averted* a threatened war, or gained some great advantage without inflicting great loss on the enemy. The triumph was allowed only to those who had gained some signal victory which decided the fate of a protracted war. 24. The following description, extracted from Plutarch, of the great triumph granted to Paulus Æmilius, for his glorious termination of the Macedonian war, will give the reader an adequate idea of the splendour displayed by the Romans on these festive occasions.

The people erected scaffolds in the forum and circus, and all other parts of the city where they could best behold the pomp. The spectators were clad in white garments; all the temples were open, and full of garlands and perfumes; and the ways cleared and cleansed by a great many officers, who drove away such as thronged the passage, or straggled up and down.

The triumph lasted three days; on the first, which was

[1] From *ovis*, a sheep, the animal on this occasion offered in sacrifice; in the greater triumph the victim was a milk-white bull, hung over with garlands, and having his horns tipped with gold.

scarce long enough for the sight, were to be seen the statues, pictures, and images of an extraordinary size, which were taken from the enemy, drawn upon seven hundred and fifty chariots. On the second was carried in a great many *wains*, the fairest and richest armour of the Macedonians, both of brass and steel, all newly furbished and glittering; which although piled up with the greatest art and order, yet seemed to be tumbled on heaps carelessly, and by chance; helmets were thrown on shields; coats of mail upon greaves; Cretan targets and Thracian bucklers, and quivers of arrows, lay huddled among the horses' bits; and through these appeared the points of naked swords, intermixed with long spears. All these arms were tied together with such a just liberty, that they knocked against one another as they were drawn along, and made a harsh and terrible noise, so that the very spoils of the conquered could not be beheld without dread. After these waggons loaded with armour, there followed three thousand men, who carried the silver that was coined, in seven hundred and fifty vessels, each of which weighed three talents, and was carried by four men. Others brought silver bowls, and goblets, and cups, all disposed in such order as to make the best show, and all valuable as well for their *magnitude* as the thickness of their engraved work. On the third day, early in the morning, first came the trumpeters, who did not sound as they were wont in a procession or solemn entry, but such a charge as the Romans use when they encourage their soldiers to fight. Next followed young men, girt about with girdles curiously wrought, who led to the sacrifice one hundred and twenty stalled oxen, with their horns gilded, and their heads adorned with ribbons and garlands, and with these were boys that carried dishes of silver and gold. After these was brought the gold coin, which was divided into vessels that weighed three talents each, similar to those that contained the silver; they were in number fourscore, wanting three. These were followed by those that brought the consecrated bowl which Æmil'ius caused to be made, that weighed ten talents, and was adorned with precious stones. Then were exposed to view the cups of Antig'onus and Seleu'cus, and such as were made after the fashion invented by The'ricles, and all the gold plate that was used at Per'seus's table. Next to these came Per'seus's chariot, in which his armour was placed, and on that his *diadem*.

After a little intermission the king's children were led captives, and with them a train of nurses, masters, and governors, who all wept, and stretched forth their hands to the spectators, and taught the little infants to beg and entreat their compassion. There were two sons and a daughter, who, by reason of their tender age, were altogether insensible of the greatness of their misery; which insensibility of their condition rendered it much more deplorable, insomuch that Per'seus himself was scarce regarded as he went along, whilst pity had fixed the eyes of the Romans upon the infants, and many of them could not forbear tears; all beheld the sight with a mixture of sorrow and joy until the children were past After his children and attendants came Per'seus himself, clad in black, and wearing slippers after the fashion of his country; he looked like one altogether astonished, and deprived of reason, through the greatness of his misfortune. Next followed a great company of his friends and familiars, whose countenances were disfigured with grief, and who testified to all that beheld them, by their tears and their continual looking upon Per'seus, that it was his hard fortune they so much lamented, and that they were regardless of their own. After these were carried four hundred crowns of gold, sent from the cities by their respective ambassadors to Æmil'ius, as a reward due to his valour. Then he himself came, seated on a chariot magnificently adorned, (a man worthy to be beheld even without these ensigns of power,) clad in a garment of purple interwoven with gold, and with a laurel branch in his right hand. All the army, in like manner, with boughs of laurel in their hands, and divided into bands and companies, followed the chariot of their commander; some singing odes, according to the usual custom, mingled with raillery, others songs of triumph and the praises of Æmil'ius's deeds, who was admired and accounted happy by all men, yet unenvied by every one that was good

Questions for Examination.

1. What political change has frequently resulted from improved military tactics?
2. Was Rome a military state?
3. Why are we led to conclude that the Romans considered cavalry an important force?

4. By whom was the phalanx instituted?
5. How was the phalanx formed?
6. What were the defects of the phalanx?
7. By whom was the legion substituted for the phalanx?
8. Of what troops was a legion composed?
9. What was a cohort?
10. What was the Roman form of battle?
11. In what manner was an army levied?
12. How was the sanctity of the military oath proved?
13. What advantages resulted from the Roman form of encampment?
14. How long were the citizens liable to be called upon as soldiers?
15. How was the army paid?
16. What power had the general?
17. On what occasions did the soldiers receive rewards?
18. How was the navy supplied with sailors?
19. What fact concealed by the Roman historians is established by Polybius?
20. How did the Romans form a fleet?
21. What were the several kinds of ships?
22. What naval tactics did the Romans use?
23. How did an ovation differ from a triumph?
24. Can you give a general description of a triumph?

CHAPTER VIII.

ROMAN LAW.—FINANCE.

Then equal laws were planted in the state,
To shield alike the humble and the great. COOKE.

2. Pre'ce lent, *s.* something previously established.
Ana'logy, *s.* a similarity of relations.
Code, *s.* a body of laws.
10. Foren'sic, *adj.* belonging to courts of law.
13. Par'ricides, *s.* persons who have murdered one of their parents.

1. IN the early stages of society little difficulty is felt in providing for the administration of justice, because the subjects of controversy are plain and simple, such as any man of common sense may determine; but as civilization advances, the relations between men become more complicated, property assumes innumerable forms, and the determination of questions resulting from these changes becomes a matter of no ordinary difficulty. In the first ages of the republic, the consuls were the judges in civil and criminal matters, as the kings had previously been[1]; but as

[1] Niebuhr, however, is of opinion, that judicial officers were elected by the "comitia curiata," from the earliest ages.

the state increased, a new class of magistrates, called prætors, was appointed to preside in the courts of law. Until the age of the decemvirs, there was no written code to regulate their decisions; and even after the laws of the twelve tables had been established, there was no perfect system of law, for the enactments in that code were brief, and only asserted a few leading principles. 2. The Roman judges did not, however, decide altogether according to their own caprice; they were bound to regard the principles that had been established by the decisions of former judges, and consequently, a system of law was formed similar to the common law of England, founded on *precedent* and *analogy*. In the later ages of the empire, the number of law-books and records became so enormous, that it was no longer possible to determine the law with accuracy, and the contradictory decisions made at different periods greatly increased the uncertainty. To remedy this evil, the emperor Justinian caused the entire to be digested into a uniform system, and his *code* still forms the basis of the civil law in Europe.

3. The trials in courts refer either to the affairs of the state, or to the persons or properties of individuals, and are called state, criminal, or civil trials. The two former are the most important in regard to history.

4. The division of the Roman people into two nations made the classification of state offences very difficult. In general, the council of the patricians judged any plebeian who was accused of conspiring against their order; and the plebeians, on the other hand, brought a patrician accused of having violated their privileges before their own tribunal. 5. Disobedience to the commands of the chief magistrate was punished by fine and imprisonment, and from his sentence there was no appeal; but if the consul wished to punish any person by stripes or death, the condemned man had the right of appealing to the general assembly of his peers[1]. 6. To prevent usurpation, it was

[1] This privilege was conceded to the plebeians by the Valerian law, but must have been possessed by the patricians from the earliest times; for Horatius, when condemned for the murder of his sister, in the reign of Tullus Hostilius, escaped by appealing to the comitia curiata. The Valerian law had no sanction, that is, no penalty was annexed to its transgression, and during the two centuries of patrician usurpation and tyranny was frequently and flagrantly violated. On this account the law, though never repealed, was frequently re-enacted.

established that every person who exercised an authority not conferred on him by the people, should be devoted as a victim to the gods[1]. This was at once a sentence of outlawry and excommunication, the criminal might be slain by any person with impunity, and all connexion with him was shunned as pollution. 7. No magistrate could legally be brought to trial during the continuance of his office, but when his time was expired he could be accused before the general assembly of the people, if he had transgressed the legal limits of his authority. The punishment in this case was banishment; the form of the sentence declared that the criminal "should be deprived of fire and water;" that is, the citizens were prohibited from supplying him with the ordinary necessaries of life.

8. In all criminal trials, and in all cases where damages were sought to be recovered for wrongs or injuries, the prætor impanelled a jury, but the number of which it was to consist seems to have been left to his discretion. The jurors were called ju'dices, and the opinion of the majority decided the verdict. Where the votes were equal, the traverser or defendant escaped; and when half the jury assessed damages at one amount, and half at another, the defendant paid only the lesser sum. In disputes about property, the prætor seldom called for the assistance of a jury.

9. The general form of all trials was the same; the prosecutor or plaintiff made his complaint, and the defendant was compelled either to find sufficient bail, or to go into prison until the day of trial. On the appointed day, the plaintiff, or his advocate, stated his case, and proceeded to establish it by evidence; the defendant replied; and the jury then gave their verdict by ballot.

10. In cases tried before the general assembly of the people, it was allowed to make use of artifices in order to conciliate the popular favour. The accused and his friends put on mourning robes to excite pity, they went into the most public places, and took every opportunity of showing their respect for popular power. When Cicero was accused by Clo'dius for having illegally put to death the associates of Catiline, the entire senatorian rank changed their robes to show the deep interest they felt in his fate. At these

[1] The formula "to devote his head to the gods," used to express the sentence of capital punishment, was derived from the human sacrifices anciently used in Rome, probably, because criminals were usually selected for these sanguinary offerings.

great trials, the noblest specimens of *forensic* eloquence were displayed by the advocates of the accuser and the accused; but the decisions were usually more in accordance with the spirit of party than strict justice.

11. The accused, however, might escape, if he could prevail on any of the tribunes to interpose in his behalf, or the accuser to relinquish his charge: if unfavourable omens appeared during the trial, it was usually adjourned, or sometimes the accusation withdrawn; and up to the very moment of the commencement of the trial, the criminal had the option of escaping a heavier penalty, by going into voluntary exile.

12. The punishments to which state criminals were sentenced were usually, in capital cases, precipitation from the Tarpeian rock, beheading or strangulation in prison; when life was spared, the penalties were either exile or fine. Under the emperors severer punishments were introduced, such as exposure to wild beasts, or burning alive; and torture, which under the republic could not be inflicted on free citizens, was exercised unsparingly.

13. The punishment of *parricides* was curious; the criminal having been beaten with rods, was sewn up in a sack together with a serpent, an ape, and a cock, and thrown either into the sea or a river, as if even the inanimate carcase of such a wretch would pollute the earth.

14. Masters had an absolute authority over their slaves, extending to life and limb; and in the earlier ages patrons had similar power over their clients. The condition of slaves in Rome was most miserable, especially in the later ages; they were subject to the most excruciating tortures, and when capitally punished were generally crucified. Except in this single particular, the Roman criminal code was very lenient, and sparing of human life. This was chiefly owing to the exertions of the plebeians, for the patricians always patronized a more sanguinary policy, and could do so the more easily, as the aristocracy retained their monopoly of the administration of justice much longer than that of civil government.

15. The Roman system of finance was at first very simple, the public revenue being derived from a land-tax on Quiritary property [1], and the tithes of the public lands;

[1] The lands absolutely assigned to the plebeians free from rent, were the most remarkable species of Quiritary property. It was so called from the Quirites, who formed a constituent part of the Roman people, and whose name was subsequently given to the entire.

but after the conquest of Macedon, the revenues from other sources were so abundant, that tribute was no longer demanded from Roman citizens. These sources were :—

1. The tribute of the allies, which was a property tax, differing in different places, according to the terms of their league.

2. The tribute of the provinces, which was both a property and poll tax.

3. Revenue of the national domains leased out by the censors.

4. Revenue from the mines, especially from the Spanish silver mines.

5. Duties on imports and exports. And,

6. A duty on enfranchised slaves.

The receipts were all paid into the national treasury, and the senate had the uncontrolled direction of the general expenditure, as well as the regulation of the amount of imposts. 16. The officers employed to manage the affairs of the revenue were the quæstors, chosen annually, and under them the scribes, who held their situations for life. Those who farmed the public revenue were called publicans, and were generally persons of equestrian dignity; but in the remote provinces they frequently sublet to other collectors, who were guilty of great extortion. The latter are the publicans mentioned in the New Testament.

Questions for Examination.

1. When did the Romans first appoint judges?
2. How were the decisions of the prætors regulated?
3. How were trials divided?
4. In what manner were offences against the classes of patricians and plebeians tried?
5. How was disobedience to the chief magistrate punished?
6. What was the penalty for usurpation?
7. How was mal-administration punished?
8. When did the prætors impanel a jury?
9. What was the form of a trial?
10. Were there any other forms used in trials before the people?
11. Had the criminal any chances of escape?
12. What were the usual punishments?
13. How was the parricide punished?
14. In what respect alone was the criminal law of the Romans severe?
15. What were the sources of the Roman revenue?
16. To whom was the management of the finances entrusted?

CHAPTER IX.

THE PUBLIC AMUSEMENTS AND PRIVATE LIFE OF THE ROMANS.

I see before me the gladiator lie;
He leans upon his hand—his manly brow
Consents to death, but conquers agony,
And his drooped head sinks gradually low—
And through his side the last drops, ebbing slow
From the red gash, fall heavy, one by one,
Like the first of a thunder shower; and now
The arena swims around him—he is gone,
Ere ceased the inhuman sound which hailed the wretch who won.

He heard it, but he heeded not, his eyes
Were with his heart, and that was far away;
He recked not of the life he lost nor prize,
But where his rude hut by the Danube lay,
There were his young barbarians all at play,
There was their Dacian mother, he their sire
Butchered to make a Roman holiday—
All this rush'd with his blood—shall he expire,
And unrevenged?—Arise, ye Goths, and glut your ire. BYRON.

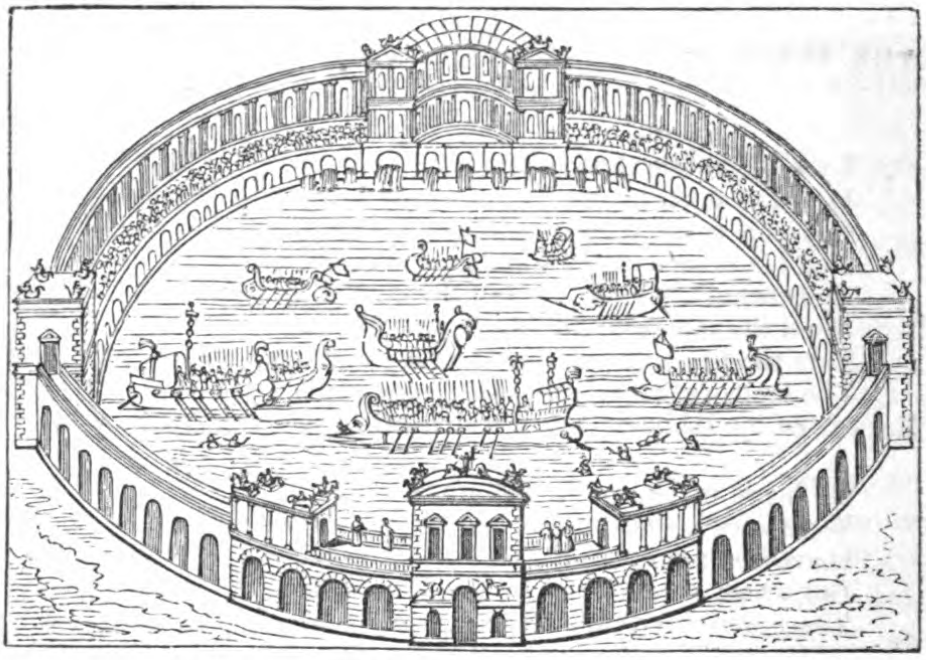
2. San'guinary, *adj.* bloody.

4. Demora'lization, *s.* the change of morals for the worse.

1. THE inferiority of the Romans to the Greeks in intellectual acquirements, was no where more conspicuous than in their public amusements. While the refined Grecians sought to gratify their taste by music, the fine arts, and dramatic entertainments, the Romans derived their chief pleasure from contemplating the brutal and bloody fights of gladiators; or at best, such rich shows and processions as gratify the uneducated vulgar. The games in the circus, with which the Romans were so delighted, that they considered them of equal importance with the necessaries of life, consisted of athletic exercises, such as boxing, racing, wrestling, and gladiatorial combats. To these chariot-racing was added under the emperors, and exhibitions of combats between wild beasts, and, in numerous instances, between men and beasts.

2. After the establishment of the naval power of Rome, naumachiæ, or naval combats, were frequently exhibited in circi built for the purpose. These were not always sham fights; the contests were, in many instances, real

engagements, displaying all the horrors of a *sanguinary* battle.



3. The custom of exhibiting shows of gladiators originated in the barbarous sacrifices of human beings, which prevailed in remote ages. In the gloomy superstition of the Romans, it was believed that the *manes*, or shades of the dead, derived pleasure from human blood, and they, therefore, sacrificed at the tombs of their ancestors captives taken in war, or wretched slaves. It was soon found, that sport to the living might be combined with this horrible offering to the dead, and instead of giving up the miserable victims to the executioner, they were compelled to fight with each other, until the greater part were exterminated.

4. The pleasure that the people derived from this execrable amusement induced the candidates for office to gratify them frequently with this spectacle. The exhibitions were no longer confined to funerals, they formed an integrant part of every election, and were found more powerful than merit in opening a way to office. The utter *demoralization* of the Roman people, and the facility with which the tyranny of the emperors was established, unquestionably were owing, in a great degree, to the pernicious prevalence of these scandalous exhibitions.

5. To supply the people with gladiators, schools were established in various parts of Italy, each under the control

of a *lanis'ta*, or fencing-master, who instructed them in martial exercises. The victims were either prisoners of war, or refractory slaves, sold by their masters; but in the degenerate ages of the empire, freemen, and even senators, ventured their lives on the stage along with the regular gladiators. Under the mild and merciful influence of Christianity, these combats were abolished, and human blood was no longer shed to gratify a cruel and sanguinary populace.

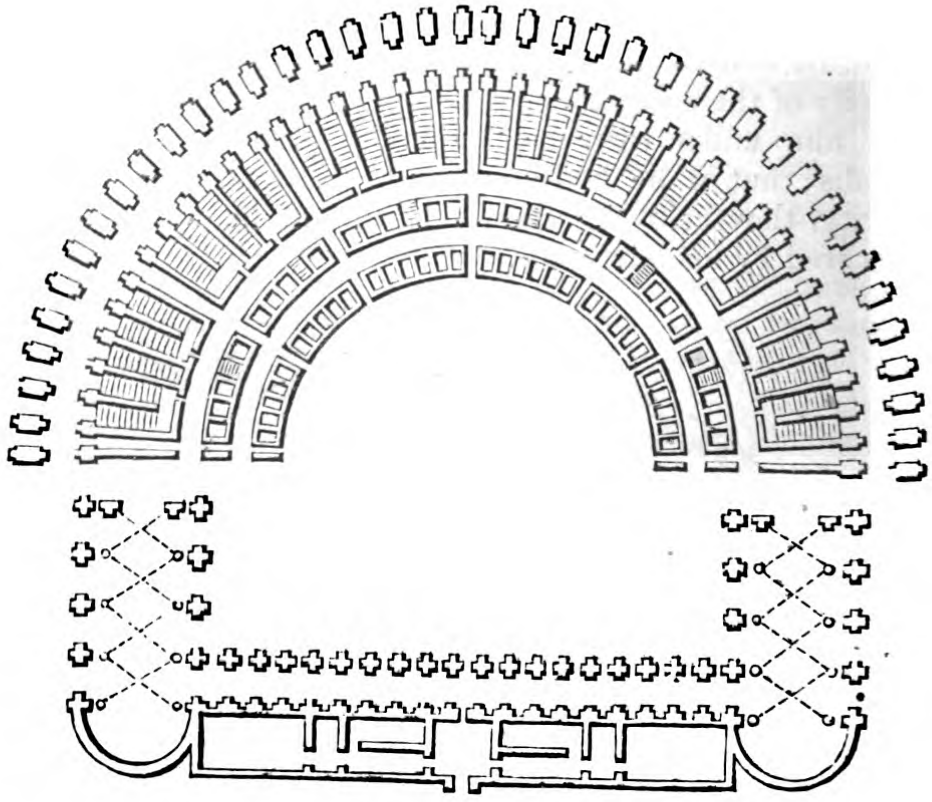
6. So numerous were the gladiators, that Spar'tacus, one of their number, having escaped from a school, raised an army of his fellow-sufferers, amounting to seventy thousand men; he was finally subdued by Cras'sus, the colleague of Pompey. Ju'lius Cæsar during his ædileship exhibited at one time three hundred and twenty pairs of gladiators; but even this was surpassed by the emperor Trajan, who displayed no less than one thousand.

7. The gladiators were named from their peculiar arms; the most common were the *retiarius*, who endeavoured to hamper his antagonist with a net; and his opponent the *secutor*.

8. When a gladiator was wounded, or in any way disabled, he fled to the extremity of the stage, and implored the pity of the spectators; if he had shown good sport, they took him under their protection by pressing down their thumbs; but if he had been found deficient in courage or activity, they held the thumb back, and he was instantly murdered by his adversary.

9. The Roman theatre was formed after the model of the Greeks, but never attained equal eminence. The populace always paid more regard to the dresses of the actors and the richness of the decoration, than to ingenious structure of plot, or elegance of language. Scenic representations do not appear to have been very popular at Rome, certainly, never so much as the sports of the circus. Besides comedies and tragedies, the Romans had a species of drama peculiar to their country, called the Atellane farces, which were in general low pieces of gross indecency and vulgar buffoonery, but sometimes contained spirited satires on the characters and conduct of public men.

10. We should be greatly mistaken if we supposed that the theatres in ancient Rome at all resembled those of modern times; they were stupendous edifices, some of which could accommodate thirty thousand spectators, and an army could perform its evolutions on the stage. Pompey was the first who erected a theatre of hewn stone; it was capable of containing 40,000 spectators. The seats were arranged in a semicircle, gradually rising above each other.



The foremost row was assigned to the senators; next behind them were the *equites*, and at the back were the

people. Columns, statues, and pictures formed *the scene*, at the back and side of the stage; the semicircular space in front of the stage was named the orchestra, where dances were exhibited; from its position the row of seats occupied by the senators was sometimes called the orchestra. Behind the pillars of *the scene* were the dressing-rooms for the actors. The stage was called *the pulpit*, and was about five feet above the level of the orchestra. To remedy the defects of distance, the tragic actors wore a buskin with very thick soles to raise them above their natural size, and covered their faces with a mask, so contrived as to render the voice more clear and full[1]. Instead of the buskin, comic actors wore a sort of slipper called a sock.

11. The periodical festivals of the Romans were celebrated with theatrical entertainments and sports in the circus at the public expense. The most remarkable of these festivals was the secular, which occurred only at periods of 110 years. The others occurred annually, and were named from the gods to whose honour they were dedicated.

12. The Romans were a more grave and domestic people than the lively Greeks; their favourite dress, the *toga* or gown, was more formal and stately than the Grecian short cloak; their demeanour was more stern, and their manners more imposing. The great object of the old Roman was to maintain his dignity under all circumstances, and to show that he could control the emotions to which ordinary men too readily yield. Excessive joy or grief, unqualified admiration, or intense surprise were deemed disgraceful; and even at a funeral, the duty of lamenting the deceased was entrusted to hired mourners. Temperance at meals was a leading feature in the character of the Romans during the early ages of the republic, but after the conquest of Asia, their luxuries were more extravagant than those of any nation recorded in history. But there was more extravagance than refinement in the Roman luxury, and though immense sums were lavished on entertainments, they were destitute of that taste and elegance, more delightful than the most costly delicacies.

13. The Roman ladies enjoyed more freedom than those

[1] Hence the mask was called *persona*, from *personare*, to sound through. From *persona* the English word *person* is derived, which properly signifies not so much an individual as the aspect of that individual in relation to civil society.

in any other ancient nation. They visited all places of public amusement uncontrolled, and mingled in general society. As the *toga* was the distinctive dress of the men, so the *stola* was peculiar to the women; it was, however, forbidden to those who were not of pure morals. The difference between the *toga* and *stola* will be better understood from the accompanying figures than from a mere verbal description.

The power of the husband, however, was absolute, and he could divorce his wife at pleasure without assigning any cause. In the early ages of the republic this privilege was rarely exercised, and the Roman ladies were strictly virtuous, but at a later period divorces were multiplied, and the most shocking depravity was the consequence.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the national amusements of the Romans?
2. What were the naumachiæ?
3. Whence arose the custom of gladiatorial combats?
4. Why were these exhibitions of frequent occurrence?
5. How was the supply of gladiators kept up?
6. From what circumstances do we learn the great numbers of the gladiators?
7. What names were given to the gladiators?
8. How were these combats terminated?

9. What pieces were exhibited on the Roman stage?
10. How did the dramatic entertainments in Rome differ from those of modern times?
11. Which were the most remarkable Roman festivals?
12. What was the general character of the Roman people?
13. How were women treated in Rome?

CHAPTER X.

GEOGRAPHY OF THE EMPIRE AT THE TIME OF ITS GREATEST EXTENT.

The Roman eagle seized
The double prey, and proudly perch'd on high!
And here a thousand years he plumed his wings,
'Till from his lofty eyry, tempest-tost,
And impotent through age, headlong he plunged,
While nations shudder'd as they saw him fall. ANON.

1. Arid, *adj.* dry, parched. | 3. Punic, *adj.* Carthaginian.

1. THE ordinary boundaries of the Roman empire, over which, however, it sometimes passed, were in Europe the two great rivers of the Rhine and Danube; in Asia, the Euphrates and the Syrian deserts; in Africa, the tracts of *arid* sand which fence the interior of that continent. It thus contained those fertile and rich countries which surround the Mediterranean sea, and constitute the fairest portion of the earth.

2. Beginning at the west of Europe[1], we find, first, Hispa'nia, *Spain*. Its boundaries are on the east, the chain of the Pyrenees, on every other side the sea. It was divided into three provinces; 1. Lusita'nia, *Portugal*, bounded on the north by the Du'rius, *Douro*, and on the south by the A'nas, *Guadiana;* 2. Bo'etica, bounded on the north and west by the A'nas, and on the east by the mountains of Orospe'da, *Sierra Morena;* 3. Tarracone'nsis, which includes the remainder of the Spanish peninsula.

3. Spain was annexed to the Roman empire after the conclusion of the second *Punic* war; Lusita'nia, after a desperate resistance, was added at a later period.

4. Transalpine Gaul was the name given to the entire country between the Pyrenees and the Rhine; it conse-

[1] The student will find the particulars of the ancient state of these countries detailed more fully in the Epitome of Classical Geography.

quently included France, Switzerland, and Belgium. 5. Gaul was divided into four provinces, 1. Narbonen'sis or Bracca'ta, bounded on the west by the Pyrenees, on the north by the Cevennian mountains, and on the east by the Va'rus, *Var*; 2. Lugdunen'sis or Cel'tica, bounded on the south and west by the Li'ger, *Loire*, on the north by the Sequa'na, *Seine*, and on the east by the A'rar, *Saone*; 3. Aquita'nica, bounded by the Pyrenees on the south, and the Li'ger on the north and east; 4. Bel'gica, bounded on the north and east by the Rhe'nus, *Rhine*, on the west by the Arar, and on the south by the Rhoda'nus, *Rhone*, as far as the city Lugdu'num, *Lyons*. Helve'tia, the modern Switzerland, was included in Belgic Gaul. This extensive country was not totally subdued before the time of Julius Cæsar.

6. Italy has been already mentioned in the first chapter; we shall therefore pass it over, and come to the islands in the Mediterranean.

Sici'lia or Trinac'ria, *Sicily*, was the first province that the Romans gained beyond the confines of Italy. The cities on its coast were founded by Phœnician and Grecian colonies, but the native inhabitants retained possession of the interior; one tribe, named the Sic'uli, are said to have migrated from Italy, and to have given their name to the island. The Greeks and Carthaginians long contended for supremacy in this island, but it was wrested from both by the Romans towards the close of the second *Punic* war. Nearly at the same time, the islands of Corsica and Sardinia were annexed to the empire.

7. Britan'nia, divided into Britan'nia Roma'na, which contained England and the south of Scotland, and Britan'nia Bar'bara or Caledo'nia, the northern part of Scotland, into which the Romans never penetrated. Britain was first invaded by Julius Cæsar, but was not wholly subdued before the time of Nero. As for Hiber'nia or Ier'ne, *Ireland*, it was visited by Roman merchants, but never by Roman legions.

8. The countries south of the Danube were subdued and divided into provinces during the reign of Augustus. The number of these provinces was seven; 1. Vindeli'cia, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the east by the Æ'nus, *Inn*, on the west by Helve'tia, and on the south by Rhæ'tia; 2. Rhæ'tia, lying between Helve'tia, Vindeli'cia, and the eastern chain of the Alps; 3. Nor'icum, bounded

on the north by the Danube, on the west by the Æ'nus, *Inn*, on the east by mount Ce'tius, *Kahlenberg*, and on the south by the Julian Alps and the Sa'vus, *Save;* 4. Panno'nia Superior, having, as boundaries, the Danube on the north and east, the Ar'rabo, *Raab*, on the south, and the Cetian mountains on the west; 5. Panno'nia Inferior, having the Ar'rabo on the north, the Ar'rabo on the east, and the Sa'vus on the south; 6. Mœ'sia Superior, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the south by mount Scar'dus, *Tchar-dag*, on the west by Pan'nonia, and on the east by the river Ce'brus, *Isker;* 7. Mœ'sia Inferior, having the Danube on the north, the Ce'brus on the west, the chain of mount Hæmus on the south, and the Pon'tus Euxi'nus, *Black Sea*, on the east.

9. Illyricum included the districts along the eastern coast of the Adriatic, from Rhæ'tia to the river Dri'nus, *Drino Brianco*, in the south, and the Sa'vus, *Save*, on the east. It was subdued by the Romans about the time of the Macedonian war.

10. Macedon and Greece were subdued after the conquest of Carthage; for the particulars of their geography, the student is referred to the introduction prefixed to the last edition of the Grecian History. Thrace was governed by its own kings, who were tributary to the Romans until the reign of the emperor Claudian, when it was made a province.

11. Da'cia was first subdued by the emperor Trajan, and was the only province north of the Danube; its boundaries were, the Carpathian mountains on the north, the Tibis'cus, *Theiss*, on the west, the Hiera'sus, *Pruth*, on the east, and the Danube on the south.

12. The principal Asiatic provinces were, Asia Minor, Syria, and Phœni'cia. Beyond the Euphra'tes, Arme'nia and Mesopota'mia were reduced to provinces by Trajan, but abandoned by his successor Adrian.

13. The African provinces were, Egypt, Cyrena'ica, Numidia, and Maurita'nia.

14. The principal states on the borders of the empire were, Germa'nia and Sarma'tia in Europe, Arme'nia and Par'thia in Asia, and Ethio'pia in Africa.

15. Eastern Asia, or India, was only known to the Romans by a commercial intercourse, which was opened with that country soon after the conquest of Egypt.

It was divided into India on this side the Ganges, and India beyond the Ganges, which included Se'rica, a country

of which the Romans possessed but little knowledge. India at the western side of the Ganges contained, 1. The territory between the In'dus and Gan'ges; 2. The western coast, now called Malabar, which was the part best known, and 3. The island of Taproba'ne, *Ceylon*.

16. The commerce between Europe and southern Asia became important in the reign of Alexan'der the Great[1]; the greater part of the towns founded by that mighty conqueror were intended to facilitate the lucrative Indian trade. After his death, the Ptol'emies of Egypt became the patrons of Indian traffic, which was unwisely neglected by the kings of Syria. When Egypt was conquered by the Romans, the commerce with India was not interrupted, and the principal mart for Indian commerce under the Roman emperors, was always Alexandria. The jealousy of the Parthians excluded strangers from their territories, and put an end to the trade that was carried on between northern India, the shores of the Caspian sea, and thence to the Ægean. In consequence of this interruption, Palmy'ra and Alexandri'a became the great depôts of eastern commerce, and to this circumstance they owed their enormous wealth and magnificence.

[1] See Pinnock's Grecian History.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the boundaries of the Roman empire?
2. How was Spain divided?
3. When was Spain annexed to the Roman empire?
4. What countries were included in Transalpine Gaul?
5. How was Gaul divided?
6. What islands in the Mediterranean were included in the Roman empire?
7. When was Britain invaded by the Romans, and how much of the country did they subdue?
8. Into what provinces were the countries south of the Danube divided?
9. What was the extent of Illyricum?
10. What were the Roman provinces in the east of Europe?
11. By whom was Dacia conquered?
12. What were the Asiatic provinces?
13. What were the African provinces?
14. What were the principal states bordering on the empire?
15. Was India known to the Romans?
16. What cities under the Romans enjoyed the greatest share of commerce with India?

END OF THE INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ORIGIN OF THE ROMANS.

Observe the youth who first appears in sight,
And holds the nearest station to the light,
Already seems to snuff the vital air,
And leans just forward on a shining spear:
Silvius is he, thy last-begotten race,
But first in order sent to fill thy place.—
An Alban name, but mix'd with Dardan blood.
Born in the covert of a shady wood,
Him fair Lavinia, thy surviving wife,
Shall breed in groves, to lead a solitary life:
In Alba he shall fix his royal seat
And, born a king, a race of kings beget.

DRYDEN'S VIRGIL, ÆN. VI.

1. Æne'as, *s.* a Trojan prince.
Ve'nus, *s.* the goddess of love and beauty, who is said, in Pagan fable, to have come down from heaven to enjoy the company of Anchi'ses.
Anchi'ses, *s.* (pron. *An-ki-ses*) the son of Ca'pys, by The'mus, daughter of I'lus, king of Troy.
2. Ru'tuli, *s.* a people of Italy.
Mezen'tius, *s.* king of the Tyrrhe'nians in Italy.
4. Usurpa'tion, *s.* the act of wrongfully taking what belongs to another.
Ves'tal, *s.* a virgin priestess of Ves'ta, the goddess of fire.
Poster'ity, *s.* succeeding generations.
5. Mars, *s.* the god of war.
Sacerdo'tal, *a.* belonging to priesthood, priestly.
Func'tions, *s.* acts of an office, employment.
12. Divul'ged, *part.* made known.
Depo'sed, *part.* deprived of an office.
13. O'men, *s.* any sign or token by which a future event may be foretold.
Tu'telar, *a.* having the guardianship and protection of any person or thing.

1. THE Romans were particularly desirous of being thought descendants of the gods; as if to hide the meanness of their real ancestry. *Æne'as*, the son of *Venus* and *Anchi'ses*, having escaped from the destruction of Troy, after many adventures and dangers, arrived in Italy (A.M. 2294), where he was kindly received by Latinus, king of the Latins, who promised him his daughter Lavin'ia in marriage. 2. Turnus, king of the *Ru'tuli*, was the first who opposed Æne'as, he having long made pretensions to her himself. A war ensued, in which the Trojan hero was victorious, and Turnus slain. In consequence of this, Lavin'ia became the wife of Æne'as, who built a city to her honour, and called it Lavin'ium. Some time after, engaging in a war against *Mezentius*, one of the petty kings of the country,

he was vanquished in turn, and died in battle, after a reign of four years. 3. Asca'nius, his son, succeeded to the kingdom; and to him Sil'vius[1], his second son, whom he had by Lavin'ia. It would be tedious and uninteresting to recite a dry catalogue of the kings that followed, of whom we know little more than the names; it will be sufficient to say, that the succession continued for nearly four hundred years in the same family; and that Nu'mitor, the fifteenth from Æne'as, was the last king of Alba.

Nu'mitor, who took possession of the kingdom in consequence of his father's will, had a brother named Amu'lius, to whom were left the treasures which had been brought from Troy. 4. As riches too generally prevail against right, Amu'lius made use of his wealth to supplant his brother, and soon found means to possess himself of the kingdom. Not contented with the crime of *usurpation*, he added that of murder also. Nu'mitor's sons first fell a sacrifice to his suspicions; and to remove all apprehensions of being one day disturbed in his ill-gotten power, he caused Rhe'a Sil'via[2], his brother's only daughter, to become a *vestal;* which office obliging her to perpetual virginity, made him less uneasy as to the claims of *posterity*.

5. His precautions, however, were all frustrated in the event. Rhe'a Sil'via was called to the performance of some religious service in the temple of *Mars*, near the town. A spring of water glided through the sacred wood, in which the temple was enclosed, and the priestess, in order to discharge one of her *sacerdotal functions*, went thither to take the necessary water for her sacrifice; where a man, disguised in a military habit like that in which Mars was commonly represented, surprised and forced the vestal. Others are of opinion that she met a young lover there by appointment. 6. When Rhe'a Sil'via, however, could no longer conceal her shame, she charged the god Mars with being the cause of it. The circumstances of the temple, the sacred wood, and the presence of that god, who was believed to make his residence in the sanctuary consecrated to him, gave a less odious colour to the affair; and whether it was her crime or her misfortune, the fact is certain, that in due time she brought forth two boys, who were no sooner born than devoted by the usurper to de-

[1] So called because born in a wood, whither his mother Lavin'ia is said to have fled for fear of Asca'nius.

[2] By the poets she is usually named Il'ia.

struction. 7. The mother was condemned to be buried alive, the usual punishment for vestals who had violated their chastity, and the twins were ordered to be flung into the river Tiber. 8. It happened, however, at the time this rigorous sentence was put into execution, that the river had, more than usual, overflowed its banks, so that the place where the children were thrown, being distant from the main current, the water was too shallow to drown them. It is said by some, that they were exposed in a cradle, which after floating for a time, was, by the waters retiring, left on dry ground; that a wolf, descending from the mountains to drink, ran, at the cry of the children,

and gave them suck under a fig-tree, caressing and licking them as if they had been her own young, the infants hanging on her dugs as if she had been their mother, until

Faus'tulus, the king's shepherd, struck with so surprising a sight, conveyed them home, and delivered them to his wife, Ac'ca Lauren'tia, to nurse, who brought them up as her own. 9. Others, however, assert, that from the vicious life of this woman, the shepherds had given her the nick-name of Lupa [1], or wolf, which they suppose might possibly be the occasion of this marvellous story.

But though this account must be regarded as fabulous, it was one of the most popular subjects for painting and sculpture in ancient Rome. Indeed, one of the most ancient pieces of statuary is a representation of Romulus and Remus suckled by the wolf. It is also frequently depicted on the Roman coins and medals, joined with the head of personified Rome, the features of which are supposed by some to represent Rhea Silvia.

10. Rom'ulus and Re'mus, the twins, in whatever manner preserved, seemed early to discover abilities and desires above the meanness of their supposed origin. From their very infancy, an air of superiority and grandeur seemed to discover their rank. They led, however, the shepherd's life like the rest; worked for their livelihood, and built their own huts. But pastoral idleness displeased them, and from tending their flocks, they betook themselves to the chase. Then, no longer content with hunting wild beasts, they turned their strength against the robbers of their country, whom they often stript of their plunder, and divided it among the shepherds. 11. The youths who continually joined them so increased in number as to enable them to hold assemblies, and celebrate games. In one of their excursions, the two brothers were surprised. Re'mus was taken prisoner, carried before the king, and accused of being a plunderer and robber on Nu'mitor's lands. Rom'ulus had escaped; but Re'mus, the king sent to Nu'mitor, that he might do himself justice.

12. From many circumstances Faus'tulus suspected the twins under his care to be the same that Amu'lius had exposed in the Ti'ber, and at length *divulged* his suspicions to Rom'ulus. Nu'mitor made the same discovery to Re'mus. From that time nothing was thought of but the tyrant's destruction. He was beset on all sides; and during the amazement and distraction that ensued was taken and slain: while Nu'mitor, who had been *deposed* for

[1] Lu'pa literally signifies a harlot as well as a she-wolf.

forty years, recognized his grandsons, and was once more placed on the throne [1].

13. The two brothers, leaving Nu'mitor the kingdom of Alba, determined to build a city upon the spot where they had been exposed and preserved. But a fatal desire of reigning seized them both, and created a difference between these noble youths, which terminated tragically. Birth-right in the case of twins could claim no precedence; they therefore were advised by the king to take an *omen* from the flight of birds, to know to which of them the *tutelar* gods would decree the honour of governing the rising city, and consequently, of being the director of the other. 14. In compliance with this advice, each took his station on a different hill. To Re'mus appeared six vultures; in the moment after, Rom'ulus saw twelve. Two parties had been formed for this purpose; the one declared for Re'mus, who first saw the vultures; the other for Rom'ulus, who saw the greater number [2]. Each party called itself victorious; the one having the first omen, the other that which was most complete. This produced a contest, which ended in a battle, wherein Re'mus was slain. It is even said that he was killed by his brother, who being provoked at his leaping contemptuously over the city wall, struck him dead upon the spot.

15. Rom'ulus being now sole commander, and eighteen years of age, began the foundation of a city that was one day to give laws to the world. It was called Rome, after the name of the founder, and built upon the Palatine hill, on which he had taken his successful omen (A.M. 3252, ANTE C. 752). The city was at first nearly square, containing about a thousand houses. It was almost a mile in circumference, and commanded a small territory round it of eight miles over. 16. However, small as it appears, it was yet worse inhabited; and the first method made use of to increase its numbers, was the opening of a sanctuary for all malefactors and slaves, and such as were

[1] The troops, if they deserve the name, with which Romulus invested the palace, and at length slew the king, were merely a tumultuary rabble from the country, whose ensigns were bundles of hay suspended from long poles; these were called *manipuli*, and hence came the name of *manipulares*, afterwards given to the troops.

[2] Niebuhr is of opinion that the augury of the twelve birds is a poetical way of expressing an old Etruscan prophecy, that Rome was destined to endure twelve secles: a secle being with that people a period of 110 years.

desirous of novelty; these came in great multitudes, and contributed to increase the number of our legislator's new subjects.

Questions for Examination.

2. What was the origin of the Romans?
3. Who first opposed Æneas, and what was the result?
4. Who were the successors of Æneas?
5. What was the conduct of Amulius?
6. What event frustrated his precautions?
7. What followed?
. What was the sentence on Rhea Silvia and her children?
8. How were the children preserved?
9. What is supposed to have occasioned this marvellous story?
10. What was the character and conduct of Romulus and Remus?
11. In what manner were they surprised?
12. How was the birth of Romulus and Remus discovered, and what consequences followed?
13. What caused a difference between the brothers?
14. Relate the circumstances which followed.
15. By whom was Rome built, and what was then its situation?
16. By what means was the new city peopled?

CHAPTER II.

FROM THE BUILDING OF ROME TO THE DEATH OF ROMULUS.

See Romulus the great, born to restore
The crown that once his injured grandsire wore.
This prince a priestess of our blood shall bear;
And, like his sire, in arms he shall appear,
Two rising crests his royal head adorn:
Born from a god, himself a godhead born,
His sire already signs him for the skies,
And marks his seat amidst the deities.

DRYDEN'S VIRGIL, ÆN. VI.

1. Constitu'tion, *s.* form of government.
Lic'tors, *s.* Roman officers, employed in apprehending criminals.
2. Sen'ate, *s.* an assembly of men met together to enact laws, and to debate on matters which respect the state.
3. Patri'cians, *s.* the nobility; men of honourable birth.
Le'gislature, *s.* the power that makes laws.
Suf'frages, *s.* votes or voices given to determine a controversy or matter in dispute.
4. Plebe'ians, *s.* the common people.
5. Sooth'sayers, *s.* those who pretend to foretel future events.
6. Repu'diate, *v.* to divorce, to put away.
9. Nep'tune, *s.* the god of the sea.
Glad'iator, *s* a person trained to fight in the public games at Rome.

1. SCARCELY was the city raised above its foundation, when its rude inhabitants began to think of giving some form to their *constitution*. Rom'ulus, by an act of great

generosity, left them at liberty to choose whom they would for their king; and they, in gratitude, concurred to elect him for their founder. He accordingly was acknowledged as chief of their religion, sovereign magistrate of Rome, and general of the army. Beside a guard to attend his person, it was agreed that he should be preceded, wherever he went, by twelve *lictors*, each armed with an axe tied up in a bundle of rods; these were to serve as executioners of the law, and to impress his new subjects with an idea of his authority [1].

2. The *senate*, who were to act as counsellors to the king, was composed of a hundred of the principal citizens of Rome, consisting of men whose age, wisdom, or valour gave them a natural authority over their fellow-subjects. The king named the first senator, who was called prince of the senate, and appointed him to the government of the city whenever war required his own absence.

3. The *patricians*, who composed the third part of the *legislature*, assumed to themselves the power of authorizing those laws which were passed by the king, or the senate. All things relative to peace or war, to the election of magistrates, and even to the choosing a king, were confirmed by *suffrage* in their assemblies.

4. The *plebeians* were to till the fields, feed cattle, and follow trades; but not to have any share in the government, to avoid the inconveniences of a popular power.

5. The first care of the new-created king was to attend to the interests of religion. The precise form of their worship is unknown; but the greatest part of the religion of that age consisted in a firm reliance upon the credit of their *soothsayers*, who pretended, from observation on the flight of birds, and the entrails of beasts, to direct the present, and to dive into futurity. Rom'ulus, by an express law, commanded that no election should be made, nor enterprise undertaken, without first consulting them.

6. Wives were forbidden, upon any pretext whatsoever, to separate from their husbands; while, on the contrary, the husband was empowered to *repudiate* the wife, and even, in some cases, to put her to death. The laws between children and their parents were still more severe; the father had entire power over his offspring, both of fortune and life; he could imprison or sell them at any

[1] This symbol of sovereignty was borrowed from his neighbours the Etrurians.

time of their lives, or in any stations to which they were arrived.

7. After endeavouring to regulate his subjects by law, Rom'ulus next gave orders to ascertain their numbers. The whole amounted to no more than three thousand foot, and about as many hundred horsemen, capable of bearing arms. These, therefore, were divided equally into three tribes, and to each he assigned a different part of the city. Each of these tribes was subdivided into ten curiæ, or companies, consisting of a hundred men each, with a centurion to command it, a priest called curio, to perform the sacrifices, and two of the principal inhabitants, called duumviri, to distribute justice.

8. By these judicious regulations, each day added strength to the new city; multitudes of people flocked in from all the adjacent towns, and it only seemed to want women to ensure its duration. In this exigence, Rom'ulus, by the advice of the senate, sent deputies among the Sab'ines, his neighbours, entreating their alliance; and, upon these terms, offering to cement the strictest confederacy with them. The Sab'ines, who were at that time considered as the most warlike people of Italy, rejected the proposal with disdain. 9. Rom'ulus therefore proclaimed a feast in honour of *Neptune*[1] throughout all the neighbouring villages, and made the most magnificent preparations for celebrating it. These feasts were generally preceded by sacrifices, and ended in shows of wrestlers, *gladiators*, and chariot-courses. The Sabines, as he had expected, were among the foremost who came to be spectators, bringing their wives and daughters with them to share the pleasures of the sight. 10. In the mean time, the games began, and while the strangers were most intent upon the spectacle, a number of the Roman youth rushed in among them with drawn swords, seized the youngest and most beautiful women, and carried them off by violence. In vain the parents protested against this breach of hospitality; in vain the virgins themselves at first opposed the attempts of their ravishers; perseverance and caresses obtained those favours which timidity at first denied; so that the ravishers, from being objects of aversion, soon became the partners of their dearest affections.

[1] More properly in honour of Con'sus, a deity of Sabine origin, whom the Romans in a later age confounded with Neptune. (See Keightley's Mythology.)

11. A bloody war ensued. The cities of Cæ'nina [1], Antem'næ [2], and Crustumi'num [3], were the first who resolved to avenge the common cause, which the Sab'ines seemed too dilatory in pursuing. But all these, by making separate inroads, became an easy conquest to Rom'ulus, who made the most merciful use of his victories; instead of destroying their towns, or lessening their numbers, he only placed colonies of Romans in them, to serve as a frontier to repress more distant invasions.

12. Ta'tius, king of Cures, a Sabine city, was the last, although the most formidable, who undertook to revenge the disgrace his country had suffered. He entered the Roman territories at the head of twenty-five thousand men, and not content with a superiority of forces, he added stratagem also. 13. Tarpe'ia, who was daughter to the commander of the Capit'oline hill, happened to fall into his hands, as she went without the walls of the city to fetch water. Upon her he prevailed, by means of large promises, to betray one of the gates to his army. The reward she engaged for was what the soldiers wore on their arms, by which she meant their bracelets. They, however, either mistaking her meaning, or willing to punish her perfidy, threw their bucklers upon her as they entered, and crushed her to death. 14. The Sab'ines being thus possessed of the Capit'oline, after some time a general engagement ensued, which was renewed for several days with almost equal success, and neither army could think of submitting; it was in the valley between the Capit'oline and Quiri'nal hills that the last engagement was fought between the Romans and the Sab'ines. 15. The battle was now become general, and the slaughter prodigious; when the attention of both sides was suddenly turned from the scene of horror before them to another. The Sab'ine women, who had been carried off by the Romans, flew in between the combatants, with their hair loose, and their ornaments neglected, regardless of their own danger; and, with loud outcries, implored their husbands and their fathers to desist. Upon this the combatants, as if by natural impulse, let fall their weapons. 16. An accommodation ensued, by which it was agreed, that Rom'-

[1] A town of Latium, near Rome. (Livy.)

[2] A city of the Sabines, between Rome and the Anio, from whence its name,—Ante Amnem. (Dionys. Hal.)

[3] A town of Etruria, near Veii. (Virg.)

ulus and Ta'tius should reign jointly in Rome, with equal power and prerogative; that a hundred Sab'ines should be admitted into the senate; that the city should retain its former name, but the citizens should be called Qui'rites, after Cu'res, the principal town of the Sab'ines; and that both nations being thus united, such of the Sab'ines as chose it should be admitted to live in and enjoy all the privileges of citizens of Rome. 17. The conquest of Came'ria was the only military achievement under the two kings, and Ta'tius was killed about five years after by the Lavin'ians, for having protected some of his servants who had plundered them and slain their ambassadors; so that, by this accident, Rom'ulus once more saw himself sole monarch of Rome. 18. Soon after the death of Ta'tius, a cruel plague and famine having broken out at Rome, the Camerini embraced the opportunity to lay waste the Roman territory. But Rom'ulus gave them battle, killed six thousand on the spot, and returned in triumph to Rome. He took likewise Fidenæ, a city about forty furlongs distant from his capital, and reduced the Veien'tes to submission.

19. Successes like these produced an equal share of pride in the conqueror. From being contented with those limits which had been wisely assigned to his power, he began to affect absolute sway, and to control those laws to which he had himself formerly professed implicit obedience. The senate was particularly displeased at his conduct, as they found themselves used only as instruments to ratify the rigour of his commands. 20. We are not told the precise manner which they employed to get rid of the tyrant. Some say that he was torn in pieces in the senate-house; others, that he disappeared while reviewing his army; certain it is, that from the secrecy of the fact, and the concealment of the body, they took occasion to persuade the multitude that he was taken up into heaven; thus, him whom they could not bear as a king, they were contented to worship as a god. Rom'ulus reigned thirty-seven years; and after his death had a temple built to him, under the name of Quiri'nus [1].

[1] The account of Rom'ulus having been torn to pieces in the senate-house is an invention of modern date, devised by those writers who thought it possible to form a conjectural history from the ballads and traditions which related the origin of the nation. Their explanation of his disappearance is to the full as improbable as the vulgar belief of his

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the first proceedings of the rude inhabitants of Rome
2. Of whom was the senate composed?
3. Who were the patricians?
4. Who were the plebeians?
5. What was the first care of the new king?
   In what did the religion of Rome consist?
6. What were the laws between husband and wife, and between parents and children?
7. What were the regulations directed by Romulus?
8. What was the result of these regulations?
9. What conduct did Romulus adopt in consequence?
10. What treatment did the Sabines experience?
11. Did they tamely acquiesce in this outrage?
12. Who undertook to revenge the disgrace of the Sabines?
13. What was this stratagem, and how was its perpetrator rewarded?
14. Did the possession of the Capit'oline put an end to the war?
15. What put a stop to this sanguinary conflict?
16. What were the terms of accommodation?
17. Was this joint sovereignty of long continuance?
18. Was Romulus successful in military affairs?
19. What was the consequence?
20. What was the manner of his death?

---

having been taken up into heaven; a combination of all the senators to murder a popular king, the perpetration of the murder without a shriek or cry to give the alarm, the concealment of the body in fragments under the senators' robes, the absence of any stains or traces that might discover the deed of blood, and the perfect preservation of the secret, are matters so perfectly inexplicable, that no one could for a moment give credit to the tale.

The few facts that may be considered as certain in the history of Rom'ulus are, that he was the great author of the outlines of the Roman constitution, social, civil, and military; that he established the senate, the tribes, and the curiæ; that his institutions were derived from the Latins, the Sabines, and the Etrurians, and that he reigned over a people formed from these three nations. The manner of his birth and death has been recorded only in legendary tales, and it would show gross ignorance of the nature of mythic history, to attempt discovering the truth on which these legends have been founded.

CHAPTER III.

FROM THE DEATH OF ROMULUS, TO THE DEATH OF NUMA POMPILIUS, THE SECOND KING OF ROME.—U. C. 33.

When pious Numa reign'd, Bellona's voice
No longer call'd the Roman youth to arms;
In peaceful arts he bid her sons rejoice,
And tranquil live, secure from war's alarms.

BROOKE.

4. Conjunc'ture, *s.* a particular period, critical time.

Indu'ce, *v.* to lead, to persuade.

5. Ege'ria, *s.* the nymph who presides over pregnant women.

Ja'nus, *s.* the most ancient of the kings of Italy; deified after his death, and represented with two faces, to denote his knowledge of the past and future. From him the month of January takes its name.

1. UPON the death of Rom'ulus, the city seemed greatly divided in the choice of a successor. The Sab'ines were for having a king chosen from their body, but the Romans could not endure the thoughts of advancing a stranger to the throne. In this perplexity, the senators undertook to supply the place of the king, by taking the government each of them in turn for five days, and during that time enjoying all the honours and all the privileges of royalty. 2. This new form of government continued for a year; but the plebeians, who saw this method of transferring power was only multiplying their masters, insisted upon altering that mode of government. The senate being thus driven to an election, at length pitched upon Nu'ma Pompil'ius, a Sabine, and their choice was received with universal approbation by the people [1].

3. Nu'ma Pompil'ius, who was now about forty, had long been eminent for his piety, his justice, his moderation, and exemplary life. He was skilled in all the learning and philosophy of the Sab'ines, and lived at home at Cu'res [2], contented with a private fortune; unambitious of higher honours. It was not, therefore, without reluctance that he accepted the dignity; which, when he did so, produced such

[1] Nu'ma Pompil'ius was the fourth son of Pompil'ius Pom'po, an illustrious Sab'ine. He had married Ta'tia, the daughter of Ta'tius, the colleague of Rom'ulus, and on the death of his wife gave himself up entirely to solitude and study. (Plutarch—Livy.)

[2] More probably at Quirium, the Sabine town which was united with Rome. (See Introduction, Chap. II.)

joy, that the people seemed not so much to receive a king as a kingdom.

4. No monarch could be more proper for them than Nu'ma, at a *conjuncture* when the government was composed of various petty states, lately subdued, and but ill united to each other: they wanted a master who could, by his laws and precepts, soften their fierce dispositions; and, by his example, *induce* them to a love of religion, and every milder virtue. 5. Numa's whole time therefore was spent in inspiring his subjects with a love of piety, and a veneration for the gods. He built many new temples, instituted sacred offices and feasts; and the sanctity of his life gave strength to his assertion—that he had a particular correspondence with the goddess *Ege'ria*. By her advice he built the temple of *Janus*, which was to be shut in time of peace, and open in war. He regulated the appointment of the vestal virgins, and added considerably to the privileges which they had previously enjoyed.

6. For the encouragement of agriculture, he divided those lands which Rom'ulus had gained in war among the poorer part of the people; he regulated the calendar, and abolished the distinction between Romans and Sabines, by dividing the people according to their several trades, and compelling them to live together. 7. Thus having arrived at the age of fourscore years, and having reigned forty-three in profound peace, he died, ordering his body, contrary to the custom of the times, to be buried in a stone coffin; and his books of ceremonies, which consisted of twelve in Latin, and as many in Greek, to be buried by his side in another [1].

Questions for Examination.

1. Upon the death of Romulus, what took place in regard to his successor?
2. How long did this order of things continue?
3. What was the character of Numa Pompilius?
4. Was Numa a monarch suited to this peculiar conjuncture?
5. Relate the acts of Numa.
6. What were the further acts of Numa?
7. What orders did he leave at his death?

[1] The age of Nu'ma is scarcely more historical than that of Rom'ulus, but the legends respecting it are fewer, and partake less of extravagance. Indeed, he had himself discouraged the songs of the bards, by ordering the highest honours to be paid to Tac'ita, the Came'na or Muse of Silence. His memory was best preserved by the religious

CHAPTER IV.

FROM THE DEATH OF NUMA, TO THE DEATH OF TULLUS HOSTILIUS, THE THIRD KING OF ROME.—U. C. 82.

The Roman and the Alban chiefs
In council have determined, that since glory
Must have her victims, and each rival state,
Aspiring to dominion, scorns to yield,
From either army shall be chose three champions,
To fight the cause alone, and whate'er state
Shall prove superior, their acknowledged power
Shall fix the imperial seat, and both unite
Beneath one common head. WHITEHEAD.

2. Al'bans, *s.* a people of Alba, in Italy.
3. Impet'uous, *a.* hasty, violent, vehement.
4. Cham'pions, *s.* heroes, great warriors.
5. Antag'onists, *s.* adversaries, persons opposed to others in battle.
6. Ma'nes, *s.* ghosts.
7. Imbru'ed, *part.* dipp d, steeped.

1. AT the death of Nu'ma, the government once more devolved upon the senate, and so continued, till the people elected Tullus Hostil'ius for their king, which choice had also the concurrence of the other part of the constitution. This monarch, the grandson of a noble Roman [1], who had formerly signalized himself against the Sab'ines, was every way unlike his predecessor, being entirely devoted to war, and more fond of enterprise than even the founder of the empire himself had been; so that he only sought a pretext for leading his forces into the field.

2. The *Albans*, by committing some depredations on the Roman territory, were the first people that gave him an opportunity of indulging his favourite inclinations. The forces of the two states met about five miles from Rome, prepared to decide the fate of their respective kingdoms; for in these times, a single battle was generally decisive. The two armies were for some time drawn out in array, awaiting the signal to begin, both chiding the length of that dreadful suspense, when an unexpected proposal from

ceremonies ascribed to him by universal tradition. The later poets loved to dwell on his peaceful virtues, and on the pure affection that existed between him and the nymph Egeria. They tell us that when the king served up a moderate repast to his guests on earthenware, she suddenly changed the dishes into gold, and the plain food into the most sumptuous viands. They also add, that when he died, Egeria melted away in tears for his loss, and was changed into a fountain.

[1] It seems to have been part of the compact between the Romans and Sabines, that a king of each people should reign alternately.

the Alban general put a stop to the onset. 3. Stepping in between both armies, he offered the Romans to decide the dispute by single combat; adding, that the side whose champion was overcome should submit to the conqueror. A proposal like this suited the *impetuous* temper of the Roman king, and was embraced with joy by his subjects, each of whom hoped that he himself should be chosen to fight the cause of his country. 4. There were at that time three twin brothers in each army; those of the Romans were called Hora'tii, and those of the Albans Curia'tii; all six remarkable for their courage, strength, and activity; and to these it was resolved to commit the management of the combat [1]. At length the *champions* met, and each, totally regardless of his own safety, only sought the destruction of his opponent. The spectators, in horrid silence, trembled at every blow, and wished to share the danger, till fortune seemed to decide the glory of the field. 5. Victory, that had hitherto been doubtful, appeared to declare against the Romans; they beheld two of their champions lying dead upon the plain, and the three Curia'tii, who were wounded, slowly endeavouring to pursue the survivor, who seemed by flight to beg for mercy. Too soon, however, they perceived that his flight was only pretended, in order to separate his three *antagonists*, whom he was unable to oppose united; for, quickly after, stopping his course, and turning upon the first, who followed closely behind, he laid him dead at his feet: the second brother, who was coming up to assist him that had already fallen, shared the same fate. 6. There now remained but the last Curia'tius to conquer, who, fatigued and disabled by his wounds, slowly advanced to offer an easy victory. He was killed, almost unresisting, while the conqueror exclaiming, "Two have I already sacrificed to the *manes* of my brothers; the third I will offer up to my country," despatched him as a victim to the superiority of the Romans, whom now the Alban army consented to obey [2].

[1] The Hora'tii and Curia'tii were, according to Diony'sius Halicarnas'sus, the sons of two sisters, daughters of Sequin'ius, an illustrious citizen of Alba. One married to Curia'tius, a citizen of Alba, and the other to Hora'tius, a Roman: so that the champions were near relatives.

[2] This obedience of the Albans was of short duration; they soon rebelled, and were defeated by Tullus, who razed the city of Alba to the ground, and transplanted the inhabitants to Rome, where he conferred on them the privileges of citizens.

7. But the virtues of that age were not without alloy; that very hand that in the morning was exerted to save his country, was before night *imbrued* in the blood of a sister: for, returning triumphant from the field, it raised his indignation to behold her bathed in tears, and lamenting the loss of her lover, one of the Curia'tii, to whom she had been betrothed. This so provoked him beyond the powers of sufferance, that in a rage he slew her: but the action displeased the senate, and drew after it the condemnation of the magistrate. He was, however, pardoned by making his appeal to the people, but obliged to pass under the yoke; an ignominious punishment, usually inflicted on prisoners of war [1].

8. Tullus having greatly increased the power and wealth of Rome by repeated victories, now thought proper to demand satisfaction of the Sab'ines, for the insults which had been formerly offered to some Roman citizens at the temple of the goddess Fero'nia, which was common to both nations. A war ensued, which lasted some years, and ended in the total overthrow of the Sab'ines.

Hostil'ius died after a reign of thirty-two years; some say by lightning; others, with more probability, by treason [2].

Questions for Examination.

1. On whom devolved the government on the death of Numa, and what is the character of his successor?
2. What opportunity first offered of indulging the new king's inclinations?
3. What proposal was offered, and accepted, for deciding the dispute?
4—6. Relate the circumstances which attended the combat, and the result of it.
7. What act followed the victory?
8. What conquest was next achieved?

---

[1] Livy, lib. i. cap. 25. Dion. Hal. 1. 8.

[2] The death of Hostil'ius in the old legends is ascribed to a supernatural cause; they tell us that he attempted to use the divination by which Nu'ma discovered from Ju'piter Elic'ius, the means of averting evil omens; but not being, like that pious monarch, able to counteract the spells of that capricious demon, he was destroyed. Nu'ma was saved by presence of mind: when Elic'ius proposed a cruel remedy, the king by speedy interruptions rendered the command innocuous. "Cut a head," said the demon—"from an onion in my garden," quickly responded Numa—"of a man"—"the topmost hairs," said the king—I demand a life"—"of a fish," was the ready interruption, and the

CHAPTER V.

FROM THE DEATH OF TULLUS HOSTILIUS TO THE DEATH OF ANCUS MARTIUS, THE FOURTH KING OF ROME.—U. C. 115.

——————— Where what remains
Of Alba, still her ancient rites retains,
Still worships Vesta, though an humbler way,
Nor let the hallow'd Trojan fire decay.—JUVENAL, Sat. 4.

1. Interreg'num, *s.* the time in which a throne is vacant between the death of one sovereign prince, and the accession of another. In England there is no interregnum, the government being hereditary.
Lin'eal, *a.* in a direct line.
2. Ve'ii, *s.* the people of a once very rich and powerful city in Tuscany, about twelve miles from Rome.
Fiden'ates, *s.* the people of Fidena, another once rich and powerful city of Italy. In this city, in the year of our Lord 27, the amphitheatre fell, when there were 50,000 people in it; and most of whom were either killed or wounded.
Vol'sci, *s.* once a very considerable people of Italy.
3. Adja'cent, *a.* lying near.

1. AFTER an *interregnum*, as in the former case, Ancus Mar'tius, the grandson of Numa, was elected king by the people, and their choice was afterwards confirmed by the senate. As this monarch was a *lineal* descendant from Numa, so he seemed to make him the great object of his imitation. He instituted the sacred ceremonies [1] which were to precede a declaration of war; but he took every occasion to advise his subjects to return to the arts of agriculture, and to lay aside the less useful stratagems of war.

2. These institutions and precepts were considered by the neighbouring powers rather as marks of cowardice than of wisdom. The Latins therefore began to make incursions upon his territories, but their success was equal to their justice: An'cus conquered the Latins, destroyed their cities, removed their inhabitants to Rome, and increased his dominions by the addition of part of theirs. He

baffled deity declared that this remedy would be sufficient. (See Niebuhr, vol. i. and Keightley's Mythology.)

It has been plausibly conjectured, that the Roman priests may have been acquainted with some composition similar to gunpowder, and that the king endeavouring to discover their arts fell a victim to an incautious experiment.

[1] First an ambassador was sent to demand satisfaction for the alleged injury; if this were not granted within 33 days, heralds were appointed to proclaim war in the name of the gods and people of Rome. At the conclusion of their speech, they threw their javelins into the enemy's confines, and departed.

quelled also an insurrection of the *Ve'ii*, the *Fiden'ates*, and the *Vol'sci;* and over the Sab'ines he obtained a second triumph.

3. But his victories over the enemy were by no means comparable to his works at home, in raising temples, fortifying the city, making a prison for malefactors, and building a sea-port at the mouth of the Ti'ber, called Os'tia, by which he secured his subjects the trade of that river, and that of the salt-pits *adjacent*. Thus having enriched his subjects, and beautified the city, he died, after a reign of twenty-four years.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who was elected by the people after the interregnum, and what measures did he pursue?
2. In what light did his enemies consider his institutions? With what success did they oppose him?
3. What were the other acts of Ancus? How many years did he reign?

CHAPTER VI.

FROM THE DEATH OF ANCUS MARTIUS TO THE DEATH OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS, THE FIFTH KING OF ROME.—U.C. 130.

> The first of Tarquin's hapless race was he,
> Who odium tried to cast on augury;
> But Nævius Accius, with an augur's skill,
> Preserved its fame, and raised it higher still.—ROBERTSON.

1. Tarquin'ia, *s.* a city of Tuscany in Italy.
2. Au'gury, *s.* the pretended art of foretelling future events. This art was much practised in ancient times, but is now justly exploded as inconsistent with reason and true philosophy.
   Pre'sage, *s.* a token by which something future may be known.
3. Haran'gue, *s.* a set speech.
4. Intrig'ue, *s.* (pron. *in-treeg*), cunning contrivance.
9. Tar'dy, *a.* slow, late.

1. LU'CIUS TARQUIN IUS PRIS'CUS was appointed guardian to the sons of the late king, and took the surname of Tarquin'ius, from the city of *Tarquin'ia*, whence he last came. His father was a merchant of Corinth[1], who had acquired con-

[1] Corinth (now Corito) was a celebrated city of ancient Greece, situated on the isthmus of that name, about sixty stadia or furlongs from the sea. Its original name was Ephy're.

siderable wealth by trade, and had settled in Italy, upon account of some troubles at home. His son, who inherited his fortune, married a woman of family in the city of Tarquin'ia. 2. His birth, profession, and country being contemptible to the nobles of the place, he, by his wife's persuasion, came to settle at Rome, where merit also gave a title to distinction. On his way thither, say the historians, as he approached the city gate, an eagle, stooping from above, took off his hat, and flying round his chariot for some time, with much noise, put it on again. This his wife, Tan'aquil, who it seems was skilled in *augury*, interpreted as a *presage*, that he should one day wear the crown. Perhaps it was this which first fired his ambition to pursue it. 3. Ancus being dead, and the kingdom, as usual, devolving upon the senate, Tarquin used all his power and arts to set aside the children of the late king, and to get himself elected in their stead. For this purpose, upon the day appointed for election, he contrived to have them sent out of the city; and in a set speech, in which he urged his friendship for the people, the fortune he had spent among them, and his knowledge of their government, he offered himself for their king. As there was nothing in his *harangue* that could be contested, it had the desired effect; and the people, with one consent, elected him as their sovereign.

4. A kingdom thus obtained by *intrigue*, was, notwithstanding, governed with equity. In the beginning of his reign, in order to recompense his friends, he added a hundred members more to the senate, which made them in all three hundred.

5. But his peaceful endeavours were soon interrupted by the inroads of his restless neighbours, particularly the Latins, over whom he triumphed, and whom he forced to beg for peace. He then turned his arms against the Sabines, who had risen once more, and had passed the river Ti'ber; but attacking them with vigour, Tarquin routed their army; so that many who escaped the sword, were drowned in attempting to cross over, while their bodies and armour, floating down to Rome, brought news of the victory even before the messengers could arrive that were sent with the tidings. These conquests were followed by several advantages over the Latins, from whom he took many towns, though without gaining any decisive victory.

6. Tarquin, having thus forced his enemies into submis-

sion, was resolved not to let his subjects grow corrupt through indolence. He therefore undertook and perfected several public works for the convenience and embellishment of the city [1].

7. In his time it was, that the augurs came into a great increase of reputation. He found it his interest to promote the superstition of the people; for this was, in fact, but to increase their obedience. Tan'aquil, his wife, was a great pretender to this art; but Ac'cius Næ'vius was the most celebrated adept of the kind ever known in Rome. 8. Upon a certain occasion, Tarquin being resolved to try the augur's skill, asked him whether what he was then pondering in his mind could be effected. Næ'vius having consulted his auguries, boldly affirmed that it might. "Why then," cries the king, with an insulting smile, "I had thought of cutting this whetstone with a razor." "Cut boldly," replied the augur; and the king cut it through accordingly [2]. Thenceforward nothing was undertaken in Rome without consulting the augurs, and obtaining their advice and approbation.

9. Tarquin was not content with a kingdom, without having also the ensigns of royalty [3]. In imitation of the Lyd'ian kings, he assumed a crown of gold, an ivory throne, a sceptre with an eagle on the top, and robes of purple. It was, perhaps, the splendour of these royalties that first raised the envy of the late king's sons, who had now, for above thirty-seven years, quietly submitted to his government. His design also of adopting Ser'vius Tul'lius, his son-in-law, for his successor, might have contributed to inflame their resentment. 10. Whatever was the cause of

[1] Preparations for building the Capitol were made in this reign. The city was likewise fortified with stone walls, and the cloacæ, or common sewers, constructed by the munificence of this prince. (See Introd.)

[2] Tarquin, finding the number of horse appointed by Romulus too small, so that he was frequently prevented from pursuing a victory when gained, resolved to add some new bodies of knights to those of the first institution; but in this he was opposed by Næ'vius, who affirmed that the original number had been fixed by auguries. To bring these auguries therefore into contempt, Tar'quin made the experiment related in the text. This event, however, though attested by all the writers of Roman history, bears evident marks of a fabulous origin. Even Cicero, himself an augur, says to his brother Quintus, "Look with contempt on the razor and flint of the famous Accius; when we reason as philosophers we must lay no stress on fables." (Cic. 1. i. de Div.)

[3] These ensigns of royalty were sent him by the Sabines, as tokens of submission.

their *tardy* vengeance, they resolved to destroy him; and at last found means to effect their purpose, by hiring two ruffians, who demanding to speak with the king, pretending that they came for justice, struck him dead in his palace with the blow of an axe. The lictors, however, who waited upon the person of the king, seized the murderers as they were attempting to escape, and put them to death: but the sons of Ancus, who were the instigators, found safety in flight[1].

11. Thus fell Lu'cius Tarquin'ius, surnamed Pris'cus, to distinguish him from one of his successors of the same name. He was eighty years of age, and had reigned thirty-eight years[2].

Questions for Examination.

1. Who was Lucius Tarquinius Priscus?
2. What occasioned his removal to Rome, and what circumstances attended it?
3. Was this presage fulfilled, and by what means?
4. In what manner did he govern?
5. Was Tarquin a warlike prince?
6. How did he improve his victories?
7. By what act did he ensure the obedience of his subjects?
8. What contributed to increase the reputation of the augurs?
9. What part of his conduct is supposed to have raised the envy of the late king's sons?
10. What was the consequence of this envy and resentment?
11. What was his age, and how long did he reign?

[1] They had before attempted to render the king detestable in the eyes of his subjects, by imputing to him the murder of Nævius, who had suddenly disappeared. As this calumny failed of its intended effect, they were pardoned by Tarquin; but this clemency by no means lessened their inveterate hatred, nor rendered them less anxious to effect his destruction.

[2] The history of the elder Tarquin presents insuperable difficulties. We are told that his original name was Lu'cumo, but that, as has been mentioned in the Introduction, was the Etrurian designation of a chief magistrate. One circumstance, however, is unquestionable, that with him began the greatness and the splendour of the Roman city. He commenced those vaulted sewers which still attract the admiration of posterity; he erected the first circus for the exhibition of public spectacles; he planned the Capitol; and commenced, if he did not complete, the first city wall. The tradition that he was a Tuscan prince appears to be well founded; but the Corinthian origin of his family is very improbable.

CHAPTER VII.

FROM THE DEATH OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS TO THE DEATH OF SERVIUS TULLIUS, THE SIXTH KING OF ROME.—U.C. 176.

Servius, the king, who laid the solid base
On which o'er earth the vast republic spread.—THOMSON.

2 Dissimula'tion, *s.* the act of putting on a false appearance, in order to conceal one's intention or endeavour.
3. Sack'ing, *part.* the taking of a town by storm, and delivering it up to be plundered by the soldiers.
7. Lustrum, *s.* a space of five years.
10. Sympathet'ic, *a.* having mutual sensation.
11. Ille'gal, *a.* unlawful.

1. THE report of the murder of Tarquin filled all his subjects with complaint and indignation; while the citizens ran from every quarter to the palace, to learn the truth of the account, or to take vengeance on the assassins. 2. In this tumult, Tan'aquil, widow of the late king, considering the danger she must incur in case the conspirators should succeed to the crown, and desirous of seeing her son-in-law his successor, with great art dissembled her sorrow, as well as the king's death. She assured the people, from one of the windows of the palace, that he was not killed, but only stunned by the blow; that he would shortly recover; and that in the mean time he had deputed his power to Ser'vius Tul'lius, his son-in-law. Ser'vius accordingly, as it had been agreed upon between them, issued from the palace, adorned with the ensigns of royalty, and, preceded by his lictors, went to despatch some affairs that related to the public safety; still pretending that he took all his instructions from the king. This scene of *dissimulation* continued for some days, till he had made his party good among the nobles; when, the death of Tarquin being publicly ascertained, Ser'vius came to the crown, solely at the senate's appointment, and without attempting to gain the suffrages of the people [1].

3. Ser'vius was the son of a bondwoman, who had been taken at the *sacking* of a town [2] belonging to the Latins, and was born whilst his mother was a slave. Whilst yet an

[1] Diony'sius Halicarnas'sus tells us that he assumed the sovereignty, without waiting for the suffrages either of the senate or people.

[2] Cornic'ulum. (Dion. Hal.) His father is said to have been one Tul'lius, an officer of royal extraction, who was killed in the defence of his country. The name of his mother was Ocrisia. (Ibid.)

infant in his cradle a lambent flame[1] is said to have played round his head, which Tan'aquil converted into an omen of future greatness.

4. Upon being acknowledged king, he determined to make a great change in the Roman constitution, by admitting the plebeians to a participation in the civil government. The senate was too weak to resist the change when it was proposed, but it submitted with great reluctance. 5. Ser'vius divided all the Romans into classes and centuries, according to their wealth and the amount of taxes paid to the state. The number of centuries in the first class nearly equalled that of all the others; a great advantage to the plebeians, for the lower classes being chiefly clients of the patricians, were always inclined to vote according to the prejudices or interests of their patrons. 6. The classification by centuries was also used for military purposes, the heavy-armed infantry being selected from the richer classes; the light troops, whose arms and armour could be obtained at less expense, were levied among the lower centuries.

7. In order to ascertain the increase or decay of his subjects, and their fortunes, he instituted another regulation, which he called a *lustrum*. By this, all the citizens were to assemble in the Cam'pus Mar'tius[2], in complete armour, and in their respective classes, once in five years, and there to give an exact account of their families and fortune.

The ceremonies concluded with a sacrifice called the *Su-ove-taurilia*, so called because a sow (*sus*), a sheep

[1] A flame of fire gliding about without doing any harm.

[2] A large plain at Rome, without the walls of the city, where the Roman youth performed their exercises. Cam'pus is the Latin word

(*ovis*), and a bull (*taurus*) were sacrificed to the ***La'res***, or tutelary deities of social and domestic life.

8. Having enjoyed a long reign, spent in settling the domestic policy of the state, and also not inattentive to foreign concerns, he conceived reasonable hopes of concluding it with tranquillity and ease[1]. He even had thoughts of laying down his power; and, having formed the kingdom into a republic, to retire into obscurity; but so generous a design was frustrated ere it could be put into execution.

9. In the beginning of his reign, to secure the throne by every precaution, he had married his two daughters to the two grandsons of Tarquin; and as he knew that the women, as well as their intended husbands, were of opposite dispositions, he resolved to cross their tempers, by giving each to him of a contrary turn of mind; her that was meek and gentle, to him that was bold and furious; her that was ungovernable and proud, to him that was remarkable for a contrary character; by this he supposed that each would correct the failings of the other, and that the mixture would be productive of concord. 10. The event, however, proved otherwise. Lu'cius, the haughty son-in-law, soon grew displeased with the meekness of his consort, and placed his whole affections upon his brother's wife Tul'lia, who answered his passion with *sympathetic* ardour. As their wishes were ungovernable, they soon resolved to break through every restraint that prevented their union; they both undertook to murder their respective consorts; they succeeded, and were soon after married together. 11. A first crime ever produces a second; from the destruction of their consorts, they proceeded to conspiring that of the king. They began by raising factions against him, alleging his *illegal* title to the crown, and Lu'cius claiming it as his own, as heir to Tarquin. At length, when he found the senate ripe for seconding his views, he entered the senate-house, adorned with all the

for field; and this field or plain was called Mar'tius, because it was dedicated to Mars, the god of war.

[1] Though no mention is made in the text of his military exploits, he performed some worthy of record. The Etru'rians, encouraged by his pacific disposition, revolted; but Ser'vius taking the field, quickly subdued them anew, and divided their lands among the Roman citizens. For this victory he enjoyed the honours of a splendid triumph. Still restless, the Etru'rians revolted a second and a third time, and a second and a third time Ser'vius triumphed ov heir reduction. (Dion. Hal.)

ensigns of royalty, and placing himself upon the throne, began to harangue them on the obscurity of the king's birth, and the injustice of his title. 12. While he was yet speaking, Ser'vius entered, attended by a few followers, and seeing his throne thus rudely invaded, offered to push the usurper from his seat; but Tarquin being in the vigour of youth, threw the old king down the steps which led to the throne; some of his adherents, who were instructed for that purpose, followed him, as he was feebly attempting to get to the palace, despatched him by the way, and threw his body, all mangled and bleeding, as a public spectacle, into the street. 13. In the mean time, Tul'lia, burning with impatience for the event, was informed of what her husband had done, and resolving to be among the first who should salute him as monarch, ordered her chariot to the senate-house. But as her charioteer approached the place where the body of the old king, her father, lay, exposed and bloody, the man, amazed at the inhuman spectacle, and not willing to trample upon it with the horses, offered to turn another way: this serving only to increase the fierceness of her anger, she threw the footstool at his head, and ordered him to drive over the body without hesitation [1].

14. This was the end of Ser'vius Tul'lius, a prince of eminent justice and moderation, after an useful and prosperous reign of forty-four years [2].

[1] The blood of the good old king is said to have dyed the chariot wheels, and even the clothes of the inhuman daughter; from that time the street where it happened was called *vicus sceleratus*, the wicked or accursed street.

[2] Servius Tullius was universally regarded as the great patron of the commonalty, and as the first who gave equal rights to all the citizens. The patricians, indignant at being deprived of their monopoly of power, regarded him as an enemy of their order, and joined in a conspiracy with the younger Tarquin for his destruction. His memory was venerated by the plebeians; tradition declared that he had been born on the nones of some month, but the name of the particular month was forgotten; the people, therefore, commemorated their benefactor on the nones of every month. When the aristocracy, after the expulsion of the kings, succeeded in wresting political power from the people, they forbade markets to be held on the nones, lest the remembrance of the Servian constitution should lead the people to hazard an insurrection in order to restore the laws of the martyr.

Mention has been made in the Introduction of the very different account given of the origin of Servius Tullius by the emperor Claudius in a speech to the senate, which he declares that he had derived from Etruscan historians; his narrative is very curious, and we shall give our readers a brief abstract of it. He says that Servius was by birth an

Questions for Examination.

1. What effect had the murder of Tarquin on his subjects?
2. By what means was the succession assured to Servius Tullius?
3. Who was Servius?
4. What was the chief object of his reign?
5. What was the nature of the change made by Servius in the Roman constitution?
6. Was the classification by centuries used for civil purposes only?
7. What other important measure did he adopt?
8. What hopes did he entertain in his old age?
9. By what means did he hope to secure tranquil possession of the throne?
10. How was it that the event failed to answer his expectations?
11. To what further crimes did this commencement lead?
12. What followed?
13. What was the conduct of his daughter on this melancholy occasion?
14. What was the character of Servius, and how long did he reign?

Etrurian, that his original name was Mastar'na, that he was a faithful follower of Cœ'les Viben'na, and accompanied that chieftain in all the adventurous campaigns which he undertook at the head of his independent companies. After the death of Cœ'les, his army dispersed, and a portion of them, under the command of Mastar'na, came to Rome, where they obtained from the reigning sovereign a grant of one of the hills for a residence, which they called the Cœ'lian, in honour of their old commander. Mastar'na became very popular with the Romans, and assumed a Roman name to identify himself the more completely with those amongst whom he had chosen to dwell. This, almost the only fragment we have of the Etrurian annals, appears very like true history; and it is partially confirmed by the Roman traditions respecting Cœ'les Viben'na, whom they describe as the leader of "free companies," like the condottieri of modern ages, sometimes hiring his bands to a state, and occasionally waging war on his own account.

CHAPTER VIII.

FROM THE DEATH OF SERVIUS TULLIUS TO THE BANISHMENT OF TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, THE SEVENTH AND LAST KING OF ROME.—U.C. 220.

A nobler spirit warm'd
Her sons; and roused by tyrants, nobler still
It burn'd in Brutus; the proud Tarquins chas'd,
With all their crimes; bade radiant eras rise,
And the long honours of the consul line. THOMSON.

1. Hered'itary, *a.* descending by inheritance.
2. Ineffi'cient, *a.* that does not answer the end proposed.
7. Confis'cate, *v.* to seize on private property, and convert it to public use by way of punishment.
9. Sib'yls, *s.* a certain number of women, who were supposed to have been endowed with a prophetic spirit, and to have foretold the revolutions and fates of kingdoms.
12. Quindecem'viri, *s.* literally the fifteen men.
13. Friv'olous, *a.* slight, trifling. Malefactors (from *male*, wickedly; and *facio*, to do), criminals, offenders against the law.
14. Sedu'lously, *ad.* busily, assiduously.
15. Unan'imously, *ad.* with one mind.
18. Inex'orable, *a.* not to be moved by any entreaty.
19. Achiev'ed, *v.* performed, accomplished.
20. Indel'ible, *a.* not to be effaced or blotted out.
22. Poig'nant, *a.* severe or painful. Pon'iard, *s.* a dagger or short sword.
25. Inflex'ible, *a.* not to be bent, or moved from a purpose.
26. Fo'rum, *s.* a public place at Rome, where lawyers, &c. made their speeches in matters of property, or in criminal cases.
27. Etru'ria, *s.* an extensive country of Rome, now called Tuscany.

1. LU'CIUS TARQUIN'IUS, afterwards called Super'bus, or the Proud, having placed himself upon the throne, in consequence of this horrid deed, was resolved to support his dignity with the same violence with which it was acquired. Regardless of the senate or the people's approbation, he seemed to claim the crown by an *hereditary* right, and refused burial to the late king's body, under pretence of his being an usurper. 2. All the good part of mankind, however, looked upon his accession with detestation and horror: and this act of *inefficient* cruelty only served to confirm their hatred. 3. Conscious of this, he ordered all such as he suspected to have been attached to Ser'vius, to be put to death; and fearing the natural consequences of his tyranny, he increased the guard round his person.

4. His chief policy seems to have been to keep the people always employed either in wars or public works, by which means he diverted their attention from his unlawful method of coming to the crown. He first marched against the Sab'ines, who refused to pay him obedience; and he soon reduced them to submission. 5. In the mean time,

many of the discontented patricians abandoning their native country, took refuge at Ga'bii, a city of La'tium, about twelve miles from Rome, waiting an opportunity to take up arms, and drive Tarquin from his throne. To escape this danger, Tarquin had recourse to the following stratagem. 6. He caused his son Sextus to counterfeit desertion, upon pretence of barbarous usage, and to seek refuge among the inhabitants of the place. There, by artful complaints and studied lamentations, Sextus so prevailed upon the pity of the people, as to be chosen their governor, and soon after, general of their army. 7. At first, in every engagement he appeared successful; till, at length, finding himself entirely possessed of the confidence of the state, he sent a trusty messenger to his father for instructions. Tarquin made no answer; but taking the messenger into the garden, he cut down before him the tallest poppies. Sextus readily understood the meaning of this reply, and found means to destroy or remove, one by one, the principal men of the city; taking care to *confiscate* their effects among the people. 8. The charms of this dividend kept the giddy populace blind to their approaching ruin, till they found themselves at last without counsellors or head; and, in the end, fell under the power of Tarquin, without even striking a blow [1].

9. But while he was engaged in wars abroad, he took care not to suffer the people to continue in idleness at home. He undertook to build the Capitol, the foundation of which had been laid in a former reign; and an extraordinary event contributed to hasten the execution of his design. A woman in strange attire made her appearance at Rome, and came to the king, offering to sell nine books, which she said were of her own composing. 10. Not knowing the abilities of the seller, or that she was, in fact, one of the celebrated *Sibyls*, whose prophecies were never found to fail, Tarquin refused to buy them. Upon this she departed, and burning three of her books, returned again, demanding the same price for the six remaining. 11. Being once more despised as an impostor, she again departed,

[1] This story is manifestly a fiction formed from the Greek traditions respecting Zopy'rus and Thrasybu'lus. It is decisively contradicted by the fact, that a treaty for the union of the Romans and Gabians, on equitable terms, was preserved in the Capitol. It was painted on a shield covered with the hide of the bull which had been sacrificed at the ratification of the league.

and burning three more, she returned with the remaining three, still asking the same price as at first. Tarquin, surprised at the inconsistency of her behaviour, consulted the augurs, to be advised what to do. These much blamed him for not buying the nine, and commanded him to take the three remaining at whatsoever price they were to be had. 12. The woman, says the historian, after thus selling and delivering the three prophetic volumes, and advising him to have a special attention to what they contained, vanished from before him, and was never seen after. A trick this, invented probably by Tarquin himself, to impose upon the people; and to find in the Sibyl's leaves whatever the government might require. However this was, he chose proper persons to keep them, who, though but two at first, were afterwards increased to fifteen, under the name of *Quindecemviri*. The important volumes were put into a stone chest, and a vault in the newly designed building was thought the properest place to secure them [1].

13. The people having been now for four years together employed in building the Capitol, began at last to wish for something new to engage them; Tarquin, therefore, to satisfy their wishes, proclaimed war against the Ru'tuli, upon a *frivolous* pretence of their having entertained some *malefactors*, whom he had banished; and invested their chief city, Ar'dea, which lay about sixteen miles from Rome. 14. While the army was encamped before this place, the king's son, Sextus Tarquin'ius Collati'nus, a noble Roman, and some others, sitting in a tent drinking together, the discourse turned upon wives, each man preferring the beauty and virtue of his own. Collati'nus offered to decide the dispute by putting it to an immediate trial, whose wife should be found possessed of the greatest beauty, and most *sedulously* employed at that very hour: being heated with wine, the proposal was relished by the whole company, and taking horse without delay, they posted to Rome, though the night was already pretty far advanced.

15. There they found Lucre'tia, the wife of Collati'nus, not like the other women of her age, spending the time in ease and luxury, but spinning in the midst of her maids, and cheerfully portioning out their tasks. Her modest beauty, and the easy reception she gave her husband and

[1] The Capitol, or temple of Jupiter Capitoli'nus.

his friends, so charmed them all, that they *unanimously* gave her the preference, but kindled in the breast of Sextus Tarquinius a detestable passion, that nothing but possession could satisfy.

16. For that purpose he went from the camp to visit her privately, a few days after, and found the same kind reception which he had met with before. As his intentions were not suspected, Lucre'tia sate with him at supper, and ordered a chamber to be got ready for him. Midnight was the time in which this ruffian thought it safest to put his designs in execution. 17. Having found means to convey himself into her chamber, he approached the bed-side with a drawn sword, and rudely laying his hand upon her bosom, threatened her with instant death if she offered to resist his passion. 18. Lucre'tia, affrighted out of her sleep, and seeing death so near, was yet *inexorable* to his desire; but was told that if she would not yield he would instantly kill her, lay his own slave dead in her bed by her, and then report that he had there discovered and killed them both. 19. The terror of infamy *achieved* what the fear of death could not obtain; and the next morning he returned to the camp, exulting in his brutal victory. 20. In the mean time, Lucre'tia, detesting the light, and resolving not to pardon herself for the crime of another, demanded her husband Collati'nus, and Spu'rius her father, to come to her; an *indelible* disgrace having befallen the family. 21. They instantly obeyed the summons, bringing with them Vale'rius, a kinsman of her father, and Ju'nius Bru'tus, a reputed idiot, whose father Tarquin had murdered, and who had accidentally met the messenger by the way. 22. Their arrival only served to increase Lucre'tia's *poignant* anguish: they found her in a state of the deepest desperation, and vainly attempted to give her relief. "No," said she, "never shall I find any thing worth living for in this world, under the loss of virtue. You see, my Collati'nus, a polluted wretch before you; one whose person has been the spoil of another, but whose affections were never estranged from you. Sextus Tarquin'ius, under the pretended veil of friendship, has this night violated that honour which death only can restore; but, if you have the hearts of men, remember to avenge my cause, and let posterity know, that she who has lost her virtue hath only death for her best consolation." So saying, she drew a *poniard* from beneath her robe, and instantly plunging it

into her bosom, expired without a groan. 23. Struck with sorrow, pity, and indignation, Spu'rius and Collati'nus gave vent to their grief; but Bru'tus, drawing the poniard reeking from Lucre'tia's wound, and lifting it up towards heaven, "Be witness, ye gods," he cried, "that, from this moment, I proclaim myself the avenger of the chaste Lucre'tia's cause; from this moment I profess myself the enemy of Tarquin, and his lustful house; from henceforth this life, while life continues, shall be employed in opposition to tyranny, and for the happiness and freedom of my much-loved country." 24. A new amazement seized the hearers: he, whom they had hitherto considered as an idiot, now appearing in his real character, the friend of justice and of Rome. He told them that tears and lamentations were unmanly, when vengeance called so loudly; and, delivering the poniard to the rest, imposed the same oath upon them which he himself had just taken.

25. Ju'nius Brutus was the son of Marcus Ju'nius, who was put to death by Tarquin the Proud, and the grandson of Tarquin the elder. He had received an excellent education from his father, and had, from nature, strong sense and an *inflexible* attachment to virtue; but knowing that Tarquin had murdered his father and his eldest brother, he counterfeited a fool, in order to escape the same danger, and thence obtained the surname of Bru'tus. Tarquin, thinking his folly real, despised the man; and having possessed himself of his estate, kept him as an idiot in his house, merely with a view of making sport for his children.

26. Brutus, however, only waited his opportunity to avenge the cause of his family. He ordered Lucre'tia's dead body to be brought out to view, and exposing it in the public *forum*, inflamed the ardour of the citizens by a display of the horrid transaction. He enumerated the many crimes which had rendered Tarquin odious to his subjects; that he had poisoned his own brother and wife, murdered his lawful sovereign, and filled the common sewers with the bodies of the nobility; that he was treacherous to his best friends, and inhuman to all his subjects; that their prospect in a successor was equally gloomy, as his three sons were of as tyrannical a temper as himself, of which the eldest had just given them a specimen.

He obtained a decree of the senate, that Tarquin and

his family should be for ever banished from Rome, and that it should be capital for any to plead for, or to attempt, his future return. 27. Thus this monarch, who had now reigned twenty-five years, being expelled his kingdom, went to take refuge with his family at Ci'ra, a little city of *Etru'ria*. In the mean time, the Roman army made a truce with the enemy, and Bru'tus was proclaimed deliverer of the people.

His statue was erected in a public part of the city, and a bust preserving the traditional features of his countenance is among the antique marbles in the royal museum of Paris.

Thus ended with Tarquin, after a continuance of two hundred and forty-five years, the regal state of Rome [1].

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the conduct of Lucius Tarquinius at the commencement of his reign?
2. Was his claim quietly acquiesced in?
3. What means did he adopt for his security?

[1] The territories of Rome were, at this time, about forty miles long, and thirty broad.

4. By what means did he divert the people's attention from the unlawful manner in which he acquired the crown?
5. What happened in the mean time?
6. To what mean artifice did he have recourse?
7. How did Sextus accomplish his father's design?
8. What were the effects of this measure?
9. In what way did he employ his subjects at home during his absence, and what extraordinary event occurred?
10. Did he accept her offer?
11. Was her second application successful, andw hat followed?
12. What became of the Sibyl, and what is the general opinion respecting this transaction?
13. Upon what pretence did Tarquin proclaim war against the Rutuli?
14. What remarkable event took place at the siege of Ardea?
15. What was the consequence of this intemperate frolic?
16. What method did Sextus take to accomplish his vile design?
17. How did he proceed?
18. With what did he threaten her?
19. What was the effect of this threat?
20. How did Lucretia support the loss of her honour?
21. Did they obey her summons, and whom did they bring with them?
22. What was the consequence of their arrival?
23. What effect had this dreadful catastrophe on those present?
24. How was this unexpected resolution received?
25. Give some account of Brutus.
26. For what reason, and by what means, did Brutus endeavour the abolition of royalty?
27. What became of Tarquin after his expulsion?

CHAPTER IX.

THE COMMONWEALTH.

FROM THE BANISHMENT OF TARQUIN TO THE APPOINTMENT OF THE DICTATOR.—U.C. 245.

The great republic see! that glow'd, sublime,
With the mixt freedom of a thousand states:
Raised on the thrones of kings her curule chair,
And by her fasces awed the subject world.
See busy millions quickening all the land,
With cities throng'd, and teeming culture high;
For Nature then smiled on her free-born sons.

THOMSON.

Dicta'tor, *s.* a Roman magistrate, invested with absolute authority, in times of extraordinary emergency.
Repub'lican, *a.* a state of government in which the supreme power is lodged in a select number of persons.
Mon'archy, *s.* the government of a single person, called a king.
3. Grate'ful, *a.* agreeable.
5. Intrig'ues, *s.* plots, secret contrivances.
7. Impel'led, *v.* obliged, driven.
9. Repress', *v.* to conquer, to subdue.
10. Sto'ic, *a.* destitute of mental feeling.
11. Insurrec'tion, *s.* a seditious rising.
Ve'ians, *s.* the inhabitants of Veii, about twelve miles from Rome: these people were sometimes called Veientes.
12. Remiss', *a.* slow, careless.
Cav'alry, *s.* horse soldiers.
13. Assa'il, *v.* to attack.
18. Sal'ly, *s.* a sudden issuing from a besieged place to attack the besiegers.
Blocka'de, *s.* a shutting up a besieged place, so that none can come out or go in.
22. Hei'nous, *a.* highly criminal.
24. Hos'tages, *s.* persons given in pledge as securities for the performance of certain conditions.
29. Abridg'ing, *part.* shortening, lessening.
30. Colleague, *s.* partner or associate in the same office.
31. Irk'some, *a.* disagreeable, not easily to be borne.
Coinci'des, *v.* agrees with, concurs.
Sta'ble, *a.* firm, well settled.
Extenua'tion, *s.* mitigation.

1. THE regal power being overthrown, a *republican* form of government was substituted in its room. The senate, however, reserved by far the greatest share of the authority to themselves, and decorated their own body with all the spoils of deposed *monarchy*. The centuries of the people chose from among the senators, instead of a king, two annual magistrates, whom they called CONSULS [1], with power equal to that of the regal, and with the same privileges and the same ensigns of authority.

[1] These were first called Prætors, next Judices, and afterwards Consuls, *à consulendo*, from their consulting the good of the commonwealth. They had the royal ornaments, as the golden crown, sceptre, purple robes, lictors, and the ivory and curule chairs. The crowns and sceptres were, however, used only on extraordinary days of triumph See Introduction.

2. Bru'tus, the deliverer of his country, and Collati'nus, the husband of Lucre'tia, were chosen the first consuls in Rome.

3. But this new republic, however, which seemed so *grateful* to the people, had like to have been destroyed in its very commencement. A party was formed in favour of Tarquin. Some young men of the principal families in the state, who had been educated about the king, and had shared in all the luxuries and pleasures of the court, undertook to re-establish monarchy. 4. This party secretly increased every day; and what may create surprise, the sons of Bru'tus himself, and the Aqui'lii, the nephews of Collati'nus, were among the number. 5. Tarquin, who was informed of these *intrigues* in his favour, sent ambassadors from Etru'ria to Rome, under a pretence of reclaiming the estates of the exiles; but in reality, with a design to give spirit to his faction [1]. 6. The conspiracy was discovered by a slave named Vindicius, who had accidentally hid himself in the room where the conspirators used to assemble [2]. Great honours were bestowed on the

slave who had discovered the danger of the republic, he was presented with the freedom of the city, and a

[1] Their demand was agreed to, and a decree passed, that the Tarquins should be put in possession of their paternal estates. (Livy. l. ii. c. 3. 5. —Dion. Hal.)

[2] They all bound themselves by solemn oaths, and by the detestable ceremony of drinking the blood of a murdered man, while the body lay panting at their feet, to do all in their power to destroy the consuls and restore the king. (Plut. in Poplic.)

considerable sum of money. One of the most beautiful ancient statues that has been preserved, is supposed to represent Vindicius overhearing the plot.

7. Few situations could have been more terribly affecting than that of Bru'tus; a father placed as a judge upon the life and death of his own children, *impelled* by justice to condemn, and by nature to spare them. 8. The young men pleaded nothing for themselves; but, with conscious guilt, awaited their sentence in silence and agony. 9. The other judges, who were present, felt all the pangs of nature; Collati'nus wept, and Vale'rius could not *repress* his sentiments of pity. Bru'tus, alone, seemed to have lost all the softness of humanity; and, with a stern countenance, and a tone of voice that marked his gloomy resolution, demanded of his sons, if they could make any defence to the crimes with which they had been charged. This demand he made three several times; but receiving no answer, he, at length, turned himself to the executioner, "Now," cried he, "it is your part to perform the rest." 10. Thus saying, he again resumed his seat with an air of determined majesty; nor could all the sentiments of paternal pity, the imploring looks of the people, nor yet the tears of his sons, who were preparing for execution, alter the tenor of his resolution. Bru'tus, unmoved by any motive but the public good, pronounced upon them the sentence of death, and by his office was obliged to see it put in execution. The prisoners were scourged, and then beheaded; and Bru'tus beheld the cruel spectacle; but, in spite of his *stoic* firmness, could not stifle the sentiments of nature, which he sacrificed to the necessity of his office.

11. Tarquin's hopes of an *insurrection* in his favour being thus overset, he now resolved to force himself upon his former throne by foreign assistance. He prevailed upon the *Veians* to assist him, and with a considerable army advanced towards Rome.

12. The consuls were not *remiss* in preparations to oppose him. Vale'rius commanded the foot, and Bru'tus being appointed to head the *cavalry*, went out to meet him on the Roman border. 13. A'runs, the son of Tarquin, who commanded the cavalry for his father, seeing Bru'tus at a distance, resolved, by one great attempt, to decide the fate of the day before the engaging of the armies; when, spurring his horse, he flew to him with fury. Bru'tus perceived his approach, and singled out from the

U.C. 246.

ranks, they met with such ungoverned rage, that, eager only to *assail*, and thoughtless of defending, they both fell dead upon the field together. 14. A bloody battle ensued, with equal slaughter on both sides; but the Romans, remaining in possession of the field of battle, claimed the victory [1]. In consequence, Vale'rius returned in triumph to Rome.

15. In the mean time, Tarquin, no way intimidated by his misfortunes, prevailed upon Porsen'na, one of the kings of Etru'ria, to espouse his cause, and in person to undertake his quarrel. 16. This prince, equally noted for courage and conduct, marched directly to Rome, with a numerous army, and laid siege to the city; while the terror of his name and arms filled all ranks of the people with dismay. The siege was carried on with vigour; a furious attack was made upon the place; the consuls opposed in vain, and were carried off wounded from the field; while the Romans, flying in great consternation, were pursued by the enemy to the bridge, over which both victors and vanquished were about to enter the city in the confusion. 17. All now appeared lost, when Hora'tius Co'cles, who had been placed there as sentinel to defend it, opposed himself to the torrent of the enemy, and, assisted only by two more [2], for some time sustained the whole fury of the assault, till the bridge was broken down behind him. When he found the communication thus cut off, plunging with his arms into the torrent of the Tiber, he swam back victorious to his fellow-soldiers, and was received with just applause [3].

18. Still, however, Porsen'na was determined upon taking the city; and though five hundred of his men were slain in a *sally* of the Romans, he reduced it to the greatest straits, and turning the siege into a *blockade*, resolved to take it by famine. 19. The distress of the besieged soon began to be insufferable, and all things seemed to threaten a speedy surrender, when another act of fierce bravery,

[1] The loss of the enemy was eleven thousand three hundred men, and that of the Romans nearly the same number. (Dion. Hal.)

[2] Hermin'ius and Lar'tius, who retired in safety a few moments before the bridge was completely demolished.

[3] For this heroic act, Hora'tius was crowned on his return; his statue was erected in the temple of Vul'can; as much land was given him as a plough could surround with a furrow in one day, and a tax was voluntarily imposed to make him a present in some degree suitable to the service he had performed.

still superior to that which had saved the city before, again brought about its safety and freedom.

20. Mu'tius, a youth of undaunted courage, was resolved to rid his country of an enemy that so continued to oppress it; and, for this purpose, disguised in the habit of an Etru'rian peasant, entered the camp of the enemy, resolving to die or to kill the king. 21. With this resolution he made up to the place where Porsen'na was paying his troops, with a secretary by his side; but, mistaking the latter for the king, he stabbed him to the heart, and was immediately apprehended, and brought into the royal presence. 22. Upon Porsen'na's demanding who he was, and the cause of so *heinous* an action, Mu'tius, without reserve, informed him of his country and his design, and at the same time thrusting his right hand into a fire that was burning upon the altar before him, "You see," cried he, "how little I regard the severest punishment your cruelty can inflict. A Roman knows, not only how to act, but how to suffer; I am not the only person you have to fear; three hundred Roman youths, like me, have conspired your destruction; therefore prepare for their attempts." 23. Porsen'na, amazed at so much intrepidity, had too noble a mind not to acknowledge merit, though found in an enemy; he, therefore, ordered him to be safely conducted back to Rome, and offered the besieged conditions of peace [1]. 24. These were readily accepted on their side, being neither hard nor disgraceful, except that twenty *hostages* were demanded; ten young men, and as many virgins, of the best families in Rome. 25. But even in this instance also, as if the gentler sex were resolved to be sharers in the desperate valour of the times, Cie'lia, one of the hostages, escaping from her guards, and pointing out the way to the rest of her female companions, swam over the Tiber on horseback, amidst showers of darts from the enemy, and presented herself to the consul. 26. This magistrate, fearing the consequences of detaining her, sent her back; upon which Porsen'na, not to be outdone in generosity, not only gave her liberty, but permitted her to choose such of the hostages, of the opposite sex, as she should think fit to attend her. 27. On her part, she, with all the modesty of a Roman virgin, chose only such as were

[1] From this time he obtained the additional name of Scævola, or left handed, from his having lost the use of his right hand by the fire.

under fourteen, alleging that their tender age was least capable of sustaining the rigours of slavery[1]. 28. The year after the departure of Porsen'na, the Sab'ines invading the Roman territories, committed great devastations. The war that ensued was long and bloody; but at length the Sab'ines were compelled to purchase a peace, with corn, money, and the cession of part of their territory.

29. Tarquin, by means of his son-in-law, Man'lius, once more stirred up the Latins to espouse his interest, and took the most convenient opportunity when the plebe'ians were at variance with the senators concerning the payment of their debts[2]. These refused to go to war, unless their debts were remitted upon their return: so that the consuls, finding their authority insufficient, offered the people to elect a temporary magistrate, who should have absolute power, not only over all ranks of the state, but even over the laws themselves. To this the plebe'ians readily consented, willing to give up their own power for the sake of *abridging* that of their superiors. 30. In consequence of this Lar'tius was created the first dictator of Rome, for so was this high office called, being nominated to it by his *colleague* in the consulship. 31. Thus the people, who could not bear the very name of king, readily submitted to a magistrate possessed of much greater power; so much do the names of things mislead us, and so little is any form of government *irksome* to the people, when it *coincides* with their prejudices.

[1] National pride induced the Romans to conceal the fact, that the city was surrendered to Porsenna; Tacitus, however, expressly declares that it was, and Pliny informs us of the severe conditions imposed by the conqueror: one of the articles prohibited them from using iron except for the purposes of agriculture. Plutarch, in his Roman Questions, declares that there was a time when the Romans paid a tenth of their produce to the Etrurians, but that they were freed from the disgraceful tribute by Hercules; this tradition appears to refer to the conquest of the city by Porsenna.

[2] Besides this, by his emissaries he engaged the meaner sort of citizens and the slaves in a conspiracy. The former were at an appointed time to seize the ramparts, and the latter to murder their masters at the same instant. The gates were then to be opened to the Tar'quins, who were to enter Rome while it was yet reeking with the blood of the senators. This conspiracy was discovered to the consul by two of Tarquin's principal agents.

Questions for Examination.

1. What form of government was substituted for the regal?
2. Who were the first consuls?
3. Did this new government appear *stable* at its commencement?
4. Was this party formidable, and who were the most remarkable of its members?
5. What share had Tarquin in this conspiracy?
6. By what means was it discovered?
7. In what unhappy situation was Brutus placed?
8. What had the criminals to say in *extenuation* of their offences?
9. What effect had this scene on the judges?
10. Did not paternal affection cause him to relent?
11. What measures did Tarquin next pursue?
12. What steps were taken to resist him?
13. What remarkable event attended the meeting of the armies?
14. Did this decide the fate of the day?
15. Did Tarquin relinquish his hopes?
16. In what manner did Porsenna attempt the restoration of Tarquin?
17. By what heroic action was the city saved?
18. Did Porsenna persevere in his attempt?
19. What was the consequence?
20. What was this act of heroism?
21. Did he succeed?
22. What followed?
23. How did Porsenna act on the occasion?
24. Were these conditions accepted?
25. What remarkable circumstance attended the delivery of the hostages?
26. How did the consul act on the occasion?
27. Whom did she choose?
28. What happened after the departure of Porsenna?
29. What measures did Tarquin next resort to?
30. What was the consequence?
31. What inference may be drawn from this?

CHAPTER X.

FROM THE CREATION OF THE DICTATOR TO THE ELECTION OF THE TRIBUNES.—U.C. 255.

The senators of Rome are this good belly,
And you the mutinous members: for, examine
Their counsels and their cares; digest things rightly,
Touching the weal o' the common; you shall find,
No public benefit, which you receive,
But it proceeds, or comes, from them to you;
And no way from yourselves. SHAKSPEARE.

3. Len'ity, *s.* mildness, mercy.
5. Defec'tion, *s.* a falling away, a revolt.
6. Obliv'ion, *s.* forgetfulness, a general pardon for offences against the state.
8. Or'atory, *s.* a fine and persuasive manner of speaking.
Ag'gravated, *v.* heightened, represented as worse than they really were.
10. Aver'red, *v.* declared positively.
11. Ob'vious, *a.* easily discovered, clear.
13. Annul'ling, *part.* abolishing, making void.
Valid'ity, *s.* force, effect.

1. LAR'TIUS being created dictator[1], entered upon his office, surrounded with lictors and all the ensigns of ancient royalty; and seated upon a throne in the midst of the people, ordered the levies to be made in the manner of the kings of Rome. 2. The populace looked with terror upon a magistrate whom they had invested with uncontrollable power, and each went peaceably to range himself under his respective standard. 3. Thus going forth to oppose the enemy, he, after concluding a truce for a year, returned with his army, and in six months laid down the dictatorship, with the reputation of having exercised it with blameless *lenity*[2].

4. But, though for this time the people submitted to be led forth, they yet resolved to free themselves from the

[1] The power of the dictator was absolute; he could of his own will make peace or war, levy forces, lead them forth, disband them, and even dispense with the existing laws at his pleasure, without consulting the senate.

[2] At the expiration of the truce with the Latins, Posthu'mius, at that time dictator, marched against them, obtained a complete victory over them at the Lake Regil'lus, and concluded an advantageous peace. About this time died Tarquin, which put an end to any farther contests for the crown.

yoke; and though they could not get their grievances[1] redressed, yet they determined to fly from those whom they could not move to compassion. The grievances, therefore, continuing, they resolved to quit a city which gave them no shelter, and to form a new establishment without its limits. They, therefore, under the conduct of a plebe'ian named Sicin'ius Bellu'tus, retired to a mountain, hence called the Mons Sacer[2], within three miles of Rome.

5. Upon the news of this *defection*, the city was filled with tumult and consternation: those who wished well to the people made every attempt to scale the walls, in order to join it[3]. 6. The senate was not less agitated than the rest; some were for violent measures, and repelling force by force; others were of opinion that gentler arts were to be used, and that even a victory over such enemies would be worse than a defeat. At length, it was resolved to send a messenger, entreating the people to return home and declare their grievances, promising at the same time an *oblivion* of all that had passed.

7. This message not succeeding, Mene'nius Agrip'pa, one of the wisest and best of the senators, was of opinion, that the demands of the people were to be complied with. It was resolved, therefore, to enter into a treaty, and to make them such offers as should induce them to return. 8. Ten commissioners were deputed. The dignity and popularity of the ambassadors procured them a very respectful reception among the soldiers, and a conference began. They employed all their *oratory;* while Sicin'ius and Lu'cius Ju'nius, who were speakers for the soldiery, *aggravated* their distresses with all that masculine eloquence which is the child of nature.

9. The conference had now continued for a long time, when Mene'nius Agrip'pa, who had been originally a plebe'ian himself, a shrewd man, and who, consequently, knew what kind of eloquence was most likely to please the people, addressed them with that celebrated fable which is so finely told by Livy[4]. 10. "In times of old, when every

[1] The principal of these grievances was the intolerable severity of creditors, who seized their debtors as slaves, notwithstanding many of them had fought and bled for their country.

[2] Sacred mountain.

[3] The gates had been shut by order of the senate, to prevent farther defection.

[4] Titus Liv'ius was born at Pad'ua (the ancient Patavi'nus) in the

part of the body could think for itself, and each had a separate will of his own, they all, with common consent, resolved to revolt against the belly. They knew no reason, they said, why they should toil from morning till night in its service, while the belly, in the mean time, lay at his ease in the midst of them all, and indolently grew fat upon their labours: accordingly, one and all, they agreed to befriend it no more. The feet vowed they would no longer carry the load; the hands vowed they would not feed it, and the teeth *averred* they would not chew its food. Thus resolved, they all, for some time, showed their spirit, and kept their word; but soon found, that instead of mortifying the belly by these means, they only undid themselves; they languished for a while, and perceived, when too late, that it was owing to the belly, that they had strength to work, or courage to mutiny."

11. This fable, the application of which is *obvious*, had an instantaneous effect upon the people. They unanimously cried out, that Agrip'pa should lead them back to Rome; and were making preparations to follow him, when Lu'cius Ju'nius withheld them; alleging that though they ought gratefully to acknowledge the kind offers of the senate, yet they had no safeguard against their future resentment; that therefore it was necessary, for the security of the people, to have certain officers created annually from among themselves, who should have power to give redress to such of them as should be injured, and plead the cause of the community. 12. The people, who are generally of opinion with the last speaker[1], highly applauded this proposal, with which, however, the commissioners had not power to comply; they, therefore, sent to Rome to take the instructions of the senate,

year of Rome 695. He wrote the Roman history, from the foundation of the city to the year 744, in 140 books, of which only 35 remain, and some of them are still imperfect. Though Livy was treated with great marks of respect by the emperor Augustus, in whose reign he flourished, yet he extolled Pompey so highly, that Augustus used to call him a *Pompeian;* and though he was by no means backward in bestowing praises on Brutus and Cassius, the enemies of Augustus, yet it did not interrupt their friendship. Livy died at his native city, in the fourth year of the reign of Tiberius, aged 76 years.

[1] This is a severe satire upon the judgment of the multitude; indeed, it seems intended to show, that when the passions are appealed to, the judgment is not much consulted; and therefore, that little reliance ought to be placed on acts resulting from popular acclamation.

who, distracted with divisions among themselves, and harassed by complaints from without, were resolved to have peace, at whatever price it should be obtained; accordingly, as if with one voice, they consented to the creation of these new officers, who were called *Tribunes*[1] *of the People.*

13. The tribunes of the people were at first five in number, though afterwards their body was increased by five more. They were always annually elected by the people, and almost always from their body. They at first had their seats placed before the doors of the senate-house, and, when called in, they were to examine every decree, *annulling* it by the word, *Veto*, "*I forbid it;*" or confirming it by signing the letter *T*, which gave it *validity*. 14. This new office being thus instituted, all things were adjusted both on the one side and the other, and the people, after having sacrificed to the gods of the mountain, returned back once more in triumph to Rome.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the first acts of the dictator?
2. Were his decrees peaceably obeyed?
3. What were his exploits?
4. Were the discontents of the people entirely appeased?
5. How was the news of this defection received?
6. What was its effect on the senate?
7. Was this offer accepted?
8. In what manner was this done, and how were they received?
9. What was the result of this conference?
10. Repeat this fable.
11. What effect did this apology produce?
12. How was this obstacle removed?
13. Who were the tribunes of the people, and what was their authority?
14. Did this new regulation answer the desired end?

[1] They were called tribunes, because chosen by the tribes. The first tribunes were L. Ju'nius Bru'tus, C. Sicin'ius Bellu'tus, Pub'lius Licin'ius, C. Licin'ius, and Sp. Icil'ius Ruga.

CHAPTER XI.

SECT. I.

FROM THE CREATION OF THE TRIBUNES TO THE APPOINTMENT OF THE DECEMVIRI.—U.C. 260.

Know, Rome, that all alone Marcius did fight
Within Corioli's gates: where he hath won,
With fame, a name to Caius Marcius; these
In honour follows Coriolanus.
Welcome to Rome, renowned Coriolanus!—SHAKSPEARE.

2. Patri'cians, *s.* noblemen.
Aboli'tion, *s.* the act of destroying or extinguishing any thing, so that no part shall remain.
5. Adja'cent, *a.* lying near, neighbouring.
Intrepid'ity, *s.* courage, boldness.
Au'ditors, *s.* hearers.
6. Embez'zled, *part.* appropriated to his own use.
An'tium, *s.* a maritime city of the Vol'sci, in Italy, which sustained a war against the Romans for 200 years, and was at last taken by Camil'lus.
Ex'ile, *s.* banishment.
8. Vol'sci, *s.* a people of La'tium in Italy.
11. Infrac'tion, *s.* a breaking.
13. Lev'ies, *s.* the enlisting of soldiers.
Alli'es, *s.* nations united in friendship.
18. Conjur'ing, *part.* earnestly entreating, or adjuring in the name of God.
19. Pon'tiffs, *s.* the highest order of priests.
21. Adjura'tion, *s.* a solemn entreaty.
22. Em'bassy, *s.* a message of business between princes and states.
Ma'tron, *s.* an elderly lady, or old woman, a mother.
23. Tribu'nal, *s.* the seat of a judge.
27. Despot'ic, *a.* absolute in power, able to do any thing by his own will alone.
Ambusca'de, *s.* the place where an enemy is concealed.

1. DURING the late separation, all tillage had been entirely neglected, and a famine was the consequence the ensuing season. 2. The senate did all that lay in their power to remedy the distress; but the people, pinched with want, and willing to throw the blame on any but themselves, ascribed the whole of their distress to the avarice of the *patricians*; who having purchased all the corn, as was alleged, intended to indemnify themselves for the *abolition* of debts, by selling it out to great advantage. 3. But plenty soon after appeased them for a time. A fleet of ships laden with corn from Sicily once more raised their spirits.

4. But Coriola'nus[1] incurred their resentment, by insisting that the corn should not be distributed till the

[1] This man's name was originally Ca'ius Mar'cius. He received the surname of Coriola'nus as a reward for having by his valour occasioned the taking of Cori'oli, the capital of the Vol'sci. Previous to the occurrence mentioned in the text, he had been condemned to death by the tribunes, but saved by the interference of his friends.

grievances of the senate were removed. For this, the tribunes summoned him to a trial before the people. 5. When the appointed day was come, all persons were filled with the greatest expectations, and a vast concourse from the *adjacent* country assembled and filled the forum. Coriola'nus presented himself before the people with a degree of *intrepidity* that merited better fortune. His graceful person, his persuasive eloquence, and the cries of those whom he had saved from the enemy, inclined the *auditors* to relent. 6. But being unable to answer what was alleged against him to the satisfaction of the people, and utterly confounded with a new charge, of having *embezzled* the plunder of *Antium*, the tribunes immediately took the votes, and Coriola'nus was condemned to perpetual *exile*.

7. This sentence against their bravest defender struck the senate with sorrow, consternation, and regret. Coriola'nus alone, in the midst of the tumult, seemed an unconcerned spectator. 8. He returned home, followed by the lamentations of the most respectable senators and citizens, to take leave of his wife, his children, and his mother Vetu'ria. Then, recommending all to the care of Heaven, he left the city, without followers or fortune, to take refuge with Tullus At'tius [1], a man of great power among the *Volsci*, who took him under his protection, and espoused his quarrel.

9. Some pretence was necessary to induce the Volsci to break the league which had been made with Rome; and for this purpose, Tullus sent many of his citizens thither, apparently for the purpose of seeing some games at that time celebrating; but gave the senate private information that the strangers had dangerous intentions of burning the city. 10. This had the desired effect; the senate issued an order, that all strangers, whoever they were, should depart from Rome before sunset. 11. This order Tullus represented to his countrymen as an *infraction* of the treaty, and procured an embassy to Rome, complaining of the breach, and re-demanding all the territories belonging to the Volsci, of which they had been violently dispos-

[1] Tullus At'tius was a most determined enemy to the Romans, and to Coriola'nus in particular, for the share he had in humbling the power of the Vol'sci. It was probably more from a hope of revenge, by means of this valiant soldier, than any noble principle, that he offered him his countenance and protection.

sessed; declaring war in case of refusal. This message, however, was treated by the senate with contempt. 12. War being in consequence declared on both sides, Coriola'nus and Tullus were made generals of the Volsci, and accordingly invaded the Roman territories, ravaging and laying waste all such lands as belonged to the plebeians, but letting those of the senators remain untouched. 13. In the mean time, the *levies* went on but slowly at Rome; the two consuls, who were re-elected by the people, seemed but little skilled in war, and even feared to encounter a general whom they knew to be their superior in the field. The *allies* also showed their fears, and slowly brought in their succours: so that Coriola'nus continued to take their towns one after the other. 14. Fortune followed him in every expedition, and he was now so famous for his victories, that the Volsci left their towns defenceless to follow him into the field. The very soldiers of his colleague's army came over to him, and would acknowledge no other general. 15. Thus finding himself unopposed in the field, and at the head of a numerous army, he at length invested the city of Rome itself, fully resolved to besiege it. 16. It was then the senate and the people unanimously agreed to send deputies to him, with proposals for his restoration, in case he would draw off his army. 17. Coriola'nus received these proposals at the head of his principal officers,[1] and with the sternness of a general that was to give the law, refused their offers.

18. Another embassy was now sent, *conjuring* him not to exact from his native city aught but what became Romans to grant. Coriola'nus, however, naturally severe, still persisted in his former demands, and granted them only three days for deliberation. 19. In this exigence, all that was left to be done was another deputation still more solemn than either of the former, composed of the *pontiffs*, priests, and augurs. These, clothed in their habits of ceremony, and with a grave and mournful deportment, issued from the city, and entered the camp of

[1] "Is a bare re-establishment in Rome," said he, "a sufficient satisfaction for the affronts I have received? Can there be any safety for me, while a Sicin'ius or a De'cius is able to arm the populace against my life? No, Rome is an unnatural mother, who has cast off a son that was useful to her, and zealous for her glory. She shall soon know, by the effects of my resentment, whose cause it is that the gods espouse."

the conqueror; but all in vain, they found him severe and inflexible.

20. When the people saw them return without success, they began to give up the commonwealth as lost. Their temples were filled with old men, with women and children, who, prostrate at the altars, put up their ardent prayers for the preservation of their country. Nothing was to be heard but anguish and lamentation: nothing to be seen but scenes of affright and distress. 21. At length, it was suggested to them, that what could not be effected by the intercession of the senate, or the *adjuration* of the priests, might be brought about by the tears of a wife, or the commands of a mother. 22. This deputation seemed to be approved by all, and even the senate themselves gave it the sanction of their authority. Vetu'ria, the mother of Coriola'nus, at first hesitated to undertake so pious a work, knowing the inflexible temper of her son, and fearing only to show his disobedience in a new point of light, by his rejecting the commands of a parent; however, she at last undertook the *embassy*, and set forward from the city, accompanied by many of the principal *matrons* of Rome, with Volum'nia his wife and his two children. 23. Coriola'nus, who at a distance discovered this mournful train of females, was resolved to give them a denial, and called his officers round him to be witnesses of his resolution; but, when told that his mother and his wife were among the number, he instantly came down from his *tribunal*, to meet and embrace them. 24. At first the women's tears and embraces took away the power of words, and the rough soldier himself, hardy as he was, could not refrain from sharing their distress. Coriola'nus now seemed much agitated by contending passions; while his mother, who saw him moved, seconded her words by the most persuasive eloquence, that of tears: his wife and children hung around him, entreating for protection and pity: while the female train, her companions, added their lamentations, and deplored their own and their country's distress. 25. Coriola'nus for a moment was silent, feeling the strong conflict between honour and inclination; at length, as if roused from a dream, he flew to raise his mother, who had fallen at his feet, crying out, "O, my mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son!" He accordingly gave orders to draw off the army, pretending to the officers that the city was too strong to be taken. 26. Tullus, who had long

envied Coriola'nus, was not remiss in aggravating the lenity of his conduct to his countrymen. Upon their return, Coriola'nus is said to have been slain by an insurrection of the people, and honourably buried, after a late and ineffectual repentance [1].

27. Great and many were the public rejoicings at Rome upon the retreat of the Vol'scian army [2]; but they were clouded soon after by the intrigues of Spu'rius Cas'sius, who, wanting to make himself *despotic* by means of the people, was found guilty of a number of crimes, all tending towards altering the constitution; and was thrown headlong from the Tarpei'an rock [3], by those very people whose interests he had endeavoured to extend.

Soon after the death of Cas'sius, the Veien'tes made incursions almost to the walls of Rome. As the discontents respecting the Agra'rian law, and the low state of the treasury, rendered the senate incapable of effectually resisting them, the noble family of the Fa'bii voluntarily offered themselves for this service. These, with their clients, amounted to above 4000 men. They fortified themselves in a castle, called Crem'era; and for some time proved themselves able defenders of their country; but having been enticed into an *ambuscade,* they were all destroyed.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the consequences of the late separation?—
2. What measures were taken to remedy these misfortunes, and to whom was the blame of them attributed? —

---

[1] The traditions respecting the death of Coriola'nus differed from each other. Livy adopts the account given in the text, Cicero says that he committed suicide rather than bear arms against his country, but Fa'bius Pictor declares that he lived to an advanced age in exile, and often lamented the misery of spending his declining years amongst enemies and strangers.

The Volscian war deprived Rome of her supremacy in Latium, which she scarcely recovered during the succeeding century; to console themselves for a loss so mortifying to their pride, the Romans represented the Volscians as commanded by one of their own fugitive generals; and it is probable that Marcius may have held some subordinate command in the invading army.

[2] The senate commanded a temple to be erected on the spot where the interview between Coriola'nus and his mother took place, which saved Rome: and dedicated it to maternal influence.

[3] Tarpei'an Rock, or Tarpei'us Mons, a hill at Rome, about 80 feet in perpendicular height, whence the Romans threw down their condemned criminals.

3. What happened to remove the popular discontent?
4. What circumstances raised a fresh commotion?
5. Did Coriolanus obey the summons?
6. What was the issue of the trial?
7. To what sensations did this sentence give rise?
8. What circumstance attended his departure?
9. In what manner did he commence his revenge?
10. Was this information believed?
11. What use did Tullus make of this order?
12. To whom was the conduct of the war committed?
13. Was this invasion vigorously opposed?
14. Was Coriolanus uniformly successful?
15. What did this good fortune induce him to undertake?
16. What measures did the senate adopt on this emergency?
17. How were these proposals received?
18. Were they repeated?
19. What was the next step adopted?
20. Did the Romans boldly resolve to oppose force by force?
21. What new expedient was proposed?
22. Was this proposal adopted?
23. What was the conduct of Coriolanus on the occasion?
24. Describe this interview.
25. What was the result?
26. Did the Volscians approve of this measure?
27. What followed this happy deliverance?

SECTION II.

Like rigid Cincinnatus, nobly poor. THOMSON.

1. Ci'ted, *v.* summoned.
7. Ex'igence, *s.* pressing necessity, critical situation.
8. De'file, *s.* narrow pass, a kind of lane, where but few men can march abreast.
   E'gress, *s.* passage out of a place.
9. Hem'med, *part.* surrounded.
11. Consterna'tion, *s.* excessive fear.
17. Intrench'ments, *s.* fortifications, composed of banks and ditches.
18. Cessa'tion, *s.* a respite, a stop, an interval.
21. Inev'itable, *a.* not to be escaped, certain.
    Prof'fers, *s.* offers made.
    Com'petence, *s.* a moderate sufficiency.
22. Ostenta'tion, *s.* a boast, outward show.
26. Bal'loting urns, *s.* urns in which the lots were contained which were to decide any proposed question.

1. THE year following, the two consuls of the former year, Man'lius and Fa'bius, were *cited* by the tribunes to appear before the people. The Agra'rian law, which had been proposed some time before, for equally dividing the lands of the commonwealth among the people, was the object invariably pursued, and they were accused of having made unjustifiable delays in putting it off.

2. The Agra'rian law was a grant the senate could not think of making to the people. The consuls, therefore,

made many delays and excuses; till at length they were once more obliged to have recourse to a dictator[1]; and they fixed upon Quintus Cincinna'tus, a man who had for some time given up all views of ambition, and retired to his little farm, where the deputies of the senate found him holding the plough, and dressed in the mean attire of a labouring husbandman[2]. 3. He appeared but little elevated with the addresses of ceremony, and the pompous habits they brought him; and upon declaring to him the senate's pleasure, he testified rather a concern that his aid should be wanted. He naturally preferred the charms of a country retirement to the fatiguing splendours of office, and only said to his wife as they were leading him away, "I fear, my Atti'lia, that for this year our little fields must remain unsown." 4. Then taking a tender leave, he departed for the city, where both parties were strongly inflamed against each other. However, he resolved to side with neither; but by a strict attention to the interests of his country, instead of gaining the confidence of faction, to seize the esteem of all. 5. Thus, by threats and well-timed submission, he prevailed upon the tribunes to put off their law for a time, and conducted himself so as to be a terror to the multitude whenever they refused to enlist; and their greatest encourager whenever their submission deserved it. 6. Having by these means restored that tranquillity to the people which he so much loved himself, he again gave up the splendours of ambition, to enjoy it with a greater relish in his little farm.

7. Cincinna'tus had not long retired from his office, when a fresh *exigence* of the state once more required his assistance; and the Æ'qui and the Vol'sci, who, although always worsted, were still for renewing the war, made new inroads into the territories of U.C. 295.

[1] Cincinna'tus was chosen consul only, in the room of Pub'lius Vale'rius, who died during his consulship. He was afterwards appointed dictator, in the war with the Æ'qui and Vol'sci.

[2] The poverty of Cincinna'tus was caused by the crimes of his son, Cæ'so Quinc'tius. This young patrician, with a band of his associates, insulted the plebeian magistrates and offered violence to their persons. He was of course indicted, but allowed to remain at large on giving heavy security for his appearance on the day of trial. In the intervening time, Cæso and his companions murdered an aged and sick plebeian, and justly dreading popular resentment he fled into Tuscany. The payment of the heavy bail compelled Cincinna'tus to sell all his property. Cincinna'tus was a violent partisan of the aristocracy, and a fierce enemy of the rights and privileges of the people.

Rome. 8. Minu'tius, one of the consuls who succeeded Cincinna'tus, was sent to oppose them; but being naturally timid, and rather more afraid of being conquered than desirous of victory, his army was driven into a *defile* between two mountains, from which, except through the enemy, there was no *egress*. 9. This, however, the Æ'qui had the precaution to fortify, by which the Roman army was so *hemmed* in on every side, that nothing remained but submission to the enemy, famine, or immediate death. 10. Some knights, who found means of getting away privately through the enemy's camp, were the first that brought the account of this disaster to Rome. 11. Nothing could exceed the *consternation* of all ranks of people when informed of it: the senate at first thought of the other consul; but not having sufficient experience of his abilities, they unanimously turned their eyes upon Cincinna'tus, and resolved to make him dictator. 12. Cincinna'tus, the only person on whom Rome could now place her whole dependence, was found, as before, by the messengers of the senate, labouring in his field with cheerful industry. 13. He was at first astonished at the ensigns of unbounded power with which the deputies came to invest him; but still more at the approach of the principal of the senate, who came out to attend him. 14. A dignity so unlooked for, however, had no effect upon the simplicity or integrity of his manners; and being now possessed of absolute power, and called upon to nominate his master of the horse, he chose a poor man named Tarqui'tius, one who, like himself, despised riches when they led to dishonour. Thus the saving a great nation was devolved upon a husbandman taken from the plough, and an obscure sentinel found among the dregs of the army[1]. 15. Upon entering the city, the dictator put on a serene look, and entreated all those who were able to bear arms to repair before sunset to the Cam'pus Mar'tius (the place where the levies were made), with necessary arms, and provisions for five days. 16. He put himself at the head of these, and marching all night with great expedition, arrived early the next day within sight of the enemy. Upon his approach, he ordered his soldiers to raise a loud shout, to

[1] Though Tarqui'tius was poor, and served as a private sentinel, he was a patrician by birth, and of uncommon valour. Cincinna'tus, therefore, did justice to his merit, and notwithstanding his poverty, raised him to that high station.

apprise the consul's army of the relief that was at hand. 17. The Æ'qui were not a little amazed when they saw themselves between two enemies; but still more when they perceived Cincinna'tus making the strongest *intrenchments* beyond them, to prevent their escape, and enclosing them as they had enclosed the consul. 18. To prevent this, a furious combat ensued; but the Æ'qui being attacked on both sides, and unable longer to resist or fly, begged a *cessation* of arms. 19. They offered the dictator his own terms; he gave them their lives, and obliged them, in token of servitude, to pass under the yoke; which was two spears set upright, and another across, in the form of a gallows, beneath which the vanquished were to march. Their captains and generals he made prisoners of war, being reserved to adorn his triumph. 20. As for the plunder of the enemy's camp, that he gave entirely up to his own soldiers, without reserving any part for himself, or permitting those of the delivered army to have a share. 21. Thus having rescued a Roman army from *inevitable* destruction, having defeated a powerful enemy, having taken and fortified their city, and still more, having refused any part of the spoil, he resigned his dictatorship, after having enjoyed it but fourteen days. The senate would have enriched him, but he declined their *proffers*, choosing to retire once more to his farm and his cottage, content with *competence* and fame.

22. But this repose from foreign invasion did not lessen the tumults of the city within. The clamours for the Agra'rian law still continued, and still more fiercely, when Sic'cius Denta'tus, a plebe'ian advanced in years, but of an admirable person and military deportment, came forward to enumerate his hardships and his merits. This old soldier made no scruple of extolling the various achievements of his youth; indeed, his merits more than supported his *ostentation*. 23. He had served his country in the wars forty years: he had been an officer thirty, first a centurion, and then a tribune; he had fought one hundred and twenty battles, in which, by the force of his single arm, he had saved a multitude of lives; he had gained fourteen civic[2], three mural[3], and eight golden crowns;

[1] About this time the number of the tribunes was increased from five to ten.

[2] A civic crown among the Romans was made of oaken leaves, and given to those who had saved the life of a citizen.

[3] A mural crown was an honorary reward, given by the ancient Romans to the soldiers who first scaled the walls of an enemy's city.

besides eighty-three chains, sixty bracelets, eighteen gilt spears, and twenty-three horse-trappings, whereof nine were for killing the enemy in single combat; moreover, he had received forty-five wounds in front, and none behind. 24. These were his honours; yet, notwithstanding all these, he had never received any share of those lands which were won from the enemy, but continued to drag on a life of poverty and contempt, while others were possessed of those very territories which his valour had won, without any merit to deserve them, or ever having contributed to the conquest[1]. 25. A case of so much hardship had a strong effect upon the multitude; they unanimously demanded that the law might be passed, and that such merit should not go unrewarded. It was in vain that some of the senators rose up to speak against it, their voices were drowned by the cries of the people. 26. When reason, therefore, could no longer be heard, passion, as usual, succeeded; and the young patricians, running furiously into the throng, broke the *balloting urns*, and dispersed the multitude that offered to oppose them. 27. For this they were some time after fined by the tribunes; but were afterwards reimbursed the amount of their fines by the voluntary contributions of the senate.

This illegal violence prevented the enactment of the proposed law, and greatly increased the animosity between the patricians and plebeians.

Questions for Examination.

1. On what accusation were Manlius and Fabius cited to appear before the people?
2. What measures did the consuls adopt?
   Where, and in what employment, was Cincinnatus found?
3. What effect had this new dignity on Cincinnatus?
4. How did he conduct himself?
5. Were his measures successful?
6. Did Cincinnatus continue in office?
7. Was he permitted to continue in retirement?
8. What was the exigence that required his return to office?
9. What prevented the Romans from forcing their way through?

[1] "These military toys," said he, "are the only rewards I have hitherto received. No lands, no share of the conquered countries. Usurpers, without any title but that of a patrician extraction, possess them. Is this to be endured? Shall they alone possess the fruits of our conquests? The purchase of our blood?"

10. Who brought the news of this disaster to Rome?
11. How was this news received at Rome?
Whom did they resolve to appoint dictator?
12. How was Cincinnatus now employed when the messengers arrived?
13. What was his behaviour on the occasion?
14. How was he affected by this exaltation?
15. What were his first measures?
16. What followed?
17. How were the enemy affected by his approach?
18. What was the consequence?
19. What were the terms of peace?
20. What became of the plunder?
21. What were his rewards for this important service?
22. Was domestic tranquillity the consequence of foreign conquest?
23. What were these achievements?
24. How was he rewarded?
25. What was the consequence of his appeal to the people?
26. Did the people obtain their demand?
27. How was this outrage punished?

CHAPTER XII.

SECT. I.

FROM THE CREATION OF THE DECEMVIRI TO THE EXTINCTION OF THAT OFFICE.—U.C. 302.

She's gone; for ever gone! The king of terrors
Lays his rude hands upon her lovely limbs,
And blasts her beauty with his icy breath. DENNIS.

1. Fluc'tuating, *part.* changing, wavering.
Respi're, *v.* to breathe.
Ar'bitrary, *a.* tyrannic, despotic, without regard to any law.
4 Depop'ulated, *v.* unpeopled, laid waste.
9. Decem'viri, *s.* (from the Latin words *decem*, ten, and *viri*, men,) ten magistrates, chosen annually at Rome, to govern the commonwealth, and to make laws.
12. Rapa'city, *s.* covetousness, extortion.
13. Proscrip'tion, *s.* confiscation of goods, a doom to death.
17. Depo'sed, *v.* removed from office.
23. Achil'les, *s.* (pro. *Akil'les*), the son of Pe'leus, king of Thrace, a Grecian hero, who signalized himself at the siege of Troy, and was killed by Paris with an arrow.
29. Detest'able, *a.* hateful, odious.

1. THE commonwealth of Rome had now for nearly sixty years been *fluctuating* between the contending orders that composed it, till at length each side, as if weary, was willing to *respire* awhile from the mutual exertions of its claims. The citizens of every rank began to complain of the *arbitrary* decisions of their magistrates, and wished to be guided by a written body of laws, which being known, might prevent wrongs as well as punish them.
2. In this both the senate and the people concurred, as

hoping that such laws would put an end to the commotions that so long had harassed the state. 3. It was thereupon agreed that ambassadors should be sent to the Greek cities in Italy, and to Athens, to bring home such laws from thence, as by experience had been found most equitable and useful. For this purpose three senators, Posthu'mus, Sulpi'cius, and Man'lius, were fixed upon, and galleys assigned to convoy them agreeably to the majesty of the Roman people. 4. While they were upon this commission abroad, a dreadful plague *depopulated* the city at home, and supplied the interval of their absence with other anxiety than that of wishes for their return. 5. In about a year the plague ceased, and the ambassadors returned, bringing home a body of laws collected from the most civilized states of Greece and Italy, which, being afterwards formed into ten tables, and two more being added, made that celebrated code called the Laws of the Twelve Tables [1].

6. The ambassadors were no sooner returned, than the tribunes required that a body of men should be chosen to digest their new laws into proper form, and to give weight to the execution of them. 7. After long debate, whether this choice should not be made from the people, as well as the patricians, it was at last agreed that ten of the principal senators should be elected, whose power continuing for a year, should be equal to that of kings and consuls, and that without any appeal. 8. Thus the whole constitution of the state at once took a new form, and a doubtful experiment was about to be tried, of governing one nation by laws formed from the manners and customs of another.

9. These *Decemviri* being now invested with absolute power, agreed to take the reins of government by turns, each to administer justice for a day. 10. For the first year they wrought with extreme application; and their work being finished, it was expected that they would be content to give up their office; but having known the charms of power, they were unwilling to resign; they pretended that some laws were yet wanting to complete their design, and entreated the senate for a continuance in office; which request was readily granted.

11. But they soon threw off the mask of moderation,

[1] These laws were engraven on brass, and hung up in the most conspicuous part of the Forum.

and regardless of the approbation of the senate or the people, resolved to continue, against all order, in the decemvirate. 12. A conduct so tyrannical produced discontents, and these were as sure to produce fresh acts of tyranny. The city was become almost a desert with respect to all who had any thing to lose, and the *rapacity* of the decemvirs was then only discontinued when they wanted fresh subjects to exercise it upon. 13. In this state of slavery, *proscription*, and mutual distrust, not one citizen was found to strike for his country's freedom; these tyrants continued to rule without control, being constantly guarded, not by the lictors alone, but by a numerous crowd of dependents, clients, and even patricians, whom their vices had confederated round them.

14. In this gloomy situation of the state, the Æ'qui and Vol'sci, those constant enemies of the Romans, renewed their incursions, and, resolving to profit by the intestine divisions of the people, advanced within about ten miles of Rome.

15. The decemviri being in possession of all the military as well as of the civil power, divided their army into three parts; whereof one continued with Ap'pius in the city, to keep it in awe; the other two were commanded by his colleagues, and were led, one against the Æ'qui, and the other against the Vol'sci. 16. The Roman soldiers had now adopted a method of punishing the generals whom they disliked, by suffering themselves to be vanquished in the field. They put it in practice upon this occasion, and shamefully abandoned their camp upon the approach of the enemy. 17. Never was victorious news more joyfully received at Rome than the tidings of this defeat: the generals, as is always the case, were blamed for the treachery of their men; some demanded that they should be *deposed*, others cried out for a dictator to lead the troops to conquest. 18. Among the rest, old Sic'cius Denta'tus, the tribune, spoke his sentiments with his usual openness; and treating the generals with contempt, pointed out the faults of their discipline in the camp, and their conduct in the field. 19. Ap'pius, in the mean time, was not remiss in observing the disposition of the people. Denta'tus in particular was marked out for vengeance; and, under pretence of doing him particular honour, he was appointed legate, and put at the head of the supplies which were sent from Rome to reinforce the army. 20. The office of legate

was held sacred among the Romans, as in it was united the authority of a general, with the reverence due to the priesthood. 21. Denta'tus, no way suspecting the design, went to the camp with alacrity, where he was received with all the external marks of respect. But the generals soon found means of indulging their desire of revenge. 22. He was appointed at the head of a hundred men to go and examine a more commodious place for encampment, as he had very candidly assured the commanders that their present situation was wrong. 23. The soldiers, however, who were given as his attendants were assassins; wretches who had long been ministers of the vengeance of the decemviri, and who now engaged to murder him, though with all those apprehensions which his reputation (for he was called the Roman *Achilles*) might be supposed to inspire. 24. With these designs they led him into the hollow bosom of a retired mountain, where they began to set upon him behind. 25. Denta'tus too late perceived the treachery of the decemviri, and was resolved to sell his life as dearly as he could; he therefore set his back against a rock, and defended himself against those who pressed most closely. Though now grown old, he had still the remains of his former valour, and with his own hand killed no less than fifteen of the assailants, and wounded thirty. 26. The assassins now, therefore, terrified at his amazing bravery, showered their javelins upon him at a distance, all which he received in his shield with undaunted resolution. 27. The combat, though so unequal in numbers, was managed for some time with doubtful success, till at length his assailants bethought themselves of ascending the rock against which he stood, and pouring down stones upon him from above. 28. This succeeded; the old soldier fell beneath their united efforts; after having shown by his death, that he owed to his fortitude, and not his fortune, that he had come off so many times victorious. 29. The decemviri pretended to join in the general sorrow for so brave a man, and decreed him a funeral with the first military honours; but their pretended grief, compared with their known hatred, only rendered them still more *detestable* to the people.[1]

[1] Previous to this, and soon after his arrival at the camp, an attempt had been made to cut him off, which failed, from his superior bravery and military skill. The consul Romil'ius, being about to engage the enemy in the plain, gave it in charge to Denta'tus to

Questions for Examination.

1. Of what did the Roman citizens complain, and what did they wish?
2. Was this assented to by the nation at large?
3. What means were adopted for this purpose?
4. What happened during their absence?
5. How long did this calamity last?
6. What steps were taken on the return of the ambassadors?
7. Who were chosen for this purpose?
8. Was this proceeding an important one?
9. In what manner did the decemviri govern?
10. How did they discharge the duties of their office?
11. Did they continue in the conscientious discharge of their duties?
12. What was the consequence of this conduct?
13. Was no patriot to be found bold enough to be a champion in his country's cause?
14. What added to the miseries of the Romans
15. What steps were taken to oppose them?
16. What was the conduct of the Roman soldiers on this occasion?
17. How was this news received at Rome?
18. Who appeared most conspicuous on this occasion?
19. How was this honest sincerity received?
20. Was the office of legate a respectable one?
21. Did Dentatus suspect treachery?
22. What plan of revenge was adopted?
23. What was the character of his attendants?
24. How did they commence their base design?
25. Was Dentatus aware of their treachery, and what resistance did he make?
26. Did the assassins boldly engage the hero?
27. What new method of attack did they attempt?
28. Was this plan successful?
29. What was the conduct of the decemviri on this occasion?

---

attack their camp, situate on an almost inaccessible rock, but allotted him a force utterly inadequate to the attempt. Denta'tus remonstrated, but at length obeyed, and contrary to general expectation, took the camp, and falling on the rear of the main army, contributed greatly to the victory. For this base attempt Romil'ius and Vetu'rius were fined by the senate. (Liv. l. iii. c. 31.)

SECTION II.

That chastity of look which seems to hang
A veil of purest light o'er all her beauties,
And, by forbidding, most inflames desires! YOUNG.

1. Atro'cious, *a.* horrid, wicked.
4. Centu'rion, *s.* an officer who commanded a hundred men.
5. Infrin'ge, *v.* to violate, to break.
Enac'tor, *s.* the framer or passer of a law.
10. Cred'ible, *a.* worthy of belief.
11. Pa'ternity, *s.* the relationship of a father.
14. Sedi'tion, *s.* tumult, commotion.
18. Noto'rious, *a.* publicly known.
22. Acquies'ce, *v.* to submit to, to yield.
29. Predispo'sed, *part.* disposed before.
30. Quell, *v.* to subdue, to put down.
31. Incen'sed, *part.* enraged.
33. Ignomin'iously, *ad.* with marks of contempt, disgracefully.
Ulti'mately, *ad.* in the end.
Catas'trophe, *s.* event, fatal conclusion.

1. BUT a transaction still more *atrocious* than the former served to inspire the citizens with a resolution to break all measures of obedience, so as at last to restore freedom [1].

2. Ap'pius [2], sitting one day on his tribunal to dispense justice, saw a maiden of exquisite beauty, aged about fifteen, passing to one of the public schools, attended by a matron, her nurse. The charms of the damsel, heightened by all the innocence of virgin modesty, caught his attention, and fired his heart. The day following, as she passed, he found her still more beautiful, and his breast still more inflamed. 3. He now therefore resolved to obtain the gratification of his passion, whatever should be the consequence, and found means to inform himself of the maiden's name and family. 4. Her name was Virgin'ia; she was the daughter of Virgin'ius, a *centurion*, then with the army in the field, and had been contracted to Icil'ius, formerly a tribune of the people, who had agreed to marry her at the end of the present campaign.

5. Ap'pius at first resolved to break off this match, and to espouse her himself; but the laws of the Twelve

[1] The decemviri had by this time so strengthened themselves, as they supposed, by filling all the offices of state with their creatures, and by mutually supporting each other, that they ventured to throw off the mask, and announce their intention of perpetuating themselves in the government. Accordingly, each decemvir appeared in the Forum preceded by twelve lictors bearing the fasces and securis, a sure prognostic of tyranny and injustice. (Liv. iii. c. 38.)

[2] The *prænomen* of Appius was peculiar to the family of Claudius (*gens Claudia*), and derived from *Atta*, a name among the Sabines. It was also used adjectively; thus, *Appia Via*, the way leading to Capua, first paved by Appius Claudius; also, *Aqua Appia*, the first water brought to Rome in an aqueduct constructed by him. (Liv. ix. 29.)

Tables had forbidden the patricians to intermarry with the plebeians, and he could not *infringe* these, as he was the *enactor* of them[1]. 6. Nothing, therefore, remained but a criminal enjoyment, which, as he was long used to the indulgence of his passions, he resolved to obtain. 7. After having vainly tried to corrupt the fidelity of her nurse, he had recourse to another expedient, still more wicked. He fixed upon one Clau'dius, who had long been the minister of his pleasures, to assert that the beautiful maid was his slave, and to refer the cause to Ap'pius's tribunal for decision. 8. Clau'dius behaved exactly according to his instruction; for, taking with him a band of ruffians like himself, he entered into the public school where Virginia was found among her female companions, and seizing upon her under pretence that she was the daughter of one of his slaves, was dragging her away, when he was prevented by the people, drawn together by her cries. 9. At length, after the first heat of opposition was over, he led the weeping virgin to the tribunal of Ap'pius, and there plausibly exposed his pretensions. 10. Claudius asserted that she was born in his house, of a female slave, who sold her to the wife of Virgin'ius, who had been childless; that he had *credible* evidences to prove the truth of what he had advanced; but that until they could come together, it was but reasonable the slave should be delivered into his custody, he being her proper master. 11. Ap'pius pretended to be struck with the justice of his claim; he observed, that if the reputed father himself were present, he might indeed be willing to delay the delivery of the maid, but that it was not lawful for him, in the present case, to detain her from her master. He, therefore, adjudged her to Clau'dius, as his slave, to be kept by him till Virgin'ius should arrive, and be able to prove his *paternity*. 12. This sentence was received with loud clamours and reproaches by the multitude, particularly by the women, who came round the innocent Virgin'ia, desirous to protect her from the judge's fury; while Icil'ius, her lover, boldly opposed the decree, and obliged Clau'dius to take refuge under the tribunal of the decemvir. 13. All things now threatened an open insurrection, when Ap'pius, fearing the event, thought proper to suspend his judgment, under pretence of waiting the arrival of Virgin'ius, who was then about

[1] Besides this, he was already married; and though divorces were allowed by the law, yet no instance of the kind had yet occurred.

eleven miles from Rome, with the army. 14. The day following was fixed for the trial. In the mean time Ap'pius privately sent letters to the general to confine Virgin'ius, as his arrival in town might only serve to kindle *sedition* among the people. 15. These letters[1], however, being intercepted by the centurion's friends, they sent him a full relation of the design laid against his liberty and the honour of his only daughter. 16. Virgin'ius, upon this, pretending the death of a near relation, got permission to leave the camp, and hastened to Rome, inspired with indignation and revenge. 17. Accordingly, the next day, to the astonishment of Ap'pius, he appeared before the tribunal, leading his weeping daughter by the hand, both of them habited in deep mourning. 18. Clau'dius, the accuser, began by making his demand. Virgin'ius next spoke in turn: he represented that his wife married young; had early borne a child; had been seen pregnant by numbers. That, if he had had intentions of adopting a supposititious child, he should have fixed upon a boy rather than a girl; that it was *notorious* to all that his wife had herself suckled this daughter; and that it was surprising such a claim should be made after fifteen years' silence; and not till Virginia was become marriageable, and acknowledged to be exquisitely beautiful. 19. While the father spoke this with a stern air, the eyes of all were turned on Virgin'ia, who stood trembling with looks of persuasive eloquence and excessive grief, which added weight to his remonstrances, and excited compassion. 20. The people, satisfied of the cruelty of his case, raised an outcry expressive of their indignation. 21. Ap'pius, fearing that what had been said might have a dangerous effect upon the multitude, and under a pretence of being sufficiently instructed in the merits of the cause, with rage interrupted him. "Yes," said he, "my conscience obliges me to declare, that I myself am a witness to the truth of the deposition of Clau'dius. Most of this assembly know that I was left guardian to him. I was early apprised that he had a right to this young slave; but public affairs, and the dissensions of the people, have prevented my doing him justice. How-

[1] The messengers sent by the friends of Virgin'ius were more expeditious than those of Ap'pius; and Virgin'ius, setting out for Rome immediately on hearing of his daughter's danger, was fortunate enough to escape two parties which were sent, one from the city and the other from the camp, to arrest him. (Diod. Sic. l. xii. c. 86. 89; Livy, l. iii. c. 44. 49.)

ever, it is not now too late; and by the power vested in me for the general good, I adjudge Virgin'ia to be the property of Clau'dius, the plaintiff. Go, therefore, lictors, disperse the multitude, and make room for the master to repossess himself of his slave." 22. The lictors, in obedience to his command, drove off the throng that pressed round the tribunal; they seized upon Virgin'ia, and were delivering her up into the hands of Clau'dius: the multitude were terrified, and withdrew; and Virgin'ius, who found that all was over, seemed to *acquiesce* in the sentence. 23. He, however, mildly entreated of Ap'pius to be permitted to take a last farewell of a child whom he had at least considered as his own, and so satisfied, he would return to his duty with fresh alacrity. 24. Ap'pius granted the favour, upon condition that their endearments should pass in his presence. But Virgin'ius was then meditating a dreadful resolution. 25. The crowd made way, and Virgin'ius, with the most poignant anguish, taking his almost expiring daughter in his arms, for awhile supported her head upon his breast, and wiped away the tears that trickled down her cheeks. 26. He most tenderly embraced her, and drawing her insensibly to some shops which were on the side of the Forum, snatched up a butcher's knife: "My dearest lost child," cried Virgin'ius, "thus, thus alone is it in my power to preserve your honour and your freedom!" So saying, he plunged the weapon into her heart. Then drawing it out, reeking with her blood, he held it up to Ap'pius: "Tyrant," cried he, "by this blood I devote thy head to the infernal gods!" 27. Thus saying, and covered with his daughter's blood, the knife remaining in his hand, threatening destruction to whomsoever should oppose him, he ran through the city, wildly calling upon the people to strike for freedom. By favour of the multitude he then mounted his horse, and rode directly to the camp.

28 He no sooner arrived, followed by a number of his friends, than he informed the army of all that had been done, still holding the bloody knife in his hand. He asked their pardon, and the pardon of the gods, for having committed so rash an action, but ascribed it to the dreadful necessity of the times. 29. The army, already *predisposed* to revolt by the murder of Denta'tus, and other acts of tyranny and oppression, immediately with shouts echoed their approbation, and decamping, left the generals behind.

to take their station once more upon mount Aven'tine, whither they had retired about forty years before [1]. The other army, which had been to oppose the Sab'ines, felt a like resentment, and came over in large parties to join them.

30. Ap'pius, in the mean time, did all he could to *que* the disturbances in the city; but finding the tumult incapable of control, and perceiving that his mortal enemies, Vale'rius and Hora'tius, were the most active in opposition, at first attempted to find safety by flight; nevertheless, being encouraged by Op'pius, who was one of his colleagues, he ventured to assemble the senate, and urged the punishment of all deserters. 31. The senate, however, was far from giving him the relief he sought for; they foresaw the dangers and miseries that threatened the state in case of opposing the *incensed* army; they therefore despatched messengers to them, offering to restore their former mode of government. 32. To this proposal all the people joyfully assented, and the army gladly obeying, now returned to the city, if not with the ensigns, at least with the pleasure of a triumphant entry. 33. Ap'pius and Op'pius both died by their own hands in prison [2]. The other eight decemvirs went into exile; and Clau'dius, the pretended master of Virgin'ia, was *ignominiously* banished.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did the Romans tamely submit to the tyranny of the decemviri?
2. Relate the particulars of this transaction.
3. What resolution did Appius form?
4. Who was this maiden?
5. What was Appius's first determination?
6. On what did he next resolve?

---

[1] Three commissioners were sent by the senate to ask, why they had left the camp, and what was their intent in possessing themselves of mount Aventine? No satisfactory answer being returned, the commissioners departed, and the army proceeded to elect ten commanders, whom they denominated Military Tribunes. Virginius was offered the chief command, which he declined; wishing rather to continue in a private station till he had avenged his daughter's death. Soon after, the army removed their camp from Mons Aventinus to Mons Sacer.

[2] So it was reported, but many suspected that both he and Op'pius were privately despatched by order of the tribunes.

7. To what means did he have recourse for the accomplishment of his purpose?
8. Did Claudius undertake this base commission?
9. Was the opposition of the people *ultimately* successful?
10. How did Claudius attempt to make good his claims?
11. What was the conduct of Appius on this occasion?
12. How was this sentence received?
13. What consequences were likely to ensue, and how were they averted?
14. Was not this pretence a false one?
15. By what means was his design frustrated?
16. Under what pretence did Virginius obtain leave of absence?
17. What measures did he take on his arrival?
18. How was the trial conducted?
19. How did Virginia support this trying scene?
20. What was the general opinion of the auditors?
21. Did the arguments of Virginius induce Appius to forego his iniquitous designs?
22. Were his commands obeyed?
23. What was the request of Virginius?
24. Was this favour granted?
25. Describe this affecting scene.
26. What was the *catastrophe?*
27. What followed?
28. What use did he make of this dreadful circumstance?
29. What was the effect of his address on the army?
30. How was Appius employed in the mean time?
31. Did the senate second his designs?
32. Did the people accede to this proposal?
33. What was the fate of the tyrants?

SECTION III.

From the plough
Rose her dictators; fought, o'ercame, return'd,
Yes, to the plough return'd, and hail'd their peers. DYER.

3. Tur'bulent, *a.* violent, tumultuous.
8. Aver'red, *v.* positively asserted.
9. Invec'tives, *s.* railing speeches, abusive expressions.
10. Preconcert'ed, *v.* agreed on beforehand.
11. Fic'kle, *a.* changeable.
Can'didates, *s.* from *candidatus*, clothed in white (because they wore white garments), persons who aspire to any office or post of honour.
14. Depo'sed, *v.* removed from office.
15. Misdemea'nor, *s.* an offence, a crime not very heinous.
21. Dem'agogue, *s.* the leader of a faction, or the head of a rabble.
Asy'lum, *s.* a place of refuge or safety.
22. Par'tisans, *s.* followers, adherents.
24. Impend'ing, *part.* hanging over, approaching.
25. Demol'ished, *v.* destroyed, pulled down.

1. In the mean time, these intestine tumults produced weakness within the state, and confidence in the enemy abroad. The wars with the Æ'qui and the Vol'sci still

continued; and, as each year some trifling advantage was obtained over the Romans, they at last advanced so far, U.C. as to make their incursions to the very walls of 306. Rome[1]. 2. But not the courage only of the Romans, their other virtues also, particularly their justice, seemed diminished by these contests.

3. The tribunes of the people now grew more *turbulent;* they proposed two laws; one to permit plebeians to intermarry with the patricians; and the other, to permit them to be admitted to the consulship also. 4. The senators received these proposals with indignation, and seemed resolved to undergo the utmost extremities, rather than submit to enact these laws. However, finding their resistance only increased the commotions of the state, they, at last, consented to pass that concerning marriages, hoping that this concession would satisfy the people. 5. But they were to be appeased for a very short time only; for, returning to their old custom of refusing to enlist upon the approach of an enemy, the consuls were obliged to hold a private conference with the chief of the senate, where, after many debates, Clau'dius proposed an expedient, as the most probable means of satisfying the people in the present conjuncture. 6. This was to create six or eight governors in the room of consuls, whereof one half at least should be patricians. 7. This project, which was, in fact, granting what the people demanded, pleased the whole meeting, and it was agreed, that the consuls should, contrary to their usual custom, begin by asking the opinion of the youngest senator. 8. Upon assembling the senate, one of the tribunes accused them of holding secret meetings, and managing dangerous designs against the people. The consuls, on the other hand, *averred* their innocence; and, to demonstrate their sincerity, gave leave to any of the younger members of the house to propound their opinions. 9. These remaining silent, such of the older senators as were known to be popular began by observing that the people ought to be indulged in their request; that none so well deserved power as those who were most instrumental in gaining it; and that the city could not be free until all were reduced to perfect equality. Clau'dius spoke next, and broke out into bitter *invectives*

[1] They were, however, defeated, first by the consul Vale'rius, and next, still more decisively, by the consuls Quinc'tius and Fu'rius.

against the people; asserting that it was his opinion that the law should not pass. 10. This produced some disturbance among the plebeians; at length, Genu'tius proposed, as had been *preconcerted*, that six governors should be annually chosen, with consular authority; three from the senate, and three from the people; and that when the time of their magistracy should be expired, it would be seen whether they would have the same office continued, or whether the consulship should be established upon its former footing. 11. This project was eagerly embraced by the people; yet, so *fickle* were the multitude, that, though many of the plebeians stood *candidates*, the choice fell wholly upon the patricians who had offered themselves. 12. These new magistrates were called Military Tribunes; they were, at first, but three; afterwards they were increased to four, and at length to six: and they had the power and ensigns of consuls: yet, that power being divided among a number, each singly was of less authority. 13. The first that were chosen continued in office only about three months, the augurs having found something amiss in the ceremonies of their election[1]. U.C. 310.

14. The military tribunes being *deposed*, the consuls once more came into office; and in order to lighten the weight of business which they were obliged to sustain, a new office was created; namely, that of Censors[2], who were to be chosen every fifth year. 15. Their business was to take an estimate of the number and estates of the people, and to distribute them into their proper classes; to inspect into the lives and manners of their fellow citizens; to degrade senators for misconduct; to dismount knights, and to remove plebeians from their tribes into an inferior class, in case of *misdemeanor*. 16. The first censors were Papir'ius and Sempro'nius, both patricians; and from this order censors continued to be elected for nearly a hundred years.

17. This new creation served to restore peace for some time among the orders; and a triumph gained over the Vol'scians, by Gega'nius the consul, added to the universal satisfaction that reigned among the people.

[1] This was an election subsequent to that mentioned in the preceding note.

[2] The duty of the censors at first was merely to perform the Census, or numbering of the people. It was by degrees that they became *Magistri Morum*, or inspectors and regulators of men's lives and manners.

18. This calm, however, was but of short continuance: U.C. for some time after, a famine pressing hard upon 313. the poor, the usual complaints against the rich were renewed; and these, as before, proving ineffectual, produced new seditions. 19. The consuls were accused of neglect, in not having laid in proper quantities of corn: they, however, disregarded the murmurs of the populace, content with using every exertion to supply the pressing necessities[1]. 20. But though they did all that could be expected from active magistrates in procuring provisions, and distributing them to the poor, yet Spu'rius Mæ'lius, a rich knight, who had bought up all the corn of Tuscany, by far outshone them in liberality. 21. This *demagogue*, inflamed with a secret desire of becoming powerful by the contentions in the state, distributed corn in great quantities among the poorer sort each day, till his house became the *asylum* of all such as wished to exchange a life of labour for one of lazy dependence. 22. When he had thus gained a sufficient number of *partisans*, he procured large quantities of arms to be brought into his house by night, and formed a conspiracy, by which he was to obtain the command, while some of the tribunes, whom he had found means to corrupt, were to act under him, in seizing upon the liberties of his country. 23. Minu'tius soon discovered the plot, and, informing the senate, they immediately resolved to create a dictator, who should have the power of quelling the conspiracy without appealing to the people. 24. Cincinna'tus, who was now eighty years old, was chosen once more to rescue his country from *impending* danger. 25. He began by summoning Mæ'lius to appear; who refused to obey. He next sent Aha'la, the master of the horse, to compel his attendance; when, meeting him in the forum, Aha'la, on his refusal, killed him upon the spot. The dictator applauded the resolution of his officer, and commanded the conspirator's goods to be sold, his house to be *demolished*, and his stores to be distributed among the people[2].

[1] They appointed an extraordinary magistrate, under the title of *superintendent of provisions*, and the person named for this office, L. Minutius, an active and prudent man, immediately sent his agents into the neighbouring countries to buy corn; but little, however, was procured, as Mælius had been beforehand with him. (Liv. l. iv. c 13, 14.)

[2] The guilt of Mæ'lius was never proved, and no arms were found when his house was searched. The charge of aiming at royalty is more

26. The tribunes of the people were much enraged at the death of Mæ'lius. In order, therefore, to punish the senate, at the next election instead of consuls they insisted upon restoring the military tribunes, and the senate were obliged to comply. The next year, however, the government returned to its ancient channel, and consuls were chosen. U.C 315.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the consequence of those intestine tumults related in the preceding section?
2. Was it their courage only that was impaired by them?
3. How did the tribunes conduct themselves?
4. How were these proposals received?
5. Did it answer the desired end?
6. What expedient was resorted to?
7. How was it received?
8. What happened on assembling the senate?
9. Did they avail themselves of this permission, and what further passed on this occasion?
10. Was his opinion agreeable to the people?
    What new proposition was offered by Genutius?
11. Was this plan adopted, and acted upon?
12. What were the name, number, and powers of these new magistrates?
13. How long did they continue in office?
14. What government was substituted?
15. What were the duties of the censors?
16. Who were the first censors?
17. What was the consequence of this new creation?
18. Was this satisfaction lasting?
19. How were the consuls affected by it?
20, 21. Through what means did Spurius Mælius obtain credit for being more liberal than the consuls? And what was his real object?

---

than absurd, it is morally impossible. He seems to have aimed at opening the higher offices of state to the plebeians, and to have looked upon the consulship with too eager desire. He fell a sacrifice, to deter the plebeians from aiming at breaking up the patrician monopoly of power. It is painful to see Cincinna'tus, at the close of a long and illustrious life, countenancing, if not suggesting, this wanton murder. But as Niebuhr remarks, "no where have characters been more cruel, no where has the voice of conscience against the views of faction been so defied, as in the aristocratic republics, and not those of antiquity only. Men, otherwise of spotless conduct, have frequently shed the purest and noblest blood, influenced by fanaticism, and often without any resentment, in the service of party."

22. How did he proceed in his designs against the liberties of his country?
23. By what means was the plot frustrated?
24. Who was chosen dictator?
25. What steps did he take?
26. How were these rigorous measures received?

SECTION IV.

Hence every passion, ev'n the proudest, stoop'd
To common good; Camillus, thy revenge;
Thy glory, Fabius. THOMSON.

4. Annoy'ed, *v.* molested, injured, disturbed.
5. Depopula'tion, *s.* ruin, destruction of the inhabitants.
6. Protract'ed, *part.* spun out, made to last.
12. Breach, *s.* an opening.
13. Disgust', *v.* to offend, to cause dislike.
16. Decoy', *v.* to allure, to entice.
21. Migra'tion, *s.* the act of changing the place of abode, a removal.
22. Detest'ing, *part.* hating, abhorring, loathing.
24. Redoubt'able. *a.* formidable.
26. Stat'ure, *s.* height, tallness.

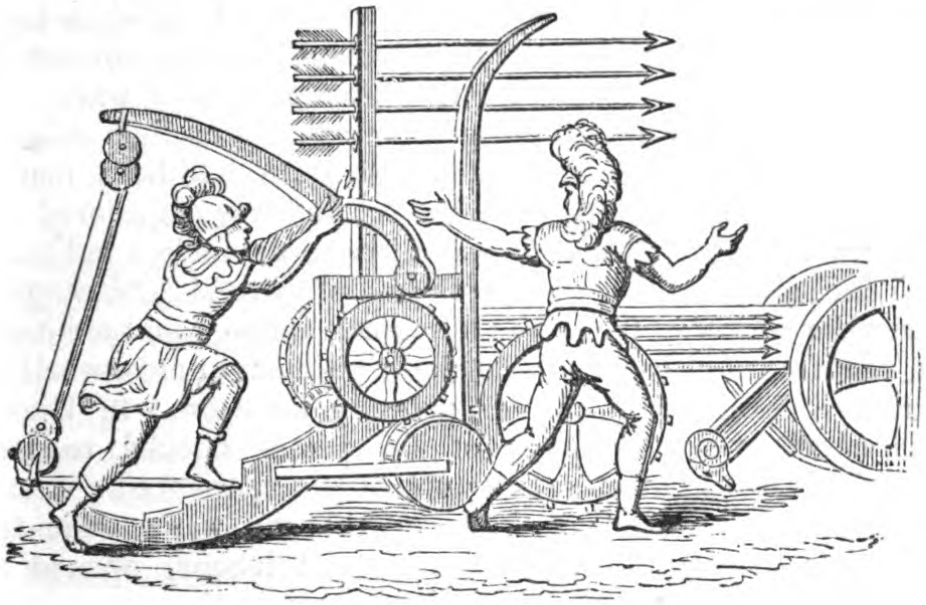
Emigra'tion, *s.* a change of habitation from one country to another.
31. Complaisan'ce, *s.* civility, politeness.
32. Till, *v.* to cultivate.
33. Despoil'ing, *part.* plundering.
36. Impetuos'ity, *s.* violence, fury.
39. Exult'ing, *part.* greatly rejoicing.
40. Strat'agem, *s.* an artifice, a trick, an attempt to deceive.
41. Tu'telar, *a* guarding, protecting.
Ob'viated, *v.* prevented.
Comport, *v.* to behave.
Note. Circumvalla'tion and Contravalla'tion, *s.* lines and trenches round a besieged city.

1. THE Ve'ians had long been the rivals of Rome; they had taken the opportunity of internal distresses to ravage its territories, and had even threatened its ambassadors, sent to complain of these injuries, with outrage. 2. It seemed now, therefore, determined that the city of Ve'ii, whatever it might cost, should fall; and the Romans accordingly sat down regularly before it, and prepared for a long and painful resistance[1]. 3. The strength of the place may be inferred from the continuance of the siege, which lasted for ten years; during which time the army continued encamped round it, lying in winter under tents made of the skins of beasts, and in summer driving on the operations of the attack[2]. It was probably during this siege that the

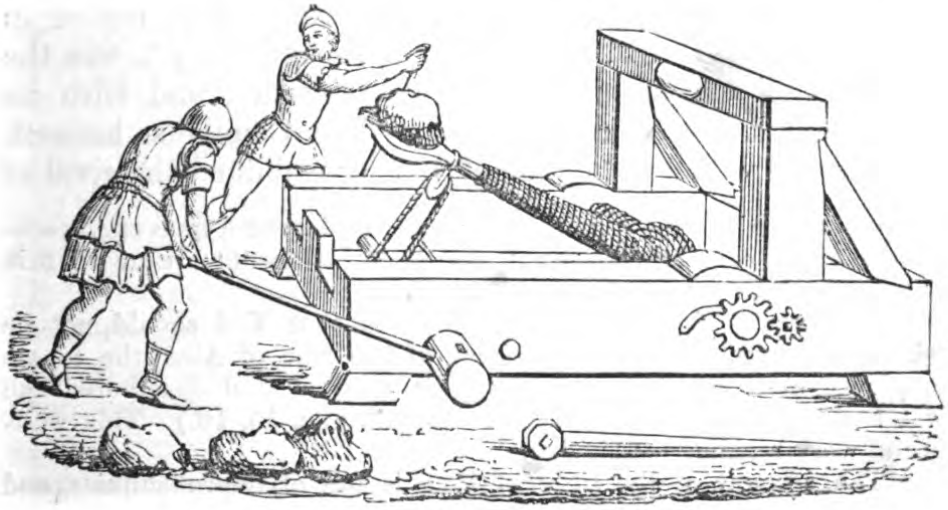
[1] Hitherto the Romans had carefully avoided long sieges, because their troops, serving without pay, could not be kept together a sufficient time. But a law having passed, about this time, allowing pay to the soldiers, they were encouraged to undertake this tedious and difficult enterprise.

[2] The city of Veii was larger and much more magnificent than Rome, and so eligibly situated, that after the destruction of the latter by the Gauls, the citizens determined to remove thither. From this they were dissuaded by Camillus.

Romans first began to make use of battering engines, which they subsequently brought to great perfection. The most remarkable of these were the Catapult and the Balista. The Catapult was used for hurling enormous javelins and



sometimes entire trunks of trees against the hostile garrison, and thus driving the defenders from the walls. Huge stones were cast by the Balista, which though greatly inferior to cannon balls in force, were frequently found sufficient to effect a breach.



4. Various were the successes, and many were the commanders that directed the siege; sometimes all their works were destroyed, and many of their men cut off by sallies

from the town; sometimes they were *annoyed* by an army of Veians, who attempted to bring assistance from without [1]. 5. A siege so bloody seemed to threaten *depopulation* to Rome itself, by a continual drain of its forces; so that a law was obliged to be made, for all bachelors to marry the widows of the soldiers who were slain [2]. 6. Fu'rius Camil'lus was now created dictator, and to him was entrusted the sole power of managing the long *protracted* war. 7. Camil'lus, who, without intrigue or solicitation, had raised himself to the first eminence in the state, had been made one of the censors some time before, and was considered as the head of that office; he was afterwards made a military tribune, and had, in this post, gained several advantages over the enemy. 8. It was his great courage and abilities in the above offices that made him to be thought most worthy to serve his country on this pressing occasion. 9. Upon his appointment, numbers of the people flocked to his standard, confident of success under so experienced a commander. 10. Conscious, however, that he was unable to take the city by storm, he, with vast labour, opened a passage under ground, which led him into the very midst of the citadel. 11. Certain thus of success, and finding the city incapable of relief, he sent to the senate, desiring that all who chose to share in the plunder of Veii should immediately repair to the army. 12. Then, giving his directions how to enter at the *breach*, the city was instantly filled with his legions, to the amazement and consternation of the besieged, who but a moment before had rested in perfect security. 13. Thus, like a second Troy [3], was the city of Ve'ii taken, after a ten years' siege, and with its spoils enriched the conquerors: while Camil'lus himself, transported with the honour of having subdued the rival of

[1] It was at this siege that the Romans first invented lines of *circumvallation* and *contravallation*; at least, this is the first time we find them mentioned in history.

[2] The oracle of Delphi having declared that Veii should not be taken till all the water had run out of the lake of Alba, the senate employed a number of persons to cut a canal, and distributed the water over the fields in trenches. (Liv. l. v. c. 15, 16.) This wonderful work remains to this day.

[3] The account of the siege of Ve'ii is full of improbabilities, and the story of the mine is utterly impossible, for without a compass and a good plan of the city, such a work could not have been formed. That Ve'ii, however, was besieged and taken at this time is very certain, but that is the only part of the legend on which we can rely.

his native city, triumphed after the manner of the kings of Rome, having his chariot drawn by four milk-white horses: a distinction which did not fail to *disgust* the majority of the spectators, as they considered those as sacred and more proper for doing honour to their gods than their generals [1].

14. His usual good fortune attended Camil'lus in another expedition against the Falis'ci. He routed their army and besieged their capital city Fale'rii, which threatened a long and vigorous resistance. 15. The reduction of this little place would have been scarcely worth mentioning in this scanty page, were it not for an action of the Roman general, that has done him more credit with posterity than all his other triumphs united. 16. A schoolmaster, who had the care of the children belonging to the principal men in the city, having found means to *decoy* them into the Roman camp, offered to put them into the hands of Camil'lus, as the surest means of inducing the citizens to a speedy surrender. 17. The general, struck with the treachery of a wretch, whose duty it was to protect innocence, and not to betray it, for some time regarded the traitor with a stern silence: but at last finding words, "Execrable villain!" cried the noble Roman, "offer thy abominable proposals to creatures like thyself, and not to me; what, though we be the enemies of your city, are there not natural ties that bind all mankind, which should never be broken? There are duties required from us in war, as well as in peace: we fight not against the age of innocence, but against men—men who have used us ill indeed; but yet, whose crimes are virtues, when compared to thine. Against such base acts let it be my duty to use only the Roman ones—valour and arms." 18. So saying, he ordered him to be stripped, his hands to be tied behind him, and in that ignominious manner to be whipped into the town by his own scholars. 19. This generous behaviour in Camillus effected more than his arms could do: the magistrates of the town submitted to the senate, leaving to Camillus the conditions of their surrender; who only fined them a sum of money to satisfy the army, and received them under the protection, and into the alliance of Rome.

20. Notwithstanding the veneration which the virtues

[1] Their displeasure was greatly increased by his demanding a tenth part of the spoils of Ve'ii, to discharge a vow which he had made to Apollo just before the assault

of Camil'lus had excited abroad, they seemed but little adapted to command the respect of the turbulent tribunes at home, who raised fresh accusations against him every day. 21. To the charge of being an opposer of their intended *migration* from Rome to Ve'ii[1], they added that of his having concealed a part of the plunder of that city, particularly two brazen gates, for his own use; and appointed a day on which to appear before the people. 22. Camil'lus, finding the multitude exasperated against him on many accounts, and *detesting* their ingratitude, resolved not to await the ignominy of a trial; but embracing his wife and children, prepared to depart from Rome. 23. He had already passed as far as one of the gates, unattended and unlamented. There he could suppress his indignation no longer, but, turning his face to the Capitol, and lifting up his hands to heaven, he entreated all the gods that his countrymen might one day be sensible of their injustice and ingratitude. So saying, he passed forward to take refuge at Ar'dea, a town at a little distance from Rome, where he afterwards learned that he had been fined fifteen thousand ases[2] by the tribunes at Rome.

24. The tribunes were not a little pleased with their triumph over this great man; but they soon had reason to repent their injustice, and to wish for the assistance of one, who alone was able to protect their country from ruin; for now a more terrible and *redoubtable* enemy than the Romans had ever yet encountered began to make their appearance. 25. The Gauls, a barbarous nation, had about two centuries before made an irruption from beyond the Alps, and settled in the northern parts of Italy. They had been invited over by the deliciousness of the wines, and the mildness of the climate. 26. Wherever they came they dispossessed the original inhabitants, as they were men of superior courage, extraordinary *stature*, fierce in aspect, barbarous in their manners, and prone to *emigration*. 27. A body of these, wild from their original habitations, was now besieging Clu'sium, a city of Etru'ria, under the conduct of Brennus, their king. 28. The inhabitants of Clu'sium, frightened at their numbers, and still more at

[1] It had been proposed after the capture of Ve'ii, to divide the senate and the people of Rome into two parts; one of which should inhabit the conquered city. But the proposal, by the influence of Camil'lus, was overruled.

[2] The *as* was a brass coin, about three farthings of our money.

their savage appearance, entreated the assistance, or, at least, the mediation of the Romans. 29. The senate, who had long made it a maxim never to refuse succour to the distressed, were willing, previously, to send ambassadors to the Gauls, to dissuade them from their enterprise, and to show the injustice of the irruption. 30. Accordingly, three young senators were chosen out of the family of the Fabii to manage the commission, who seemed more fitted for the field than the cabinet. 31. Brennus received them with a degree of *complaisance* that argued but little of the barbarian, and desiring to know the business of their embassy, was answered, according to their instructions, that it was not customary in Italy to make war but on just grounds of provocation, and that they desired to know what offence the citizens of Clu'sium had given to the king of the Gauls. 32. To this Brennus sternly replied, that the rights of valiant men lay in their swords; that the Romans themselves had no right to the many cities they had conquered; and that he had particular reasons of resentment against the people of Clu'sium, as they refused to part with those lands, which they had neither hands to *till*, nor inhabitants to occupy. 33. The Roman ambassadors, who were but little used to hear the language of a conqueror, for a while dissembled their resentment at this haughty reply; but upon entering the besieged city, instead of acting as ambassadors, and forgetful of their sacred character, they headed the citizens in a sally against the besiegers. In this combat, Fa'bius Ambus'tus killed a Gaul with his own hand, but was discovered in the act of *despoiling* him of his armour. 34. A conduct so unjust and unbecoming excited the resentment of Brennus, who, having made his complaint by a herald to the senate, and finding no redress [1], broke up the siege and marched away with his conquering army directly for Rome. 35. The countries through which the Gauls made their rapid progress gave up all hopes of safety upon their approach; being terrified at their numbers, the fierceness of their natures, and their dreadful preparations for war. 36. But the rage and *impetuosity* of this wild people were directed solely against Rome. They went on without doing the

[1] On the contrary, the Romans, to show their approbation of what their ambassadors had done, instead of delivering them up to Brennus as was demanded, elected them military tribunes

least injury in their march, breathing vengeance only against the Romans. A terrible engagement soon after ensued, in which the Romans were defeated near the river Al'lia, with the loss of about forty thousand men [1].

37. Rome, thus deprived of succour, prepared for every extremity. The inhabitants endeavoured to hide themselves in the neighbouring towns, or resolved to await the conqueror's fury, and end their lives with the ruin of their native city [2]. 38. But more particularly the ancient senators and priests, struck with a religious enthusiasm, on this occasion resolved to devote their lives to atone for the crimes of the people, and, habited in their robes of ceremony, placed themselves in the forum on their ivory chairs. 39. The Gauls, in the mean time, were giving a loose to their triumph, in sharing and enjoying the plunder of the enemy's camp. Had they immediately marched to Rome upon gaining the victory, the Capitol would, in all probability, have been taken; but they continued two days feasting upon the field of battle, and, with barbarous pleasure, *exulting* amidst their slaughtered enemies. 40. On the third day after this easy victory, Brennus appeared with all his forces before the city. He was at first much surprised to find the gates open to receive him, and the walls defenceless; so that he began to impute the unguarded situation of the place to a Roman *stratagem*. After proper precaution he entered the city, and marching into the forum, beheld there the ancient senators sitting in their order, observing a profound silence, unmoved and undaunted. 41. The splendid habits, the majestic gravity, and the venerable looks of these old men, who in their time had all borne the highest offices of state, awed the barbarous enemy into reverence; they mistook them for the *tutelar* deities of the place, and began to offer blind adoration; till one, more forward than the rest, putting forth his hand to stroke the beard of Papyr'ius, an insult the noble Roman could not endure, he lifted up his ivory sceptre, and struck the savage to the ground. 42. This

[1] This day was from henceforth marked as unlucky in their calendar, and called *Alliensis*.

[2] Among others, the Vestals fled from the city, carrying with them the two Palladiums and the sacred fire. They took shelter at Cære, a town of Etru'ria, where they continued to celebrate their religious rites; from this circumstance religious rites acquired the name of *ceremonies*.

proved to be a signal for general slaughter. Papyr'ius fell first, and all the rest shared his fate without mercy or distinction[1]. The fierce invaders pursued their slaughter for three days successively, sparing neither sex nor age; then setting fire to the city, burnt every house to the ground.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the conduct of the Veians?
2. What resolution was adopted in consequence?
3. Was Veii a strong place?
4. Did the besieged make a vigorous resistance?
5. What consequences were likely to ensue, and how were they *obviated?*
6. To whom was the conduct of the war now committed?
7. Who was Camillus?
8. By what means did he attain his present dignity?
9. What was the consequence of his appointment?
10. What plan did he adopt to take the city?
11. How did he next proceed?
12. What followed?
13. What was the consequence of this capture, and how did Camillus *comport* himself?
14. What was Camillus's next exploit?
15. Was this a conquest of importance?
16. Relate the particulars.
17. How was this proposal received?
18. How was the traitor punished?
19. What was the consequence of his conduct?
20. Was Camillus universally respected?
21. What charges were brought against him?
22. Did Camillus abide the event of a trial?
23. Was he resigned to his fate, and whither did he retire?
24. What followed his departure?
25. Who was the enemy?
26. What were the conduct and character of the Gauls?
27. How were they employed at this conjuncture?
28. What measure did the Clusians adopt for their defence?
29. Was their application successful?
30. Who were appointed for this purpose?
31. How were they received?
32. What was the reply of Brennus?
33. What was the conduct of the ambassadors?

---

[1] This self-devotion was in consequence of a vow made by these brave old men, which Fa'bius, the Pontifex Maximus, pronounced in their names. The Romans believed that, by thus devoting themselves to the infernal gods, disorder and confusion were brought among the enemy.

34. What was the consequence of this improper conduct?
35. What sensations were excited in the countries through which they passed?
36. Did the Gauls commit any ravages on their march?
37. What measures were adopted at Rome?
38. Who more particularly displayed their devotedness on this occasion?
39. What use did the Gauls make of their victory?
40. What happened on their arrival before the city?
41. What was the effect of this spectacle?
42. What was the consequence of this boldness?

SECTION V.

This is true courage, not the brutal force
Of vulgar heroes, but the firm resolve
Of virtue and of reason. He who thinks
Without their aid to shine in deed of arms,
Builds on a sandy basis his renown. WHITEHEAD.

2. Repel'led, *part.* driven back, successfully resisted.
5. Capitula'tion, *s.* terms or conditions of peace and surrender.
Futil'ity, *s.* vanity, folly.
6. Sen'tinel, *s.* a soldier set to watch.
7. Assail'ants, *s.* those who attack.
8. Celer'ity, *s.* swiftness, haste, speed.
9. Con'gress, *s.* a meeting.
11. Expos'tulate, *v.* to dispute, to argue, to remonstrate.
16. Ven'erable, *a.* deserving of reverence from age.
20. Curb, *v.* to restrain.
22. Lar'gesses, *s.* gifts, presents.
26. Ra'zed, *v.* demolished, destroyed.
28. Impli'cit, *a.* complete, real, undisputing.
Pa'triotism, *s.* a love of one's country.
Note.—Invin'cible, *a.* unconquerable.

1. ALL the hopes of Rome were now placed in the Capitol; every thing without that fortress formed an extensive scene of misery, desolation, and despair. U.C. 361.

2. Brennus first summoned it with threats to surrender, but in vain; then resolving to besiege it in form, hemmed it round with his army. The Romans, however, *repelled* the attempt with great bravery: despair had supplied them with that perseverance and vigour, which they seemed to want when in prosperity.

3. In the meanwhile Brennus carried on the siege with extreme ardour. He hoped to starve the garrison into a *capitulation*; but they, sensible of his intent, although in actual want, caused loaves to be thrown into his camp, to convince him of the *futility* of such expectations. 4. His hopes were soon after revived, when some of his soldiers

came to inform him, that they had discovered footsteps [1] which led up to the rock, by which they supposed the Capitol might be surprised. 5. Accordingly, a chosen body of his men were ordered by night upon this dangerous service, which, with great labour and difficulty, they almost effected. 6. They were got upon the very wall; the Roman *sentinel* was fast asleep; their dogs within gave no signal, and all promised an instant victory, when the garrison was awakened by the gabbling of some sacred geese that had been kept in the temple of Juno. 7. The besieged soon perceived the imminence of their danger, and each snatching the weapon that first presented itself, ran to oppose the *assailants*. 8. M. Man'lius, a patrician of acknowledged bravery, was the first who opposed the foe and inspired courage by his example. He boldly mounted the rampart, and at one effort threw two Gauls headlong down the precipice; his companions soon came to his assistance, and the walls were cleared of the enemy with almost incredible *celerity* [2].

9. From this time the hopes of the barbarians began to decline, and Brennus wished for an opportunity of raising the siege with credit [3]. His soldiers had often conferences with the besieged while upon duty, and proposals for an accommodation were wished for by the common men, before the chiefs thought of a *congress*. At length the commanders on both sides came to an agreement that the Gauls should immediately quit the city and territories, upon being paid a thousand pounds weight of gold. 10. This agreement being confirmed by oath on either side, the gold was brought forth. But upon weighing, the Gauls

[1] These were the footsteps of Pon'tius Comin'ius, who, with great prudence and bravery, found means to carry a message from Camil'lus to the Romans in the Capitol, and to return with the appointment of dictator for Camil'lus.

[2] As a reward for this essential service, every soldier gave Man'lius a small quantity of corn and a little measure of wine out of his scanty allowance; a present of no mean value in their then distressed situation. On the other hand, the captain of the guard, who ought to have kept the sentinels to their duty, was thrown headlong from the Capitol. In memory of this event a goose was annually carried in triumph on a soft litter, finely adorned; whilst dogs were held in abhorrence, and one impaled every year on a branch of elder.

[3] As the Gauls suffered the bodies of the Romans who were slain in their frequent encounters to lie unburied, the stench of their putrefaction occasioned a plague to break out, which carried off great numbers of the army of Brennus.

fraudulently attempted to kick the beam, of which the Romans complaining, Brennus insultingly cast his sword and belt into the scale, crying out that the only portion of the vanquished was to suffer. 11. By this reply the Romans saw that they were at the victor's mercy; and knew it was in vain to *expostulate* against any conditions he should be pleased to impose. 12. But while they were thus debating upon the payment, it was told them that Camil'lus[1], their old general, was at the head of a large army, hastening to their relief, and entering the gates of Rome. 13. Camil'lus actually appeared soon after, and entering the place of controversy, with the air of one who was resolved not to suffer imposition, demanded the cause of the contest; of which being informed, he ordered the gold to be taken and carried back to the Capitol: "For it has ever been," cried he, "the manner with us Romans, to ransom our country, not with gold, but with iron; it is I only that am to make peace, as being the dictator of Rome, and my sword alone shall purchase it." 14. Upon this a battle ensued, the Gauls were entirely routed, and such a slaughter followed, that the Roman territories were soon cleared of these formidable invaders. Thus, by the bravery of Camil'lus, was Rome delivered from its enemy[2].

15. The city being one continued heap of ruins, except the Capitol, and the greatest number of its former inhabitants having gone to take refuge in Ve'ii, the tribunes of the people urged for the removal of the poor remains of Rome to that city, where they might have houses to shelter, and walls to defend them. 16. On this occasion Camil'lus attempted to appease them with all the arts of persuasion; observing that it was unworthy of them, both as Romans and as men, to desert the *venerable* seat of their ancestors, where they had been encouraged by repeated marks of divine approbation, in order to inhabit a

[1] Camil'lus had previously, with the assistance of the Ar'deans, defeated a body of the Gauls. This success had tended to inspirit the Romans, and to render them less afraid to encounter an enemy whom they had hitherto considered as *invincible*.

[2] The authenticity of this narrative is more than suspicious. Polyb'ius, the most accurate of the Roman historians, says that the Gauls carried the gold home with them. Sueto'nius confirms this account, and adds that it was recovered at a much later period from the Galli Seno'nes, by Liv'ius Dru'sus; and that on this occasion Dru'sus first became a name in the Livian family, in consequence of the victorious general having killed Drau'sus, the Gallic leader.

city which they had conquered, and which wanted even the good fortune of defending itself. 17. By these, and such like remonstrances, he prevailed upon the people to go contentedly to work; and Rome soon began to rise from its ashes [1].

18. We have already seen the bravery of Man'lius in defending the Capitol, and saving the last remains of Rome. For this the people were by no means ungrateful. They built him a house near the place where his valour was so conspicuous, and appointed him a public fund for his support. 19. But he aspired at being more than equal to Camil'lus, and to be sovereign of Rome. With this view he laboured to ingratiate himself with the populace, paid their debts, and railed at the patricians, whom he called their oppressors. 20. The senate was not ignorant of his speeches or his designs, and created Corne'lius Cossus dictator, with a view to *curb* the ambition of Man'lius. 21. The dictator soon called Man'lius to an account for his conduct. Man'lius, however, was too much the darling of the populace to be affected by the power of Cossus, who was obliged to lay down his office, and Manlius was carried from confinement in triumph through the city. 22. This success only served to inflame his ambition. He now began to talk of a division of the lands among the people, insinuated that there should be no distinctions in the state; and to give weight to his discourses, always appeared at the head of a large body of the dregs of the people, whom *largesses* had made his followers. 23. The city being thus filled with sedition and clamour, the senate had recourse to another expedient, which was, to oppose the power of Camil'lus to that of the demagogue. Camil'lus accordingly, being made one of the military tribunes, appointed Man'lius a day to answer for his life. 24. The place in which he was tried was near the Capitol, whither, when he was accused of sedition, and of aspiring at sovereignty, he turned his eyes, and pointing to that edifice, put them in mind of what he had there done for his country [2]. 25. The multitude, whose compassion or

[1] So little taste, however, for order and beauty, did those display who had the direction of the works, that the city, when rebuilt, was even less regular than in the time of Romulus.

[2] Man'lius omitted nothing that was likely to move his judges to compassion; he appeared in deep mourning; he produced above four hundred plebeians, whose debts he had paid; he showed the people

whose justice seldom springs from rational motives, refused to condemn him so long as he pleaded in sight of the Capitol; but when he was brought from thence to the Pe'teline grove, where the Capitol was no longer in view, they condemned him to be thrown headlong from the Tarpe'ian rock [1]. 26. Thus, the place which had been the theatre of his glory, became that of his punishment and infamy. His house, in which his conspiracies had been secretly carried on, and which had been built as the reward of his valour, was ordered to be *razed* to the ground, and his family were forbidden ever after to assume the name of Man'lius.

27. Thus the Romans went gradually forward, with a mixture of turbulence and superstition within their walls, and successful enterprises without [2].

28. With what *implicit* obedience they submitted to their pontiffs, and how far they might be impelled to encounter even death itself at their command, will evidently appear from the behaviour of Cur'tius, about this
U.C. time. Upon the opening of the gulf in the forum,
392. which the augurs affirmed would never close till the most precious things in Rome were thrown into it, this heroic man, clad in complete armour, and mounted on horseback, boldly leaped into the midst, declaring that

thirty suits of armour, the spoils of thirty enemies, whom he had killed in single combat; he had been honoured with one mural and eight civic crowns, and been seven-and-thirty times rewarded for his extraordinary valour; the people, unwilling either to acquit or condemn, put off his trial from day to day, but at length determined as in the text. Scarcely, however, was Man'lius dead, when his loss was generally lamented, and a plague which soon followed was ascribed to the anger of Jupiter against the authors of his death. (Plut. in Camillo.)

[1] This account appears so absurd as to be scarcely credible; in fact, Manlius was first tried by the "comitia centuriata," and acquitted. His second trial was before the "comitia curiata," where his enemies, the patricians, alone had the right of voting. See Introduction, Chap. III.

[2] The principal of these were, their wars with the Vol'sci, Prænes'tines (*a*), the Latins, the Veliter'ni (*b*), and the Gauls; the chief domestic occurrence was, the law which permitted one of the consuls to be chosen from among the plebeians; this concession was not obtained by that order without much opposition, tumult, and confusion. L. Sextus was the first plebeian consul.

(*a*) The inhabitants of Prænes'te, a town of Latium, about 21 miles from Rome.
(*b*) The inhabitants of Veli'træ, an ancient town of Latium, on the Appian road, 20 miles eastward of Rome.

nothing was more truly valuable than *patriotism* and military virtue. 29. The gulf, say the historians, closed immediately upon this, and Cur'tius was seen no more [1].

30. This year died the great Camil'lus, deservedly regretted by all. He was styled a second Romulus, the first having founded, and he having restored the city. He is said never to have fought a battle without gaining a victory; never to have besieged a city without taking it. He was a zealous patriot, ever ready to dismiss his just resentments for the affronts he received, when the necessities of his country required his services. U.C. 396.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the state of Rome at this period?
2. What was the next step taken by Brennus, and how did it succeed?
3. In what manner was the siege carried on?
4. Did he consider the attempt as hopeless?
5. What advantage did he take of this information?
6. Was the attempt successful?
7. What was the consequence?
8. Was there any particular instance of valour?
9. What effect had this failure on the mind of Brennus?
10. In what manner was this agreement carried into execution?
11. What inference did the Romans draw from this insolent speech?
12. What agreeable news did they now hear?
13. Was this information correct?
14. What followed?
15. What was the first measure proposed after this deliverance?
16. Was this proposal carried into effect?
17. Were his remonstrances successful?
18. Was the bravery of Manlius rewarded?
19. Was he content with these favours?
20. What measures were taken to oppose his designs?
21. Was this expedient attended with success?
22. What was the conduct of Manlius after this?
23. What farther measures were taken to punish his ambition?
24. What defence did he set up?
25. Was his plea successful?
26. What is remarkable in his punishment?
27. How did the Roman affairs proceed at this time?
28. Relate a memorable instance of the obedience paid by the Romans to their pontiffs or priests.
29. What was the consequence of this heroic act?
30. What happened this year, and what was the character of Camillus?

---

[1] Some judicious writers, however, acknowledge that the chasm was afterwards filled up with earth and rubbish. (Livy, l. 7. c. 6. Val. Maximus, l. 5. c. 6. et al.)

CHAPTER XIII.

SECT. I.

FROM THE WARS WITH THE SAMNITES, AND THOSE WITH PYRRHUS, TO THE BEGINNING OF THE FIRST PUNIC WAR; WHEN THE ROMANS BEGAN TO EXTEND THEIR CONQUESTS BEYOND ITALY.

The brave man is not he who feels no fear,
For that were stupid and irrational;
But he, whose noble soul his fear subdues,
And bravely dares the danger nature shrinks from.

BAILLIE.

3. Gigan'tic, *a.* very large, like a giant.
5. Athlet'ic, *a.* strong, vigorous.
8. Unwa'rily, *ad.* incautiously, unawares.
9. Mu'tinying, *part.* rising against lawful authority.
12. Host'ile, *a.* as an enemy.
13. Defec'tion, *s.* a revolt, a falling away.
18. Intim'idated, *part.* rendered afraid
21. Deplo'rable, *a.* lamentable, sad.
Alter'native, *s.* choice.
22. Man'date, *s.* a command.
Execra'tions, *s.* curses.
23. Animos'ity, *s.* extreme hatred, rage
29. Car'nage, *s.* slaughter, havoc.

1. THE Romans had triumphed over the Sab'ines, the Etru'rians, the Latins, the Her'nici, the Æ'qui, and the Vol'sci; and now began to look for greater conquests[1]. They accordingly turned their arms against the Sam'nites, a people descended from the Sab'ines, and inhabiting a large tract of southern Italy, which at this day makes a considerable part of the kingdom of Naples[2]. 2. Vale'rius Cor'vus, and Corne'lius were the two consuls to whose care it first fell to manage this dreadful contention between the rivals.

3. Valé'rius was one of the greatest commanders of his time; he was surnamed Cor'vus, from the strange circumstance of being assisted by a crow in a single combat, in which he killed a Gaul of *gigantic* stature. 4. To his colleague's care it was consigned to lead an army to Sam'nium, the enemy's capital, while Cor'vus was sent to

[1] About this time (A.U. 415: A.C. 333), ambassadors arrived from Carthage, to conclude an alliance with the Romans.

[2] The occasion of the war was this: the Sam'nites having attacked the Campa'nians, the latter threw themselves upon the protection of the Romans. The Romans immediately sent ambassadors to the Sam'nites, requesting them to desist from hostilities against a people under the protection of Rome; this the Sam'nites haughtily refused, in consequence of which war was immediately declared against them. (Livy, l. 17. c. 31, 32.)

relieve Cap'ua, the capital of Campa'nia. 5. Never was a captain more fitted for command than he. To a habit naturally robust and *athletic,* he joined the gentlest manners; he was the fiercest, and yet the most good-natured man in the army; and, while the meanest sentinel was his companion, no man kept them more strictly to their duty; but to complete his character, he constantly endeavoured to preserve his dignity by the same arts by which he gained it. 6. Such soldiers as the Romans then were, hardened by their late adversity, and led on by such a general, were unconquerable. The Samnites were the bravest men they ever had yet encountered, and the contention between the two nations was managed on both sides with the most determined resolution. 7. But the fortune of Rome prevailed; the Samnites at length fled, averring, that they were not able to withstand the fierce looks and the fire-darting eyes of the Romans. 8. Corne'lius, however, was not at first so fortunate; for having *unwarily* led his army into a defile, he was in danger of being cut off, had not De'cius possessed himself of a hill which commanded the enemy; so that the Samnites, being attacked on both sides, were defeated with great slaughter; not less than thirty thousand of them being left dead upon the field.

9. Some time after this victory, the forces stationed at Cap'ua *mutinying*[1], compelled Quin'tius, an eminent old soldier, to be their leader; and, conducted by their rage more than by their general, came within six miles of the city. 10. So terrible an enemy, almost at the gates, not a little alarmed the senate, who immediately created Vale'rius dictator, and sent him forth with an army to oppose them. 11. The two armies were now drawn up against each other, while fathers and sons beheld themselves prepared to engage in opposite causes. 12. Any other general than Corvus would, perhaps, have brought this civil war to extremity; but he, knowing his influence among the soldiery, instead of going forward to meet the mutineers in an *hostile* manner, went with the most cordial friendship to embrace, and expostulate with his old acquaintances. 13. His conduct had the desired effect. Quin'tius,

[1] Delighted with the charming climate, and the pleasures of Cap'ua, these soldiers formed a design of destroying the inhabitants, and settling in the city; but the plot having been discovered and frustrated by the vigilance of the officers, gave occasion to this mutiny.

as their speaker, solicited no more than to have their *defection* from their duty forgiven; and for himself, as he was innocent of their conspiracy, he had no reason to solicit pardon for offences. 14. Thus this defection, which threatened danger to Rome, was repaired by the prudence and moderation of a general, whose ambition it was to be gentle to his friends, and formidable only to his enemies.

15. A war between the Romans and Latins followed soon after. 16. As their habits, arms, and language were the same, the exactest discipline was necessary to prevent confusion in the engagement. Orders, therefore, were issued, that no soldier should leave his ranks upon pain of death. 17. With these injunctions, both armies were drawn out and ready, when Me'tius, the general of the enemy's cavalry, pushed forward from his lines, and challenged any knight in the Roman army to single combat. 18. For some time there was a general pause, no soldier daring to disobey his orders, till Ti'tus Man'lius, son of the consul Man'lius, burning with shame to see the whole body of the Romans *intimidated*, boldly advanced against his adversary. 19. The soldiers, on both sides, for a while suspended the general engagement, to be spectators of this fierce encounter. The two champions drove their horses against each other with great violence; Me'tius wounded his adversary's horse in the neck; but Man'lius, with better fortune, killed that of Me'tius. The Latin general, fallen to the ground, for a while attempted to support himself upon his shield; but the Roman followed his blows, and laid him dead, as he was endeavouring to rise; then despoiling him of his armour, returned in triumph to his father's tent, where he was preparing for, and giving orders relative to, the engagement. 20. However he might have been applauded by his fellow-soldiers, being as yet doubtful what reception he should find with his father, he came with hesitation to lay the enemy's spoils at his feet, and with a modest air insinuated, that what he had done was entirely from a spirit of hereditary virtue. 21. Alas! he was soon dreadfully made sensible of his error; when his father, turning away, ordered him to be led publicly forth before his army. Being brought forward, the consul, with a stern countenance, and yet with tears, spoke as follows: "Ti'tus Man'lius, as thou hast regarded neither the dignity of the consulship, nor the commands of a father; as thou

hast destroyed military discipline, and set a pattern of disobedience by thy example, thou hast reduced me to the *deplorable* extremity of sacrificing my son or my country. But let us not hesitate in this dreadful *alternative;* a thousand lives were well lost in such a cause; nor do I think that thou thyself wilt refuse to die, when thy country is to reap the advantage of thy sufferings. Lictor, bind him and let his death be our future example." 22. At this unnatural *mandate* the whole army was struck with horror; fear, for a while, kept them in suspense; but when they saw their young champion's head struck off, and his blood streaming upon the ground, they could no longer contain their *execrations* and their groans. His dead body was carried forth without the camp, and being adorned with the spoils of the vanquished enemy, was buried with all the pomp of military solemnity.

23. In the mean time the battle began with mutual fury; and as the two armies had often fought under the same leaders, they combated with all the *animosity* of a civil war. The Latins chiefly depended on bodily strength; the Romans on their invincible courage and conduct. 24. Forces so nearly matched, seemed only to want the aid of their deities to turn the scale of victory; and in fact the augurs had foretold, that whatever part of the Roman army should be distressed, the commander of that part should devote himself for his country, and die as a sacrifice to the immortal gods. Man'lius commanded the right wing, and De'cius the left. 25. Both sides fought with doubtful success, as their courage was equal; but, after a time, the left wing of the Roman army began to give ground. 26. It was then that De'cius resolved to devote himself for his country, and to offer his own life, as an atonement to save his army [1].

27. Thus determined, he called out to Man'lius with a loud voice, and demanded his instructions, as he was the chief pontiff, how to devote himself, and what form of words he should use. 28. By his directions, therefore, being clothed in a long robe, his head covered, and his arms stretched forward, standing upon a javelin, he devoted himself to the celestial and infernal gods, for the safety of

[1] Livy says (l. 8. c. 6), that the two consuls had a dream the night preceding the battle, in which a man of gigantic stature appeared to them, and assured them, that the victory was decreed to that army whose general should devote himself to the Dii Manes, or Infernal Gods.

Rome. Then arming himself, and mounting his horse, he drove furiously into the midst of the enemy, striking terror and consternation wherever he came, till he fell covered with wounds. 29. In the mean time the Roman army considered his devoting himself in this manner, as an assurance of success; nor was the superstition of the Latins less powerfully influenced by his resolution; a total rout began to ensue: the Romans pressed them on every side, and so great was the *carnage*, that scarcely a fourth part of the enemy survived the defeat.

Questions for Examination.

1. Against whom did the Romans next turn their arms?
2. Who were appointed commanders in this war?
3. Who was Valerius?
4. What separate commands were entrusted to the consuls?
5. What was the character of Valerius?
6. What was the character of the hostile armies?
7. To whom did the advantage belong?
8. Was not the division under Cornelius led into a difficulty, and how was it extricated?
9. What important event next occurred?
10. How were the senate affected by their approach?
11. What are the peculiar evils attendant on civil wars?
12. What steps did Corvus take on this occasion?
13. What was the consequence of this mildness?
14. What reflection may be drawn from this incident?
15. What was the next occurrence of note?
16. What precautions were necessary in this war?
17. In what way was the discipline of the Romans put to the proof?
18. Was his challenge disregarded?
19. Relate the particulars of the combat.
20. What reception did he expect from his father?
21. What was the consequence of this rashness?
22. How was this sentence received by the army?
23. Did a battle ensue?
24. What was wanting to ensure the victory?
25. To whom did success incline?
26. What heroic resolution did Decius make?
27. In what way did he do this?
28. What followed?
29. What effect had this sacrifice on the hostile armies?

SECTION II.

U.C. 431.

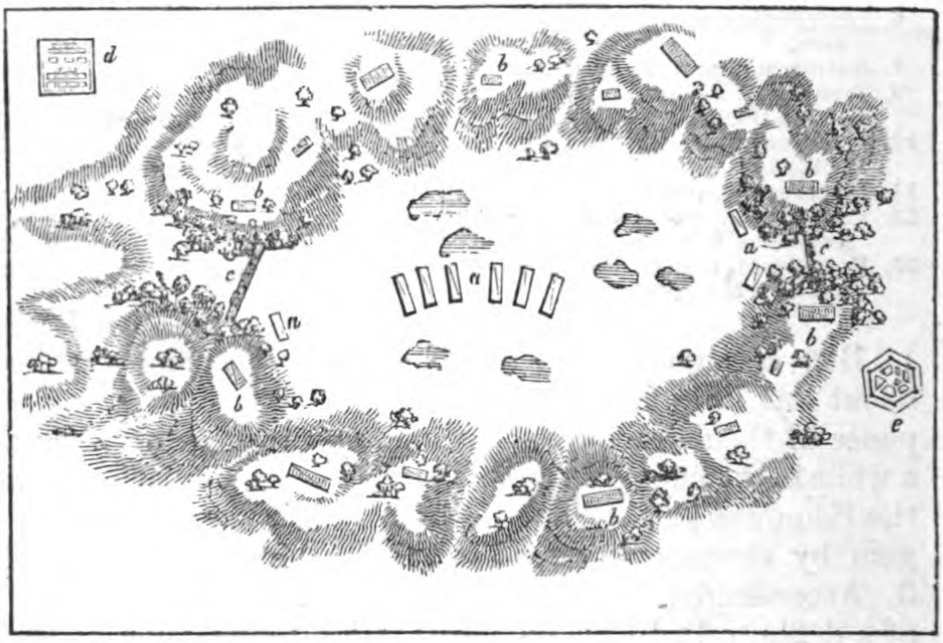
Absurd the famed advice to Pyrrhus given,
More praised, than ponder'd; specious, but unsound
Sooner that hero's sword the world had quell'd,
Than reason, his ambition. YOUNG.

6. Confed'eracy, *s.* a league, an alliance.
7. Retriev'ing, *part.* recovering.
9. Tran'sitory, *a.* short, not lasting.
Diminu'tion, *s.* a lessening.
12. Predeces'sor, *s.* an ancestor, one going before.
14. Disper'sed, *v.* scattered.
22. Ford'able, *a.* not too deep to be passed on foot.
23. Rein'for'ced, *v.* strengthened by the addition of fresh troops.
24. Phal'anx, *s.* a body of men drawn up in a wedge-like form, with their spears protruded, and their shields closely locked together.
Le'gion, *s.* a body of 6100 foot, divided into ten cohorts, and fifty-five companies, and 726 cavalry generally attached to the infantry, but sometimes detached on separate service.
30. Nego'tiate, *v.* to treat for, to manage.

1. BUT a signal disgrace which the Romans sustained about this time, in their contest with the Samnites, made a pause in their usual good fortune, and turned the scale for a while in the enemy's favour [1]. 2. The senate having denied the Samnites peace, Pon'tius, their general, was resolved to gain by stratagem, what he had frequently lost by force. 3. Accordingly, leading his army into the neighbourhood of a defile, called Cau'dium, and taking possession of all its outlets, he sent ten of his soldiers, habited like shepherds, with directions to throw themselves into the way which the Romans were to march. 4. Exactly to his wishes, the Roman consul, Posthu'mius, met them, and taking them for what they appeared, demanded the route the Samnite army had taken: they, with seeming indifference, replied

[1] An additional instance of the severity with which military discipline was maintained among the Romans, happened a short time previous to this: L. Papir'ius Cursor, the dictator, having occasion to quit the army, and repair to Rome, strictly forbade Q. Fa'bius Rullianus, his master of the horse, to venture a battle in his absence. This order Fa'bius disobeyed, and gained a complete victory. Instead, however, of finding success a palliation of his offence, he was immediately condemned by the stern dictator to expiate his breach of discipline by death. In spite of the mutinous disposition of the army; in spite of the intercessions and threats, both of the senate and people, Papir'ius persisted in his resolution: but what menaces and powerful interposition could not obtain, was granted to the prayers and tears of the criminal's relatives; and Fa'bius lived to fill some of the highest offices of the state, with honour to himself and infinite advantage to his country. (Livy, l. 8. c. 30. 35.)

that they were going to Luce'ria, a town in Apu'lia, and were then actually besieging it. 5. The Roman general, not suspecting the stratagem that was laid against him, marched directly by the shortest road, which lay through the defile, to relieve that city; and was not undeceived till he saw his army surrounded, and blocked up on every side.



a the Roman army. *c c* the entrances of the defile. *d* the Roman camp.
b b the Samnites. *e* the town of Caudium.

6. Pon'tius, thus having the Romans entirely in his power, first obliged the army to pass under the yoke, after having stript them of all but their under garments. He then stipulated, that they should wholly quit the territories of the Samnites, and that they should continue to live upon the terms of their former *confederacy*. 7. The Romans were constrained to submit to this ignominious treaty, and marched into Cap'ua disarmed, half naked, and burning with a desire of *retrieving* their lost honour. 8. When the army arrived at Rome, the whole city was most sensibly affected at their shameful return: nothing but grief and resentment were to be seen, and the whole city was put into mourning.

9. This was a *transitory* calamity; the state had suffered a *diminution* of its glory, but not of its power [1]. The war

[1] It appears, however, to have suffered a diminution of its honour on this occasion, by breaking every article of the treaty of peace extorted

was carried on as usual, for many years; the power of the Samnites declining every day, while that of the Romans gained fresh vigour from every victory. 10. Under the conduct of Papir'ius Curso, repeated triumphs were gained. Fa'bius Max'imus also had his share in the glory of conquering the Samnites; and De'cius, the son of that Decius whom we saw devoting himself for his country about forty years before, followed the example of his noble father, and rushing into the midst of the enemy, saved the lives of his countrymen with the loss of his own [1].

11. The Samnites being driven to the most extreme distress, and unable to defend themselves, were obliged to call in the assistance of a foreign power, and had recourse to Pyr'rhus, king of Epi'rus [2], to save them from impending ruin. 12. Pyrrhus, a man of great courage, ambition, and power, who had always kept the example of Alexan'der, his great *predecessor*, before his eyes, promised to come to their assistance; and in the mean time despatched a body of three thousand men, under the command of Cin'eas, an experienced soldier, and a scholar of the great orator Demos'thenes [3]. 13. Nor did he himself remain long behind, but soon after put to sea with three thousand horse, twenty thousand foot, and twenty elephants, in which the commanders of that time began to place very great confidence. 14. However, only a small part of this great armament arrived in Italy with him; for many of his ships were *dispersed*, and some were totally lost in a storm.

15. Upon his arrival at Taren'tum [4], his first care was to reform the people whom he came to succour. Observing a total dissoluteness of manners in this luxurious city, and

from Posthu'mius. As some atonement for this breach of faith, they delivered Posthu'mius and those who signed the treaty into the hands of the Samnites, to do with them as they thought fit; but this generous people instantly set them at liberty. (Livy, l. 9. c. 8—11.)

[1] U.C. 447. About this time Appius Claudius, the censor, constructed an aqueduct, seven miles long, for supplying Rome with water, and that famous road from Rome to Capua, which still remains, the admiration of all Europe.

[2] Epi'rus, a country situated between Macedonia, Achaia, and the Ionian Sea. (Strabo.)

[3] Demos'thenes, famous for his bold and nervous style of oratory, flourished at Athens about 320 years before the Christian era.

[4] Taren'tum, now Taren'to, was a town of Calabria, in Italy, situate on a bay of the same name, near the mouth of the river Gale'sus: it was celebrated for its fine harbour. (Strabo.)

that the inhabitants were rather occupied with the pleasures of bathing, feasting, and dancing, than the care of preparing for war, he gave orders to have all their places of public entertainment shut up, and that they should be restrained in such amusements as rendered soldiers unfit for battle. 16. In the mean time the Romans did all which prudence could suggest to oppose so formidable an enemy: and the consul Lævi'nus was sent with a numerous force to interrupt his progress. 17. Pyr'rhus, though his whole army was not yet arrived, drew out to meet him; but previously sent an ambassador, desiring to be permitted to mediate between the Romans and the people of Tarentum. 18. To this Lævi'nus answered, that *he neither esteemed him as a mediator, nor feared him as an enemy:* and then leading the ambassador through the Roman camp, desired him to observe diligently what he saw, and to report the result to his master.

19. In consequence of this, both armies approaching, pitched their tents in sight of each other, upon the opposite banks of the river Li'ris. Pyr'rhus was always extremely careful in directing the situation of his own camp, and in observing that of the enemy. 20. Walking along the banks of the river, and surveying the Roman method of encamping, he was heard to observe that these barbarians seemed to be no way barbarous, and that he should too soon find their actions equal to their resolution. 21. In the mean time he placed a body of men in readiness to oppose the Romans, in case they should attempt to ford the stream before his whole army was brought together. 22. Things turned out according to his expectations; the consul, with an impetuosity that marked his inexperience, gave orders for passing the river where it was *fordable;* and the advanced guard, having attempted to oppose him in vain, was obliged to retire to the whole body of the army. 23. Pyr'rhus being apprised of the enemy's attempt, at first hoped to cut off their cavalry before they could be *reinforced* by the foot, which were not as yet got over; and led on in person a chosen body of horse against them. 24. The Roman legions having with much difficulty advanced across the river, the engagement became general; the Greeks fought with a consciousness of their former fame, and the Romans with a desire of gaining fresh glory: mankind had seldom seen two such differently disciplined armies opposed to each other; nor is it to this day

determined whether the Greek *phalanx* or the Roman *legion* were preferable. 25. The combat was long in suspense; the Romans had seven times repulsed the enemy, and were as often driven back themselves; but at length, while the success seemed doubtful, Pyr′rhus sent his elephants into the midst of the engagement, and these turned the scale of victory in his favour. 26. The Romans, who had never before encountered creatures of such magnitude, were terrified not only at their intrepid fierceness, but at the castles that were fastened on their backs, filled with armed men. 27. It was then that Pyr′rhus saw the day was his own; and, sending his Thessalian cavalry to charge the enemy in disorder, the rout became general. A dreadful slaughter of the Romans ensued, fifteen thousand men being killed on the spot, and eighteen hundred taken prisoners. 28. Nor were the conquerors in a much better state than the vanquished; Pyr′rhus himself being wounded, and thirteen thousand of his forces slain. Night coming on put an end to the slaughter on both sides, and Pyr′rhus was heard to exclaim, that one such victory more would ruin his whole army. 29. The next day, as he walked to view the field of battle, he could not help regarding with admiration the bodies of the Romans who were slain. Upon seeing them all with their wounds in front, their countenances even in death marked with noble resolution, and a sternness that awed him into respect, he was heard to cry out, in the true spirit of a military adventurer, "Oh! with what ease could I conquer the world, had I the Romans for soldiers, or had they me for their king!"

30. Pyr′rhus, after this victory, was still unwilling to drive them to an extremity, and considering that it was best to treat with an humbled enemy, he resolved to send his friend Cin′eas[1], the orator, to *negotiate* a peace; of whom he often asserted, that he had won more towns by the eloquence of Cin′eas, than by his own arms. 31. But Cin′eas, with all his art, found the Romans incapable of being seduced, either by private bribery, or public persuasion; with a haughtiness little expected from a vanquished enemy, they insisted that Pyr′rhus should evacuate Italy previous to the commencement of a treaty of peace.

[1] Cin′eas is said to have possessed so retentive a memory, that the day after his arrival at Rome, he could salute every senator and knight by name.

Questions for Examination.

1. Were the Romans uniformly successful?
2. Who resolved to use stra agem, and why?
3. By what means did he effect it?
4. What followed?
5. Was the Roman general deceived by this stratagem?
6. What advantage did the Samnite commander take of the situation of the Romans?
7. Were these terms accepted?
8. How was this news received at Rome?
9. Did this event put an end to the war?
10. Who signalized themselves against the Samnites?
11. What measures did the Samnites adopt in this extremity?
12. What was the character of Pyrrhus, and what effort did he make for their relief?
13. Did he follow in person?
14. Did this great force arrive in safety?
15. What was his first care?
16. What measures did the Romans adopt?
17. Did Pyrrhus immediately commence hostilities?
18. What answer was returned?
19. What followed?
20. What opinion did Pyrrhus form of the Romans?
21. What were his first measures?
22. Were his precautions justified?
23. In what way did Pyrrhus resist this attack?
24. What is worthy of observation in this engagement?
25. To whom did the victory fall?
26. On what account were the Romans terrified by the appearance of the elephants?
27. What completed the rout?
28. Was this victory cheaply purchased?
29. What were the sensations of Pyrrhus on viewing the field of battle?
30. What measures did he adopt after this victory?
31. Were the arts of Cineas successful?

SECTION III.

In public life severe,
To virtue still inexorably firm;
But when, beneath his low illustrious roof,
Sweet peace and happy wisdom smooth'd his brow,
Not friendship sôfter was, nor love more kind.

THOMSON.

1. Extol'ling, *part.* greatly praising.
9. Pan'ic, *s.* violent fear.
15. Alleg'ing, *part.* affirming, mentioning.
16. Schooled, *part.* trained, instructed.
18. Magnanim'ity, *s.* greatness of mind, bravery, elevation of soul.
27. Cit'adel, *s.* a fortress, a castle.
Invet'erate, *a.* obstinate, not to be appeased.

1. BEING frustrated, therefore, in his expectations, Cin'eas returned to his master, *extolling* both the virtues and the grandeur of the Romans. The senate, he said, appeared a reverend assembly of demi-gods; and the city, a temple for their reception. 2. Of this Pyr'rhus soon after became sensible by an embassy from Rome, concerning the ransom and exchange of prisoners. 3. At the head of this venerable deputation was Fabri'cius, an ancient senator, who had long been a pattern to his countrymen of the most extreme poverty, joined to the most cheerful content. 4. Pyr'rhus received this celebrated old man with great kindness; and, willing to try how far fame had been just in his favour, offered him rich presents; but the Roman refused. 5. The day after he was desirous of examining the equality of his temper, and ordered one of his largest elephants to be placed behind the tapestry, which, upon a signal given, being drawn aside, the huge animal raised its trunk above the ambassador's head, making a hideous noise, and using other arts to intimidate him. 6. But Fabricius, with an unchanged countenance, smiled upon the king, and told him that he looked with an equal eye on the terrors of that day, as he had upon the allurements of the preceding. 7. Pyr'rhus, pleased to find so much virtue in one he had considered as a barbarian, was willing to grant him the only favour which he knew could make him happy; he released the Roman prisoners, entrusting them to Fabri'cius alone, upon his promise, that in case the senate were determined to continue the war, he might reclaim them whenever he thought proper.[1]

[1] So great an enemy was Fabri'cius to luxury, that all his household utensils were of the meanest materials. He banished from the senate Corne'lius Rufi'nus, who had been twice consul and dictator, because he kept in his house more than ten pounds weight of silver plate. (Flor. l. i. c. 18, in nota.) Such a man was not easily corrupted!

8. By this time the Roman army was recovered from its
U.C. late defeat, and Sulpi'cius and De'cius, the consuls
474. for the following year, were placed at its head. 9. The *panic* which had formerly seized it from the elephants now began to wear off; and both armies met near the city of As'culum, pretty nearly equal in numbers. 10. Here again, after a long and obstinate fight, the Grecian discipline prevailed. The Romans, pressed on every side, particularly by the elephants, were obliged to retire to their camp, leaving six thousand men upon the field of battle. 11. But the enemy had no great reason to boast of their triumph, as they had four thousand slain. Pyr'rhus again observed to a soldier who was congratulating him upon his victory, "Another such a triumph, and I shall be undone." This battle finished the campaign. 12. The next season began with equal vigour on both sides; Pyr'rhus having received new succours from home. 13. While the two armies were approaching, and yet but a small distance from each other, a letter was brought to old Fabri'cius, the Roman general, from the king's physician, importing that for a proper reward he would take him off by poison, and thus rid the Romans of a powerful enemy, and a dangerous war. 14. Fabri'cius felt all the honest indignation at this base proposal that was consistent with his former character; he communicated it to his colleague, and instantly gave it as his opinion, that Pyr'rhus should be informed of the treachery that was plotted against him. 15. Accordingly, letters were despatched for that purpose, informing Pyr'rhus of the affair, and *alleging* his unfortunate choice of friends and enemies; that he had trusted and promoted murderers, while he directed his resentment against the generous and brave. 16. Pyr'rhus now began to find that these bold barbarians were, by degrees, *schooled* into refinement, and would not suffer him to be their superior, even in generosity. He received the message with as much amazement at their candour, as indignation at his physician's treachery. "Admirable Fabri'cius!" cried he, "it would be as easy to turn the sun from its course, as thee from the path of honour." 17. Then, making the proper inquiry among his servants, and having discovered the treason, he ordered his physician to be executed. 18. Not to be outdone in *magnanimity*, he immediately sent to Rome all his prisoners without ransom, and again desired to negotiate a peace: but the Romans still

refused, upon any other conditions than had been offered before [1].

19. After an interval of two years, Pyr'rhus, having increased his army by new levies, sent one part of it to oppose the march of Len'tulus, while he with the other went to attack Cu'rius Denta'tus, before his colleague could come up. 20. His principal aim was to surprise the enemy by night; but, unfortunately, passing through woods, and the light failing him, his men lost their way; so that at the approach of morning he saw himself in sight of the Roman camp, with the enemy drawn out ready to receive him. The vanguard of both armies soon met, in which the Romans had the advantage. 21. Soon after, a general engagement ensuing, Pyr'rhus, finding the balance of the victory turning still against him, had once more recourse to his elephants. 22. These, however, the Romans were now too well acquainted with to feel any vain terrors from; and having found that fire was the most effectual means to repel them, they caused a number of balls to be made, composed of flax and rosin, which were lighted and thrown against them as they approached the ranks. 23. The elephants, rendered furious by the flame, and boldly opposed by the soldiers, could no longer be brought on, but ran back on their own army, bearing down their ranks, and filling all places with terror and confusion: thus victory at length declared in favour of Rome. 24. Pyr'rhus in vain attempted to stop the flight and slaughter of his troops; he lost ~~not only~~ twenty-three thousand of his best soldiers, but his camp was also taken. 25. This served as a new lesson to the Romans, who were ever open to improvement. They had formerly pitched their tents without order; but, by this new capture, they were taught to measure out their ground, and fortify the whole with a trench; so that many of their succeeding victories are to be ascribed to their improved method of encamping.

26. Pyr'rhus, thus finding all hopes fruitless, resolved to leave Italy, where he found only desperate enemies, and faithless allies: accordingly, calling together the Taren'tines, he informed them that he had received assurances from Greece of speedy assistance, and desiring them to await the event with tranquillity, the night following he

[1] They, however, released an equal number of Tarentine and Samnite prisoners.

embarked his troops, and returned undisturbed into his native kingdom, with the remains of his shattered forces, leaving a garrison in Taren'tum merely to save appearances; and in this manner ended the war with Pyr'rhus after six years' continuance.

27. As for the poor luxurious Taren'tines, who were the original promoters of the war, they soon began to find a worse enemy in the garrison that was left for their defence, than in the Romans who attacked them from without. The hatred between them and Mi'lo, who commanded their *citadel* for Pyr'rhus, was become so great, that nothing but the fear of their old *inveterate* enemies, the Romans, could equal it. 28. In this distress they applied to the Carthaginians, who, with a large fleet, came and blocked up the port of Taren'tum, so that this unfortunate people, once famous through Italy for their refinements and pleasures, now saw themselves contended for by three different armies, without a choice of a conqueror. 29. At length, however, the Romans found means to bring over the garrison to their interest, after which they easily became masters of the city, and demolished its walls, granting the inhabitants liberty and protection.

Questions for Examination.

1. What report did Cineas give of the Romans?
2. By what means did Pyrrhus become convinced of its truth?
3. Who headed this deputation?
4. What reception did he experience?
5. What farther trial was made of his disposition?
6. What effect did this produce on Fabricius?
7. In what way did Pyrrhus evince his satisfaction?
8. In what state was the Roman army at this time?
9. Where did the rival armies meet?
10. What was the event of the engagement?
11. Did it cost the enemy dear?
12. Was the war continued?
13. What proposal was made to Fabricius?
14. How was this proposal received?
15. How was this done?
16. What effect had this conduct on Pyrrhus?
17. What followed?
18. What return did he make to the Romans?
19. How was this war carried on?
20. What views had he in this, and how did they succeed?

21. What expedient did Pyrrhus have recourse to, to ensure the victory?
22. How did the Romans endeavour to counteract it?
23. What was the consequence?
24. What loss did Pyrrhus sustain?
25. What advantage did the Romans gain from this victory?
26. What resolution did Pyrrhus form, and how did he effect it?
27. What became of the Tarentines?
28. To whom did they have recourse?
29. How did this terminate?

CHAPTER XIV.

SECT. I.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE FIRST PUNIC WAR TO THE BEGINNING OF THE SECOND, WHEN THE ROMANS BEGAN TO GROW POWERFUL BY SEA.—U.C 493.

In every heart
Are sown the sparks that kindle fiery war,
Occasion needs but fan them, and they blaze. COWPER.

2. Embroil'ing, *part.* setting at enmity, putting in confusion.
9. Unsurmount'able, *a.* that cannot be overcome.
11. Persever'ance, *s.* constancy.
14. Consum'mate, *a.* perfect, complete, accomplished.
16. Grap'ple, *v.* to fight close, hand to hand, to lay hold of their ships with grappling irons.
Mer'cenary, *a.* serving for hire.
23. Despon'dence, *s.* dejection, despair.

1. THE Romans having destroyed all rival pretensions at home, began to pant after foreign conquests. 2. The Carthaginians were at that time in possession of the greatest part of Sicily, and, like the Romans, only wanted an opportunity of *embroiling* the natives, in order to become masters of the whole island. 3. This opportunity at length offered. Hi'ero, king of Sy'racuse, one of the states of that island, which was as yet unconquered, entreated their aid against the Mam'ertines, an insignificant people of the same country, and they sent him supplies both by sea and land[1]. 4. The Mam'ertines, on the other

[1] Hi'ero had been for many years a firm friend to the Romans; and though their protecting a city which would otherwise have fallen into his hands, occasioned a temporary interruption of that friendship, it was soon resumed, and continued unshaken during the remainder of a long reign. The happy effects of this prudent conduct were experi-

hand, to shield off impending ruin, put themselves under the protection of Rome. 5. The Romans, not thinking the Mam'ertines worthy of the name of allies, instead of professing to assist them, boldly declared war against Carthage; alleging as a reason the assistance which Carthage had lately sent to the southern parts of Italy against the Romans. In this manner a war was declared between two powerful states, both too great to continue patient spectators of each other's increase.

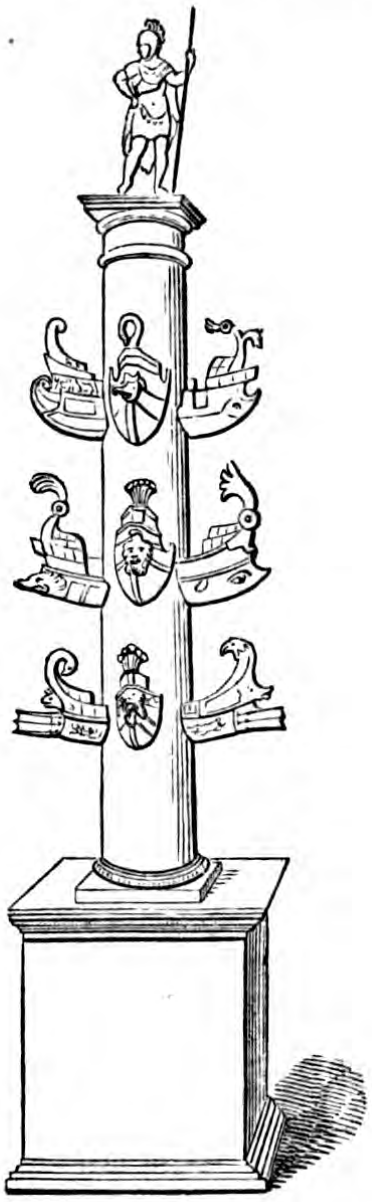
6. Carthage, a colony of the Phœni'cians, was built on the coast of Africa, near the place where Tunis now stands, about a hundred and thirty-seven years before the foundation of Rome. 7. As it had been long growing into power, so it had extended its dominions all along the coasts; but its chief strength lay in its fleets and commerce. 8. Thus circumstanced, these two great powers began what is called the First Punic war. The Carthaginians were possessed of gold and silver, which might be exhausted; the Romans were famous for perseverance, patriotism, and poverty, which gathered strength by every defeat.

9. But there seemed to be an *unsurmountable* obstacle to the ambitious views of Rome, as they had no fleet, or at least none that deserved the title; while the Carthagin'ians had the entire command at sea, and kept all the maritime towns in obedience.[1] 10. In such a situation, under disadvantages which nature seemed to have imposed, any people but the Romans would have rested; but nothing could conquer or intimidate them. 11. A Carthagin'ian vessel happened to be driven on shore in a storm, and this was sufficient to serve as a model. They began to apply themselves to maritime affairs; and though without shipwrights to build, or seamen to navigate a fleet, they resolved to surmount every obstacle with inflexible *perseverance*. 12. The consul Duil'lius was the first who ventured to sea with his new-constructed armament; and,

enced by his subjects; for while the other states of the island witnessed scenes of carnage and ruin, Sy'racuse enjoyed the sweets of tranquillity and affluence. (Polyb. et alii.)

[1] The vessels in which they had hitherto transported their troops were principally hired from their neighbours the Locrians, Tarentines, &c. It is certain that the Romans had ships of war before this period, but from the little attention they had hitherto paid to naval affairs, they were, probably, badly constructed and ill managed.

though far inferior to the enemy in the management of his fleet, yet he gained the first naval victory, the Carthaginians losing fifty of their ships, and the undisturbed sovereignty of the sea, which they valued more. The highest honours were conferred on Duil'lius for this remarkable victory, and a *rostral* column, that is, a column adorned with the *rostra* or prows of ships, raised to commemorate the event, still exists in Rome.



13. The Romans soon invaded Sicily, and gained some signal successes, principally by the aid of their ally, king Hi'ero. On one occasion the consul Calati'nus was entrapped by the Carthaginians into a defile, and would certainly have been destroyed but for the bravery of a military tribune, Calpur'nius Flem'ma, who with three hundred men kept the whole of the hostile forces at bay, until the consul extricated his army. But notwithstanding repeated triumphs, the Romans discovered that the conquest of Sicily was to be obtained only by humbling the power of Carthage at home. For this reason the senate resolved to carry the war into Africa itself, and accordingly they sent Reg'ulus and Man'lius, with a fleet of three hundred sail, to make the invasion. 14. Reg'ulus was reckoned the most *consummate* warrior that Rome could then produce, and a professed example of frugal severity. His patriotism was still greater than his temperance; all private passions seemed extinguished in him, at least they were swallowed up in one great ruling affection, the love of his country. 15. The two generals set sail with their fleet, which was the greatest that had

ever yet left an Italian port, carrying a hundred and forty thousand men. They were met by the Carthagin'ians with a fleet equally powerful, and men more used to the sea. 16. While the fight continued at a distance, the Carthagin'ians seemed successful; but when the Romans came to *grapple* with them, the difference between a *mercenary* army, and one that fought for fame, was apparent. 17. The resolution of the Romans was crowned with success; the enemy's fleet was dispersed, and fifty-four of their vessels taken. 18. The consequence of this victory was an immediate descent upon the coast of Africa, and the capture of the city Clu'pea[1]: together with twenty thousand men, who were made prisoners of war[2].

19. The senate being informed of these great successes, and applied to for fresh instructions, commanded Man'lius back to Italy, in order to superintend the Sicilian war; and directed that Reg'ulus should continue in Africa, to prosecute his victories there.

20. A battle ensued, in which Carthage was once more defeated, and 17,000 of its best troops were cut off. This fresh victory contributed to throw them into the utmost despair; for more than eighty of their towns submitted to the Romans[3]. 21. In this distress, the Carthagin'ians, destitute of generals at home, were obliged to send to Lacedæ'mon, offering the command of their armies to Xantip'pus, a general of great experience, who undertook to conduct them.

22. This general began by giving the magistrates proper instructions for levying their men; he assured them

[1] Clu'pea, or Cly'pea, now Aklib'ia, is a town of Africa Proper, twenty-two miles from the site of Carthage. (Strabo.) It was very conveniently situated to serve as a magazine of arms and provisions for the Romans, and there were several ports near it, to shelter their fleets. (Polyb.)

[2] While Reg'ulus lay encamped here, near the river Bagra'da, he is said to have slain a monstrous serpent by the help of his battering engines. Its skin, which was 120 feet long, was sent to Rome, and preserved for a long time with great care.

[3] To complete their misfortunes, the Numid'ians entered their territory, laid waste their fields, and committed such dreadful devastations, that a severe famine ensued, with all its attendant horrors. At this critical juncture, Reg'ulus, who had advanced to the very gates of the city, sent the Carthagin'ians proposals of peace. The deputies were received with transports of joy till the conditions were known, when they were found so severe, that the senators protested they would rather die a thousand deaths than submit to them.

that their armies were hitherto overthrown, not by the strength of the enemy, but by the ignorance of their own commanders; he therefore required a ready obedience to his orders, and assured them of an easy victory. 23. The whole city seemed once more revived from *despondence*, by the exhortation of a single stranger; and soon from hope grew into confidence. 24. This was the spirit the Grecian general wished to excite in them: so that when he saw them thus ripe for the engagement, he joyfully took the field. 25. The Lacedæmo'nian made the most skilful disposition of his forces; he placed his cavalry in the wings; he disposed the elephants at proper intervals, behind the line of the heavy armed infantry; and bringing up the light-armed troops before, he ordered them to retire through the line of infantry after they had discharged their weapons. 26. At length both armies engaged; after a long and obstinate resistance, the Romans were overthrown with dreadful slaughter, the greatest part of their army destroyed, and Reg'ulus himself taken prisoner[1]. 27. Several other distresses of the Romans followed soon after. They lost their fleet in a storm[2], and Agrigen'tum[3], their principal town in Sicily, was taken by Karth'alo, the Carthagin'ian general. They built a new fleet, which shared the fate of the former; for the mariners, as yet unacquainted with the Mediter'ranean shores, drove upon quicksands, and soon after the greater part perished in a storm. The Romans, considering these two disasters as indications of the will of the gods that they should not contend by sea, made a decree that no more than fifty galleys should for the future be equipped. But they soon annulled a law which would have proved fatal to their rising greatness.

[1] Xantip'pus met with a very ungrateful return for the signal services he had rendered the Carthagin'ians, for the seamen who were appointed to conduct him home had private orders to throw him overboard, lest he should ascribe to himself the honour of this victory.

[2] A fine army was thus lost; all the riches that had been amassed in Africa were swallowed up by the sea, and the whole coast from Pachi'num to Cameri'na was covered with dead bodies and the wrecks of ships, so that history scarcely affords another example of so dreadful a disaster.

[3] Now Girgen'ti. In its flourishing condition it contained 200,000 inhabitants. (Polyb. Strabo.)

Questions for Examination.

1. What did the Romans now desire?
2. What state afforded them an opportunity for this purpose?
3. Were their wishes gratified, and how?
4. What measures did the Mamertines adopt?
5. Did the Romans afford them the assistance they requested?
6. Where was Carthage situated, and when was it built?
7. Was it a powerful state?
8. Had the Romans or the Carthagin'ians the means most likely to ensure success?
9. Were Rome and Carthage on an equal footing in other respects?
10. Did the Romans attempt to overcome this obstacle?
11. What assisted their endeavours?
12. Who was their first naval commander, and what was his success?
13. What were the means adopted to conquer Sicily?
14. What was the character of Regulus?
15. What was the amount of the forces on both sides?
16. On which side did the advantage lie?
17. With whom did the victory remain?
18. What was the consequence of this victory?
19. What were the orders of the senate?
20. What was the next event deserving notice, and its consequences?
21. To what expedient were the Carthaginians obliged to have recourse?
22. What were the first acts of this general?
23. What were the effects his arrival produced?
24. What was the consequence?
25. In what way was the Carthaginian army drawn up?
26. What was the event of the battle?
27. What other disasters did the Romans encounter?

SECTION II.

Who has not heard the Fabian heroes sung?
Dentatus' scars, or Mutius' flaming hand?
How Manlius saved the Capitol? the choice
Of steady Regulus? DYER.

1. Solici'tor, *s.* one who solicits, or asks for another.
8. Ter'minate, *v.* to end.
9. Embar'rassment, *s.* perplexity, difficulty.
16. Exhaus't'ed, *part.* drained of their resources.
Subscri'bed, *part.* agreed to, signed.

1. THE Carthagin'ians being thus successful, were desirous of a new treaty of peace, hoping to have better terms than those insisted upon by Reg'ulus[1]. They supposed that

[1] These are subsequently mentioned.

he, whom they had now for four years kept in a dungeon, confined and chained, would be a proper *solicitor*. It was expected, that being wearied with imprisonment and bondage, he would gladly endeavour to persuade his countrymen to a discontinuance of the war which prolonged his captivity. 2. He was accordingly sent with their ambassadors to Rome, under a promise, previously exacted from him, to return in case of being unsuccessful. He was even given to understand that his life depended upon the success of his negotiation [1].

3. When this old general, together with the ambassadors of Carthage, approached Rome, numbers of his friends came out to meet him, and congratulate him on his return. 4. Their acclamations resounded through the city; but Reg'ulus refused, with settled melancholy, to enter the gates. In vain he was entreated on every side to visit once more his little dwelling, and share in that joy which his return had inspired. He persisted in saying, that he was now a slave belonging to the Carthagin'ians, and unfit to partake in the liberal honours of his country. 5. The senate assembling without the walls, as usual, to give audience to the ambassadors, Reg'ulus opened his commission, as he had been directed by the Carthagin'ian council, and their ambassadors seconded his proposals. 6. The senate themselves, who were weary of a war which had been protracted above fourteen years, were no way disinclinable to a peace. It only remained for Reg'ulus himself to give his opinion. 7. When it came to his turn to speak, to the surprise of the whole, he gave his voice for continuing the war. 8. So unexpected an advice not a little disturbed the senate: they pitied, as well as admired a man who had used such eloquence against his private interest, and could conclude upon a measure which was to *terminate* in his own ruin. 9. But he soon relieved their *embarrassment* by breaking off the treaty, and by rising, in order to return to his bonds and his confinement. 10. In vain did the senate and his dearest friends entreat

[1] Though the Carthagin'ians had been partially successful, their condition fully justified their anxiety for peace. The war had already lasted fourteen years; they had lost their best commanders, their elephants, and their fleets; their finances were exhausted, their armies diminished, and the only towns they had now left in Sicily were Lilybæ'um (now Boco), and Drepa'nnum (now Trapa'ni), the former of which was invested by the Roman army.

his stay; he still repressed their solicitations. Mar'cia, his wife, with her children, vainly entreated to be permitted to see him; he still obstinately persisted in keeping his promise; and though sufficiently apprised of the tortures that awaited his return, without embracing his family, or taking leave of his friends, he departed with the ambassadors for Carthage.

11. Nothing could equal the fury and the disappointment of the Carthagin'ians when they were informed by their ambassadors that Reg'ulus, instead of hastening a peace, had given his opinion for continuing the war. 12. They accordingly prepared to punish his conduct with the most studied tortures. His eyelids were cut off, and he was remanded to prison. After some days, he was again brought out from his dark and dismal dungeon, and exposed with his face opposite the burning sun. At last, when malice was fatigued with studying all the arts of torture, he was put into a sort of barrel, stuck full of spikes, and in this painful position he continued till he died [1].

13. Both sides now took up arms with more than former animosity. At length Roman perseverance was crowned with success; and one victory followed on the back of another. They met, however, with some sad reverses. P. Clau'dius Pul'cher, engaging Ath'erbal, the commander of the Carthagin'ian fleet, was defeated with the loss of ninety galleys, eight thousand men killed, and twenty thousand taken prisoners. The loss of this engagement was partly owing to the consul's contemptuous disregard of the auspices held in such veneration by the Romans: for when the sacred chickens refused to feed, (which was considered an ill omen,) he threw them, coop and all, into the sea, saying, *If they will not eat, let them drink.* This supposed impiety so disheartened his troops, that they made but a faint resistance to the enemy, and suffered themselves to be cut down like cowards. They likewise lost another fleet in a storm. Of one hundred and twenty galleys, and eight hundred transports laden with stores, not one vessel escaped. After the loss of this fleet, the Roman senate

[1] This cruelty was retaliated by his wife, Mar'cia, on some Carthagin'ian captives of the highest quality. Indeed there is some reason to believe, that the story of the tortures to which Reg'ulus was subjected, was invented as an excuse for the barbarity with which his family treated those prisoners.

encouraged their subjects to fit out privateers to harass and plunder the enemy. Fa'bius Bu'teo once more showed them the way to naval victory, by defeating a large squadron of the enemy's ships; but Luta'tius Cat'ulus, whose fleet was built and equipped by the private subscriptions of some patriotic individuals, gained a victory still more complete, in which the power of Carthage seemed totally destroyed at sea by the loss of a hundred and twenty ships. 14. This loss compelled the Carthagin'ians again to sue for peace, which Rome thought proper to grant; but still inflexible in its demands, exacted the same conditions which Reg'ulus had formerly offered at the gates of Carthage. 15. These were, that they should lay down a thousand talents of silver, to defray the charge of the war, and should pay two thousand two hundred more[1] within ten years; that they should quit Sicily, with all such islands as they possessed near it; that they should never make war against the allies of Rome, nor come with any vessels of war within the Roman dominions; and, lastly, that all their prisoners and deserters should be delivered up without ransom. 16. To these hard conditions the Carthagin'ians, now *exhausted*, readily *subscribed*; and thus ended the first Punic war, which had lasted twenty-four years, and in some measure had drained both nations of their resources[2] U.C. 513.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the Carthaginians now desirous of obtaining?
2. Was Regulus employed for this purpose?
3. How was Regulus received by the Romans?
4. What was the conduct of Regulus on this occasion?
5. How did the negotiation commence?
6. Were the Romans inclined for peace?
7. What was the opinion of Regulus?
8. What was the effect of this advice?
9. How did Regulus put an end to their embarrassment?
10. Could he not be prevailed on to remain at Rome?
11. How did the Carthaginians receive an account of his conduct?
12. In what way did they punish him?
13. With what success was the war continued?
14. What was the consequence of this loss?

---

[1] 437,250*l.* sterling.

[2] The Romans lost seven hundred ships in this war; the Carthagin'ians only five hundred. But Roman perseverance prevailed.

15. What were these terms?
16. Were they agreed to?
What was the duration of the first Punic war?

CHAPTER XV.

SECT. I.

FROM THE END OF THE FIRST PUNIC WAR TO THE END OF THE SECOND.

Spain first he won, the Pyrenæans pass'd,
And steepy Alps, the mounds that nature cast;
And with corroding juices, as he went,
A passage through the living rocks he rent,
Then, like a torrent rolling from on high,
He pours his headlong rage on Italy.

JUVENAL, SAT. 10.

3. Rail'lery, *s.* satirical mirth, jesting.
4. Deri'sion, *s.* contempt, mockery, scorn.
6. Mod'el, *s.* a copy, a pattern.
Ele'giac, *a.* mournful, sad, solemn.
Pas'toral, *a.* relating to shepherds, rural.
Didac'tic, *a.* preceptive, doctrinal.
7. Intrepid'ity, *s.* courage, boldness, bravery.
8. Restitu'tion, *s.* a restoration of any thing unjustly taken.
9. Ce'ded, *v.* given up to, transferred.
Prohibi'tion, *s.* a forbidding, or hindering.
10. Incur'red, *v.* become liable to, brought on themselves.
13. Evolu'tions, *s.* exercises, manœuvres.
16. Retriev'ed, *v.* recovered, repaired.
22. Sus'tenance, *s.* food.
23. Antiq'uity, *s.* ancient times, of old.
25. Cur'rent, *s.* a stream.
Intim'idate, *v.* to alarm, to fright, to deter.
Undaun'ted, *a.* bold, courageous, firm.

1. THE war being ended between the Carthagin'ians and Romans, a profound peace ensued, and in about six years after the temple of Ja'nus was shut for the second time since the foundation of the city[1]. 2. The Romans being thus in friendship with all nations, had an opportunity of turning to the arts of peace; they now began to have a relish for poetry, the first liberal art which rises in every civilized nation, and the first also that decays. 3. Hitherto they had been entertained only with the rude drolleries of their lowest buffoons, who entertained them with sports called Fescen'nine, in which a few debauched actors invented their own parts, while *raillery* and indecency supplied the place of humour. 4. To these a composition of a higher kind succeeded, called satire; a sort of dramatic

[1] The first was in the reign of Numa.

poem, in which the characters of the great were particularly pointed out, and made an object of *derision* to the vulgar. 5. After these came tragedy and comedy, which were borrowed from the Greeks: indeed, the first dramatic U.C. poet of Rome, whose name was Liv'ius Andronicus, 514. was a native of one of the Greek colonies in southern Italy. 6. The instant these finer kinds of composition appeared, this great people rejected their former impurities with disdain. From thenceforward they laboured upon the Grecian *model*; and though they were never able to rival their masters in dramatic composition, they soon surpassed them in many of the more soothing kinds of poetry. *Elegiac*, *pastoral*, and *didactic* compositions began to assume new beauties in the Roman language; and satire, not that rude kind of dialogue already mentioned, but a nobler sort, was all their own [1].

7. While they were thus cultivating the arts of peace, they were not unmindful of making fresh preparations for war; intervals of ease seemed to give fresh vigour for new designs, rather than relax their former *intrepidity*. 8. The Illyr'ians were the first people upon whom they tried their strength. That nation happened to make depredations upon some of the trading subjects of Rome; which U.C. being complained of to Teuta, the queen of the 527. country, she, instead of granting redress, ordered the ambassadors who were sent to demand *restitution* to be murdered. 9. A war ensued, in which the Romans were victorious; most of the Illyr'ic towns were surrendered to the consuls, and a peace at last concluded, by which the greatest part of the country was *ceded* to Rome; a yearly tribute was exacted for the rest, and a *prohibition* added, that the Illyr'ians should not sail beyond the river Lissus with more than two barks, and those unarmed.

10. The Gauls were the next people that *incurred* the displeasure of the Romans. 11. A time of peace, when the armies were disbanded, was the proper season for new irruptions; accordingly, these barbarians invited fresh forces from beyond the Alps, and entering Etru'ria, wasted all with fire and sword, till they came within about three days'

[1] About this time flourished En'nius, who wrote the history of Rome in verse. He was the inventor of the Latin Hexameter. (Vossius.—Valerius Maximus, l. viii. c. 15.)

[2] Illyr'ium or Illyr'ia, a country bordered on one side by Macedon and Epi'rus, and on the other by the Adriatic sea. (Strabo.)

journey of Rome. 12. A prætor and a consul were sent to oppose them, who, now instructed in the improved arts of war, were enabled to surround the Gauls. 13. It was in vain that those hardy troops, who had nothing but courage to protect them, formed two fronts to oppose their adversaries; their naked bodies and undisciplined forces were unable to withstand the shock of an enemy completely armed and skilled in military *evolutions*. 14. A miserable slaughter ensued, in which forty thousand were killed, and ten thousand taken prisoners [1]. 15. This victory was followed by another, gained by Marcel'lus, in which he killed Viridoma'rus, their king, with his own hand. 16. These conquests forced them to beg for peace, the conditions of which served greatly to enlarge the empire. Thus the Romans went on with success; *retrieved* their former losses, and only wanted an enemy worthy of their arms to begin a new war [2].

17. The Carthagin'ians had made peace solely because they were no longer able to continue the war. They, therefore, took the earliest opportunity of breaking the treaty, and besieged Sagun'tum, a city of Spain, which had been in alliance with Rome; and though desired to desist, prosecuted their operations with vigour [3]. 18. Ambassadors were sent in consequence from Rome to Carthage, complaining of the infraction of the articles, and required that Han'nibal, the Carthagin'ian general, who had advised this measure, should be delivered up; which being refused, both sides prepared for a second Punic war.

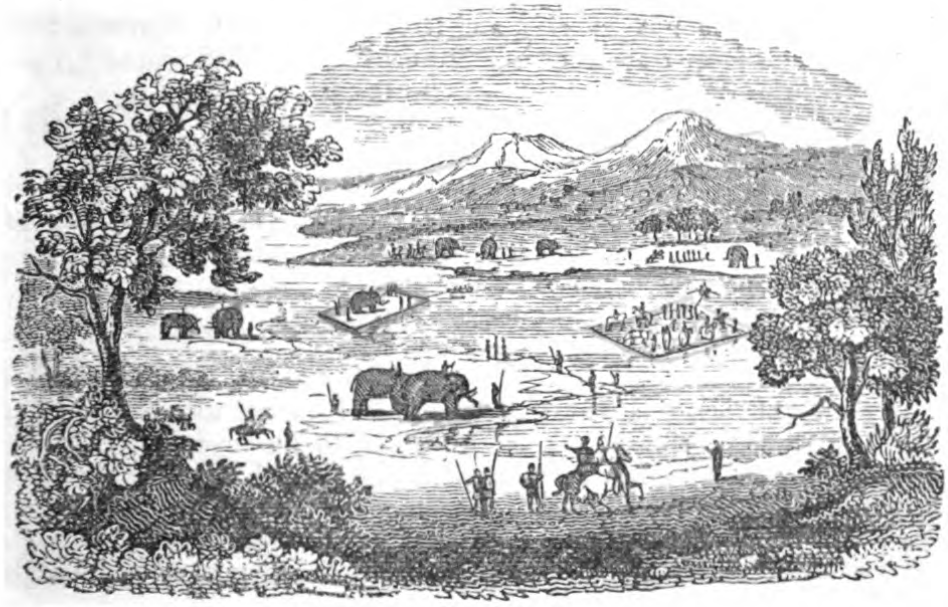
19. The Carthaginians trusted the management of it to Han'nibal. 20. This extraordinary man had been made the sworn foe of Rome almost from his infancy; for while yet very young, his father brought him before the altar, and obliged him to take an oath, that he would never be in friendship with the Romans, nor desist from opposing their power, until he or they should be no more. 21. On

[1] Polybius, (l. ii. c. 3.) says that the troops raised by the republic on this occasion were eight hundred thousand men; of which two hundred and seventy thousand were Romans or Campanians.

[2] Deme'trius, who had succeeded Teuta in the government of Illyr'icum, having violated the articles of the late treaty, a Roman army was sent against him, which conquered the remaining part of the kingdom, and obliged Deme'trius to fly to Macedon. (Livius.)

[3] It appears, however, that the Romans had, by their haughty behaviour, their repeated extortions, and their unjust invasions of Cor'sica and Sardinia, given the Carthaginians just cause of complaint.

his first appearance in the field, he united in his own person the most masterly method of commanding, with the most perfect obedience to his superiors. Thus he was equally beloved by his generals, and the troops he was appointed to lead. 22. He was possessed of the greatest courage in opposing danger, and the greatest presence of mind in retiring from it. No fatigue was able to subdue his body, nor any misfortune to break his spirit: he was equally patient of heat and cold, and he took *sustenance* merely to content nature, not to delight his appetite. He was the best horseman, and the swiftest runner, of the time. 23. This great general, who is considered as the most skilful commander of *antiquity*, having overrun all Spain, and levied a large army composed of various nations, resolved to carry the war into Italy itself, as the Romans had before carried it into the dominions of Carthage. 24. For this purpose, leaving Hanno with a sufficient force to guard his conquests in Spain, he crossed the Pyrene'an mountains into Gaul, with an army of fifty thousand foot, and nine thousand horse. He quickly traversed that country, which was then wild and extensive, and filled with nations that were his declared enemies. 25. The rapid *current* of the Rhone might *intimidate* the bravest, but Hannibal had to encounter in addition the fierce resistance of the Gauls, who had lined the opposite bank. A Roman army was also approaching to dispute his passage, and the difficulty of transporting the elephants across the



river threatened to produce a dangerous delay. Floats of timber covered with earth were prepared, which the elephants, deceived by their appearance, took for firm ground. As soon as the animals came upon the floats they were unmoored, and towed by boats across the stream.

Even after leaving the Rhone innumerable other difficulties impeded Hannibal's enterprise, but he overcame them all with *undaunted* spirit, and in ten days arrived at the foot of the Alps, over which he was to explore a new passage into Italy. 26. It was in the midst of winter when this astonishing project was undertaken. The season added new horrors to the scene. The prodigious height and tremendous steepness of these mountains, capped with snow; the people barbarous and fierce, dressed in skins, with long and shaggy hair; presented a picture that impressed the beholders with astonishment and terror. 27. But nothing was capable of subduing the courage of the Carthaginian general. At the end of fifteen days, spent in crossing the Alps, he found himself in the plains of Italy, with about half his army; the other half having died of cold, or been cut off by the natives[1].

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the consequence of the conclusion of the first Punic war?
2. What advantage did the Romans derive from this interval of peace?
3. What species of entertainment had they hitherto enjoyed?
4. What succeeded these low buffooneries?
5. What was the next species, and from whom was it borrowed?
6. Did their former amusements still continue to please?
7. Were the Romans attentive only to the arts of peace?
8. Who first incurred their resentment, and what was their offence?
9. What was the consequence?
10. Who next incurred the displeasure of the Romans?
11. What was their offence, and what favourable opportunity did they choose?
12. What steps were taken to oppose them?
13. Did the Gauls make any effectual resistance?
14. What was the result of the battle?

[1] Some historians assert that Hannibal, in order to open a passage through some precipices, caused the rocks to be made red hot, and then split them by throwing vinegar on the heated masses. This was long regarded as an idle fable, but modern researches have proved that this mode of breaking rocks is still practised by the natives of Africa, and that the hardest masses are broken to pieces by the action of a cold fluid on the heated stone.

15. Did this victory decide the contest?
16. What advantages occurred to the Romans from this war?
17. Were the Carthaginians sincere in their overture for peace?
18. What was the consequence of this refusal?
19. To whom was the conduct of the war committed by the Carthaginians?
20. What rendered Hannibal particularly eligible to this post?
21. Was he a favourite with the army?
22. Describe his corporeal and mental qualifications.
23. What resolution did he adopt?
24. What measures did he take for that purpose?
25. Was he not deterred by the dangers of the way?
26. What rendered his passage peculiarly difficult?
27. Did these horrors render the attempt unsuccessful?

SECTION II.

With Hannibal I cleft yon Alpine rocks,
With Hannibal choked Thrasymene with slaughter;
But, O the night of Cannæ's raging field!
When half the Roman senate lay in blood
Without our tent, and groan'd as we caroused!
Immortal gods! for such another hour!
Then throw my carcase to the dogs of Rome. YOUNG.

2. Alac'rity, *s.* cheerfulness, readiness.
7. Oppo'nents, *s* adversaries, enemies.
9. Allay'ed, *part.* quieted, abated.
11. Ha'rassing, *part.* wearying, annoying.
Inacces'sible, *a.* not to be approached or reached.
12. Imprac'ticable, *a.* impossible, not to be done.
Ex'tricate, *v.* to set free, to disentangle.
13. Ex'igence, *s.* difficulty, distress.
25. Com'petent, *a.* sufficient, equal to the occasion.

1. As soon as it was known at Rome that Han'nibal, at the head of an immense army, was crossing the Alps, the senate sent Scip'io to oppose him; the armies met near the little river Tici'nus, and the Roman general was obliged to retreat with considerable loss. 2. In the mean time, Han'nibal, thus victorious, took the most prudent precautions to increase his army, giving orders always to spare the possessions of the Gauls, while depredations were committed upon those of Rome; and this so pleased that simple people, that they declared for him in great numbers, and flocked to his standard with *alacrity*.[1]

[1] About two thousand foot and two hundred horse of these Gauls who served in Scip'io's army, in the night, when all was quiet in the Roman camp, entered the tents next them, murdered the Romans while they were asleep, and cutting off their heads, went over to Hannibal, who, contrary to true magnanimity, gave them a kind reception.

3. The second battle was fought upon the banks of the river Tre'bia. 4. The Carthaginian general, being apprised of the Roman impetuosity, of which he availed himself in almost every engagement, had sent off a thousand horse, each with a foot soldier behind, to cross the river, to ravage the enemy's country, and provoke them to engage. The Romans quickly routed this force. Seeming to be defeated, they took to the river; and were as eagerly pursued by Sempro'nius, the consul [1]. No sooner had his army attained the opposite bank, than he perceived himself half-conquered, his men being fatigued with wading up to their arm-pits, and quite benumbed by the intense coldness of the water.

5. A total rout ensued: twenty-six thousand of the Romans were either killed by the enemy, or drowned in attempting to repass the river. A body of ten thousand men were all that survived; who, finding themselves enclosed on every side, broke desperately through the enemy's ranks, and fought, retreating, till they found shelter in the city of Placentia [2].

The Balearians and light troops assailed the Roman infantry, while the elephants attacked and drove back the cavalry. Still the legionaries made a gallant defence, but they were taken in flank by a body of Carthaginians, commanded by Mago, who were placed in ambush for the purpose, and this unexpected attack threw them into confusion.

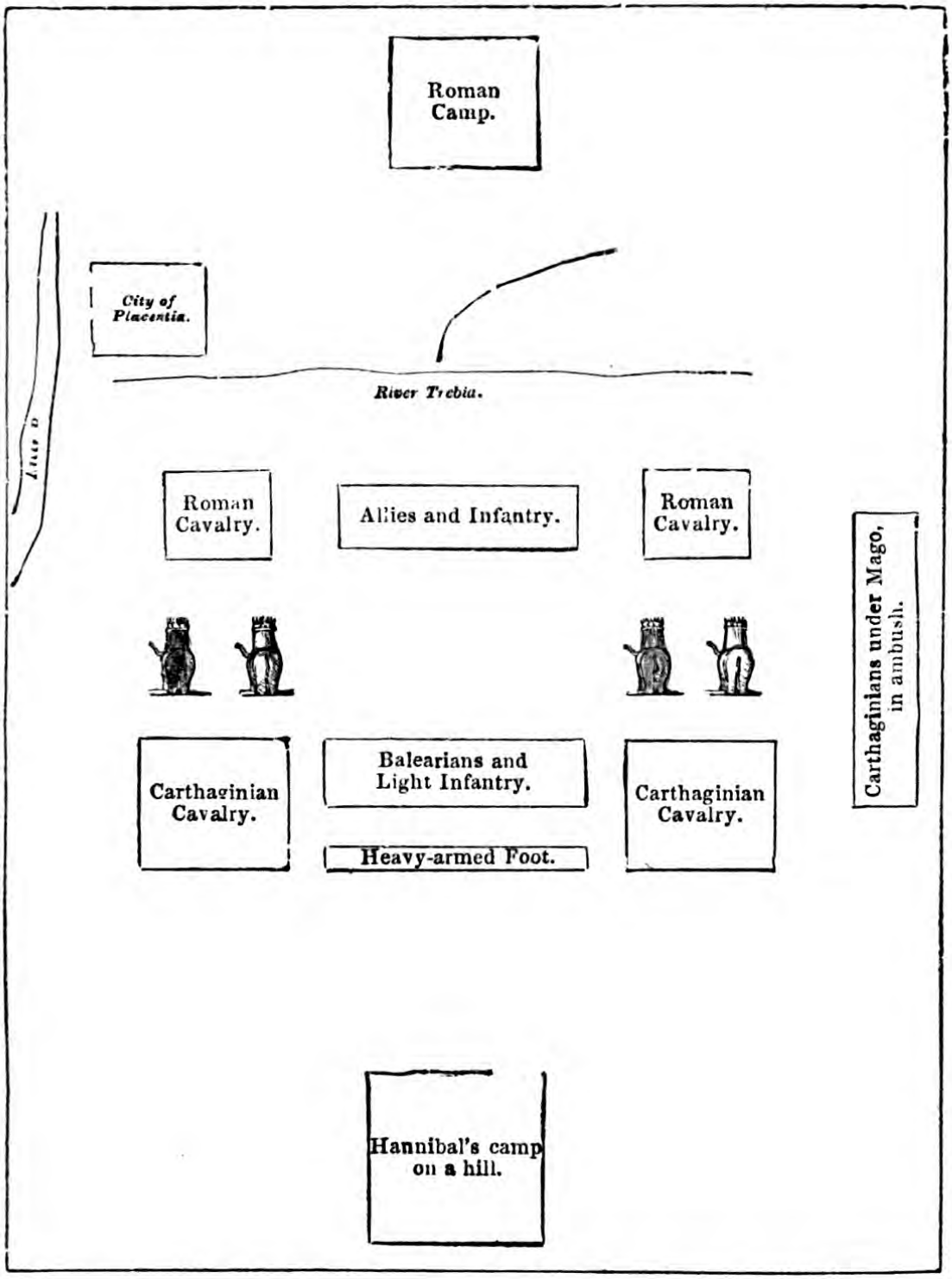
The accompanying plan will at once explain the circumstances of the engagement.

After this victory, Hannibal determined to penetrate farther into Italy. The route he chose was through the Fens, as being shorter and less likely to be occupied by the enemy, than any other; but the hardships his army encountered are almost incredible, being obliged to march three or four days and nights through mud and water without sleep or rest. Many of the beasts were left dead in the mud, and the hoofs came off the feet of many horses.

6. The third defeat the Romans sustained was at the lake of Thrasyme'ne, near to which was a chain of mountains, and between these and the lake a narrow passage

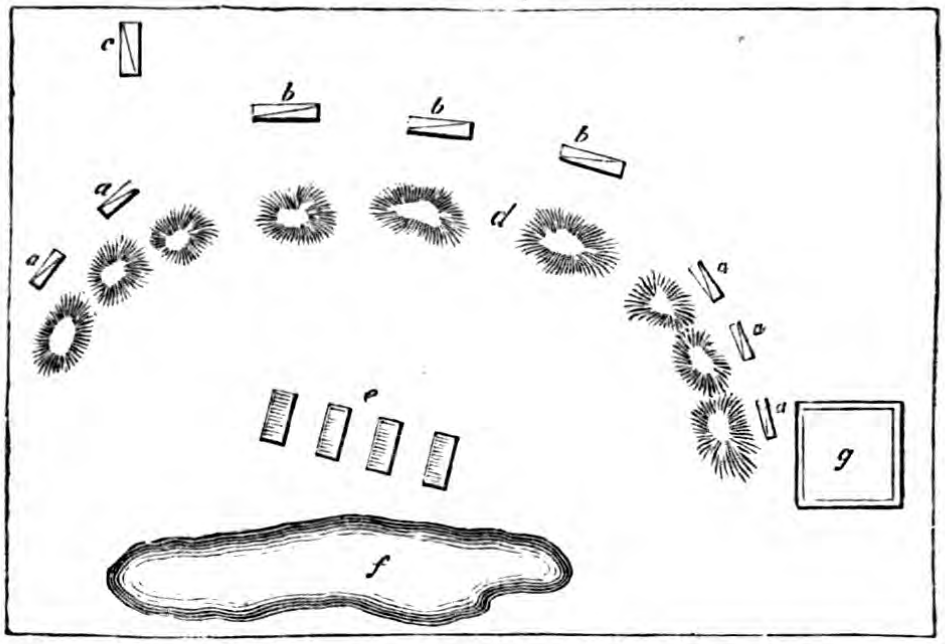
[1] Scipio, his colleague, was then ill of a wound received in the former battle.

[2] Now Placenza, a town of Italy, at the confluence of the Trebia and the Po. (Livius.)



leading to a valley that was embosomed in hills. It was upon these hills that Han'nibal disposed his best troops, and it was into this valley that Flamin'ius, the Roman general, led his men to attack him. 7. A disposition every way so favourable for the Carthaginians was also assisted

by accident; for a mist rising from the lake, kept the Romans from seeing their enemies; while the army upon the mountains being above its influence, saw the whole disposition of their *opponents*. 8. The fortune of the day was such as might be expected from the conduct of the two generals. The Roman army was slaughtered almost before they could perceive the enemy that destroyed them. About fifteen thousand Romans, with Flamin'ius himself, fell in the valley, and six thousand more were obliged to yield themselves prisoners of war.



a. Carthaginians in ambush.
b. Carthaginian infantry.
c. Carthaginian cavalry.
d. Mountains.
e. Roman army.
f. Thrasymene lake.
g. Hannibal's camp.

9. Upon the news of this defeat, after the general consternation was *allayed*, the senate resolved to elect a commander with absolute authority, in whom they might repose their last and greatest expectations. 10. The choice fell upon Fa'bius Max'imus, a man of great courage, with a happy mixture of caution. 11. He was apprised that the only way to humble the Carthaginians at such a distance from home, was rather by *harassing* than fighting. For this purpose, he always encamped upon the highest grounds, *inaccessible* to the enemy's cavalry. Whenever they moved, he watched their motions, straitened their quarters, and cut off their provisions [1].

[1] Though this was the most judicious conduct that Fa'bius could have adopted, and such as, if followed, would have effectually de-

12. By these arts Fa'bius had actually, at one time, enclosed Han'nibal among mountains, where it was impossible to winter; and from which it was almost *impracticable* to *extricate* his army without imminent danger[1]. 13. In this *exigence*, nothing but one of those stratagems of war, which only men of great abilities invent, could save him. 14. He ordered a number of small faggots and lighted torches to be tied to the horns of two thousand oxen, which should be driven towards the enemy. These tossing their heads, and running up the sides of the mountain, seemed to fill the whole neighbouring forest with fire; while the sentinels that were placed to guard the approaches to the mountain, seeing such a number of flames advancing towards their posts, fled in consternation, supposing the whole body of the enemy was in arms to overwhelm them. 15. By this stratagem Han'nibal drew off his army, and escaped through the defiles that led beneath the hills, though with considerable damage to his rear.

16. Fa'bius, still pursuing the same judicious measures, followed Han'nibal in all his movements, but at length received a letter from the senate recalling him to Rome on pretence of a solemn sacrifice requiring his presence. 17. On his departure from the army, he strictly charged Minu'tius, his general of the horse, not to hazard an engagement in his absence. This command he disobeyed, and Fa'bius expressed his determination to punish so flagrant a breach of military discipline. 18. The senate, however, favouring Minu'tius, gave him an equal authority with the dictator. 19. On the arrival of Fa'bius at the camp, he divided the army with Minu'tius, and each pursued his own separate plan. 20. By artful management Han'nibal soon brought the troops of the latter to an engagement, and they would have been cut off to a man, had not Fa'bius sacrificed his private resentment to the public good, and hastened to the relief of his colleague. 21. By their united forces Han'nibal was repulsed, and Minu'tius, conscious

stroyed Hannibal's army, yet it met with the disapprobation of the senate and the people, who had not sufficient wisdom to perceive its propriety.

[1] Han'nibal had ordered his guides to conduct him to Cas'inum, but from the imperfect manner in which he spoke the Roman language, they understood him to mean Casil'inum. On entering the defile, Hannibal, who fancied himself betrayed, ordered one of the guides to be scourged and crucified, as a warning to the rest. (Plut. Liv.)

of his rashness, resigned the supreme command into the hands of the dictator.

22. On the expiration of his year of office, Fa'bius resigned, and Teren'tius Varro was chosen to the command. 23. Varro was a man sprung from the dregs of the people, with nothing but confidence and riches to recommend him. 24. With him was joined Æmil'ius Paulus, of a disposition entirely opposite; experienced in the field, cautious in action, and impressed with a thorough contempt for the abilities of his plebeian colleague.

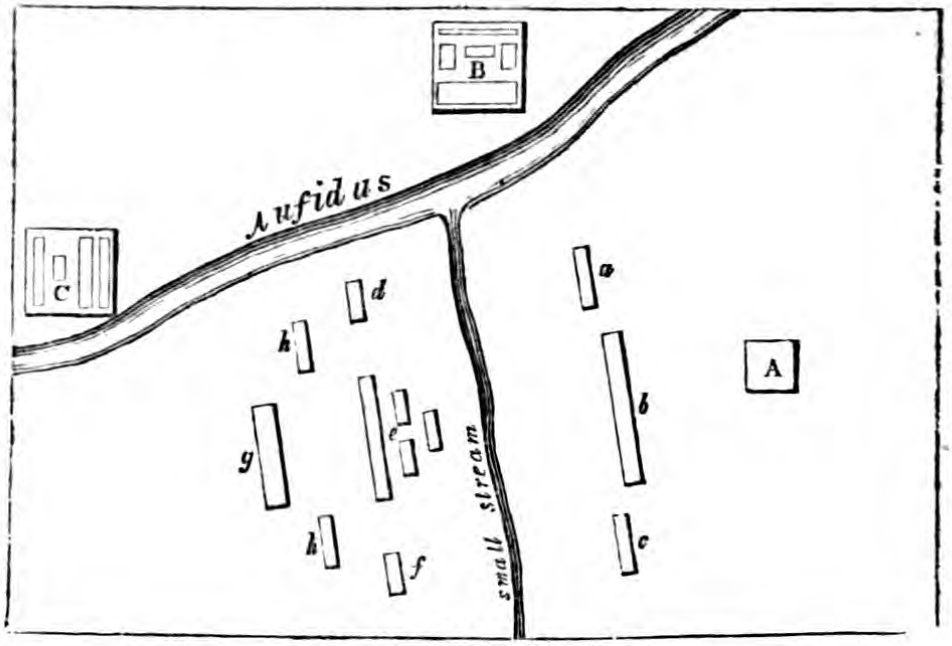
25. The Romans finding themselves enabled to bring a *competent* force into the field, being almost ninety thousand strong, now again resolved to meet Han'nibal, who was at this time encamped near the village of Cannæ[1], with a wind in his rear that, for a certain season, blows constantly one way, which raising great clouds of dust from the parched plains behind, he knew must greatly distress an approaching enemy. In this situation he waited the coming of the Romans with an army of forty thousand foot, and half that number of cavalry. 26. The consuls soon appeared to his wish, dividing their forces into two parts, and agreeing to take the command each day by turns. 27. On the first day of their arrival, Æmil'ius was entirely averse to engaging. The next day, however, it being Varro's turn to command, he without asking his colleague's concurrence, gave the signal for battle: and passing a branch of the river Au'fidus, that lay between both armies, put his forces in array. 28. The battle began with the light-armed infantry; the horse engaged soon after; but the cavalry being unable to stand against those of Numid'ia, the legions came up to reinforce them. It was then that the conflict became general; the Roman soldiers endeavoured in vain to penetrate the centre, where the Gauls and Spaniards fought; which Han'nibal observing, he ordered part of those troops to give way, and to permit the Romans to embosom themselves within a chosen body of his Africans, whom he had placed on their wings, so as to surround them. Attacked thus on both flanks, the evolutions of the legions prevented by the stream in their rear, the Romans could make no effective resistance, but fell, says an old historian, "like ripe corn before the reaper." Varro made several desperate efforts to remedy his fatal error, but

[1] Cannæ was originally a city of Apulia, but having been razed by the Romans, was at this time a poor village; it was afterwards rebuilt.

the Africans, who were fresh and vigorous, easily maintained their advantages over his wearied soldiers, and prevented them from restoring their disordered ranks. Æmil'ius made several brilliant charges at the head of the Roman cavalry, but found it impossible to extricate his colleague. 29. At last the rout became general in every part of the Roman army; the boastings of Varro were now no longer heard: while Æmil'ius, who had been wounded by a slinger, feebly led on his body of horse, and did all that could be done to make head against the enemy. 30. Unable to sit on horseback, he was forced to dismount. It was in these deplorable circumstances, that one Len'tulus, a *tribune* of the army, flying from the enemy, who at some distance pursued him, met Æmil'ius sitting upon a stone, covered with blood and wounds, and waiting for the coming up of the pursuers. 31. "Æmilius," cried the generous tribune, "you, at least, are guiltless of this day's slaughter; take my horse, and fly." "I thank thee, Len'tulus," cried the dying consul, "all is over, my part is chosen. Go, and tell the senate to fortify Rome against the approach of the conqueror. Tell Fa'bius that Æmil'ius, while living, ever remembered his advice; and now dying approves it." 32. While he was yet speaking, the enemy approached; and Len'tulus, at some distance, saw the consul expire, feebly fighting in the midst of hundreds. 33. In this battle the Romans lost fifty thousand men, and so many knights that it is said Han'nibal sent three bushels of gold rings to Carthage, which those of this order wore on their fingers[1].

[1] Hannibal has been blamed for not having marched to Rome immediately after this victory; but his army was by no means adequate to the siege of the city; and the allies of the Romans would have been able to curtail his quarters and intercept his convoys. He was, besides, badly provided with provisions and the munitions of war, both of which he could procure by invading Campania, the course which he actually pursued.

The following plan will help to explain this great battle.



A. Cannæ.
B. Roman camp.
C. Carthaginian camp.

a. Roman cavalry.
b. Roman infantry.
c. Allied cavalry.
d. Gallic and Spanish cavalry.
e. Carthaginian centre, the Africans in the side phalanxes, the Gauls and Spaniards in the middle.
f. African cavalry.
g. Gallic infantry retired before the Romans.
h. African infantry, preparing to attack the Romans in flank.

Questions for Examination.

1. What measures were adopted by the Romans when they heard of Hannibal's approach?
2. What precautions did Hannibal take?
3. Where was the next battle fought?
4. What was the stratagem employed by Hannibal?
5. What followed?
6. Where was the next engagement?
7. Was this a judicious disposition of the Roman general?
8. What was the result?
9. What expedient did the senate adopt on this occasion?
10. Who was chosen to this office?
11. What method of fighting did he adopt?
12. What was the success of this plan?
13. Was his situation hopeless?
14. Describe his stratagem and its consequences.
15. Did it answer his purpose?
16. Was Fabius continued in office?
17, 18. Of what disobedience was Minutius guilty? Was he punished?
19. How was the army divided?
20, 21. What plan did Fabius pursue? How was its superiority proved?

22, 23, 24. Who succeeded Fabius? What was his character, and that of his colleague?
25. How were the Carthaginians posted at Cannæ?
26, 27. How did the consuls behave? How did Varro act?
28. What were the circumstances of the engagement?
29. How did the battle terminate?
30. What was the fate of Æmilius?
31. What generous offer was made by Lentulus?
32. Did the consul accept the tribune's offer?
33. Was the loss of the Romans severe?

SECTION III.

Nor Trebia quell'd,
Nor Thrasymene, nor Cannæ's bloody field,
Their dauntless courage; storming Hannibal
In vain the thunder of the battle roll'd,
The thunder of the battle they return'd
Back on his Punic shores. DYER.

1. Consterna'tion, *s.* fear, astonishment.
2. Reprimand', *v.* to reprove, blame.
6. Vet'erans, *s.* old soldiers, experienced warriors.
7. Accu'mulated, *part.* added, increased, heaped up.
8. Feint, *s.* a pretence.
13. Fatig'ued, *part.* wearied.
14. Mathemati'cian, *s.* a person versed in mathematics.
17. Complex'ion, *s.* former appearance.
Procon'sul, *s.* a Roman officer, who governed a province with consular authority.
18. Re'quisite, *a.* necessary.
24. Infatu'ated, *part.* deprived of understanding.
26. Explore', *v.* to examine.

1. WHEN the first *consternation* was abated after this dreadful blow, the senate came to a resolution to create a dictator in order to give strength to their government.
2. A short time after Varro arrived, having left behind him the wretched remains of his army.[1] As he had been the principal cause of the late calamity, it was natural to suppose that the senate would severely *reprimand* the rashness of his conduct. But far otherwise! The Romans went out in multitudes to meet him; and the senate returned him thanks, that he had not despaired of the safety of Rome. 3. Fa'bius, who was considered as the shield, and Marcel'lus, as the sword of Rome, were appointed to

[1] The terms of the surrender were, that each Roman should pay a sum equal to 9*l.* 7*s.* 9*d.* for his ransom. (Liv. l. xxii. c. 51.) The senate, however, refused to ransom them, and they were compelled by Hannibal to fight as gladiators, for the diversion of his troops. (Liv. l. xxiii. c. 58.)

lead the armies; and though Hannibal once more offered them peace, they refused it, but upon condition that he should quit Italy—a measure similar to that they had formerly insisted upon from Pyrrhus.

4. Han'nibal finding the impossibility of marching directly to Rome, or willing to give his forces rest after so mighty a victory, led them to Cap'ua [1], where he resolved to winter. 5. This city had long been considered as the nurse of luxury, and the corrupter of all military virtue. 6. Here a new scene of pleasure opened to his barbarian troops: they at once gave themselves up to intoxication; and from being hardy *veterans*, became infirm rioters [2].

7. Hitherto we have found this great man successful; but now we are to reverse the picture, and survey him struggling with *accumulated* misfortunes, and, at last, sinking beneath them.

8. His first loss was at the siege of Nola [3], where Marcel'lus, the prætor, made a successful sally. He some time after attempted to raise the siege of Cap'ua, attacked the Romans in their trenches, and was repulsed with considerable loss. He then made a *feint* to besiege Rome, but finding a superior army ready to receive him, was obliged to retire. 9. For many years he fought with various success: Marcel'lus, his opponent, sometimes gaining, and sometimes losing the advantage, without coming to any decisive engagement.

10. The senate of Carthage at length came to a resolution of sending his brother As'drubal to his assistance, with a body of forces drawn out of Spain. 11. Asdrubal's march being made known to the consuls Liv'ius and Nero, they went against him with great expedition; and, surrounding him in a place into which he was led by the treachery of his guides, they cut his whole army to pieces.

12. Han'nibal had long expected these succours with impatience; and the very night on which he had been assured

[1] Cap'ua was a very ancient city, and the capital of Campania. It rivalled Rome for opulence, and was usually enumerated with Rome and Carthage as the great cities. (Florus, l. i. c. 16.)

[2] While the affairs of the Romans succeeded so ill in Italy, their troops, under the command of the two Scipios, obtained great advantages in Spain, thus making some amends for the disasters at home. (Liv. l. xxiii. c. 26, 27.)

[3] Nola, an ancient town of Campa'nia, remarkable for being the place where Augustus died. (Suet. in Aug.)

of his brother's arrival, Nero ordered Asdrubal's head to be cut off, and thrown into his brother's camp. 13. The Carthaginian general now began to perceive the downfal of Carthage; and with a sigh observed to those about him, that fortune seemed *fatigued* with granting her favours.

14. In the mean time, the Roman arms seemed to be favoured in other parts; Marcel'lus took the city of Syr'acuse, in Sicily, defended by the machines and the fires of Archime'des the *mathematician*. 15. The inhabitants were put to the sword, and among the rest, Archime'des himself, who was found, by a Roman soldier, meditating in his study. 16. Marcel'lus, the general, was not a little grieved at his death. A love of literature at that time began to prevail among the higher ranks at Rome. Marcel'lus ordered Archime'des to be honourably buried, and a tomb to be erected to his memory.

17. As to their fortunes in Spain, though for a while doubtful, they soon recovered ~~their~~ *complexion* under the conduct of Scip'io Africa'nus, who sued for the office of *proconsul* to that kingdom, at a time when every one else was willing to decline it. 18. Scip'io, now ~~no more than~~ twenty-four years ~~old~~, had all the qualifications *requisite* for forming a great general, and a good man; he united courage with tenderness, was superior to Hannibal in the arts of peace, and almost his equal in those of war. 19. His father had been killed in Spain, so that he seemed to have an hereditary claim to attack that country. He therefore appeared irresistible, obtaining many great victories, yet subduing more by his generosity, mildness, and benevolent disposition, than by the force of arms.

During his command, a circumstance occurred which has contributed more to the fame and glory of Scipio, than all his military exploits. At the taking of New Carthage, a lady of extraordinary beauty was brought to Scipio, who found himself greatly affected by her charms. Understanding, however, that she was betrothed to a Celtibe'rian prince, named Allu'cius, he generously resolved to conquer his rising passion, and sending for her lover, restored her without any other recompense than requesting his friendship to the republic. Her parents had brought a large sum of money for her ransom, which they earnestly entreated Scipio to accept; but he generously bestowed it on Allu'cius, as the portion of his bride. A silver shield on which this interesting event is depicted, was found in

the river Rhone by some fishermen, in the seventeenth century. We subjoin an engraving of this valuable relic of antiquity.

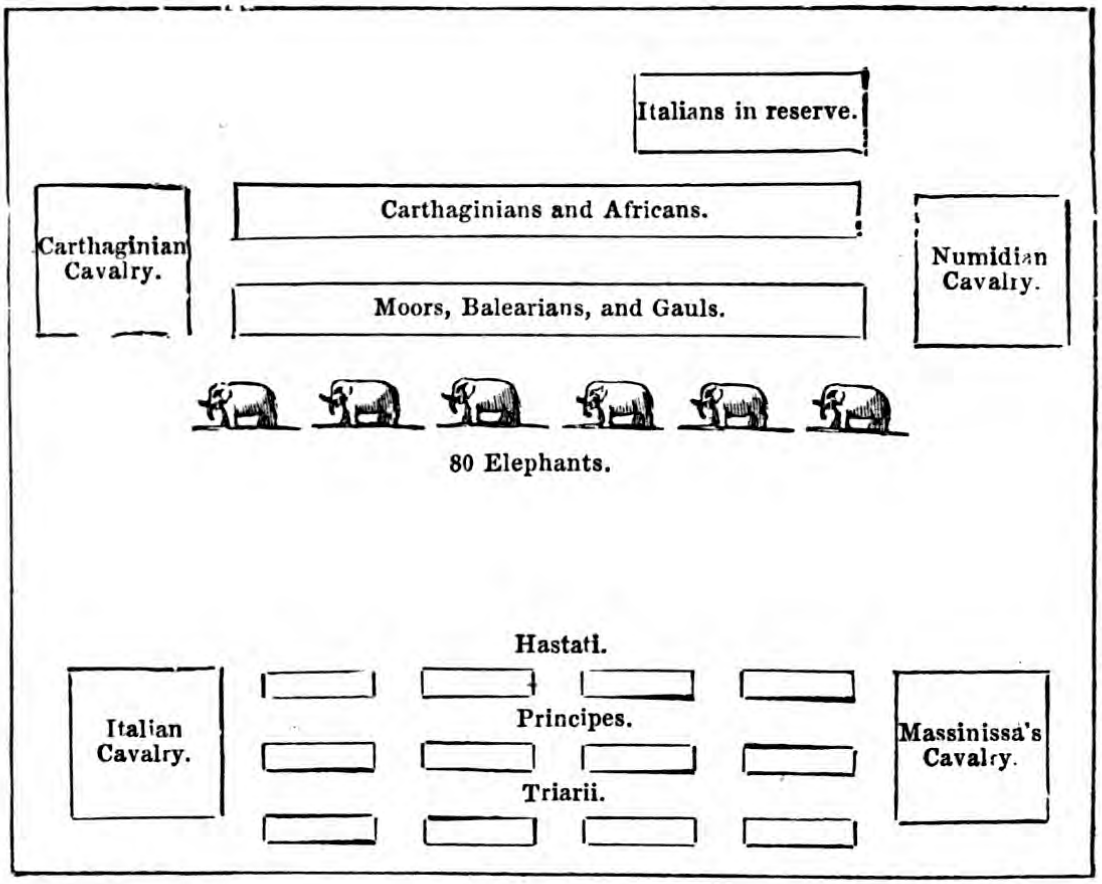
20. He returned with an army from the conquest of Spain, and was made consul at the age of twenty-nine. It was at first supposed he intended meeting Hannibal in Italy, and that he would attempt driving him from thence; but he had formed a wiser plan, which was to carry the war into Africa; and while the Carthaginians kept an army near Rome, to make them tremble for their own capital.

21. Scip'io was not long in Africa without employment; Hanno opposed him, but was defeated and slain. Sy'phax, the usurper of Numid'ia, led up a large army against him. 22. The Roman general, for a time, declined fighting, till finding an opportunity, he set fire to the enemy's tents, and attacking them in the midst of

the confusion, killed forty thousand, and took six thousand prisoners.

23. The Carthaginians, terrified at their repeated defeats, and at the fame of Scip'io's successes, determined to recal Hannibal, their great champion, out of Italy, in order to oppose the Romans at home. Deputies were accordingly despatched, with a positive command for him to return and oppose the Roman general, who at that time threatened Carthage with a siege. 24. Nothing could exceed the regret and disappointment of Hannibal; but he obeyed the orders of his *infatuated* country with the submission of the meanest soldier; and took leave of Italy with tears, after having kept possession of its most beautiful parts above fifteen years.

25. Upon his arrival at Leptis, in Africa, he set out for Adrume'tum, and at last approached Za'ma, a city about seventy-five miles from Carthage. 26. Scip'io, in the mean time, led his army to meet him, joined by Massinis'sa, with six thousand horse; and to show his rival how little he feared his approach, sent back the spies which were sent to *explore* his camp, having previously shown them the whole, with directions to inform Hannibal of what they had seen. 27. The Carthaginian general, conscious of his inferiority, endeavoured to put an end to the war by negotiation; and desired a meeting with Scip'io, to confer upon terms of peace; to which the Roman general assented. 28. But after a long conference, both sides parting dissatisfied, they returned to their camps, to prepare for deciding the controversy by the sword. 29. Never was a more memorable battle fought, whether we regard the generals, the armies, the two states that contended, or the empire that was in dispute. The disposition Hannibal made of his men is said to be superior to any even of his former arrangements; it may be understood from the accompanying plan:—



30. The battle began with the elephants, on the side of the Carthaginians; which being terrified at the cries of the Romans, and wounded by the slingers and archers, turned upon their drivers, and caused much confusion in both wings of their army, where the cavalry were placed. 31. Being thus deprived of the assistance of the horse, in which their greatest strength consisted, the heavy infantry joined on both sides: but the Romans being stronger of body, the Carthaginians gave ground. 32. In the mean time, Massinis'sa, who had been in pursuit of their cavalry, returning and attacking them in the rear, completed their defeat. A total rout ensued, twenty thousand men were killed, and as many were taken prisoners. 33. Hannibal, who had done all that a great and undaunted general could perform, fled with a small body of horse to Adrume'tum; fortune seeming to delight in confounding his ability, his valour, and experience [1].

[1] The celerity of this flight is almost as wonderful as the courage and conduct displayed in the battle. Adrume'tum was nearly two hundred miles from the scene of action, yet he reached it in two days with his shattered forces.

34. This victory brought on a peace. The Carthaginians, by Hannibal's advice, submitted to the conditions which the Romans dictated, not as rivals, but as sovereigns. 35. By this treaty the Carthaginians were obliged to quit Spain, and all the islands in the Mediterra'nean. They were bound to pay ten thousand talents in fifty years; to give hostages for the delivery of their ships and their elephants; to restore to Massinis'sa all the territories that had been taken from him; and not to make war in Africa but by the permission of the Romans. Thus ended the second Punic war, seventeen years after it had begun.

Questions for Examination.

1. By what measures did the senate attempt to retrieve this disaster?
2. Did Varro venture to return, and what was his reception?
3. Who were appointed to carry on the war?
4. What was Hannibal's next step?
5. What was the character of this city?
6. What was the consequence to the Carthaginian army?
7. Was Hannibal uniformly successful?
8. What was his first reverse?
9. What happened to him afterwards?
10. What resolution did the senate of Carthage adopt?
11. Did he effect a junction with his brother?
12. Was Hannibal apprised of these intended succours?
13. What inference did Hannibal draw from this?
14. Were the Romans successful in other parts?
15. What was the fate of its inhabitants?
16. Was his loss deplored?
17. What was the success of the Romans in Spain?
18. What was the character of Scipio?
19. What rendered him particularly eligible for this command?
20. Were his exploits confined to Spain?
21. Had he any formidable opposition to encounter?
22. What was the conduct of Scipio?
23. What measures did the Carthaginians have recourse to on this occasion?
24. Was Hannibal pleased at his recal?
25. Whither did he repair on his arrival in Africa?
26. What was the conduct of Scipio?
27. Was Hannibal desirous of continuing hostilities?
28. What was the result?
29. Was the battle of consequence?
30. How did it commence?
31. What followed?
32. What completed the defeat of the Carthaginians?
33. What became of Hannibal?
34. What was the result of the victory?
35. What were the conditions of the treaty?

CHAPTER XVI.

Beauteous Greece,
Torn from her joys, in vain, with languid arm,
Half-raised her lusty shield. DYER.

1. Inci'ted, *part.* urged on, induced.
Control'ling, *part.* checking, influencing.
9. Fidel'ity, *s.* faithfulness.
10. Extort'ed, *part.* gained by force.
12. Project'ing, *part.* forming, contriving.
14. Vindic'tive, *a.* revengeful.
Concil'iate, *v.* to gain, procure, get.
15. Impla'cably, *ad.* with constant enmity, maliciously.
18. Rash'ness, *s.* foolish contempt of danger, thoughtlessness.
O'vertures, *s.* proposals, offers.
20. Incur'sions, *s.* hasty inroads into an enemy's country.
28. Vol'untarily, *ad.* willingly.

1. WHILE the Romans were engaged with Hannibal, they carried on also a vigorous war against Philip[1], king of Ma'cedon, not a little *incited* thereto by the prayers of the Athe'nians; who, from once *controlling* the power of Persia, were now unable to defend themselves. The Rho'dians, with At'talus, king of Per'gamus, also entered into the confederacy against Philip[2]. 2. He was more than once defeated by Galba, the consul. He attempted to besiege Athens, but the Romans obliged him to raise the siege. He tried to take possession of the Straits of Thermop'ylæ, but was driven from thence by Quin'tus Flamin'ius, with great slaughter. He attempted to take refuge in Thes'saly, where he was again defeated with considerable loss, and obliged to beg a peace, upon condition of paying a thousand talents. 3. Peace with Philip gave the Romans an opportunity of showing their generosity, by restoring liberty to Greece[3].

4. Antio'chus, king of Syria, was next brought to submit to the Roman arms; after embassies on the one side and on the other, hostilities were commenced against him five years after the conclusion of the Macedo'nian war. 5. After many mistakes and great misconduct, he attempted to obtain a peace, by offering to quit all his places in Europe, and such in Asia as professed alliance to Rome. 6. But

[1] This Philip was the tenth in succession from Alexander, and a powerful prince in Greece.

[2] About this time, Furius, the prætor, obtained a grand victory over the Gauls, who had revolted, and slew 30,000 of them.

[3] Some have considered this as rather an act of policy than generosity, as the Grecian states, by their contentions among each other, fell in a short time completely under the Roman dominion.

it was now too late; Scip'io perceived his own superiority, and was resolved to avail himself of it. 7. Antio'chus thus driven into resistance, for some time retreated before the enemy, till being pressed hard, near the city of Magnesia [1], he was forced to draw out his men, to the number of seventy thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse.

8. Scip'io opposed him with forces as much inferior in number, as they were superior in courage and discipline. Antio'chus, therefore, was in a short time entirely defeated: his own chariots, armed with scythes, and his elephants being driven back upon his men, contributed much to his overthrow.

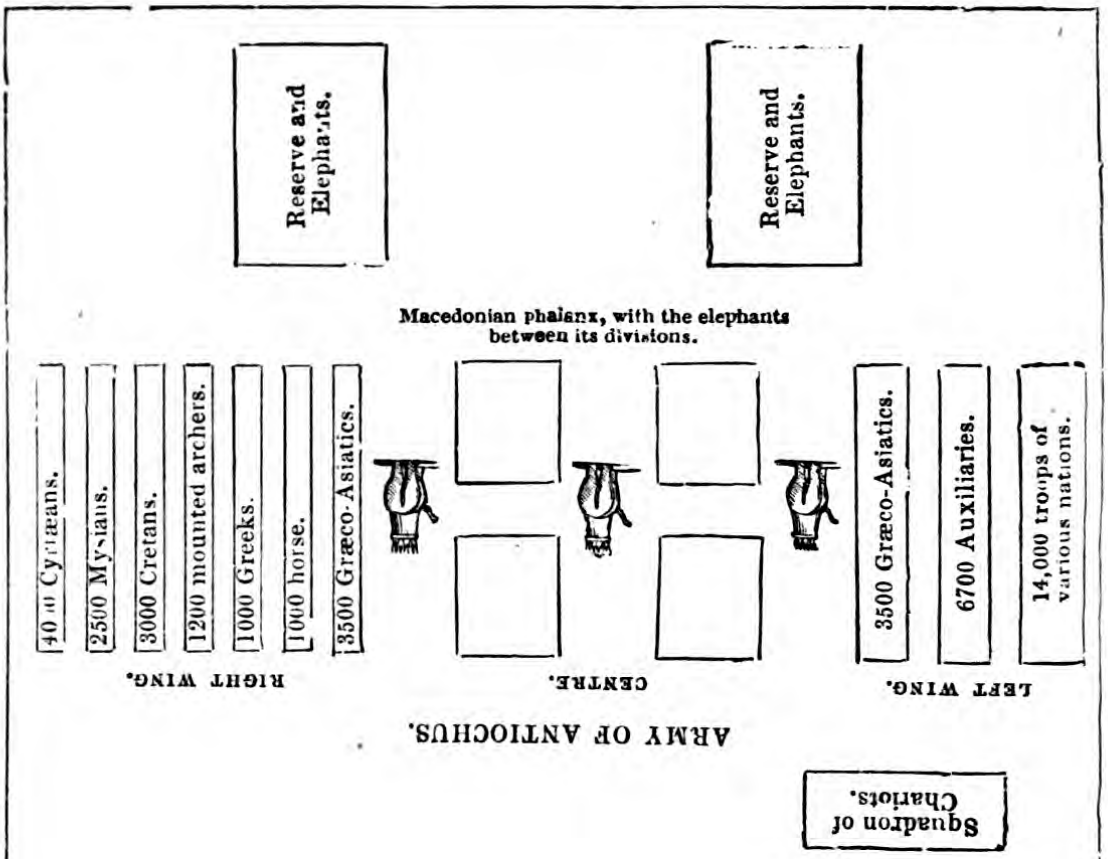
The disparity of forces against which the Romans had to contend, is apparent from the plan of the battle in the next page.

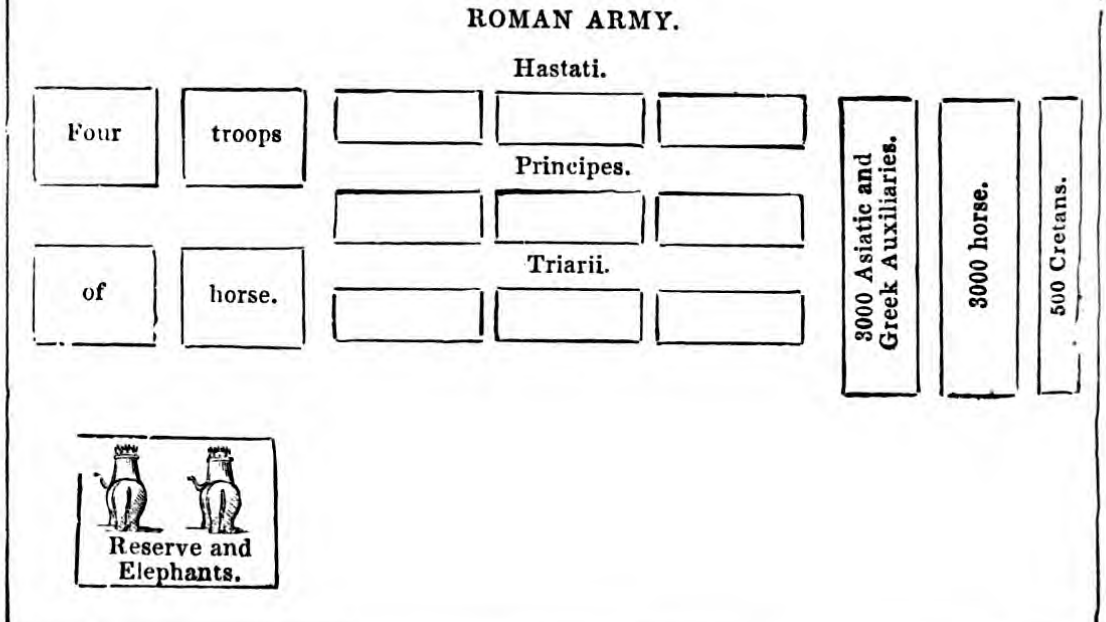
9. Antio'chus, by this decisive defeat, being reduced to the last extremity, was glad to procure peace from the Romans, upon their own terms; which were, to pay fifteen thousand talents; to quit his possessions in Europe, and in Asia on the hither side of Mount Taurus [2]; to give twenty hostages, as pledges of his *fidelity*; and to deliver up Hannibal, the inveterate enemy of Rome, who had taken refuge at his court.

10. In the mean time Hanni'bal, whose destruction was one of the articles of this *extorted* treaty, endeavoured to avoid the threatened ruin. 11. This consummate general had long been a wanderer, and an exile from his ungrateful country. He had taken refuge at the court of Antio'chus, who, at first, gave him a sincere welcome, and made him admiral of his fleet, in which station he showed his usual skill in stratagem. 12. But he soon sunk in the Syrian's esteem for *projecting* schemes, which that monarch had neither genius to understand, nor talents to execute. 13. Sure, therefore, to find no safety or protection, he departed by stealth; and, after wandering for a time among petty states, which had neither power nor generosity to protect him, he took refuge at the court of Pru'sias, king of Bithyn'ia. 14. In the mean time the Romans, with a *vindictive* spirit utterly unworthy of them, sent Æmil'ius, one of their most celebrated generals, to demand him of

[1] Now Guzelhizar, a town of Asia Minor, about fifteen miles from Ephesus.

[2] The extremity of a chain of mountains, the most extensive in Asia. That part called Mount Taurus is in Cilicia.


Reserve and Elephants.
Reserve and Elephants.
Macedonian phalanx, with the elephants between its divisions.
40 or Cyrenæans.
2500 Mysians.
3000 Cretans.
1200 mounted archers.
1000 Greeks.
1000 horse.
3500 Græco-Asiatics.
3500 Græco-Asiatics.
6700 Auxiliaries.
14,000 troops of various nations.
RIGHT WING.
CENTRE.
LEFT WING.
ARMY OF ANTIOCHUS.
Squadron of Chariots.


ROMAN ARMY.
Hastati.
Principes.
Triarii.
Four
troops
of
horse.
3000 Asiatic and Greek Auxiliaries.
3000 horse.
500 Cretans.
Reserve and Elephants.

this king; who, fearing the resentment of Rome, and willing to *conciliate* their friendship by this breach of hospitality, ordered a guard to be placed upon Hannibal, with an intent to deliver him up. 15. The poor old general, thus *implacably* persecuted from one country to another, and finding every method of safety cut off, determined to die. He, therefore, desired one of his followers to bring him poison; and drinking it, he expired as he had lived, with intrepid bravery [1].

16. A second Macedo'nian war was soon after proclaimed against Per'seus, the son of that Philip who had been obliged to beg peace of the Romans. 17. Per'seus, U.C. 513. in order to secure the crown, had murdered his brother Deme'trius; and upon the death of his father, pleased with the hopes of imaginary triumphs, made war against Rome. 18. During the course of this war, which continued about three years, opportunities were offered him of cutting off the Roman army; but being ignorant how to take advantage of their *rashness*, he spent the time in empty *overtures* for peace. 19. At length Æmil'ius gave him a decisive overthrow. He attempted to procure safety by flying into Crete; but being abandoned by all, he was obliged to surrender himself, and to grace the splendid triumph of the Roman general. From this time Macedon became a Roman province.

20. About this time Massinis'sa, the Numidian, having made some *incursions* into a territory claimed by the Carthaginians, they attempted to repel the invasion. 21. This brought on a war between that monarch and them; while the Romans, who pretended to consider this conduct of theirs as an infraction of the treaty, sent to make a complaint. 22. The ambassadors who were employed upon this occasion, finding the city very rich and flourishing, from the long interval of peace which it had now enjoyed for nearly fifty years, either from motives of avarice to possess its plunder, or from fear of its growing greatness, insisted much on the necessity of a war, which was soon after proclaimed, and the consuls set out with a thorough resolution utterly to demolish Carthage [2].

[1] Before he expired he justly upbraided the Romans with their degeneracy; their ancestors having honourably *prevented* the murder of Pyrrhus, their mortal enemy, while they had basely desired Pru'sias to destroy his guest and friend.

[2] The territory thus invaded by Massinis'sa, was Tysca, a rich province, undoubtedly belonging to the Carthaginians. One of the ambas-

23. The wretched Carthaginians, finding that the conquerors would not desist from making demands, while the vanquished had any thing to give, attempted to soften the victors by submission; but they received orders to leave the city, which was to be levelled with the ground. 24. This severe command they received with all the distress of a despairing people; they implored for a respite from such a hard sentence; they used tears and lamentations; but finding the consuls inexorable, they departed with a gloomy resolution, prepared to suffer the utmost extremities, and fight to the last for their seat of empire[1].

25. Those vessels, therefore, of gold and silver, which their luxury had taken such pride in, were converted into arms[2]. The women parted also with their ornaments, and even cut off their hair to be converted into strings for the bowmen. As'drubal, who had been lately condemned for oppressing the Romans, was now taken from prison to head their army; and such preparations were made, that when the consuls came before the city, which they expected to find an easy conquest, they met with such resistance as quite dispirited their forces, and shook their resolution. 26. Several engagements were fought before the walls, with disadvantage to the assailants; so that the siege would have been discontinued, had not Scip'io Æmilia'nus, the adopted son of Africa'nus, who was now appointed to command it, used as much skill to save his forces after a

sadors sent from Rome was the celebrated Cato, the censor, who, whatever his virtues may have been, appears to have imbibed an inveterate hatred to Carthage. For, on whatever subject he debated in the senate, he never failed to conclude in these words, "I am also of opinion that Carthage should be destroyed." The war, however, which had broken out in Spain, and the bad success of the Roman arms in that quarter, for some time delayed the fate of that devoted city; and it might, perhaps, have stood much longer, had not some seditious demagogues incited the populace to insult the Roman ambassador, and to banish those senators who voted for peace. (Appian. Plut. Liv.)

[1] To account for this apparent pusillanimity of the Carthaginians, it is necessary to observe, that they had suffered repeated defeats in their war with Massinis'sa; and that fifty thousand of their troops, after having been blocked up in their camp till from want they were obliged to submit to the most humiliating conditions, were inhumanly massacred by Gulus'sa, the son of the Numidian king. The Romans chose this distressing juncture to declare war against them. (Appian. in Punic.)

[2] As one proof of their sincere desire for peace, the Carthaginians had previously delivered up to the Romans all their arms and warlike engines, of which they possessed prodigious magazines; thus leaving themselves still more defenceless than before.

defeat, as to inspire them with fresh hopes of a victory. 27. But all his arts would have failed, had he not found means to seduce Phar'nes, the master of the Carthaginian horse, who came over to his side. The unhappy townsmen soon saw the enemy make nearer approaches; the wall which led to the haven was quickly demolished; soon after the forum itself was taken, which offered to the conquerors a deplorable spectacle of houses nodding to their fall, heaps of men lying dead, hundreds of the wounded struggling to emerge from the carnage around them, and deploring their own and their country's ruin. The citadel soon after surrendered at discretion. 28. All now but the temple was subdued, and that was defended by deserters from the Roman army, and those who had been most forward to undertake the war. These expected no mercy, and finding their condition desperate, set fire to the building and *voluntarily* perished in the flames [1]. This was the end of one of the most renowned cities in the world, for arts, opulence, and extent of dominion; it had rivalled Rome for above a hundred years, and at one time was thought to have the superiority [2].

29. The conquest of Carthage was soon followed by many others. The same year Corinth, one of the noblest cities of Greece, was levelled to the ground. Scip'io also having laid siege to Numan'tia, the strongest city in Spain, the wretched inhabitants, to avoid falling into the hands of the enemy, fired the city over their own heads; and all, to a man, expired in the flames [3]. Thus Spain became a Roman province, and was governed henceforward by two annual prætors.

Questions for Examination.

1. With whom were the Romans at war besides Carthage, and who assisted in it?
2. What was the success of Philip in this war?

---

[1] Among the number of those who perished in the conflagration, was the wife of As'drubal, the Carthaginian commander, who had meanly surrendered to the Romans. After uttering the most bitter imprecations against her husband, whom she saw standing below, she stabbed her two children, and then leaped into the flames.

[2] It was 24 miles in compass, and continued burning 17 days.

[3] This war in Spain had been carried on by one Viria'thus, originally a shepherd, but afterwards an able general. He was treacherously murdered.

3. What was the consequence of peace with Philip?
4. Who next fell under the displeasure of the Romans?
5. What was the result?
6. Were his offers accepted?
7. Did Antiochus boldly face the Romans?
8. What were the strength and character of the Roman army, and what the result of the battle?
9. Was he able to make further resistance?
10. Was Hannibal delivered up?
11. What occasioned Hannibal to put himself in the power of Antiochus?
12. Was this kindness lasting?
13. Whither did he next betake himself?
14. Was he in safety at this court?
15. Did Hannibal escape his persecution?
16. Against whom did the Romans next direct their arms?
17. What occasioned it?
18. Was Perseus a skilful general?
19. What was the result of the war?
20. What farther happened about this time?
21. What was the consequence?
22. Was this misunderstanding peaceably accommodated?
23. By what means did the Carthaginians endeavour to avert their fate?
24. Did they obey these orders?
25. What extraordinary efforts were made for the defence of the city?
26. Were the Romans successful in their attempts?
27. Describe the progress of the siege.
28. Was the city completely in the power of the Romans?
29. What other conquests were made by the Romans?

CHAPTER XVII.

SECT. I.

FROM THE DESTRUCTION OF CARTHAGE TO THE END OF THE SEDITION OF THE GRACCHI.—U.C. 621.

Seldom is faction's ire in haughty minds
Extinguish'd but by death; it oft, like flame
Suppress'd, breaks forth again, and blazes higher.—MAY.

1. Inver'ted, *part.* changed.
6. Ir'ritated, *part.* provoked, exasperated.
8. Uten'sils, *s.* instruments, tools.
10. Harang'ues, *s.* speeches, orations.
11. Di'adem, *s.* crown, an emblem of royalty.
14. Ex'pedite, *v.* to facilitate, to hasten.
18. Quæs'torship, *s.* the first office any person could bear in the commonwealth; it gave a right to sit in the senate.
20. Indig'nity, *s.* affront, disgrace, insult.
21. Major'ity, *s.* the greater number.
24. Inspec'tion, *s.* an examination, a looking into.
27. Insid'iously, *ad.* treacherously, slily.

1. THE Romans being now left without a rival, the triumphs and the spoils of Asia induced a taste for splen-

did expense; and this produced avarice and *inverted* ambition. 2. The two Gracchi[1] were the first who saw this strange corruption among the great, and resolved to repress it by renewing the Licinian law, which had enacted, that no person in the state should possess above five hundred acres of land. 3. Tibe'rius Gracchus, the elder of the two, was, both for the advantages of his person and the qualities of his mind, very different from Scip'io, of whom he was the grandson. He seemed more ambitious of power than desirous of glory; his compassion for the oppressed was equal to his animosity against the oppressors; but unhappily his passions, rather than his reason, operated even in his pursuits of virtue, and these always drove him beyond the line of duty. 4. This was the disposition of the elder Gracchus, who found the lower orders of people ready to second all his proposals. 5. The above law, though at first carried on with proper moderation, greatly disgusted the rich, who endeavoured to persuade the people that the proposer only aimed at disturbing the government, and throwing all things into confusion. 6. But Gracchus, who was a man of the greatest eloquence of his time, easily wiped off these impressions from the minds of the people already *irritated* by their wrongs; and at length the law was passed.

7. The death of At'talus, king of Per'gamus[2], furnished Gracchus with a new opportunity of gratifying the meaner part of the people at the expense of the great. 8. This king had by his last will made the Romans his heirs; and it was now proposed, that the money so left should be divided among the poor, in order to furnish them with proper *utensils* for cultivating the lands which became theirs by the late law of partition. 9. This caused still greater disturbances than before, and the senate assembled upon the occasion, in order to concert the most proper methods of securing these riches to themselves, which they now valued above the safety of the commonwealth. 10. They had numerous dependents who were willing to give up liberty for plenty and ease. These, therefore, were commanded

[1] The Gracchi were the sons of T. Sempro'nius Gracchus, by Corne'lia, or Sempro'nia, daughter of Scip'io Africa'nus.

[2] Per'gamus was a celebrated empire in Asia Minor, with a capital of the same name (now Bergamo), famous for its extensive library, afterwards removed to Alexan'dria by Cleopa'tra; and for parchment (charta Pergamena) having been first invented there. (Plin. Strabo. Liv.)

to be in readiness to intimidate the people, who expected no such opposition; and who were now attending to the *harangues* of Gracchus in the Capitol. 11. Here, as a clamour was raised by the clients of the great on one side, and by the favourers of the law on the other, Gracchus found his speech entirely interrupted, and begged in vain to be attended to: till, at last, raising his hand to his head, to intimate that his life was in danger, the partisans of the senate gave out that he wanted a *diadem*. 12. In consequence of this, an universal uproar spread itself through all ranks of people; the corrupt part of the senate were of opinion that the consul should defend the commonwealth by force of arms; but this prudent magistrate declining such violence, Scip'io Nas'ica, kinsman to Gracchus, immediately rose up, and preparing himself for the contest, desired that all who would defend the dignity and authority of the laws, should follow him. 13. Upon this, attended by a large body of senators and clients armed with clubs, he went directly to the Capitol, striking down all who ventured to resist.

14. Tibe'rius Gracchus, perceiving by the tumult that his life was in danger, endeavoured to fly; and throwing away his robe to *expedite* his escape, attempted to get through the throng; but happening to fall over a person already on the ground, Sature'ius, one of his colleagues in the tribuneship, who was of the opposite faction, struck him dead with a piece of a seat; and not less than three hundred of his hearers shared the same fate, being killed in the tumult. 15. Nor did the vengeance of the senate rest here, but extended to numbers of those who seemed to espouse his cause; many of them were put to death, many were banished, and nothing was omitted to inspire the people with an abhorrence of his pretended crimes. Soon after the death of Gracchus, a rebellion broke out in Sicily among the slaves, who, exasperated by the cruelties exercised upon them by their masters, revolted, and having seized Enna [1], chose one Eunus for their king. This new monarch gained considerable advantages over the Romans, took the strong city of Tauromin'ium, and protracted the war upwards of six years. At length he was completely defeated by the consul Rupil'ius, and his fol-

[1] Now Castro Janni, in the centre of Sicily, near which is the beautiful plain whence Pros'erpine was said to have been carried off by Pluto.

lowers slaughtered or executed: as for Eunus, he died in prison.

16. Ca'ius Gracchus was but twenty-one upon the death of Tibe'rius his brother; and as he was too young to be much dreaded by the great, so he was at first unwilling to incur their resentment, by aims beyond his reach; he, therefore, lived in retirement, unseen and forgotten. 17. But while he thus seemed desirous of avoiding popularity, he was employed in his solitude in the study of eloquence, which was the surest means to obtain it. 18. At length, when he thought himself qualified to serve his country, he offered himself a candidate for the *quæstorship* to the army in Sardin'ia, which he easily obtained. His valour, affability, and temperance in his office, were remarked by all. 19. The king of Numid'ia sending a present of corn to the Romans, ordered his ambassadors to say that it was a tribute to the virtues of Ca'ius Gracchus. 20. This the senate treated with contempt, as coming from ignorant barbarians; which so inflamed the resentment of young Gracchus, that he immediately came from the army to complain of the *indignity* thrown upon his reputation, and to offer himself for the tribuneship of the people. 21. It was then that this youth, who had been hitherto neglected, proved a more formidable enemy than even his brother had been. Notwithstanding the warmest opposition from the senate, he was declared tribune by a very large *majority;* and he now prepared for the career which his brother had run before him.

22. His first effort was to have Pompil'ius, one of the most inveterate of his brother's enemies, cited before the people; but rather than stand the event of a trial, he chose to go into voluntary banishment. 23. He next procured an edict, granting the freedom of the city to the inhabitants of La'tium, and soon after to all the people on the hither side of the Alps. 24. He afterwards fixed the price of corn at a moderate standard, and procured a monthly distribution of it among the people. 25. He then proceeded to an *inspection* into the late corruptions of the senate; in which the whole body being convicted of bribery, extortion, and the sale of offices (for at that time a total degeneracy seemed to have taken place), a law was made transferring the power of judging corrupt magistrates from the senate to the knights, which made a great alteration in the constitution.

26. Gracchus, by these means, being grown not only popular, but powerful, was become an object at which the senate aimed all their resentment. 27. But he soon found the populace a faithless and unsteady support. They began to withdraw all their confidence from him, and to place it upon Drusus, a man *insidiously* set up against him by the senate. 28. It was in vain that he revived the Licinian law in their favour, and called up several of the inhabitants of the different towns of Italy to his support: the senate ordered all to depart from Rome, and even sent one stranger to prison whom Gracchus had invited to live with him, and honoured with his table and friendship. 29. To this *indignity* was shortly after added a disgrace of a more fatal tendency; for, standing for the tribuneship a third time, he was rejected. It was supposed that the officers, whose duty it was to make the return, were bribed to reject him, though fairly chosen.

Questions for Examination.

1. What consequences followed this great prosperity of the Roman arms?
2. Who first resolved to repress the corruption which had taken place in the manners of the people?
3. What was the character of Tiberius Gracchus?
4. Had he any influence with the people?
5. How was the Licinian law received?
6. Did the people believe them?
7. What furthered his views?
8. What advantages occurred to the Romans by his death?
9. What was the effect of this will?
10. What measures did they adopt for this purpose?
11. What was the consequence of their interference?
12. Was this insinuation believed?
13. Did Scipio use violence?
14. What was the fate of Gracchus and his friends?
15. Were his enemies satisfied with this vengeance?
16. What became of Caius Gracchus in the mean time?
17. Was he really desirous of avoiding popularity?
18. In what way did he bring himself into notice?
19. What proof of esteem was given him?
20. How was this compliment received?
21. What was the consequence of this resentment?
22. What was his first effort?
23. What was his next act?
24. What was the next?
25. What followed?
26. What was the consequence of these acts?
27. Did he find steady friends?
28. Were his measures of precaution successful?
29. What further indignities did he experience?

SECTION II.

What blind, detested madness could afford
Such horrid licence to the murdering sword?
Say, Romans, whence so dire a fury rose,
To glut with Latian blood your barbarous foes?
Could you in wars like these provoke your fate?
Wars, where no triumphs on the victors wait!

ROWE'S LUCAN, b. 1.

3 Recrimina'tion, *s.* return of abuse, an accusation retorted back.
5. Con'troversy, *s.* matter in dispute.
16. Extra'neous, *a.* foreign, strange.
17. Promulga'tion, *s.* publication, the act of making known.
19. Ve'nal, *a.* mercenary, those whose services may be purchased.
20. Aristoc'racy, *s.* the government by the nobles only.
22. Concurr'ed, *v.* agreed.
Av'arice, *s.* covetousness.

1. IT was now seen that the fate of Gracchus was resolved on. Opim'ius, the consul, was not contented with the protection of the senate, the knights, and a numerous retinue of slaves and clients; he ordered a body of Candians, who were mercenaries in the Roman service, to follow and attend him. 2. Thus guarded, and conscious of the superiority of his forces, he insulted Gracchus wherever he met him, doing all in his power to produce a quarrel, in which he might have a pretence for despatching his enemy in the fray. 3. Gracchus avoided all *recrimination*, and as if apprised of the consul's designs, would not even wear any kind of arms for his defence. 4. His friend Ful'vius Flaccus, however, a zealous tribune, was not so remiss, but resolved to oppose party against party, and for this purpose brought up several countrymen to Rome, who came under pretence of desiring employment. 5. When the day for determining the *controversy* was arrived, the two parties, early in the morning, attended at the Capitol, where, while the consul was sacrificing, according to custom, one of the lictors taking up the entrails of the beast that was slain, in order to remove them, could not forbear crying out to Flac'cus and his party, "Make way, ye factious citizens, for honest men." 6. This insult so provoked the party to whom it was addressed, that they instantly fell upon him, and pierced him to death with the instruments they used in writing, which they then happened to have in their hands. 7. This murder caused a great disturbance in the assembly. Gracchus, who saw the consequences that were likely to ensue, reprimanded his party for giving his enemies such advantage over him; and now prepared to lead

his followers to Mount Av'entine[1]. 8. It was there he learned that a proclamation had been made by the consuls, that whosoever should bring either his head, or that of Flaccus, should receive its weight in gold as a reward. 9. It was to no purpose that he sent the youngest son of Flaccus, who was yet a child, with proposals for an accommodation. The senate and the consuls, who were sensible of their superiority, rejected all his offers, and resolved to punish his offence with nothing less than death; and they offered pardon also to all who should leave him immediately. 10. This produced the desired effect; the people fell from him by degrees, and left him with very inferior forces. 11. In the mean time, Opim'ius, the consul, who thirsted for slaughter, leading his forces up to Mount Av'entine, fell in among the crowd with ungovernable fury. A terrible slaughter of the scarcely resisting multitude ensued, and not less than three thousand citizens were slain upon the spot. 12. Flaccus attempted to find shelter in a ruinous cottage; but, being discovered, was slain with his eldest son. Gracchus at first retired to the temple of Dian'a, where he resolved to die by his own hand, but was prevented by two of his faithful friends and followers, Pompo'nius and Lucin'ius, who forced him to seek safety by flight. Thence he made the best of his way to cross a bridge that led from the city, still attended by his two generous friends, and a Grecian slave, whose name was Philoc'rates. 13. But his pursuers still pressed upon him from behind, and when come to the foot of the bridge, he was obliged to turn and face the enemy. His two friends were soon slain, defending him against the crowd; and he was forced to take refuge with his slave in a grove beyond the Ti'ber, which had long been dedicated to the Furies. 14. Here, finding himself surrounded on every side, and no way left of escaping, he prevailed upon his slave to despatch him. The slave immediately after killed himself, and fell down upon the body of his beloved master. The pursuers coming up, cut off the head of Gracchus, and placed it for a while as a trophy on a spear. 15. Soon after one Septimule'ius[2] carried it home, and taking out

[1] As he was leaving his house for that purpose, his wife, who tenderly loved both her husband and her country, bathed in tears, and holding in her arms their only son, earnestly besought him not to risk a life so precious, by confiding in an unsteady rabble.

[2] This man professed great friendship for Caius Gracchus.

the brain, artfully filled it with lead, in order to increase its weight, and then received of the consul seventeen pounds of gold as his recompense.

16. Thus died Ca'ius Gracchus[1]. He is usually impeached by historians, as guilty of sedition; but from what we see of his character, the disturbance of public tranquillity was rather owing to his opposers than to him; so that instead of calling the tumults of that time the sedition of the Gracchi, we should rather call them the sedition of the senate against the Gracchi: since the efforts of the latter were made in vindication of a law to which the senate had assented; and the designs of the former were supported by an *extraneous* armed power from the country, that had never before meddled in the business of legislation, and whose introduction gave a most irrecoverable blow to the constitution. 17. Whether the Gracchi were actuated by motives of ambition or patriotism in the *promulgation* of the law, it is impossible to determine; but from what appears, justice was on their side, and all injury on that of the senate. 18. In fact, this body was now changed from that venerable assembly which we have seen overthrowing Pyr'rhus and Hannibal, as much by their virtues as their arms. They were now only to be distinguished from the rest of the people by their superior luxuries, and ruled the commonwealth by the weight of an authority gained from riches and mercenary dependents. 19. The *venal* and the base were attached to them from motives of self-interest; and they who still ventured to be independent, were borne down, and entirely lost in an infamous majority. 20. In short, the empire at this period came under the government of a hateful *aristocracy*; the tribunes, who were formerly accounted protectors of the people, becoming rich themselves, and having no longer opposite interests from those of the senate, concurred in their oppressions; for the struggle was not now between patricians and plebeians, who only nominally differed, but between the rich and the poor. 21. The lower orders

[1] Such was the severity of the consul Opim'ius, that not content with the death of Gracchus, and the slaughter of above three thousand of his adherents on Mount Aventine, he imprisoned and condemned to die all the friends of that unfortunate man whom he could discover. Even the tender age of young Ful'vius Flaccus did not screen him from the consul's vengeance; and Lucin'ia, the wife of Gracchus, was deprived of her dowry.

of the state being by these means reduced to a degree of hopeless subjection, instead of looking after liberty, only sought for a leader; while the rich, with all the suspicion of tyrants, terrified at the slightest appearance of opposition, entrusted men with uncontrollable power, from whom they had not strength to withdraw it when the danger was over. 22. Thus both parties of the state *concurred* in giving up their freedom; the fears of the senate first made the dictator, and the hatred of the people kept him in his office. Nothing can be more dreadful to a thinking mind than the government of Rome from this period, till it found refuge under the protection of Augustus [1].

Questions for Examination.

1. What appearances now threatened the life of Gracchus?
2. How did he commence hostilities?
3. How did Gracchus attempt to divert the storm?
4. Were his friends equally prudent?
5. What unhappy incident increased the animosity?
6. How was this insult revenged?
7. What was the consequence of this outrage?
8. What news did he hear on his arrival?
9. Did he attempt to conciliate his enemies, and were his attempts successful?
10. Was this offer accepted?
11. What was the conduct of the consul?
12. What was the fate of the chiefs?
13. Did Gracchus effect his escape?
14. Did he fall into the hands of his enemies?
15. What artifice did *avarice* contrive?
16. Was the conduct of Gracchus deserving of praise or blame?
17. By what motives were the Gracchi supposed to be actuated?
18. What was the character of the senate at this period?
19. What was the character of their adherents?
20. What was the nature of their government?
21. What concurred to perpetuate this tyranny?

---

[1] From the death of Grac'chus until the first consulship of Ma'rius Rome was governed by a venal and profligate oligarchy, formed from a coalition of the most powerful families. Shame was unknown to this body, the offices of state were openly sold to the highest bidder, redress of grievances was to be obtained only by paying a heavier sum for vengeance than the oppressor would give for impunity: advocacy of popular rights was punished as treason, and complaints were treated as criminal acts of sedition. The young patricians under such a system became the scourge of the state, for nothing remained safe from their violence or their lust, when the monopoly of judicial office by their friends and relatives ensured them impunity for every excess, however flagrant or disgraceful.

CHAPTER XVIII.

SECT. I.

FROM THE SEDITION OF GRACCHUS TO THE PERPETUAL DICTATORSHIP OF SYLLA, WHICH WAS THE FIRST STEP TOWARDS THE RUIN OF THE COMMONWEALTH.—U.C. 634.

By brutal Marius, and keen Sylla, first
Effused the deluge dire of civil blood,
Unceasing woes began, and this, or that
(Deep-drenching their revenge) nor virtue spared,
Nor sex, nor age, nor quality, nor name,
Till Rome, into human shambles turn'd,
Made desert lovely. THOMSON.

6. Repri'sals, *s.* something seized by way of retaliation for robbery or injury.
Aggres'sion, *s.* a first attack, cause of offence.
9. Clem'ency, *s.* mercy, kindness.
14. Participa'tion, *s.* sharing.
16. Em'issaries, *s.* persons sent on private messages, secret agents.
17. Vi'gilance, *s.* watchfulness.
21. Spe'cious, *a.* showy, plausible, artful.
24. Conspic'uous, *a.* easy to be seen, plain.
27. Suf'frages, *s.* votes.
31. Tumul'tuary, *a.* irregular, confused.
Propi'tiate, *v.* to render favourable.

1. WHILE the Romans were in this state of deplorable corruption at home, they nevertheless were very successful in their transactions with foreign powers.

2. Among other victories, a signal one was gained over Jugur'tha, king of Numidia[1]. He was grandson to Massinis'sa, who sided with Rome against Hannibal, and educated with the two young princes, who were left to inherit the kingdom. 3. Being superior in abilities to both, and greatly in favour with the people, he murdered Hiemp'sal, the eldest son, but Adher'bal, the younger, escaped, and fled to the Romans for succour. 4. Jugur'tha, sensible how much avarice and injustice had crept into the senate, sent his ambassadors to Rome with large presents, which so successfully prevailed, that the senate decreed him half the kingdom, thus acquired by murder

[1] One of the most remarkable of these victories was that obtained over the Averni, a nation inhabiting that part of Gaul now called Auvergne; they were defeated by Fa'bius Max'imus, with the loss of one hundred and twenty thousand men, either killed or drowned in the Rhone. (Flor. l. iii. c. 2.) Bitultick, their king, was taken prisoner by a base stratagem, and kept in captivity the remainder of his days. So unmindful were the senate of all the laws of honour and probity when they militated against their interest.

and usurpation, and sent ten commissioners to divide it between him and Adher'bal. 5. The commissioners, of whom Opim'ius, the enemy of Gracchus, was one, willing to follow the example which the senate had set them, were also bribed to bestow the richest and most populous parts of that kingdom upon the usurper. 6. But Jugur'tha resolved to possess himself of the whole; and willing to give a colour to his ambition, he only made in the beginning incursions in order to provoke *reprisals*, which he knew how to convert into seeming *aggression*. 7. This scheme failing, he resolved to throw off the mask; and besieging Adher'bal in Cirta, his capital, he at length got him into his power, and murdered him. 8. The Roman people, who had still some generosity remaining, unanimously complained of this treachery, and procured a decree that Jugur'tha should be summoned in person before them, to give an account of all such as had accepted bribes. 9. Jugur'tha made no difficulty of throwing himself upon the *clemency* of Rome; but not giving the people satisfaction, he had orders to depart the city [1]. 10. In the mean time, Alba'nus, the consul, was sent with an army to follow him; who giving up the direction of it to Au'lus, his brother, a person who was every way unqualified for the command, the Romans were compelled to hazard a battle upon disadvantageous terms; and the whole army, to avoid being cut to pieces, was obliged to pass under the yoke.

11. In this condition, Metellus, the succeeding consul found affairs upon his arrival in Numid'ia; officers in whom the soldiers had no confidence, an army without discipline, and an enemy ever watchful and intriguing. 12. However, by his great attention to business, and by integrity that shuddered at corruption, he soon began to retrieve the affairs of Rome, and the credit of the army. In the space of two years, Jugur'tha was overthrown in several battles, forced out of his own dominions, and constrained to beg a peace. 13. Thus all things promised Metel'lus a happy termination of the war, but he was frustrated in his expectations by the intrigues of Ca'ius Ma'rius, his lieutenant, who came in to reap that harvest of glory

[1] So astonished was Jugur'tha at the mercenary disposition discovered by the Romans, that he is said to have exclaimed, on leaving the city, "Oh, Rome! thou wouldst thyself be sold, could a chapman be found to purchase thee."

which the other's industry had sown. 14. Ca'ius Ma'rius was born in a village near Arpi'nium, of poor parents, who gained their living by their labour. As he had been bred up in a *participation* of their toils, his manners were as rude as his countenance was frightful. He was a man of extraordinary stature, incomparable strength, and undaunted bravery.

15. When Metel'lus was obliged to solicit at Rome for a continuance of his command, Ma'rius, whose ambition knew no bounds, was resolved to obtain it for himself, and thus gain all the glory of putting an end to the war. 16. To that end he privately inveighed against Metel'lus by his *emissaries* at Rome, and having excited a spirit of discontent against him, he had leave granted him to go there to stand for the consulship, which he obtained, contrary to the expectation and interest of the nobles.

17. Ma'rius, being thus invested with the supreme power of managing the war, showed himself every way fit for the commission. His *vigilance* was equal to his valour, and he quickly made himself master of the cities which Jugur'tha had yet remaining in Numid'ia.[1] 18. This unfortunate prince, finding himself unable to make opposition singly, was obliged to have recourse for assistance to Bocchus, king of Maurita'nia, to whose daughter he was married. A battle soon after ensued, in which the Numid'ians surprised the Roman camp by night, and gained a temporary advantage. However, it was but of short continuance, for Ma'rius soon after overthrew them in two signal engagements, in one of which, not less than ninety thousand of the African army were slain. 19. Bocchus now finding the Romans too powerful to be resisted, did not think it expedient to hazard his own crown, to protect that of his ally; he therefore determined to make peace, upon what-

[1] It has been said with great truth, that "the wicked have no friends." Jugur'tha experienced this: Bomil'car, who professed the warmest attachment to Jugur'tha, was gained over by the pro-consul Metel'lus to persuade his master that submission to the Romans was absolutely necessary. Jugur'tha accordingly sent an embassy to the pro-consul, professing his readiness to submit to any terms. Upon this he was required to send to the Romans 200,000 pounds weight of silver, all his elephants, a certain number of horses and arms, and all deserters. The king complied exactly with these hard conditions; but after thus weakening his resources, he found himself still obliged to continue the war, or submit to such farther impositions as would have endangered not only his crown, but his life.

ever conditions he might obtain it; and accordingly sent to Rome, imploring protection. 20. The senate received the ambassadors with their usual haughtiness, and without complying with their request, granted the suppliant, not their friendship, but their pardon. Notwithstanding, after some time, he was given to understand, that the delivering up of Jugur'tha to the Romans would, in some measure, conciliate their favour, and soften their resentment. 21. At first the pride of Bocchus struggled against such a proposal; but a few interviews with Sylla reconciled him to this treacherous measure, and Jugur'tha was given up, being drawn into ambuscade by the *specious* pretences of his ally, who deluded him by desiring a conference. Being made a prisoner, the Numidian monarch was loaded with chains, and carried by Ma'rius to Rome, a deplorable instance of blighted ambition. 22. He did not long survive his overthrow, being condemned by the senate to be starved to death in prison, a short time after he had been made to adorn the triumph of the conqueror.

23. Ma'rius, by this and two succeeding victories over the Cim'bri and Teut'ones, who had ravaged Gaul and threatened northern Italy, having become very formidable to distant nations in war, became soon after much more dangerous to his fellow-citizens in peace. 24. The strength which he had given to the popular party every day grew more *conspicuous*, and the Italians being frustrated by the intrigues of the senate, in their aims of gaining the freedom of Rome, resolved upon obtaining by force what was refused them as a favour. This gave rise to the Social War, in which most of the states of Italy entered into a confederacy against Rome, in order to obtain a redress of their grievances.

25. After a lapse of two years, this war having continued to rage with doubtful success, the senate began to reflect that, whether conquered or conquerors, the power of the Romans was in danger of being destroyed. 26. To soften, therefore, their compliance by degrees, they began by giving the freedom of the city to such of the Italian states as had not revolted. They then offered it to such as would lay down their arms. 27. This unexpected bounty had its effect; the allies, with mutual distrust, offered each a separate treaty; the senate took them one by one into favour; but gave the freedom of the city in such a manner, that, not being empowered to vote until all the other tribes

had given their *suffrages*, they had very little weight in the constitution.

28. This destructive war being concluded, the senate began to think of turning their arms against Mithrida'tes, the most powerful and warlike monarch of the east[1]. 29. For this expedition Ma'rius had long been preparing, but Sylla had interest enough to get himself appointed to the expedition. Ma'rius, however, tried all his arts with the people to get his appointment reversed; and the command of the army, intended to oppose Mithrida'tes, was ordered to be transferred from Sylla to Ma'rius. 30. In consequence of this, Ma'rius immediately sent officers from Rome to take the command in his name. But instead of being obeyed, the officers were slain, and Sylla was entreated by his army to lead them directly to take signal vengeance upon all his enemies at Rome.

31. Accordingly, his soldiers entered the city sword in hand, as a place taken by storm. Ma'rius and Sulpi'cius, at the head of a *tumultuary* body of their partisans, attempted to oppose their entrance; and the citizens themselves, who feared the sackage of the place, threw down stones and tiles from the houses upon the intruders. 32. So unequal a conflict lasted longer than could have been expected; at length Ma'rius and his party were obliged to seek safety by flight, after having vainly offered liberty to the slaves who would assist them.

Questions for Examination.

1. Was this internal degeneracy of the Roman people accompanied by ill success abroad?
2. What signal victory did they obtain, and who was Jugurtha?
3. By what means did he obtain the crown?
4. How did he *propitiate* the Romans?
5. How did these commissioners discharge their trust?
6. Was Jugurtha satisfied with this allotment?
7. Did this answer his purpose?
8. Did the Romans suffer this treachery to pass unpunished?
9. Did Jugurtha obey this summons?
10. Were hostilities commenced against him, and what was the result.

---

[1] This king incurred the resentment of the Romans by making war on some of their allies, and by putting Op'pius and Aquil'us to death. Upbraiding the Romans with their avarice and corruption, he caused melted gold to be poured down the throat of the latter.

11. What was the condition of the army when Metellus assumed the command?
12. Did this deplorable state continue?
13. Did Metellus enjoy the fruits of his victories?
14. Who was Caius Marius?
15. What resolution did he adopt?
16. By what artifices did he succeed in his design?
17. What was the conduct of Marius in his new command?
18. To whom did Jugurtha have recourse in his extremity?
19. Did Bocchus continue to befriend Jugurtha?
20. Was his request complied with?
21. Did Bocchus submit to this condition?
22. What became of Jugurtha after this?
23. How did Marius conduct himself after his victories?
24. What was the consequence of his attempts at popularity?
25. Was this war of long continuance?
26. What measures did the senate adopt to end it?
27. What was the consequence of this measure?
28. Against whom did the senate next turn their arms?
29. Who was appointed to command this expedition?
30. What was the consequence of this order?
31. Did Sylla comply with their request?
32. What was the issue of the contest?

SECTION II.

It is a vain attempt
To bind th' ambitious and unjust by treaties;
These they elude a thousand specious ways;
Or, if they cannot find a fair pretext,
They blush not in the face of heaven to break them.

THOMSON.

2. Quag'mire, *s.* a bog, a deep miry place.
4. Cim'brian, *s.* a native of Cim'bria, now Denmark.
Presump'tion, *s.* great boldness.
6. Præ'tor, *s.* the governor of a province.
9. Inhos'pitable, *a.* unkind to strangers, unfriendly.
12. Obnox'ious, *a.* offensive, disagreeable.
13. Propi'tiate, *v.* to soften, to subdue.
14. Sa'tiated, *v.* satisfied, glutted.
Ab'rogated, *v.* repealed, annulled.
19. Suspen'sion, *s.* a cessation, or laying aside for a time.
Parti'cipate, *v.* to share.
21. Subordina'tion, *s.* a command, discipline.
25. Con'voked, *v.* called together, assembled.
27. Proscri'bed, *v.* condemned to death.
Intermis'sion, *s.* a pause or rest.
28. Perpetu'ity, *s.* continuance.
29. Capri'cious, *a.* whimsical, fanciful.
30. Abdica'tion, *s.* a resigning or giving up.

Note.—Glad'iator, *s.* a man destined to afford amusement to the Romans by fighting in the public theatre.

1. SYLLA now finding himself master of the city, began by modelling the laws so as to favour his outrages; while Ma'rius, driven out of Rome, and declared a public enemy, at the age of seventy, was obliged to save himself, unat-

tended and on foot, from the pursuit of those who sought his life[1]. 2. After having wandered for some time in this deplorable condition, he found every day his dangers increase, and his pursuers making nearer advances. In this distress he concealed himself in the marshes of Mintur'næ[2], where he continued a night up to the chin in a *quagmire*. 3. At break of day he left this dismal place, and made towards the sea-side, in hopes of finding a ship to facilitate his escape; but being known and discovered by some of the inhabitants, he was conducted to a neighbouring town, with a halter round his neck, without clothes, and covered with mud; and in this condition was sent to prison. 4. The governor of the place, willing to conform to the orders of the senate, soon after sent a *Cim'brian* slave to despatch him; but the barbarian no sooner entered the dungeon for this purpose than he stopped short, intimidated by the dreadful visage and awful voice of the fallen general, who sternly demanded if he had the *presumption* to kill Ca'ius Ma'rius? The slave, unable to reply, threw down his sword, and rushing back from the prison, cried out that he found it impossible to kill him! 5. The governor, considering the fear of the slave as an omen in the unhappy exile's favour, gave him his freedom; and, commending him to his fortune, provided him with a ship to convey him from Italy. 6. He was forced by a tempest on the coast of Sicily. A Roman quæstor, who happened to be there, resolved to seize him: and he lost sixteen of his crew, who were killed in their endeavours to cover his retreat to the ship. He afterwards landed in Africa, near Carthage, and, overwhelmed with melancholy, sat himself down amongst the ruins of that desolate place. He soon, however, had orders from the *prætor* to retire. 7. Ma'rius, who remembered his having once served this very man in necessity, could not suppress his indignation at finding ingratitude every where; and, preparing to obey, bid the messenger tell his master, that he had seen Ma'rius sitting among the ruins of Carthage; intimating the greatness of his fall, by

[1] Sulpi'cius, the colleague of Ma'rius, being betrayed by one of his slaves, had his head struck off, and fixed on a stake over against the rostra. The treacherous slave was rewarded with his freedom and a sum of money, and then thrown headlong from the Tarpe'ian rock. (Valerius Maximus.)

[2] A town of Campa'nia, between Sinues'sa and For'miæ. (Strabo.)

the desolation that was around him. 8. He once more embarked, and not knowing where to land without encountering an enemy, he spent the winter at sea, expecting every hour the return of a messenger from his son, whom he had sent to solicit protection from the African prince Mandras'tal. 9. After long expectation, instead of the messenger, his son himself arrived, having escaped from the *inhospitable* court of that monarch, where he had been kept, not as a friend, but as a prisoner, and had returned just time enough to prevent his father from sharing the same fate.

10. In this situation they were informed that Cinna, one of their party who had remained at Rome, had put himself at the head of a large army, collected out of the Italian states, who had espoused his cause. Nor was it long before they joined their forces at the gates of Rome. Sylla was at that time absent conducting the war against Mithrida'tes. 11. Cinna marched into the city; but Ma'rius stopped, and refused to enter, alleging, that having been banished by a public decree, it was necessary to have another to authorize his return [1]. It was thus that he desired to give his meditated cruelties the appearance of justice; and while he was about to destroy thousands, to pretend an implicit veneration for the laws. 12. An assembly of the people being called, they began to reverse his banishment; but they had scarcely gone through three of the tribes, when, incapable of restraining his desire of revenge, he entered the city at the head of his guards, and massacred all who had been *obnoxious* to him, without remorse or pity. 13. Several who sought to *propitiate* the tyrant's rage, were murdered by his command in his presence; many even of those who had never offended him were put to death; and, at last, even his own officers never approached him but with terror [2]. 14. Having in this manner *satiated* his revenge, he next *abrogated* all the laws which were enacted by

[1] With an affectation of the greatest humility he wore only an old and tattered dress, suffering his hair and beard to continue rough and uncombed; and walked with a slow pace, like a man oppressed with his misfortunes; but under the disguise of that mournful countenance, something so fierce appeared in his looks, that he inspired terror rather than compassion. (Plutarch in Mario.)

[2] He gave his guards an order that whoever came to salute him, and was not answered with the like civility, should be immediately massacred. (Plut. in Mario.) Many who came to make their court to the tyrant were thus cut in pieces.

his rival, and then made himself consul with Cinna. 15. Thus gratified in his two favourite passions, vengeance and ambition, having once saved his country, and now deluged it with blood; at last, as if willing to crown the pile of slaughter which he had made with his own body he died the month after, not without suspicion of having hastened his end.

16. In the mean time these accounts were brought to Sylla, who had been sent against Mithrida'tes, and who was performing many signal exploits against him; hastily concluding a peace, therefore, he returned home to take vengeance on his enemies at Rome.

17. Nothing could intimidate Cinna from attempting to repel his opponent[1]. Being joined by Car'bo, (now elected in the room of Vale'rius, who had been slain,) together with young Ma'rius, who inherited all the abilities and the ambition of his father, he determined to send over part of the forces he had raised in Dalma'tia to oppose Sylla before he entered Italy. Some troops were accordingly embarked; but being dispersed by a storm, the others that had not yet put to sea absolutely refused to go. 18. Upon this, Cinna, quite furious at their disobedience, rushed forward to persuade them to their duty. In the mean time one of the most mutinous of the soldiers being struck by an officer, returned the blow, and was apprehended for his crime. This ill-timed severity produced a tumult and a mutiny through the whole army; and while Cinna did all he could to appease it, he was run through the body by one of the crowd.

19. Scip'io, the consul, who commanded against Sylla, was soon after allured by proposals for a treaty; but a *suspension* of arms being agreed upon, Sylla's soldiers went into the opposite camp, displaying those riches which they had acquired in their expeditions, and offering to *participate* with their fellow-citizens, in case they changed their party. 20. In consequence of this the whole army declared unanimously for Sylla; and Scip'io scarcely knew that he was forsaken and deposed, till he was informed of it by a party of the enemy, who, entering his tent, made him and his son prisoners.

21. In this manner both factions, exasperated to the

[1] To strengthen his interest, he married his daughter Corne'lia about this time to Julius Cæsar, whose abilities were conspicuous even in his youth.

highest degree, and expecting no mercy on either part, gave vent to their fury in several engagements. The forces on the side of young Ma'rius, who now succeeded his father in command, were the most numerous, but those of Sylla better united, and more under *subordination*. 22. Carbo, who commanded for Ma'rius in the field, sent eight legions to Prænes'te, to relieve his colleague, but they were met by Pompey, afterwards surnamed the Great, in a defile, who slew many of them, and dispersed the rest. Carbo soon after engaged Metel'lus, but was overcome, with the loss of ten thousand slain, and six thousand taken prisoners [1]. 23. In consequence, Urba'nus, one of the consuls, killed himself, and Carbo fled to Africa, where, after wandering a long time, he was at last delivered up to Pompey, who, to please Sylla, ordered him to be beheaded [2]. 24. Sylla, now become undisputed master of his country, entered Rome at the head of his army. Happy, had he supported in peace the glory which he had acquired in war; or, had he ceased to live when he ceased to conquer!

25. Eight thousand men, who had escaped the general carnage, surrendered themselves to the conqueror; he ordered them to be put into the Villa Pub'lica, a large house in the Campus Mar'tius; and, at the same time, *convoked* the senate; there, without discovering the least emotion, he spoke with great fluency of his own exploits, and in the mean time, gave private directions that all those wretches whom he had confined should be slain. 26. The senate, amazed at the horrid outcries of the sufferers, at first thought that the city was given up to plunder; but Sylla, with an unembarrassed air, informed them, that it was only some criminals who were punished by his order, and that the senate ought not to make themselves uneasy at their fate. 27. The day after, he *proscribed* forty senators, and sixteen hundred knights; and after an *intermission* of two days, forty senators more, with an infinite number of the richest citizens.

28. He next resolved to invest himself with the dicta-

[1] The news of this defeat so exasperated young Ma'rius, that he sent orders to Ju'nius Bru'tus, then prætor at Rome, to put all Sylla's friends to death. (Appian.) This order was executed with the utmost cruelty, and probably contributed to those dreadful scenes of carnage which soon after followed.

[2] Young Ma'rius destroyed himself, and his head was afterwards, by Sylla's order, exposed in the forum.

torship, and that for a *perpetuity*; and thus uniting all civil as well as military power in his own person, he thought he might thence give an air of justice to every oppression.

29. Thus he continued to govern with *capricious* tyranny, none daring to resist his power, until, contrary to the expectations of all mankind, he laid down the dictatorship, after having held it not quite three years [1].

30. After this, he retired into the country, and abandoned himself to debauchery; but he did not long survive his *abdication*; he was seized with a horrible distemper [2], and died a loathsome and mortifying object, and a melancholy proof of the futility of human ambition [3].

Questions for Examination.

1, 2. What were the first acts of Sylla? What became of Marius?
3, 4. To what dangers was he exposed? Was an attempt made on his life?
5. How did the governor treat the fugitive general?
6, 7. What ingratitude was shown to Marius? What was his reply?
8, 9. From what African prince did he ask aid? Was it granted?
10. What opportunity was taken by the Marian party to renew the struggle?
11, 12. To what scruple did Marius pretend? What proves it a pretence?
13, 14. What cruelties were practised by Marius? What laws did he change?

---

[1] It is remarkable, that though on his laying down the dictatorship, the forum was full of those whom his cruelties had rendered his most bitter enemies, no one presumed to molest him, except one young man, who followed him to his house with the most scurrilous abuse. Sylla did not deign him an answer, but turning to the few friends who accompanied, "This usage," said he, "will, for the future, deter any man from laying down the sovereign power, if he once gets it into his hands."

[2] Morbus Pedicula'ris.

[3] Two events, important in the history of Rome, occurred about this time. Serto'rius, a Roman general, in Spain, had rebelled against the government of Syl'la, and defeated every army sent against him, till Pompey took the command; and even then the result appeared doubtful, till Serto'rius being assassinated by his own officers, put an end to the war.

Spar'tacus, a *gladiator*, having escaped from confinement, and assembled a number of his followers, commenced what is called the second Servile War. His army gradually increasing, he became a formidable enemy to the Roman state; overthrew the prætors and consuls sent against him; but was at length defeated by Crassus, and the remains of his army cut in pieces by Pompey, who met them on his return from Spain.

15. How did Marius die?
16. How did Sylla act when he learned the news of the change?
17, 18. What caused a tumult in Cinna's army? How did it end?
19, 20. What artifice was practised on Scipio? What was the result?
21. Describe the relative conditions of the rival forces.
22, 23. Did Pompey obtain any victory? What was the consequence?
24. Which faction finally prevailed?
25, 26, 27. What massacre was perpetrated by Sylla? How did he excuse it? Were these his only cruelties?
28, 29. What magistracy did Sylla usurp? How did he govern?
30. In what manner did the tyranny of Sylla terminate?

CHAPTER XIX.

FROM THE PERPETUAL DICTATORSHIP OF SYLLA TO THE TRIUMVIRATE OF CÆSAR, POMPEY AND CRASSUS.—U.C. 680.

> Or should the deep-brew'd tempest muttering rise,
> While rocks and shoals perfidious lurk around,
> With Tully she her wide reviving light
> To senates holds, a Catiline confounds,
> And saves awhile from Cæsar sinking Rome. THOMSON.

1. Dissen'sions, *s.* contentions, quarrels.
3. Ab'rogate, *v.* to repeal, annul, abolish.
6. Prefer'red, *v.* offered for consideration.
8. Ter'minate, *v.* to put an end to.
10. Project'ed, *v.* contrived.
11. Prof'ligate, *a.* abandoned, wicked.
Insa'tiable, *a.* greedy beyond measure.
16. Punc'tual, *a.* exact.
18. Confront'ed, *v.* opposed.
Vindica'tion, *s.* defence, a clearing of character.

1. UPON the death of Sylla the jealousies of Pompey and Crassus, the two most powerful men in the empire, began to excite fresh *dissensions*. Pompey was the most beloved general, but Crassus the richest man in Rome.

2. The first opportunity that was offered of discovering their mutual jealousy, was upon disbanding their troops. Neither chose to begin; so that the most fatal consequences were likely to arise from their dissension. At length Crassus, stifling his resentment, laid down his command; and the other followed his example immediately after. 3. The next trial between them was, who should be foremost in obtaining the favour of the people. Crassus entertained the populace at a thousand tables, distributed corn to the families of the poor, and fed the greatest part of the citizens for nearly three months. Pompey, on the other

hand, laboured to *abrogate* the laws made against the authority of the people by Sylla; restored to the knights the power of judging, which had been formerly granted them by Gracchus; and gave back to the tribunes all their former privileges. 4. Thus each gave his private aim an appearance of zeal for the public good; so that what was in reality ambition in both, took with one the name of liberality, with the other that of a love of freedom.

5. An expedition, in which Pompey cleared the Mediterranean, which was infested by pirates, having added greatly to his reputation, the tribunes of the people hoped it would be easy to advance their favourite still higher. 6. Mani'lius, therefore, one of the number, *preferred* a law, that all the armies of the empire, the government of Asia, and the management of the war, which was renewed against Mithrida'tes, should be committed to Pompey alone. The law passed with little opposition, and the decree was confirmed.

7. Being thus appointed to the command of that important war, he departed for Asia. 8. Mithrida'tes had been obliged by Lucul'lus to take refuge in Lesser Arme'nia, and thither that general was preparing to follow him, when his whole army abandoned him; so that it remained for Pompey to *terminate* the war, which he effected with great ease and expedition, adding a large extent of dominion to the Roman empire, and returning to Rome in triumph at the head of his conquering army.

9. But the victories of Pompey rather served to heighten the glory than to increase the power of Rome; they made it a more glaring object of ambition, and exposed its liberties to greater danger. Those liberties, indeed, seemed devoted to ruin on every side; for even while he was pursuing his conquests abroad, Rome was at the verge of ruin from a conspiracy at home. 10. This conspiracy was *projected* and carried on by Ser'gius Cat'iline, a patrician by birth, who resolved to build his own power on the downfal of his country. 11. He was singularly formed, both by art and nature, to conduct a conspiracy: he was possessed of courage equal to the most desperate attempts, and of eloquence to give a colour to his ambition: ruined in his fortune, *profligate* in his manners, vigilant in pursuing his aims: he was *insatiable* after wealth, only with a view to lavish it on his guilty pleasures. 12. Cat'iline having contracted debts in consequence of such an ill-spent

life, was resolved to extricate himself from them by any means, however unlawful. Accordingly, he assembled about thirty of his debauched associates, and informed them of his aims, his hopes, and his settled plan of operations. 13. It was resolved among them, that a general insurrection should be raised throughout Italy, the different parts of which he assigned to different leaders. Rome was to be fired at several places at once; and Cat'iline, at the head of an army raised in Etru'ria, was, in the general confusion, to possess himself of the city, and massacre all the senators. Len'tulus, one of his profligate assistants, who had been prætor or judge in the city, was to preside in their general councils; Cethe'gus, a man who sacrificed the possession of great present power to the hopes of gratifying his revenge against Ci'cero [1], was to direct the massacre through the city; and Cas'sius was to conduct those who fired it.

14. But the vigilance of Ci'cero being the chief obstacle to their designs, Cat'iline was very desirous to see him taken off before he left Rome: upon which two knights of the company undertook to kill him the next morning in his bed, in an early visit on pretence of business. 15. But the meeting was no sooner over, than Ci'cero had information of all that had passed in it; for by the intrigues of a woman named Ful'via, he had gained over Cu'rius, her lover, one of the conspirators, to send him a punctual account of all their deliberations. 16. Having taken proper precautions to guard himself against the designs of his morning visitors, who were *punctual* to the appointment, he next took care to provide for the defence of the city; when, assembling the senate, he consulted what was best to be done in such a time of danger. 17. The first step taken was to offer considerable rewards for farther discoveries, and then to prepare for the defence of the state. 18. Cat'iline, to show how well he could dissemble, or justify any crime, went boldly to the senate, declaring his innocence [2]; but, when *confronted* by the eloquence of Ci'cero,

[1] Ci'cero, the first of Roman orators, as Demosthenes was of the Greeks, was born at Arpi'num, a town of the Volsci, and studied under the most celebrated orators and philosophers of Greece. His style of eloquence was copious, highly ornamented, and addressed more to the passions than the judgment of his hearers. He was consul at the time of Cat'iline's conspiracy; and for his eminent services in detecting and frustrating it, was honoured with the title of Pater Patriæ.

[2] On his entrance, those senators near whom he attempted to seat himself, quitting their places, left him quite alone.

he hastily withdrew, declaring aloud, that since he was denied a *vindication* of himself, and driven headlong into rebellion by his enemies, he would extinguish the flame which was raised about him in universal ruin. 19. After a short conference with Len'tulus and Cethe'gus, he left Rome by night, with a small retinue, to hasten towards Etru'ria, where Man'lius, one of the conspirators, was raising an army to support him [1].

20. In the mean time Ci'cero took proper precautions to secure all those of the conspiracy who remained in Rome. Len'tulus, Cethe'gus, Cas'sius, and several others, were put into confinement; and soon after strangled in prison.

21. While his associates were put to death in the city, Cat'iline had raised an army of twelve thousand men, of which a fourth part only were completely armed, the rest being furnished with such weapons as chance afforded; darts, lances, and clubs. 22. He refused, at first, to enlist slaves, who flocked to him in great numbers, trusting to the strength of the conspiracy; but upon the approach of the consul who was sent against him, and upon the arrival of the news that his confederates were put to death, the face of affairs altered. 23. His first attempt, therefore, was by long marches to make his escape over the Apennines into Gaul; but in this his hopes were disappointed; all the passes being guarded by an army superior to his own. 24. Being thus hemmed in on every side, and seeing all things desperate, with nothing left him but either to die or conquer, he resolved to make one vigorous effort against that army which pursued him. Anto'nius, the consul, being sick, the command devolved upon Petrei'us, who after a fierce and bloody action, in which he lost a considerable part of his best troops, put Cat'iline's forces to the rout, and destroyed his whole army [2].

25. The extinction of this conspiracy seemed only to leave an open theatre for the ambition of the great men to display itself in. Pompey was now returned in triumph from conquering the east, as he had before been victorious in Europe and Africa.

26. Crassus was the richest man in Rome, and next to Pompey possessed the greatest authority; his party in the

[1] On his arrival, he assumed all the insignia of a supreme magistrate, being preceded by lictors carrying the axes and fasces.

[2] Cat'iline himself, finding his affairs desperate, threw himself into the midst of the enemy, and there found the death he sought. (Sallust.)

senate was even stronger than that of his rival, and the envy raised against him was less. He and Pompey had long been disunited by an opposition of interests and of characters; however, it was from a continuance of their mutual jealousies that the state was in some measure to expect its future safety. 27. It was in this situation of things that Julius Cæsar, who had lately gone, as prætor, into Spain, and had returned with great riches and glory, resolved to convert their mutual jealousy to his own advantage. 28. This celebrated man was descended from popular and illustrious ancestors. He warmly espoused the side of the people, and shortly after the death of Sylla, procured the recal of those whom Sylla had banished. He had all along declared for the populace against the senate, and became their most favourite magistrate. 29. This consummate statesman began by offering his services to Pompey, promising to assist him in getting all his acts passed, notwithstanding the senate's opposition. Pompey, pleased at the acquisition of a person of so much merit, readily granted him his confidence and protection. 30. He next applied to Crassus, who from former connexions was disposed to become still more nearly his friend. 31. At length, finding them not averse to an union of interests, he took an opportunity of bringing them together; and remonstrating with them on the advantages, as well as necessity, of a reconciliation, he had art enough to persuade them to forget former animosities. 32. A combination was thus formed, by which they agreed that nothing should be done in the commonwealth without their mutual concurrence and approbation. This was called the first Trium'virate, by which we find the constitution weakened by a new interest, which had not hitherto taken place, very different from that of the senate or the people, and yet dependent on both.

Questions for Examination.

1. What followed on the death of Sylla?
2. What first discovered their mutual jealousy?
3. What was the next trial between them?
4. Under what pretences did they hide their real views?
5. What farther raised the reputation of Pompey?
6. What means were had recourse to for this purpose?

7, 8. What was the state of the war in Asia?
9. What were the consequences of Pompey's victories?
10. Who was the author, and what was the object of this conspiracy?
11. What was the character of Catiline?
12. What occasioned this conspiracy?
13. How was it to be carried into execution?
14. What was the chief obstacle to its accomplishment, and how was this obstacle to be removed?
15. Was Cicero informed of their proceedings?
16. What precautions did he take in consequence?
17. What was the first step taken?
18. What was the conduct of Catiline on this occasion?
19. Did he continue in Rome?
20. Did the other conspirators escape?
21. How was Catiline employed in the mean time?
22. Had he a fair prospect of success?
23. Did he boldly face his opponents?
24. What followed?
25. Did the extinction of this conspiracy give peace to Rome?
26. Who were the contending parties, and what was the consequence of this dissension?
27. Who profited by these jealousies?
28. Who was Julius Cæsar, and by what means did he acquire popularity?
29. What was his first step towards power?
30. To whom did he next apply?
31. What consequence resulted from his application?
32. What agreement was entered into by them, and what were they called?

CHAPTER XX.

SECT. I.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE FIRST TRIUMVIRATE TO THE DEATH OF POMPEY.—U.C. 694.

How happy was I, in my lawful wars
In Germany, in Gaul, and Brittany!
When every night with pleasure I set down
What the day ministered; then sleep came sweetly.
BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER.

1. Confed'erates, *s.* allies, associates, accomplices.
4. Ingra'tiating, *part.* getting into favour.
6. Sati'ated, *part.* glutted, full beyond desire.
7. Com'pensate, *v.* to make amends.
13 Stim'ulated, *part.* excited, urged on.
15. Hos'tages, *s.* persons delivered as security for the performance of conditions.
16. Co'operated, *v.* laboured jointly.
17. Leth'argy, *s.* supineness, inactivity.
19. Skir'mish, *s.* slight encounter, a battle between detached parts of the hostile armies.
20. Thwart, *v.* to cross, to hinder.
22. Allu're, *v.* to entice.
28. Expe'dients, *s.* contrivances, measures.
30. Con'fines, *s.* borders.

1. THE first thing Cæsar did, upon forming the triumvirate, was to avail himself of the interest of his *confederates* to obtain the consulship. 2. The senate had still some influence left; and though they were obliged to concur in choosing him, yet they gave him for a colleague one Bib'ulus, who they supposed would be a check upon his power. 3. But the opposition was too strong for even superior abilities to resist; so that Bib'ulus, after a slight attempt in favour of the senate, remained inactive. 4. Cæsar began his schemes for empire by *ingratiating* himself with the people; he procured a law for dividing certain lands in Campa'nia among such of the poor citizens as had at least three children. This proposal was just enough in itself, and it was criminal only from the views of the proposer.

5. Having thus strengthened himself at home, he deliberated with his confederates about sharing the foreign provinces of the empire. 6. The partition was soon made: Pompey chose Spain; for, being fatigued with conquest, and *satiated* with military fame, he was willing to take his pleasures at Rome. Crassus chose Syria; which province, as it had hitherto enriched the generals who had subdued it, would, he hoped, gratify him in this his favourite pursuit. To Cæsar were left the provinces of Gaul; com-

posed of fierce and powerful nations, most of them unsubdued, and the rest only professing a nominal subjection. 7. As this was appointing him rather to conquer than command, the government was granted him for five years; as if by its continuance to *compensate* for its danger.

8. It would be impossible in this narrow compass to enumerate the battles Cæsar fought, and the states he subdued, in his expeditions into Gaul and Britain, which continued eight years. 9. The Helve'tians[1] were the first that were brought into subjection, with the loss of nearly two hundred thousand men; those who remained after the carnage, were sent by Cæsar in safety to the forests whence they had issued[2]. 10. The Germans, with Ariovis'tus at their head, were next cut off, to the number of eighty thousand, their monarch himself narrowly escaping in a little boat across the Rhine. The Belgæ[3] suffered such a terrible overthrow, that marshes and rivers were rendered impassable from the heaps of slain. 11. The Ner'vians[4], who were the most warlike of those barbarous nations, made head for a short time, and fell upon the Romans with such fury, that their army was in danger of being utterly routed; but Cæsar himself, hastily catching up a buckler, rushed through his troops into the midst of the enemy; by which means he so turned the fate of the day, that the barbarians were all cut off to a man. 12. The Celtic Gauls were next brought under subjection. After them the Sue'vi, the Mena'pii, and all the nations from the Mediterranean to the British Sea. 13. Thence *stimulated* by the desire of conquest, he crossed over into Britain upon pretence that the natives had furnished his enemies with continual supplies. 14. Upon approaching the shores, he found them covered with men to oppose his landing, and his forces were in danger of being driven back, till the standard-bearer of the tenth legion boldly leaped ashore, and being well assisted by Cæsar, the natives were put to flight. 15. The Britons, being terrified at Cæsar's power, sent to desire a peace,

[1] The inhabitants of the country now called Switzerland.

[2] The Helvetians finding their country too narrow for their increased population, had determined on emigration. Being denied by Cæsar a passage through his province, hostilities commenced, which terminated as above. (Cæsar de Bel. Gal.)

[3] Inhabitants of the country between the Rhine and the Loire.

[4] Inhabitants of the modern province of Hainault.

which was granted them, and some *hostages* delivered. A storm, however, soon after destroying great part of his fleet, they resolved to take advantage of the disaster, and marched against him with a powerful army. But what could naked undisciplined troops do against forces that had been exercised under the greatest generals, and hardened by the conquest of the greatest part of the world? Being overthrown, they were obliged once more to sue for peace. Cæsar granted it, and returned to the continent.

The magnitude of Cæsar's victories, and his long connexion with the party of the commons, naturally rendered him a popular hero, and it is not improbable that some of the many statues erected to his honour belong to this period. The statue of which a representation is inserted, gives him a more juvenile appearance than he could have had at the close of the civil war. It wants the laurel crown by which at a later period he was accustomed to conceal his baldness.

16. While Cæsar was thus increasing his reputation and riches abroad, Pompey, who remained in Rome, steadily *co-operated* with his ambition, and advanced his interests, while he vainly supposed he was forwarding his own. By this means Cæsar was continued five years longer in Gaul. 17. Nor was Pompey roused from his *lethargy* till the fame of that great commander's valour, riches, and humanity began to make him suspect they would soon eclipse his own. 18. He now therefore did all in his power to diminish Cæsar's reputation; obliging the magistrates not to publish any letters they received till he had diminished the credit of them, by spreading disadvantageous reports. 19. One or two accidents also helped to widen the separation; namely, the death of Julia[1], Pompey's wife, who had

[1] She was the daughter of Cæsar.

not a little contributed to improve the harmony that subsisted between them; and the destruction of Crassus, who had conducted the war against the Parthians with so little prudence, that he suffered them to get the advantage of him in almost every *skirmish;* when, incapable of extricating himself, he fell a sacrifice to his own rashness, in trusting himself to a perfidious enemy [1].

20. Cæsar, who now began to be sensible of the jealousies of Pompey, took occasion to solicit for the consulship, together with a prolongation of his government in Gaul, desirous of trying whether Pompey would *thwart* or promote his pretensions. 21. In this Pompey seemed to be quite inactive; but, at the same time, privately employed two of his creatures, who alleged in the senate that the laws did not permit a person that was absent to offer himself as a candidate for that high office. 22. Pompey's view in this was to *allure* Cæsar from his government, in order to stand for the consulship in person. 23. Cæsar, however, perceiving his artifice, chose to remain in his province, convinced that while he headed an army devoted to him, he could give law as well as magistrates to the state.

24. The senate, which was devoted to Pompey, because he had for some time attempted to defend them from the encroachments of the people, ordered home the two legions which were in Cæsar's army belonging to Pompey, as it was pretended, to oppose the Parthians, but in reality to diminish Cæsar's power. 25. Cæsar saw their motive: but as his plans were not yet ripe for execution, he sent them home in pursuance of the orders of the senate, having previously attached the officers to him by benefits, and the soldiers by bounties. 26. The next step the senate took was to recal Cæsar from his government, as his time was very near expiring. But Curio, his friend in the senate, proposed that Cæsar should not leave his army till Pompey had set him the example. 27. This for a while perplexed Pompey; however, during the debate, one of the senate declaring that Cæsar had passed the Alps, and was marching with his whole army directly towards Rome, the consul, immediately quitting the senate, went with his col-

[1] Crassus was inveigled into the power of Surena, the Parthian general, under the pretence of treating for peace. His head was cut off and sent to Orodes, the king of Parthia, who poured molten gold down his throat.

leagues to a house where Pompey at that time resided. He there presented him with a sword, commanding him to march against Cæsar, and fight in defence of the commonwealth. 28. Pompey declared he was ready to obey; but with an air of pretended moderation, added that it was only in case more gentle *expedients* could not be employed. 29. Cæsar, who was instructed in all that passed, though he was still in Gaul, was willing to give his aims all the appearance of justice. He agreed to lay down his employment when Pompey should do the same. But the senate rejected his propositions, blindly confident of their power, and relying on the assurances of Pompey. Cæsar, still unwilling to come to an open rupture with the state, at last was content to ask the government of Illyr'ia, with two legions; but this also was refused him. 30. Finding all attempts at an accommodation fruitless, and conscious, if not of the goodness of his cause, at least of the goodness of his troops, he began to draw them down towards the *confines* of Italy; and passing the Alps with his third legion, stopped at Raven'na, whence he once more wrote to the consuls, declaring that he was ready to resign all command in case Pompey would do so. 31. On the other hand, the senate decreed, that Cæsar should lay down his government, and disband his forces within a limited time; and if he refused obedience, that he should be declared an enemy to the commonwealth.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Cæsar's first act after the Triumvirate had been formed?
2. Whom did the senate appoint as Cæsar's colleague, and why?
3. Had Bibulus any control over Cæsar?
4. How did Cæsar commence his schemes?
5. How did he farther promote his views?
6. How were the provinces allotted?
7, 8. Was Cæsar's a desirable allotment?
9. Who were the first that submitted to Cæsar's arms?
10. Who were the next?
11. Who made the most formidable resistance?
12. What other nations were subdued by Cæsar?
13. Did these conquests content him?
14. What opposition did he experience on the British coast?
15. What followed this defeat?
16. In what way were Cæsar's views promoted?
17. Did not Pompey suspect his intentions?
18. When undeceived, what measures did he pursue?

19. What contributed to widen the breach?
20. How did Cæsar ascertain the disposition of Pompey towards him?
21. Did Pompey take an active part?
22. What was Pompey's view in this?
23. Did Cæsar fall into the snare?
24. Which side did the senate favour?
25. Did Cæsar give up the legions?
26. What was the next step they took?
27. What was the consequence of this proposal?
28. Did Pompey obey this command?
29. What was Cæsar's conduct on this occasion?
30. How did he next proceed?
31. What measure did the senate adopt?

SECTION II.

But chief, oh! chiefly, thou majestic Rome!
My first, my great divinity, to whom
Thy still successful Cæsar am I come:
Nor do thou fear the sword's destructive rage,
With thee my arms no impious war shall wage;
On him thy hate, on him thy curse bestow,
Who would persuade thee Cæsar is thy foe;
And since to thee I consecrate my toil,
Oh! favour thou my cause, and on thy soldier smile.

LUCAN'S PHARSALIA, b. 1.

4. Pon'dered, *part.* considered, thought seriously.
5. Prompt'itude, *s.* readiness.
7. Supine'ness, *s.* carelessness, indolence.
   Sarcast'ically, *ad.* tauntingly, severely.
8. Bo'ding, *part.* foretelling.
10. Lieu'tenants, *s.* (pron. *liftenants*), subordinate commanders, officers second in rank.
19. Intel'ligence, *s.* information.
    Retar'd, *v.* to hinder, to keep back.
23. Men'ace, *s.* a threat.
24. Vet'eran, *s.* an old experienced soldier.
25. Joco'sely, *ad.* jestingly, good-humouredly.
26. Drought, *s.* thirst.
27. Clem'ency, *s.* mercy, kindness.

1. CÆSAR, however, seemed no way disturbed at these violent proceedings; the night before his intended expedition into Italy, he sat down to table cheerfully, conversing with his friends on subjects of literature and philosophy, and apparently disengaged from every ambitious concern. After some time, rising up, he desired the company to make themselves joyous in his absence, and that he would be with them in a moment: in the mean time, having ordered his chariot to be prepared, he immediately set out, attended by a few friends, for Arim'inum, a city upon the confines of Italy, whither he had despatched a part of his army the morning before. 2. This journey by night, which

was very fatiguing, he performed with great diligence, sometimes walking, and sometimes on horseback; till at the break of day he came up with his army, ~~which consisted of about five thousand men,~~ near the Ru'bicon, a little river which separates Italy from Gaul, and which marked the limits of his command. 3. The Romans had ever been taught to consider the river as the sacred boundary of their domestic empire. 4. Cæsar, therefore, when he advanced at the head of his army to the side of it, stopped short upon the bank, as if impressed with terror at the greatness of his enterprise. He could not pass it without transgressing the laws: he therefore *pondered* for some time in fixed melancholy, looking and debating with himself whether he should venture in. "If I pass this river," said he to one of his generals, "what miseries shall I bring upon my country! and if I now stop short, I am undone." 5. After a pause he exclaimed, "Let us go where the gods and the injustice of our enemies call us." Thus saying, and resuming all his former alacrity, he plunged in, crying out, "The die is cast." His soldiers followed him with equal *promptitude;* and having passed the Ru'bicon, quickly arrived at Arim'inum, and made themselves masters of the place without any resistance.

6. This unexpected enterprise excited the utmost terror in Rome, every one imagining that Cæsar was leading his army to lay the city in ruins. At the same time were to be seen the citizens flying into the country for safety, and the inhabitants of the country coming to seek shelter in the city. 7. In this universal confusion, Pompey felt all that repentance and self-condemnation, which must necessarily arise from the remembrance of having advanced his rival to his present pitch of power: wherever he appeared, many of his former friends were ready to tax him with his *supineness*, and *sarcastically* to reproach his ill-grounded presumption. 8. "Where is now," cried Favo'nius, a ridiculous senator of his party, "the army that is to rise at your command? let us see if it will appear by stamping[1]." Cato reminded him of the many warnings he had given him; which, however, as he was continually *boding* nothing but calamities, Pompey might very

[1] This alludes to a boasting speech made some time before by Pompey, when he told the senate not to be alarmed at the news of Cæsar's approach, for that he had only to stamp, and an army would rise at his command.

justly be excused from attending to. 9. Being at length wearied with these reproaches, which were offered under colour of advice, he did all that lay in his power to encourage and confirm his followers: he told them that they should not want an army, for that he would be their leader. He confessed, indeed, that he had all along mistaken Cæsar's aims, judging only from what they ought to have been; however, if his friends were still inspired with the love of freedom, they might yet enjoy it in whatever place their necessities should happen to conduct them. 10. He let them know that their affairs were in a very promising situation; that his two *lieutenants* were at the head of a very considerable army in Spain, composed of veteran troops that had made a conquest of the east: besides these, there were infinite resources, both in Asia and Africa, together with the succours they were sure to receive from all the kingdoms that were in alliance with Rome. 11. This speech served in some measure to revive the hopes of the confederacy. The greatest part of the senate, his private friends and dependents, with all those who expected to make their fortunes by espousing his cause, agreed to follow him. But being in no capacity to resist Cæsar at Rome, he resolved to lead his forces to Cap'ua; where the two legions that served under Cæsar in Gaul were stationed.

12. Cæsar in the mean time, after having vainly attempted to bring Pompey to an accommodation, resolved to pursue him into Cap'ua before he could collect his forces. Accordingly, he marched on to take possession of the cities that lay between him and his rival, not regarding Rome, which he knew would fall of course to the conqueror.

13. Corfin'ium[1] was the first city that attempted to stop the rapidity of his march. It was defended by Domi'tius, who had been appointed by the senate to succeed him in Gaul. Cæsar quickly invested it; and though Domi'tius sent frequently to Pompey, exhorting him to come and raise the siege, he was at length obliged to endeavour to escape privately. 14. His intentions being divulged, the garrison resolved to consult their own safety by delivering him up to the besiegers[2]. Cæsar readily accepted their

[1] Now San Ferino.

[2] Domitius, fearing the resentment of the conqueror, ordered one of his slaves, who acted as his physician, to give him a dose of poison.

offers, but kept his men from immediately entering the town. 15. After some time, Len'tulus the consul, who was one of the besieged, came out to implore forgiveness for himself and the rest of his confederates, putting Cæsar in mind of their ancient friendship, and acknowledging the many favours he had received at his hands. 16. To this Cæsar, who would not wait the conclusion of his speech, generously replied, that he came into Italy not to injure the liberties of Rome and its citizens, but to restore them. 17. This humane reply being quickly carried into the city, the senators and the knights, with their children, and some officers of the garrison, came out to claim the conqueror's protection, who just glancing at their ingratitude, gave them their liberty, with permission to go wheresoever they should think proper. 18. But while he dismissed the leaders, he took care upon this, as upon all other occasions, to attach the common soldiers to his interest, sensible that he might stand in need of the army; but that while he lived, the army could never stand in need of a commander.

19. Pompey, who was unable to continue in Rome, having *intelligence* of what had passed upon this occasion, retreated to Brundu'sium, where he resolved to stand a siege, in order to *retard* the enemy, until the forces of the empire should be united to oppose him. 20. His aim in this succeeded to his wish; and after having employed Cæsar for some time in a fruitless siege, he privately carried his forces over to Dyrrach'ium[2], where the consul had levied a body of troops for his assistance. 21. However, though he made good his escape, he was compelled to leave all Italy at the mercy of his rival, without a town or an army that had strength to oppose his progress.

22. Cæsar, who could not follow Pompey for want of

On experiencing the clemency of Cæsar, he regretted his rashness, but was relieved from his uneasiness by the confession of the slave, that he had merely given him a sleeping draught. (Plutarch.)

[1] A town of Cala'bria, with an excellent harbour. (Strabo.) It is now called Brin'disi.

[2] Dyrrach'ium, a town on the coast of Illyr'icum, originally called Epidam'nus; but that being an inauspicious name, it was changed by the Romans to Dyrrach'ium. (Pliny.)—The port of this town answered to that of Brundu'sium, and the passage between both was very ready and expeditious. It was a place of great trade. The people were first called Epidam'nii; afterwards Dyrrachi'ni. (Cicero, Livy.)

shipping, went back to Rome, to take possession of the public treasures, which his opponent, by a most unaccountable oversight, had neglected to take with him. 23. Upon his coming up to the door of the treasury, Metel'lus, the tribune, who guarded it, refused to let him pass; but Cæsar, with emotion, laying his hand upon his sword, threatened to strike him dead: "Know, young man," cried he, "it is easier to do this than say it." This *menace* had its effect; Metel'lus retired, and Cæsar took out of the treasury three hundred thousand pounds weight of gold, and an immense quantity of silver.

24. Having thus provided for continuing the war, he departed from Rome, resolved to subdue Pompey's lieutenants, Afra'nius and Petrei'us, who had been long in Spain at the head of a *veteran* army, which had ever been victorious. 25. Cæsar, however, who knew the abilities of its present commanders, *jocosely* said, as he was preparing to march, "I am going to fight an army without a general, and return to fight a general without an army."

26. The first conflict which he had with Afra'nius and Petrei'us was rather unfavourable. It was fought near the city of Ilerda[1], and both sides claimed the honour of the victory. But, by various stratagems, he reduced them at last to such extremities of hunger and *drought*, that they were obliged to yield at discretion. 27. *Clemency* was his favourite virtue: he dismissed them all with the kindest professions, and then sent them home to Rome loaded with shame, and with obligations to publish his virtues, and confirm the affections of his adherents. 28. Thus in the space of about forty days he became master of Spain, and returned again victorious to Rome. The citizens on this occasion received him with fresh demonstrations of joy, and created him dictator and consul. But the first of these offices he laid down when he had held it eleven days.

Questions for Examination.

1. How did Cæsar conduct himself on the night previous to his intended journey to Italy?
2. Did he accomplish his journey in safety?

[1] Now Lerida, in Catalonia.

3. What rendered this little river of consequence?
4. Did Cæsar pass it without hesitation?
5. How did he determine?
6. What effect was produced at Rome by this enterprise?
7. How was Pompey affected by it?
8. What taunting expressions were used on this occasion?
9. What was Pompey's conduct in reply?
10. How did he represent the state of affairs?
11. What was the consequence of this statement?
12. How was Cæsar employed in the mean while?
13. What city first arrested his progress?
14. Did he succeed in his endeavour?
15. What attempt was made to incline Cæsar to mercy?
16. What was Cæsar's reply?
17. What was the consequence of this reply?
18. Did he dismiss the soldiers likewise?
19. Whither did Pompey retreat, and with what view?
20. Did he succeed in his aims?
21. What was the consequence of his retreat?
22. Did Cæsar follow Pompey?
23. Was he opposed in his attempt?
24. What was his next enterprise?
25. What was Cæsar's opinion of these commanders?
26. Were they easily conquered?
27. What use did he make of his victory?
28. What was the duration of this campaign, and what were its consequences?

SECTION III.

O war!—what art thou,
At once the proof and scourge of man's fall'n state!
After the brightest conquest, what appears
Of all thy glories? for the vanquish'd, chains!
For the proud victors, what? Alas! to reign
O'er desolated nations! H. More.

2. Effect'ive, *a.* fit for service, complete.
3. Equiv'alent, *a.* equal in value.
5. O'verture, *s.* proposal, offer.
6. Ammuni'tion, *s.* military stores. Depos'ited, *part.* laid up.
12. Intren'ch, *v.* to fortify by digging a ditch or trench.
13. Redoubts, *s.* the outworks of a fortification, fortresses.
14. Annoy', *v.* to injure.
16. Indefat'igable, *a.* unwearied.
18. Reit'erated, *part.* repeated.
20. Precipita'tion, *s.* headlong haste.
21. Ambusca'de, *s.* a private station in which men lie to surprise others.
22. Deci'sive, *a.* final, conclusive; that settles a matter in dispute.
23. Sca'ling, *part.* mounting the wall.

1. While Cæsar was thus employed, Pompey was active in making preparations in Epi'rus[1] and Greece to oppose

[1] Epirus, a district of North Greece Proper, and constituting part of what was called the Grecian Empire. The Romans reduced Epirus to a wilderness, because of the obstinate and frequent revolts of the people. It was famous for its large breed of cattle, (Homer, Virgil, and Ovid;) and also for its fertility, (Homer.)

him. 2. All the monarchs of the East had declared in his favour, and sent very large supplies. He was master of nine *effective* Italian legions, and had a fleet of five hundred large ships, under the conduct of Bib'ulus, an active and experienced commander. Added to these, he was supplied with large sums of money, and all the necessaries for an army, from the tributary provinces round him. 3. He had attacked Antony and Dolabel'la, who commanded for Cæsar in that part of the empire, with such success, that the former was obliged to fly, and the latter was taken prisoner. Crowds of the most distinguished citizens and nobles from Rome came every day to join him. He had at one time above two hundred senators in his camp, among whom were Ci'cero and Ca'to, whose approbation of his cause was deemed *equivalent* to an army.

4. Notwithstanding these preparations, Cæsar shipped off five of his twelve legions at Brundu'sium, and fortunately steered through the midst of his enemies, timing it so well, that he made his passage in one day. 5. Still, however, convinced that the proper time for making proposals for a peace, was after gaining advantage, he sent one Ru'fus, whom he had taken prisoner, to effect an accommodation with Pompey, offering to refer all to the senate and people of Rome; but Pompey once more rejected the *overture*, considering the people of Rome too much in Cæsar's interest to be relied on.

6. Pompey had been raising supplies in Macedo'nia when he was first informed of Cæsar's landing upon the coast of Epi'rus: he now resolved immediately to march to Dyrrach'ium, in order to cover that place from Cæsar's attempts, as all his *ammunition* and provisions were *deposited* there. 7. The first place where both armies came in sight of each other was on the opposite banks of the river Ap'sus; and as both were commanded by the two greatest generals then in the world; the one renowned for his conquests in the East, the other celebrated for his victories over the western parts of the empire, a battle was eagerly desired by the soldiers on either side. 8. But neither of the generals were willing to hazard it upon this occasion; Pompey could not rely upon his new levies; and Cæsar would not venture an engagement till he was joined by the rest of his forces.

9. Cæsar had waited some time with extreme impatience for the coming up of the remainder of his army; and even

ventured alone in an open fishing-boat to hasten its arrival, but he was driven back by a storm [1]. 10. However, his disappointment was soon relieved, by information of the landing of the troops at Apollo'nia [2]; he, therefore, decamped in order to meet them; and to prevent Pompey, with his army, from engaging them on their march, as he lay on that side of the river where the succours had been obliged to come on shore.

11. Pompey being compelled to retreat, led his forces to Aspara'gium [3], where he was sure of being supplied with every thing necessary for his army, by the numerous fleets which he employed along the coasts of Epi'rus: there he pitched his camp upon a tongue of land (as mariners express it) that jutted into the sea, where also was a small shelter for his ships. 12. In this place, being most advantageously situated, he began immediately to *intrench* his camp; which Cæsar perceiving, and finding that he was not likely soon to quit so advantageous a post, began also to intrench behind him. 13. As all beyond Pompey's camp, towards the land side, was hilly and steep, Cæsar built *redoubts* upon the hills, stretching from shore to shore; and then caused lines of communication to be drawn from hill to hill, by which he blocked up the camp of the enemy [4]. 14. He hoped by this blockade to force his opponent to a battle, which he ardently desired, and which the other with equal industry declined. Thus both sides continued for some time employed in designs and stratagems, the one to *annoy*, and the other to defend. 15. Cæsar's men daily carried on their works to straiten the enemy; those of Pompey, having the advantage of numbers, did the same to enlarge themselves, and severely galled the enemy by their slingers and archers. 16. Cæsar, however, was *indefatigable*; he caused blinds or mantelets to be made of the skins of beasts, to cover his men while

[1] It was on this occasion that he encouraged the master of the vessel, to whom he had not before made himself known, with these memorable words—"Fear nothing, for thou carriest Cæsar and all his fortunes."

[2] There were no less than fifteen towns of this name, but the one here mentioned was situated on the Adriatic, on the coast of Illyricum. It was famous for its learning. Its inhabitants were called Apolloniates. (Cicero, Livy, Cæsar.) It was here that Augustus was sent by his great uncle Cæsar, for his education.

[3] A small town and citadel in Greek Illyricum, not far from Apollonia. (Cæsar.)

[4] These lines extended upwards of eighteen miles.

at work; he cut off all the water that supplied the enemy's camp, and the forage from the horses; so that there remained no more subsistence for them. 17. But Pompey at last resolved to break through his lines, and gain some other part of the country more convenient for encampment. Accordingly, having informed himself of the condition of Cæsar's fortifications from some deserters who came over to him, he ordered the light infantry and archers on board his ships to attack Cæsar's intrenchments by sea, where they were least defended. 18. This was done with such effect, that though Cæsar and his officers used their utmost endeavours to hinder Pompey's designs, yet by means of *reiterated* attempts he at last effected his purpose of extricating his army from its present camp, and of encamping in another place by the sea, where he had the convenience both of forage and shipping. 19. Cæsar being thus frustrated in his views of blocking up the enemy, and perceiving the loss he had sustained, resolved at last to force Pompey to a battle, though upon disadvantageous terms. 20. The engagement began by attempting to cut off a legion which was posted in a wood; and this brought on a general battle. The conflict was for some time carried on with great ardour and with equal fortune; but Cæsar's army, being entangled in the intrenchments of the old camps lately abandoned, began to fall into disorder; upon which Pompey pressing his advantage, they at last fled with *precipitation*. Great numbers perished in the trenches and on the banks of the river, or were pressed to death by their fellows. 21. Pompey pursued his success to the very camp of Cæsar; but either from surprise, under the suddenness of his victory, or fearful of an *ambuscade*, he withdrew his troops into his own camp, and thus lost an opportunity of completing his victory.

22. After this defeat, which was by no means *decisive*, Cæsar marched, with all his forces united into one body, directly to Gom'phi, a town in the province of Thes'saly. But the news of his defeat at Dyrrach'ium had reached this place before him; the inhabitants, therefore, who had before promised him obedience, now changed their minds; and with a degree of baseness equal to their imprudence, shut their gates against him. 23. Cæsar was not to be injured with impunity. Having represented to his soldiers the great advantage of forcing a place so very rich, he ordered the *scaling* ladders to be got ready; and causing

an assault to be made, proceeded with such vigour that notwithstanding the height of the walls, the town was taken in a few hours. 24. Cæsar left it to be plundered, and without delaying his march, went forward to Metrop'olis, another town of the same province, which yielded at his approach. By this means he soon became possessed of all Thes'saly, except Laris'sa[1], which was garrisoned by Scip'io with his legion, who commanded for Pompey. 25. During this interval, Pompey's officers continually soliciting their commander to come to a battle, he, at length, resolved to renounce his own judgment, in compliance with those about him; and gave up all schemes of prudence for those dictated by avarice and passion. 26. Advancing, therefore, into Thes'saly, within a few days after the taking of Gom'phi, he drew down upon the plains of Pharsa'lia, where he was joined by Scip'io his lieutenant, and the troops under his command. There, waiting the coming of Cæsar, he resolved to engage, and by a single battle decide the fate of kingdoms.

Questions for Examination.

1. How was Pompey engaged at this time?
2. What advantages did he possess?
3. What farther contributed to give him hopes of success?
4. Was Cæsar discouraged by these formidable preparations?
5. Was he resolutely bent on hostilities?
6. What was Pompey's first measure?
7. Where did the armies come in sight of each other?
8. Was an immediate engagement the consequence?
9. Was this junction soon effected?
10. What was the consequence?
11. What was Pompey's next measure?
12. Did he remain long in this place?
13. What means did Cæsar adopt to distress the enemy?
14. What did he promise himself from the adoption of this plan?
15. How were both armies employed?
16. What was the conduct of Cæsar on this occasion?
17. How did Pompey frustrate his designs?
18. Was he successful in his attempts?
19. What was Cæsar's resolution on this occasion?
20. By what means did he effect this?
21. Did Pompey make the most of his victory?
22. Whither did Cæsar betake himself, and what was the consequence of his defeat?

[1] This city still exists, and bears the same name.

23. Did he quietly submit to this insult?
24. What revenge did he take?
25. How did Pompey act on this occasion?
26. Where was this great contest about to be decided?

SECTION IV.

Scarce had he spoke, when sudden at the word
They seize the lance, and draw the shining sword;
At once the turfy fences all lie waste,
And through the breach the crowding legions haste;
Regardless all of order and array
They stand, and trust to fate alone the day.
Each had proposed an empire to be won,
Had each once known a Pompey for his son;
Had Cæsar's soul inform'd each private breast,
A fiercer fury could not be express'd.

LUCAN'S PHARSALIA, b. 7.

7. Struck, *v.* taken down.
13. Re'cent, *a.* late, not long passed.
Detesta'tion, *s.* abhorrence.
14. Seren'ity, *s.* calmness, placidity.
15. Invin'cible, *a.* not to be conquered.
18. Co'horts, *s.* troops of soldiers, containing about five hundred men.
Reinfo'rcement, *s.* an accession of strength.
23. Auxil'iaries, *s.* helpers, assistants.

1. CÆSAR had employed all his art for some time in sounding the inclinations of his men; and finding his army once more resolute and vigorous, he advanced towards the plains of Pharsa'lia, where Pompey was encamped.

2. The approach of two armies, composed of the best and bravest troops in the world, together with the greatness of the prize for which they contended, filled every mind with anxiety, though with different expectations.
3. Pompey's army, being most numerous, turned all their thoughts to the enjoyment of the victory[1]; Cæsar's considered only the means of obtaining it; Pompey's army depended upon their numbers, and their many generals; Cæsar's upon their discipline, and the conduct of their single commander. 4. Pompey's partisans hoped much from the justice of their cause; Cæsar's alleged the frequent proposals which they had made for peace without effect. Thus the views, hopes, and motives of both seemed different, whilst their hatred and ambition were the same.
5. Cæsar, who was ever foremost in offering battle, led out

[1] So confident were they of success, that Domitius, Spinther, and Scipio, contended which should succeed Cæsar as Pontifex Maximus; others sent to Rome to hire such houses as were suitable to the office they expected to enjoy after the victory. (Appian, Plutarch.)

his army to meet the enemy; but Pompey, either suspecting his troops, or dreading the event, kept his advantageous situation at the foot of the hill near which he was posted. 6. Cæsar, unwilling to attack him at a disadvantage, resolved to decamp the next day, hoping to weary out his antagonist, who was not a match for him in sustaining the fatigues of duty. 7. Accordingly the order for marching was given, and the tents were *struck*, when word was brought him, that Pompey's army had now quitted their intrenchments, and advanced farther into the plain than usual, so that he might engage them at less disadvantage[1]. 8. Upon this he caused his troops to halt, and with a countenance of joy, informed them that the happy time was at last come, which they had so long wished for, and which was to crown their glory and terminate their fatigues. He then drew up his troops in order, and advanced towards the place of battle. 9. His forces did not amount to above half those of Pompey; the army of the one was about forty-five thousand foot, and seven thousand horse; that of the other not exceeding twenty-two thousand foot, and about a thousand horse. 10. This disproportion, particularly in the cavalry, had filled Cæsar with apprehensions; he therefore had some days before picked out the strongest and nimblest of his foot soldiers, and accustomed them to fight between the ranks of his cavalry. By their assistance his thousand horse was a match for Pompey's seven thousand, and had actually got the better in a skirmish that happened between them some days before.

11. Pompey, on the other hand, had a strong expectation of success; he boasted that he could put Cæsar's legions to flight, without striking a single blow; presuming that as soon as the armies formed, his cavalry, on which he placed his greatest expectations, would outflank and surround the enemy. In this disposition Pompey led his troops to battle. 12. As the armies approached, the two generals went from rank to rank, encouraging their men, exciting their hopes, and lessening their apprehensions. 13. Pompey represented to his men that the glorious occasion which they had long besought him to grant was now before them. "What advantages," said he, "could you wish, that you are not now possessed of? Your num-

[1] Pompey was in some measure compelled to hazard a battle, contrary to his judgment, by the ardour of his troops.

bers, your vigour, a late victory, all assure us of a speedy and an easy conquest of those harassed and broken troops, composed of men worn out with age, and impressed with the terrors of a *recent* defeat; but there is still a stronger bulwark for our protection than the superiority of our strength; and that is, the justice of our cause. You are engaged in the defence of liberty and of your country! you are supported by its laws, and followed by its magistrates; the world are spectators of your conduct, and wish you success: on the contrary, he whom you oppose is a robber, an oppressor of his country, already nearly sunk with the consciousness of his crimes, as well as the ill success of his arms. Show then, on this occasion, all that ardour and *detestation* of tyranny, which should animate Romans, and do justice to mankind."

14. Cæsar, on his part, went among his men with that steady *serenity* for which he was so much admired in the midst of danger. He insisted on nothing so strongly as his frequent and unsuccessful endeavours for peace. He spoke with terror of the blood he was about to shed, and pleaded the necessity that urged him to it. He deplored the many brave men that were to fall on both sides, and the wounds of his country, whoever might be victorious. 15. His soldiers answered only with looks of ardour and impatience. He gave the signal to begin. The word on Pompey's side was, "Her'cules the *invincible*;" that on Cæsar's, "Ve'nus the victorious." 16. There was no more space between both armies than to give room for the charge; Pompey therefore ordered his men to receive the first shock without moving from their places, expecting the enemy's ranks to be put into disorder. Cæsar's soldiers were now rushing on with their usual impetuosity, when perceiving the enemy motionless, they all stopped short, as if by general consent, and halted in the midst of their career. 17. A terrible pause ensued, in which both armies continued to gaze upon each other with mutual terror and dreadful serenity. At length Cæsar's men, having taken breath, ran furiously upon the enemy, first discharging their javelins, and then drawing their swords. The same method was observed by Pompey's troops, who as firmly sustained the attack. His cavalry also were ordered to charge at the very onset, which with the multitude of archers and slingers soon obliged Cæsar's men to give ground. 18. Cæsar instantly ordered the six *cohorts*, that

were placed as a *reinforcement*, to advance, and to strike at the enemy's faces. 19. This had its desired effect: Pompey's cavalry, that were just before sure of the victory, received an immediate check. The unusual method of fighting pursued by the cohorts, their aiming entirely at the visages of the assailants, and the horrible disfiguring wounds they made, all contributed to intimidate them so much, that instead of defending their persons, they endeavoured only to save their faces [1]. 20. A total rout ensued; they fled to the neighbouring mountains, while the archers and slingers, who were thus abandoned, were cut to pieces. 21. Cæsar now commanded the cohorts to pursue their success, and charge Pompey's troops upon the flank: this charge the enemy withstood for some time with great bravery, till Cæsar brought up his third line, which had not yet engaged. 22. Pompey's infantry being thus doubly attacked, in front by fresh troops, and in the rear by the victorious cohorts, could no longer resist, but fled to their camp. The flight began among the strangers. Pompey's right wing still valiantly maintained their ground. 23. Cæsar, however, convinced that the victory was certain, with his usual clemency cried out to pursue the strangers, but to spare the Romans; upon which they all laid down their arms and received quarter. The greatest slaughter was among the *auxiliaries*, who fled on all sides. 24. The battle had now lasted from break of day till noon, and the weather was extremely hot; nevertheless, the conquerors remitted not their ardour, being encouraged by the example of a general, who thought his victory incomplete till he should become master of the enemy's camp. Accordingly, marching on foot at their head, he called upon them to follow and strike the decisive blow. 25. The cohorts which were left to defend the camp for some time made a formidable resistance: particularly a great number of Thra'cians and other barbarians, who were appointed for that purpose; but nothing could resist the ardour of Cæsar's victorious army; the enemy were at last driven from the trenches, and compelled to fly to the mountains.

[1] Cæsar calls the young patricians that composed Pompey's cavalry *pretty young dancers*.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the state of Cæsar's army immediately before the battle of Pharsalia?
2. What effect had the approaching event on the minds of men?
3. What were the respective advantages of each army?
4. On what did they principally build their hopes?
5. Who was the first to offer battle?
6. How did Cæsar act on this occasion?
7. What followed?
8. What effect had this intelligence on Cæsar's plan?
9. Of what number of troops were each of the armies composed?
10. What did Cæsar consider necessary to be done to remedy this disproportion?
11. What were Pompey's expectations and boasts?
12. What was the conduct of the generals?
13. Repeat Pompey's address to his troops.
14. How did Cæsar encourage his men?
15. What effect had this speech, and what was the word on both sides?
16. In what manner did the attack commence?
17. Describe the progress of the battle.
18. What means did Cæsar adopt to prevent a defeat?
19. Was this measure successful?
20. What was the consequence?
21. What were Cæsar's farther commands?
22. What followed?
23. What use did Cæsar make of his victory?
24. Did not fatigue abate the ardour of Cæsar's troops
25. Did they attempt to defend their camp?

SECTION V.

While thus united Cæsar's arms appear,
And fortune draws the great decision near;
Sad Pompey's soul uneasy thoughts infest,
And his Cornelia pains his anxious breast.
To distant Lesbos [1] fain he would remove,
Far from the war, the partner of his love.

LUCAN'S PHARSALIA, b. 5.

2. Ban'quet, *s.* a feast.
4. Unten'able, *a.* not to be defended or kept.
5. Intercept'ed, *v.* cut off.
6. Inces'sant, *a.* unceasing.
9. Neu'tral, *a.* indifferent, not engaged on either side.
19. Mi'nor, *s.* a person under age.
20. Insid'iously, *ad.* craftily, deceitfully.
23. Contempt'uous, *a.* scornful, proud, insolent.
25. Inevit'able, *a.* not to be escaped.
27. Embalm'ed, *part.* preserved with spices, &c.
30. Rites, *s.* religious ceremonies.

1. CÆSAR, seeing the field and camp strewed with his

[1] Lesbos was one of the principal islands in the Archipelago, on the coast of Asia. It was greatly favoured by Pompey, and after it had suffered in the Mithridatic war, restored by him to a qualified independence. It is now called Metelin, from Mitylene, its ancient capital.

fallen countrymen, was strongly affected at the melancholy prospect, and cried out to one that stood near him, "They would have it so." 2. In the camp every object presented fresh instances of the blind presumption and madness of his adversaries. On all sides were to be seen tents adorned with ivy and myrtle, couches covered with purple, and side-boards loaded with plate. Every thing gave proofs of the highest luxury, and seemed rather the preparatives for a *banquet*, or the rejoicings for a victory, than dispositions for a battle. 3. A camp so richly furnished would have engaged the attention of any troops but Cæsar's; but there was still something to be done, and he permitted them not to pursue any other object than their enemies. 4. A considerable body having retired to the adjacent mountains, he prevailed on his soldiers to join him in the pursuit in order to oblige these to surrender. He began by enclosing them with a line drawn at the foot of the mountain; but they quickly abandoned a post which was *untenable* for want of water, and endeavoured to reach the city of Laris'sa. 5. Cæsar, leading a part of his army by a shorter way, *intercepted* their retreat. However, these unhappy fugitives again found protection from a mountain, at the foot of which ran a rivulet that supplied them with water. 6. Night approaching, Cæsar's men were almost spent, and fainting with their *incessant* toil since morning; yet still he prevailed upon them to renew their labours, and cut off the rivulet that supplied the defendants. 7. The fugitives, thus deprived of all hopes of succour or subsistence, sent deputies to the conqueror, offering to surrender at discretion. During this interval of negotiation, a few senators that were among them took the advantage of the night to escape, and the rest, next morning, gave up their arms and experienced the conqueror's clemency. In fact, he addressed them with great gentleness, and forbade the soldiers to offer violence, or to take any thing from them. 8. Thus Cæsar gained the most complete victory that had ever been obtained; and by his great clemency after the battle, seemed to have deserved it. His loss amounted only to two hundred men; that of Pompey to fifteen thousand, twenty-four thousand men surrendered themselves prisoners of war, and the greatest part of these entered into Cæsar's army, and were incorporated with the rest of his forces.

9. To the senators and Roman knights, who fell into his hands, he generously gave liberty to retire wherever they thought proper; and as for the letters which Pompey had received from those who wished to be thought *neutral*, Cæsar burnt them all without reading, as Pompey had done on a former occasion. 10. Thus having performed all the duties of a general and a statesman, he sent for the legions which had passed the night in camp, to relieve those which had accompanied him in the pursuit, and arrived the same day at Laris'sa.

11. As for Pompey, who had formerly shown such instances of courage and conduct, when he saw his cavalry routed, on which he had placed his sole dependence, he absolutely lost his reason. 12. Instead of thinking how to remedy this disorder by rallying such troops as fled, or by opposing fresh troops to stop the progress of the conqueror, being totally amazed by this first blow, he returned to the camp, and in his tent waited the issue of an event, which it was his duty to have directed, not to follow: there he remained for some moments speechless, till being told that the camp was attacked, "What!" says he, "are we pursued to our very intrenchments?" when, immediately quitting his armour for a habit more suited to his circumstances, he fled on horseback to Laris'sa; thence, perceiving that he was not pursued, he slackened his pace, giving way to all the agonizing reflections which his deplorable situation must naturally suggest. 13. In this melancholy manner he passed along the vale of Tempe[1], and pursuing the course of the river Pe'neus, at last arrived at a fisherman's hut; here he passed the night, and then went on board a little bark, keeping along the sea-shore, till he descried a ship of some burden, which seemed preparing to sail. In this he embarked; the master of the vessel still paying him that homage which was due to his former station.

14. From the mouth of the river Peneus he sailed to Amphip'olis[2], where finding his affairs desperate, he steered to Lesbos[3], to take with him his wife Corne'lia, whom he had left there, at a distance from the dangers

[1] A pleasant valley in Thes'saly.

[2] An ancient city of Macedo'nia, now called Chisop'oli.

[3] Lesbos, an island of Greece, in the Archipelago, famous for its fertility. (Ta'citus). This island gave birth to Sap'pho, the poetess, and several eminent men.

and distresses of war. 15. She, who had long flattered herself with the hopes of victory, now felt the agonizing reverse of fortune: she was desired by the messenger, whose tears more than his words proclaimed her unspeakable misfortunes, to hasten away if she expected to see Pompey, who had but one ship, and even that not his own. 16. Her grief, which before was violent, became now insupportable: she fainted, and lay without signs of life. At length recovering, and reflecting that it was no time for vain lamentations, she fled through the city to the seaside.

17. Pompey received and embraced her, and in silent despair supported her in his arms. "Alas!" said Corne'lia, "you, who, before our marriage, appeared in these seas as the commander of five hundred sail, are now reduced to make your escape in a single vessel. Why come you in search of an unfortunate woman? Why was I not left to a fate which now you are under the necessity of sharing with me? Happy for me had I executed, long since, my design of quitting this life! But fatally have I been reserved to add to Pompey's sorrows."

18. Pompey instanced the uncertainty of all human affairs, and endeavoured by every argument to give her comfort; then, taking her under his protection, he continued his course, stopping no longer than was necessary for a supply of provisions at the ports that occurred in his passage. 19. He now determined upon applying to Ptol'emy, king of Egypt, to whose father he had been a considerable benefactor. Ptol'emy was yet a *minor*, and had not the government in his own hands, but was under the direction of an administration. 20. His council *insidiously* contrived that Pompey should be invited on shore, and murdered before he should come into the king's presence [1]. Achil'las, commander of the forces, and Septim'ius, a Roman, who had formerly been a centurion in Pompey's army, undertook to carry the treacherous design into execution. Attended by three or four more, they put off in a little bark, and rowed to Pompey's ship, that lay about a mile from the shore.

21. Pompey now took leave of Corne'lia, repeating to

[1] This was by the advice of Theod'otus, preceptor to the young king "If we receive him," said he, "we shall make Cæsar our enemy, and Pompey our master: if we dismiss him, we render ourselves obnoxious to Pompey by our inhospitality, and to Cæsar for letting him escape.'

her a verse of Soph'ocles, signifying, that "he who trusts his freedom to a tyrant, from that moment becomes a slave." He then gave his hand to Achil'las, and, with only two of his own attendants, stepped into the bark. 22. The frantic Corne'lia hung over the side of the deck, weeping and exclaiming against his separation from her. "Alas!" said she, "whither art thou going?"—

> He spoke! but she, unmoved at his commands,
> Thus loud exclaiming, stretch'd her eager hands;
> "Whither, inhuman! whither art thou gone?
> Still must I weep our common griefs alone?"
>
> ROWE'S LUCAN.

In wild astonishment she followed him with her eyes, and uttering to the winds her fruitless lamentations.

23. The mariners, regardless of her sorrows, rowed towards land, without a word passing among them, till Pompey, by way of breaking silence, looking at Septim'ius, whose face he recollected, "Methinks, friend," said he, "you once served under me." Septim'ius noticing these words only by a *contemptuous* nod of the head, Pompey betook himself to a paper, on which he had minuted a speech intended to be made to the king, and began reading it. In this manner they approached the shore; whilst Corne'lia, whose insufferable sorrow had never let her lose sight of her husband, began to conceive hopes, perceiving that the people on the strand crowded down along the coast as if eager to receive him. 24. Alas! these hopes were soon destroyed. At the instant that Pompey rose, supporting himself upon his freedman's arm, Septim'ius stabbed him in the back, and Achil'las instantly seconded the blow. 25. Pompey, perceiving his death *inevitable*, calmly disposed himself to meet it with decency; and covering his face with his robe, without a word resigned himself to his fate. 26. At this horrid sight, Corne'lia and her attendants shrieked, so as to be heard to the very shore. But the danger they were in allowing no time to look on, they immediately set sail, and, the wind proving favourable, fortunately escaped the pursuit of the Egyptian galleys. 27. In the mean time, Pompey's murderers, having taken off his head, *embalmed* it for a present to Cæsar, whilst the body was thrown naked on the strand, and exposed to the view of those whose curiosity was to be satisfied. 28. But his faithful freedman Phili still kept near it: and when the crowd dispersed, he

in any republic that had given him birth. 2. Having now gained a most complete victory, his success seemed only to increase his activity, and inspire him with fresh resolution to face new dangers. He determined, therefore, to pursue his last advantage, and follow Pompey to whatever country he had retired; convinced that, though he might gain new triumphs, he should never enjoy security until his rival was in his power.

3. Accordingly, losing no time, he set sail for Egypt, and arrived at Alexan'dria[1] with about four thousand men: a very *inconsiderable* force to keep so powerful a kingdom under subjection. 4. The first accounts he received were of Pompey's miserable end; and soon after one of the murderers came with his head and his ring, as a most *grateful* present to the conqueror. 5. But Cæsar had too much humanity to be pleased with so horrid a spectacle; with the sad remains of the man he once loved, his partner in power. He turned from it with disgust; and, after a short pause, gave vent to his pity in a flood of tears. He ordered the head to be burned with the most costly perfumes, and placed the ashes in a temple, which he built and dedicated to the goddess Nem'esis, the avenger of cruel and inhuman deeds.

6. It should seem that the Egyptians by this time had some hopes of breaking off all alliance with the Romans; which they considered, as in fact it was, only another name for subjection. They first took offence at Cæsar's carrying the ensigns of Roman power before him as he entered the city[2]. Photi'nus also treated him with great disrespect, and even attempted his life. 7. Cæsar, however, concealed his resentment till he had a force sufficient to punish his treachery; sending therefore privately for the legions which he had formerly enrolled for Pompey's service, as being the nearest to Egypt, he, in the mean time, pretended to repose an entire confidence in the king's ministers, making great entertainments, and assisting at the conferences of the philosophers, who were numerous at Alexan'dria. 8. However, he soon changed his

[1] This is the usual pronunciation, though Walker accents the word Alexandri'a.

[2] The principal cause of quarrel was this. Ptol'emy Aule'tes had engaged Cæsar, during the first consulate, by a promise of ten thousand talents, to get him acknowledged as a friend and ally of the Roman republic; part only of this sum had been paid, and Cæsar now exacted the remainder with great rigour.

manner, when he found himself in no danger from the minister's attempts: and declared, that being a Roman consul, it was his duty to settle the succession of the Egyptian crown.

9. There were at that time two pretenders to the crown of Egypt; Ptol'emy, the acknowledged king, and the celebrated Cleopa'tra, his sister, to whom, by the custom of the country, he was married; and who, by his father's will, shared jointly in the succession. 10. Not contented with the participation of power, Cleopa'tra aimed at governing alone; but being opposed in her views by the Roman senate, who confirmed her brother's title to the crown, she was banished into Sy'ria, with Arsin'oe her younger sister. 11. Cæsar gave her new hopes of aspiring to the kingdom, and sent both to her and her brother, to plead their cause before him. But Photi'nus, the young king's guardian, disdaining to accept this proposal, backed his refusal by sending an army of twenty thousand men to besiege him, in Alexan'dria. 12. Cæsar bravely repulsed the enemy; but finding the city of too great extent to be defended by so small an army as his, he retired to the palace, which commanded the harbour, and there purposed to make his stand. 13. Achil'las, who commanded the Egyptians, attacked him with great vigour, and aimed at making himself master of the fleet that lay before the palace. 14. Cæsar, however, too well knew the importance of those ships in the hands of an enemy; and therefore burnt them all, in spite of every effort to prevent him. He next possessed himself of the isle of Pha'ros, by which he was enabled to receive supplies: and in this situation, determined to withstand the united force of the Egyptians [1].

15. In the mean time Cleopa'tra having heard of the present turn in her favour, resolved to depend on Cæsar's patronage for gaining the government, rather than on her own forces. But no arts, as she justly conceived, were so likely to influence Cæsar, as the charms of her person, which were irresistible. 16. She was now in the bloom of youth and beauty, while every feature borrowed grace from the lively turn of her temper. To the most enchanting address she joined the most harmonious voice. With

[1] In this contest the famous Alexan'drian library, consisting, it is said, of 700,000 volumes, was accidentally burnt.

all these accomplishments, she possessed a great share of the learning of the times, and could give audience to the ambassadors of seven different nations, without an *interpreter*. 17. The difficulty was, how to gain admission to Cæsar, as her enemies were in possession of all the *avenues* that led to the palace. For this purpose she went on board a small vessel, and, in the evening, landed near the palace: where, being wrapped up in a coverlet, she was carried as a bundle of clothes into the very chamber of Cæsar. 18. Her address instantly struck him; her wit and understanding fanned the flame; but her caresses, which were carried beyond the bounds of innocence, entirely brought him over to second her claims.

19. While Cleopa'tra was thus employed in forwarding her own views, her sister Arsin'oe was also strenuously engaged in the camp, in pursuing a separate interest. She had found means, by the assistance of one Gan'ymede, her confidant, to make a large division in the Egyptian army in her favour; and, soon after, by one of those sudden revolutions, which are common in barbarian camps to this day, she caused Achil'las to be murdered, and Gan'ymede to take the command in his stead, and to carry on the siege with greater vigour than before. 20. Gan'ymede's principal effort was by letting the sea upon those canals which supplied the palace with fresh water; but this inconvenience Cæsar remedied by digging a great number of wells. His next endeavour was to prevent the *junction* of Cæsar's twenty-fourth legion, which he twice attempted in vain. He soon after made himself master of a bridge which joined the isle of Pha'ros to the continent, from which post Cæsar was resolved to dislodge him. 21. In the heat of the action some mariners, partly through curiosity, and partly through ambition, came and joined the combatants; but, being seized with a *panic*, instantly fled, and spread a general terror through the army. All Cæsar's endeavours to rally his forces were in vain, the confusion was past remedy, and numbers were drowned or put to the sword in attempting to escape. 22. Now, therefore, seeing the *irremediable* disorder of his troops, he fled to a ship, in order to get to the palace that was just opposite; but he was no sooner on board, than such crowds entered after him, that being apprehensive of the ship's sinking, he jumped into the sea, and swam two hundred paces to the fleet which lay before the palace, all the time

holding his *Commentaries* in his left hand above the water, and his coat of mail in his teeth.

23. The Alexandrians, finding their efforts to take the palace *ineffectual*, endeavoured at least to get their king out of Cæsar's power, as he had seized upon his person in the beginning of their disputes. For this purpose they made use of their customary arts of dissimulation, professing the utmost desire of peace, and only wanting the presence of their lawful prince to give a sanction to the treaty. 24. Cæsar was sensible of their perfidy, but concealed his suspicions, and gave them their king, as he was under no apprehensions from the abilities of a boy. Ptol'emy, however, the instant he was set at liberty, instead of promoting the peace, made every effort to give vigour to his hostilities.

25. In this manner was Cæsar hemmed in for some time by an artful and insidious enemy, and surrounded with almost insurmountable difficulties; but he was at last relieved from this mortifying situation by Mithrida'tes Pergame'nus, one of his most faithful partisans, who came with an army to his assistance. This general marched into Egypt, took the city of Pelu'sium [1], repulsed the Egyptian army with loss, and at last, joining with Cæsar, attacked their camp with a great slaughter of the Egyptians. Ptolemy himself, attempting to escape on board a vessel, was drowned by the ship's sinking. 26. Cæsar thus became master of all Egypt without any farther opposition. He appointed Cleopa'tra, with her younger brother, who was then an infant, joint governors, according to the intent of their father's will, and drove out Arsin'oe, with Gan'ymede, to banishment.

27. Having thus given away kingdoms, he now, for a while, seemed to relax from the usual activity of his conduct, being captivated with the charms of Cleopa'tra. Instead of quitting Egypt to go and quell the remains of Pompey's party, he abandoned himself to his pleasures; passing whole nights in feasting, and in all the excesses of high-wrought luxury with the young queen. He even resolved on attending her up the Nile, into Ethiopia; but the brave veterans who had long followed

[1] Pelu'sium, a noble and strong city, was considered the key to all Egypt; which being taken, the rest of Egypt lay quite open and exposed. (Strabo.) It was situated among marshes, hence its name and strength. From its ruins arose Damiet'ta.

his fortune, boldly *reprehended* his conduct, and refused to be partners in so infamous an expedition. 28. Thus, at length roused from his lethargy, he resolved to prefer the call of ambition to that of love: and to leave Cleopa'tra (by whom he had a son, whose name was Cæsa'rio,) in order to oppose Pharna'ces, the king of Bosphorus [1], who had made some inroads upon the dominions of Rome in the East.

29. This prince, who had cruelly *deposed* his father, the great Mithrida'tes, being ambitious of reconquering those dominions, seized upon Arm'enia [2] and Col'chis [3], and overcame Domit'ius, who had been sent against him. 30. Upon Cæsar's march to oppose him, Pharna'ces, who was as much terrified at the name of the general as at the strength of his army, laboured, by all the arts of negotiation, to avert the impending danger. 31. Cæsar, exasperated at his crimes and ingratitude, at first dissembled with the ambassadors; and using all expedition, fell upon the enemy unexpectedly, and in a few hours obtained an easy and complete victory. Pharna'ces, attempting to take refuge in his capital, was slain by one of his own commanders—a just punishment for his former *parricide*. Cæsar achieved this conquest with so much ease, that in writing to a friend at Rome, he expressed the rapidity of his victory in three words, "VENI, VIDI, VICI [4]." A man so accustomed to conquest might, perhaps, think a slight battle scarcely worth a long letter; though it is more probable that these memorable words were dictated rather by vanity than indifference.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the abilities and character of Cæsar?
2. Did he rest satisfied with his present successes?
3. Whither did he steer his course?

---

[1] The territories of Bos'phorus were partly in Europe, but chiefly in Asia. This kingdom was so called from two narrow straits, situate at the confines of Europe and Asia, now known by the names of Caffa and Constantinople. The kingdom of Bosphorus is the same as Pontus.

[2] Armenia, an extensive country in Asia, divided into two parts: namely, Major and Minor, (*Greater and Less.*)

[3] Colchis (pron. Kol'kis), a province of Asia, on the east side of the Euxine Sea; remarkable in history for the fable of the Golden Fleece, for the Argonautic expedition on that account, and for giving birth to the enchantress Medea.

[4] I came, I saw, I conquered.

4. What occurred on his arrival?
5. Was Cæsar pleased with this spectacle?
6. What was the conduct of the Egyptians towards Cæsar?
7. Did Cæsar resent this conduct?
8. Did he continue this appearance of confidence?
9. Who were at this time the sovereigns of Egypt?
10. What rendered Cæsar's interference necessary?
11. Was his interference agreeable to the Egyptians?
12. How did Cæsar conduct himself on this occasion?
13. Was the attack formidable?
14. How did Cæsar prevent the designs of the enemy?
15. What was the conduct of Cleopatra?
16. What attractions did she possess?
17. What obstacles presented themselves, and how were they overcome?
18. Was Cæsar captivated by her charms?
19. What measures did Arsinoe pursue?
20. What attempts did the enemy make to annoy Cæsar, and how were they frustrated?
21. What unlucky accident occasioned the miscarriage of Cæsar's design?
22. How did Cæsar escape?
23. What did the Alexandrians next attempt?
24. Did Cæsar comply with their wishes?
25. How was Cæsar delivered from this dangerous situation?
26. What was the consequence of this victory?
27. Did Cæsar pursue his career of victory?
28. What was the consequence of this boldness?
29. What farther cause of offence had Pharnaces given?
30. Did Pharnaces boldly oppose the invader?
31. Did he succeed?

SECTION II.

Whate'er the Roman virtue has subdued,
The sun's whole course, the day and year are Cæsar's;
For him the self-devoted Decii died,
The Fabii fell, and the great Scipios conquer'd;
Even Pompey fought for Cæsar. Oh, my friends,
How is the toil of fate, the work of ages,
The Roman empire fallen! Oh, cursed ambition!
Fallen into Cæsar's hand: our great forefathers
Had left him nought to conquer but his country.

ADDISON'S CATO.

5. Ral'ly, *v.* to reassemble, to collect again.
7. Ela'te, *v.* render proud, puff up.
Malig'nity, *s.* degrees of poison.
9. Peremp'tory, *a.* positive, resolute.
12. Abridg'ed, *part.* shortened, curtailed.
15. Adula'tion, *s.* flattery.
16. Ju'dicature, *s.* of judging, dispensing the laws.
Sump'tuary, *a.* regulating the expenses of living.
18. Pro'tract, *v.* to lengthen.
20. Decliv'ity, *s.* descent.
23. Pi'racies, *s.* robberies at sea.
24. Avow'ed, *v.* open, declared.
Isth'mus, *s.* a narrow neck of land.
25. Pon'dered, *v.* revolved in his mind.

1. CÆSAR, having settled affairs in this part of the empire,

embarked for Italy, where he arrived sooner than his enemies could expect, but not before his presence there was absolutely required. 2. During his absence, he had been created consul for five years, dictator for one year, and tribune of the people for life. 3. But Antony, who in the mean time governed for him in Rome, had filled the city with riot and debauchery, and many commotions ensued which nothing but the arrival of Cæsar could appease. 4. By his moderation and humanity he soon restored tranquillity to the city, scarcely making any distinction between those of his own and the opposite party. 5. Having, by gentle means, restored his authority at home, he prepared to march into Africa, where Pompey's party had found time to *rally* under Scipio and Cato, assisted by Juba, king of Maurita'nia; and, with his usual diligence, landed with a small party in Africa, while the rest of his army followed him. 6. Scipio coming to a battle soon after, received a complete and final overthrow, with little or no loss on the side of the victor. Juba, and Petrei'us his general, killed each other in despair. Scipio, attempting to escape by sea into Spain, fell in among the enemy, and was slain; so that of all the generals of that undone party, Cato was now the only one that remained.

7. This extraordinary man, whom prosperity could not *elate*, nor misfortunes depress, having retired into Africa, after the battle of Pharsa'lia, had led the wretched remains of Pompey's army through burning deserts, and tracts infested with serpents of various *malignity*, and was now in the city of Utica[1], which he had been left to defend. 8. In love, however, with the show of Roman government, Cato had formed the principal citizens into a senate, and conceived a resolution for holding out the town. But the enthusiasm for liberty subsiding among his followers, he was resolved no longer to force men to be free, who seemed naturally prone to slavery. 9. He now, therefore, desired some of his friends to save themselves by sea, and bade others submit to Cæsar's clemency; observing, that, as to himself, he was at last victorious. After this, supping cheerfully among his friends, he retired to his apart-

[1] *Utica*, a town of Africa Proper, now the kingdom of Tunis. After the destruction of Carthage, it became the capital and centre of all the Roman transactions in Africa. (Strabo.) It was situated on the same bay with Carthage, near the present Berserta.

ment, where he behaved with unusual tenderness to his son, and to all his friends. When he came into his bed-chamber, laying himself down, he took up Plato's Dialogue on the Immortality of the Soul, and read for some time. Casting his eyes to the head of his bed, he wondered much not to see his sword there; which had been conveyed away by his son's order while they were at supper. Calling to one of his domestics, to know what was become of it, and receiving no answer, he resumed his studies; and some time after asked again for the sword. When he had done reading, and perceived that nobody obeyed him, he called for his domestics one after the other, and with a *peremptory* air again demanded his sword. 10. His son, with tears, besought him to change his resolution; but, receiving a stern reprimand, desisted from his persuasions. His sword being at length brought to him, he seemed satisfied, and cried out, "Now again I am master of myself." He took up the book again, which having perused, he fell into a sound sleep. Upon awaking, he called to one of his freedmen to know if his friends were embarked, or if any thing yet remained that could be done to serve them. The freedman assuring him that all was quiet, was ordered to leave the room. Cato no sooner found himself alone, than, seizing his sword, he stabbed himself below his chest. The blow not despatching him, he fell from his bed, and overturned a table, on which he had been drawing some geometrical figures. At the noise of the fall, his servants shrieked, and his son and friends immediately flew to the room. They found him weltering in his blood, with his bowels appearing through the wound. 11. The surgeon, perceiving that his intestines were not wounded, was replacing them: but Cato recovering himself, and understanding their intention was to preserve his life, forced the surgeon from him, and, with a fierce resolution, tore out his bowels, and expired [1].

12. Upon the death of Cato, the war in Africa being completed, Cæsar returned in such triumph to Rome, as if

[1] So great was the affection borne to this noble Roman by the inhabitants of Utica, that though Cæsar was on the point of entering the city, they could not be diverted from burying his body with the greatest pomp, and paying all the funeral honours due to a person of his rank and merit.

he had *abridged* all his former triumphs only to increase the splendour of this[1]. The citizens were astonished at the magnificence of the procession, and at the number of the countries he had subdued. 13. It lasted four days: the first was for Gaul[2], the second for Egypt[3], the third for his victories in Asia[4], and the fourth for that over Juba in Africa[5]. His veteran soldiers, scarred with wounds, and now laid up for life, followed their triumphant general, crowned with laurels, and conducted him to the capitol. 14. To every one of those he gave a sum equivalent to about a hundred and fifty pounds sterling, double that sum to the centurions, and four times as much to the superior officers. The citizens also shared his bounty: to every one he distributed ten bushels of corn, ten pounds of oil, and a sum of money equal to about two pounds sterling. After this, he entertained the people at above twenty thousand tables, treated them with combats of gladiators, and filled Rome with a concourse of spectators from every part of Italy.

15. The people, intoxicated with pleasure, thought their freedom too small a return for such benefits. They seemed eager only to find out new modes of homage, and unusual epithets of *adulation* for their great enslaver. He was created, by a new title, *Magis'ter Mo'rum*, or Master of the Morals of the People. He received the title of Emperor and father of his country. His person was declared sacred; and, in short, upon him alone were devolved for life all the great dignities of the state. 16. It must be owned, that so much power could never have been en-

[1] Before his return, he gave orders for the rebuilding of Carthage and Corinth, so that those two famous cities were destroyed in the same year, and in the same year rose from their ruins, after having lain desolate about a century.

[2] In this triumph were carried before his chariot the names of 300 nations and 800 cities, which he had reduced by the slaughter of a million of enemies.

[3] This triumph was adorned with the pictures of Ptol'emy, Photi'nus, and Achil'las, with the representation of the cities of Pelu'sium, Alexan'dria, &c.; and Arsin'oe, the sister of Cleopa'tra, with many other prisoners of distinction, walked before his chariot.

[4] The third triumph was remarkable only for the words *veni, vidi, vici*, displayed in large characters in the procession.

[5] This triumph was not so pleasing to the Romans as the former three, because the statues of Scipio, Petrei'us, and Cato, were carried among those of the kings and princes he had subdued; they expressed their concern at this sight by sighs and tears.

trusted to better keeping. He immediately began his empire by repressing vice and encouraging virtue. He committed the power of *judicature* to the senators and the knights alone; and by many *sumptuary* laws restrained the scandalous luxuries of the rich. He proposed rewards to all such as had many children, and took the most prudent method of repeopling the city, which had been exhausted in the late commotions.

17. Having thus restored prosperity once more to Rome, he again found himself under a necessity of going into Spain to oppose an army which had been raised there under the two sons of Pompey[1], and Labie'nus his former general. 18. He proceeded in this expedition with his usual celerity, and arrived in Spain before the enemy thought him yet departed from Rome. Cne'ius Pompey and Sextus, Pompey's sons, profiting by their unhappy father's example, resolved, as much as possible, to *protract* the war; so that the first operations of the two armies were spent in sieges and fruitless attempts to surprise each other. 19. However, Cæsar, after taking many cities from the enemy, and pursuing his adversary with unwearied perseverance, at last compelled him to come to a battle upon the plain of Munda[2]. 20. Pompey drew up his men, by break of day, upon the *declivity* of a hill, with great exactness and order. Cæsar drew up likewise in the plains below; and, after advancing a little way from his trenches, ordered his men to make a halt, expecting the enemy to come down from the hill. This delay made Cæsar's soldiers begin to murmur; while Pompey's, with full vigour, poured down upon them, and a dreadful conflict ensued. 21. The first shock was so dreadful, that Cæsar's men, who had hitherto been used to conquer, now began to waver. Cæsar was never in so much danger as now; he threw himself several times into the very thickest of the battle. "What!" cried he, "are you going to give up to a parcel of boys your general, who is grown grey in fighting at your head?" 22. Upon this his tenth legion exerted themselves with more than usual bravery; and a party of horse being detached by Labie'nus from the camp in pur-

[1] These young men inherited their father's abilities, and were like him attached to the faction of the aristocracy.

[2] So called from the city of the same name, situate in Granada, in Spain. It is now a mean village, retaining its ancient appellation. (Mariana.)

suit of a body of Numid'ian cavalry, Cæsar cried aloud that they were flying. This cry instantly spread itself through both armies, exciting the one as much as it depressed the other. 23. Now, therefore, the tenth legion pressed forward, and a total rout soon ensued[1]. Thirty thousand men were killed on Cne'ius Pompey's side, and amongst them Labie'nus, whom Cæsar ordered to be buried with the funeral honours of a general officer. Cne'ius Pompey escaped with a few horsemen to the sea-side; but finding his passage intercepted by Cæsar's lieutenant, he was obliged to seek for a retreat in an obscure cavern. He was quickly discovered by some of Cæsar's troops, who presently cut off his head, and brought it to the conqueror. His brother Sextus, however, concealed himself so well, that he escaped all pursuit; and afterwards, from his *piracies*, became noted and formidable to the people of Rome.

24. Cæsar, by this last blow, subdued all his *avowed* enemies; and the rest of his life was employed for the advantage of the state. He adorned the city with magnificent buildings; he rebuilt Carthage and Corinth, sending colonies to both cities: he undertook to level several mountains in Italy, to drain the Pontine marshes near Rome; and he designed to cut through the *Isthmus* of Peloponne'sus. 25. Thus, with a mind that could never remain inactive, he *pondered* mighty projects and schemes, beyond the limits of the longest life; but the greatest of all was his intended expedition against the Parthians, by which he designed to revenge the death of Crassus, who having penetrated too far into their country, was overthrown, taken prisoner, and put to a cruel death, by having molten gold poured down his throat, as a punishment for his former avarice. From Parthia Cæsar intended to pass through Hyrca'nia, and enter Scyth'ia, along the banks of the Caspian Sea; then to open a way through the immeasurable forests of Germany into Gaul, and so to return to Rome. These were the aims of ambition; but the jealousy of a few individuals put an end to them all.

[1] On Cæsar's return to his camp after the battle, he observed to those about him, that he had often fought for victory, but this was the first time he had fought for his life.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Cæsar's next step?
2. What honours were awarded him in his absence?
3. What was the conduct of his deputy?
4. How did he put an end to these disturbances?
5. What was his next enterprise?
6. What was the success of the campaign?
7. How was Cato situated?
8. What measure had he pursued?
9. When all hope had forsaken him, what was his conduct?
10. Was no effort made to change his resolution, and what followed?
11. Was the wound mortal?
12. What happened after the death of Cato?
13. Describe the triumph.
14. Was not Cæsar extremely liberal?
15. What returns were made for this extraordinary liberality?
16. Was he deserving of these honours?
17. Was he destined to pass the rest of his life in tranquillity?
18. Describe the opening of the campaign.
19. Were the sons of Pompey successful in their attempts?
20. What were the dispositions of the two armies?
21. What memorable expression did the danger of the conflict draw from Cæsar?
22. What was the consequence of this exclamation?
23. What was the result of the battle?
24. In what manner did Cæsar employ himself at this time?
25. What were his most important resolutions?

SECTION III.

O mighty Cæsar! dost thou lie so low?
Are all thy conquests, glories, triumphs, spoils,
Shrunk to this little measure?
* * * * * *
But yesterday the word of Cæsar might
Have stood against the world: now lies he there,
And none so poor to do him reverence. SHAKSPEARE.

1. Accu'mulated, *part.* increased, added, heaped up.
3. Pil'lage, *s.* plunder.
   Disban'ded, *v.* dismissed, broken up.
   Facil'itated, *v.* rendered easy of execution.
7. Assas'sinated, *part.* killed treacherously.
8. O'mens, *s.* prognostics of a future event.
14. Saga'city, *s.* acuteness, wisdom?
15. Insa'tiable, *a.* not to be satisfied
20. Augus't, *a.* noble, awful, venerable.
    Dilem'ma, *s.* difficulty, state of suspense.
21. Rat'ified, *v.* confirmed.
22. Gratu'ity, *s.* a gift, reward.
23. Ob'sequies, *s.* funeral rites.

1. CÆSAR having been made perpetual dictator, and received from the senate *accumulated* honours, it began to be rumoured that he intended to make himself king. In fact, he was possessed of the power; but the people, who

had an aversion to the name, could not bear his assuming the title. 2. Whether he really designed to assume that empty honour, must for ever remain a secret; but certain it is, that the unsuspecting openness of his conduct created something like confidence in the innocence of his intentions[1]. 3. When informed by those about him of the jealousies of many who envied his power, he was heard to say, that he would rather die once by treason, than live continually in the apprehension of it. When advised by some to beware of Brutus, in whom he had for some time reposed the greatest confidence, he opened his breast, all scarred with wounds, saying, "Can you think Brutus cares for such poor *pillage* as this?" and being one night at supper, as his friends disputed among themselves what death was easiest, he replied, "That which is most sudden and least foreseen." But to convince the world how little he apprehended from his enemies, he *disbanded* his Spanish guards, and thus *facilitated* the enterprise against his life.

4. A deep conspiracy was now laid against him, into which no less than sixty senators entered. They were still the more formidable, as the generality of them were of his own party; and having been raised above other citizens, felt more strongly the weight of a single superior. At the head of this conspiracy were Brutus, whose life Cæsar had spared after the battle of Pharsalia, and Cassius, who was pardoned soon after; both prætors for the present year. 5. Brutus made it his chief glory to have descended from that Brutus who first gave liberty to Rome. The passion for freedom seemed to have been transmitted to him with the blood of his ancestors. But though he detested tyranny, yet could he not forbear loving the tyrant from whom he had received the most signal benefits.

6. The conspirators, to give a colour of justice to their proceedings, put off the execution of their design to the ides of March[2], the day on which Cæsar was to be offered

[1] At the celebration of the feast in honour of Pan, called Luperca'lia, Cæsar assisted, seated upon a tribunal, in a chair of gold, and adorned with his triumphal ornaments. In consequence as it is supposed, of a preconcerted scheme, Antony presented him a regal crown, which Cæsar put back with his hand. Antony offered it a second time, and Cæsar again refused it. The acclamations of the people, which followed these refusals, convinced Cæsar how dangerous his acceptance of it would have been; but he could not conceal the mortification he experienced on this discovery.

[2] The Romans divided their months into three parts; namely, Ca-

the crown. 7. The augurs had foretold that this day would be fatal to him. The night preceding he heard his wife, Calphur'nia, lamenting in her sleep. Being awakened, she confessed to him, that she dreamt of his being *assassinated* in her arms. 8. These *omens*, in some measure, began to change his intention of going to the senate; but one of the conspirators coming in, prevailed upon him to keep his resolution, telling him of the reproach that would attend his staying at home till his wife should have lucky dreams, and of the preparations that were made for his appearance. 9. As he went along to the senate, a slave, who hastened to him with information of the conspiracy, attempted to come near him, but was prevented by the crowd. Artemido'rus, a Greek philosopher, who had discovered the whole plot, delivered him a memorial, containing the heads of his information; but Cæsar gave it with other papers to one of his secretaries, without reading, as was usual in matters of this nature. Having at length entered the senate-house, where the conspirators were prepared to receive him, he met one Spuri'na, an augur, who had foretold his danger, to whom he said, smiling, "Well, Spuri'na, the ides of March are come."—"Yes," replied the augur, "but they are not yet gone." 10. No sooner had he taken his place, than the conspirators approached, under pretence of saluting him; Cimber, who was one of them, in a suppliant posture, pretended to sue for his brother's pardon, who had been banished by Cæsar's order. The conspirators seconded him with great earnestness; and Cimber, seeming to sue with still greater submission, took hold of the bottom of his robe; holding him so as to prevent his rising. 11. This was the signal agreed on; when Casca, who was behind, instantly stabbed him in the shoulder. Cæsar sprang round, and, with the steel of his tablet, wounded him in the arm. The conspirators were all alarmed; when, being enclosed round, he received a second stab, from an unseen hand, in the

lends, Nones, and Ides; all which they reckoned backwards. The Ides were always eight in number. The Nones sometimes four, at others six. The Calends varied according to the length of the month, and also with the Nones, as they were four or six. The Calends always began on the first of every month, and were counted backwards to the Ides, which fell on the 15th of March, May, July, and October; and on the 13th of other months; so that the Nones began on the 5th of each month when four, and the 7th when six in number. The Nones, therefore, always ended on the 2nd day of the month.

breast; while Cassius wounded him in the face. He still defended himself with great vigour, rushing among them, and throwing down such as opposed him, till he saw Brutus among the conspirators, who, coming up, struck his dagger into his thigh. 12. Cæsar, from that moment, thought no more of defending himself; but, looking upon Brutus, cried out, "*Et tu, Brute!*"—And you too, O Brutus! Then covering his head, and spreading his robe before him, in order to fall with decency, he sank down at the base of Pompey's statue: after having received three and twenty wounds, from those whom he vainly supposed he had disarmed by his benefits.

13. Cæsar was killed in the fifty-sixth year of his age, and about fourteen years after he had begun the conquest of the world. 14. If we examine his history, we shall be at a loss whether most to admire his great abilities, or his wonderful fortune. To pretend to say, that from the beginning he planned the subjection of his native country, is doing no great credit to his well-known penetration, as a thousand obstacles lay in his way, which fortune rather than conduct was to surmount; no man, therefore, of his *sagacity*, would have begun a scheme in which the chances of succeeding were so many against him. 15. It is most probable that, like all very successful men, he made the best of every occurrence; and his ambition rising with his good fortune, from at first being content with humbler aims, he at last began to think of governing the world, when he found scarcely any obstacle to oppose his designs. Such is the disposition of man, whose cravings after power are then most *insatiable* when he enjoys the greater share [1].

U.C. 171.

16. As soon as the conspirators had despatched Cæsar, they retired to the Capitol, and guarded its accesses by a body of gladiators which Brutus had in pay.

17. The friends of the late dictator now began to find that this was the time for coming into greater power than before, and for satisfying their ambition under the pretence of promoting justice: of this number was Antony. 18. He was a man of moderate abilities, of excessive vices,

[1] Though Cæsar's ambition led him to usurp a power to which the Romans were not willing to submit, it appears that he used it with unexampled moderation. He was beloved and revered by the people, honoured and almost adored by his friends, and esteemed and admired even by his enemies. Absolute power could not have been in better hands.

ambitious of power only because it gave his pleasures a wider range to riot in; but skilled in war, to which he had been trained from his youth [1]. He was consul for this year, and resolved, with Lep'idus, who like himself was fond of commotions, to seize this opportunity of gaining a power which Cæsar had died for usurping. Lep'idus, therefore, took possession of the Forum [2], with a band of soldiers at his devotion; and Antony, being consul, was permitted to command them. 19. The first step was to possess themselves of Cæsar's papers and money, and the next to assemble the senate. 20. Never had this *august* assembly been convened upon so delicate an occasion, as to determine whether Cæsar had been a legal magistrate, or a tyrannical usurper; and whether those who killed him merited rewards or punishments. Many of them had received all their promotions from Cæsar, and had acquired large fortunes in consequence of his appointments: to vote him an usurper, therefore, would be to endanger their property; and yet, to vote him innocent, might endanger the state. In this *dilemma* they seemed willing to reconcile extremes; they approved all the acts of Cæsar, and yet granted a general pardon to the conspirators.

21. This decree was very far from giving Antony satisfaction, as it granted security to a number of men who were the avowed enemies of tyranny, and who would be foremost in opposing his schemes of restoring absolute power. As, therefore, the senate had *ratified* all Cæsar's acts without distinction, he formed a plan for making him rule when dead as imperiously as he had done when living. 22. Being possessed of Cæsar's books of accounts, he so far gained over his secretary as to make him insert whatever he thought proper. By these means, great sums of money, which Cæsar would never have bestowed, were there distributed among the people; and every man who had any seditious designs against the government was there sure to find a *gratuity*. 23. Things being in this situation, Antony demanded of the senate that Cæsar's funeral *obsequies* should be performed. This they could

[1] It was the general opinion of the conspirators that Antony should be cut off with Cæsar, but Brutus pleaded for and obtained his safety. This kindness was ill repaid.

[2] The Forum was a public place at Rome, where lawyers and orators made their speeches in matters of property, of the state, or in criminal cases.

not decently forbid, as they had never declared him a tyrant: accordingly the body was brought forth into the Forum with the utmost solemnity; and Antony, who charged himself with these last duties of friendship, began his operations upon the passions of the people by the prevailing motives of private interest. 24. He first read to them Cæsar's will, in which he made Octa'vius, his sister's grandson, his heir, permitting him to take the name of Cæsar, and bequeathed him three parts of his private fortune; which, in case of his death, Brutus was to have inherited. To the Roman people were left the gardens which he possessed on the other side of the Tiber[1]; and to every citizen three hundred sesterces[2]. Unfolding Cæsar's bloody robe, pierced by the daggers of the conspirators, he observed to them the number of stabs in it. He also displayed a waxen image, representing the body of Cæsar, all covered with wounds. 25. The people could no longer retain their indignation, but unanimously cried out for revenge, and ran, with flaming brands from the pile, to set fire to the houses of the conspirators. In this rage of resentment, meeting with one Cinna, whom they mistook for another of the same name that was in the conspiracy, they tore him in pieces. 26. The conspirators themselves, however, being well guarded, repulsed the multitude with no great trouble; but perceiving the general rage of the people, they thought it safest to retire from the city.

27. In the mean time, Antony, who had excited this flame, resolved to make the most of the occasion. But an obstacle to his ambition seemed to arise from a quarter in which he least expected it, namely, from Octa'vius, afterwards called Augus'tus, who was the grand-nephew and adopted son of Cæsar[3]. A third competitor also for power appeared in Lep'idus, a man of some authority and great riches. 28. At first, the ambition of these three seemed to threaten fatal consequences to each other; but, uniting in the common cause, they resolved to revenge the death of Cæsar, and dividing their power, they formed what is called the Second Triumvirate.

[1] Ti'ber, the most celebrated river of Italy, flows by Rome, and disembogues in the Mediterranean Sea, near Os'tia.

[2] Two pounds, six shillings, and tenpence halfpenny.

[3] Octa'vius was the son of Cai'us Octa'vius, a senator, by Accia, daughter to Julia, Cæsar's sister.

Questions for Examination.

1. What design was Cæsar supposed to entertain?
2. Was this rumour well founded?
3. When hints of danger were given him, what was his conduct?
4. What was the consequence of this imprudence?
5. What was the character of Brutus?
6. What time was fixed for the conspiracy to take effect?
7. Had Cæsar any intimations of his danger?
8. Was he at all influenced by them?
9. Were no other attempts made to warn him of his approaching fate?
10. In what way did the conspirators commence their attempt?
11. What followed?
12. What was the consequence of this?
13. What was Cæsar's age?
14. Did Cæsar plan the conquest of his country from the first?
15. By what means did he accomplish it?
16. How did the conspirators escape the vengeance of the people?
17. What advantage was taken of this event?
18. What was the character of Antony, and what resolution did he form?
19. What were his first acts?
20. How were the senate situated on this occasion?
21. Was Antony satisfied with this decree?
22. How did he accomplish this?
23. What was his next measure?
24. By what means did he effect his purpose?
25. What was the consequence of this artful conduct?
26. Did the conspirators fall victims to their fury?
27. Had Antony no rivals in his attempts to acquire power?
28. What was the result of this rivalship?

SECTION IV.

Come, Antony, and young Octavius, come,
Revenge yourselves alone on Cassius,
For Cassius is a weary of the world;
Hated by one he loves; braved by his brother;
Check'd like a bondman; all his faults observed,
Set in a note-book, learn'd, and conn'd by rote,
To cast into my teeth. Oh! I could weep
My spirit from my eyes! SHAKSPEARE.

1. Dif'fidence, *s.* distrust, suspicion.
3. Retrospec'tion, *s.* a looking back.
7. Ex'iles, *s.* banished persons.
9. Divert'ed, *v.* turned aside.
10. Surren'der, *v.* to yield, to deliver up.
11. Fren'zy, *s.* madness.
    Mol'lified, *v.* pacified, softened, mitigated.
13. Expostula'tions, *s.* reasonings, entreaties.
17. Reprimand'ing, *part.* reproving, blaming.
18. Cyn'ical, *a.* churlish, rough.
20. Spe'ctre, *s.* a ghost, spirit, apparition.
22. As'pect, *s.* countenance.
25. Solu'tion, *s.* explanation.
    Am'icable, *a.* friendly.

1. THE meeting of these three usurpers of their country s

freedom was upon a little island of the river Rhenus[1]. Their mutual suspicions were the cause of their meeting in a place where they had no fear of treachery; for, even in their union, they could not divest themselves of mutual *diffidence*. 2. Lep'idus first entered; and finding all things safe, made the signal for the other two to approach. At their first meeting, after saluting each other, Augustus began the conference by thanking Antony for putting Dec'imus Brutus to death; who, being abandoned by his army, had been taken, as he was endeavouring to escape into Macedo'nia, and was beheaded by Antony's soldiers. 3. They then entered upon the business that lay before them, without any *retrospection* to the past. Their conference lasted three days; and in this period they settled a division of the government, and determined the fate of thousands. 4. The result of this conference was, that the supreme authority should be lodged in their hands, under the title of the Trium'virate, for the space of five years; that Antony should have Gaul; Lep'idus, Spain; and Augustus, Africa and the Mediterra'nean islands. As for Italy, and the Eastern provinces, they were to remain in common, until their general enemy should be subdued; and, among other articles of union, it was agreed that all their enemies should be destroyed, of which each presented a list. 5. In these were comprised, not only the enemies, but the friends of the Trium'virate, since the partisans of the one were found among the opposers of the other. Thus Lep'idus gave up his brother Æmil'ius Paulus to the vengeance of his colleague; Antony permitted the proscription of his uncle Lucius; and Augustus delivered up the great Ci'cero, who was assassinated shortly after by Antony's command[2].

6. In the mean time, Brutus and Cassius, the principal of the conspirators against Cæsar, being compelled

[1] Now the Rheno, which runs through Bologna, and falls into the Po.

[2] It is impossible to paint the horrors of this dreadful proscription. Nothing was to be seen but blood and slaughter; the streets were covered with dead bodies; the heads of the most illustrious senators were exposed on the rostra, and their bodies left to be devoured by dogs and birds of prey; three hundred senators, and above two thousand knights, besides a vast number of others of considerable rank, fell victims on this occasion. Many noble instances of fidelity were displayed by slaves at this terrible conjuncture; several chose rather to die on the rack, in the most exquisite torments, than betray the place where their masters were concealed.

to quit Rome, went into Greece, where they persuaded the Roman students at Athens to declare in the cause of freedom; then parting, the former raised a powerful army in Macedonia, while the latter went into Syria, where he soon became master of twelve legions, and reduced his opponent Dolabella to such straits, as to force him to lay violent hands on himself. 7. Both armies joined at Smyr'na[1]: the sight of such a formidable force began to revive the declining spirits of the party, and to reunite the two generals still more closely, between whom there had been some time before a slight misunderstanding. In short, having quitted Italy like distressed *exiles*, without having one soldier or one town that owned their command, they now found themselves at the head of a flourishing army, furnished with every necessary for carrying on the war, and in a condition to support a contest on which the empire of the world depended.

8. It was in this flourishing state of their affairs, that the conspirators formed a resolution of marching against Cleopa'tra, who had made great preparations to assist their opponents. 9. However, they were *diverted* from this purpose by information that Augustus and Antony were now upon their march, with forty legions, to oppose them. Brutus, therefore, moved to have their army pass over into Greece and Macedonia, and there meet the enemy: but Cassius so far prevailed as to have the Rho'dians and Ly'cians first reduced, who had refused their usual contributions. 10. This expedition was immediately put in execution, and extraordinary contributions were thus raised, the Rho'dians[2] having scarcely any thing left them but their lives. The Ly'cians[3] suffered still more severely; for having shut themselves up in their capital town Xanthus, they defended the place against Brutus with so

[1] Smyr'na, a city of I'onia, in Asia Minor, is one of those cities which claimed the birth of Homer, and which laid its claim stronger than any other. Smyr'na stood on the river Me'les, from which Homer took his original name Melesig'enes, because born on its banks: Homerus being the name given him by the Curveans, when petitioning for a public maintenance from them; a term denoting blind, in their dialect. (Herod'otus.)

[2] Rhodians were the inhabitants of Rhodes, a celebrated island in the Mediterranean Sea; particularly noticed for its Colossus, a famous statue of bronze, which was reckoned one of the wonders of the world; for a ship, with all its sails up, might pass between its legs.

[3] Ly'cians, the inhabitants of Ly'cia, a province of Asia Minor.

much fury, that neither his arts nor entreaties could prevail upon them to *surrender*. 11. At length, the town being set on fire, by their attempting to burn the works of the Romans, Brutus, instead of laying hold of this opportunity to storm the place, made every effort to preserve it, entreating his soldiers to try all means of extinguishing the fire; but the desperate *frenzy* of the citizens was not to be *mollified*. 12. Far from thinking themselves obliged to the generous enemy, for the efforts which they made to save them, they resolved to perish in the flames. Instead of extinguishing, therefore, they did all in their power to augment the fire, by throwing in wood, dry reeds, and all kinds of fuel. 13. Nothing could exceed the distress of Brutus upon seeing the townsmen thus resolutely bent on destroying themselves. He rode about the fortifications, stretching out his hands to the Xan'thians, and conjuring them to have pity on themselves and their city; but, insensible to his *expostulations*, they rushed into the flames with desperate obstinacy, and the whole soon became a heap of undistinguishable ruin. 14. At this horrid spectacle Brutus melted into tears, offering a reward to every soldier who should bring him a Ly'cian alive. The number of those whom it was possible to save from their own fury amounted to no more than one hundred and fifty. 15. Some writers, however, affirm that the town was burnt to the ground, and the inhabitants destroyed, by the command of Brutus; and that those who surrendered at discretion, he deprived of all their public and private property.

16. Brutus and Cassius met once more at Sardis[1], where they resolved to have a private conference together. They shut themselves up in the first convenient house, with express orders to their servants to give admission to no one. 17. Brutus began by *reprimanding* Cassius for having disposed of offices for money, which should ever be the reward of merit, and for having overtaxed the tributary states. Cassius repelled the imputation of avarice with the more bitterness, as he knew the charge to be groundless. The debate grew warm; till, from loud speaking, they burst into tears. 18. Their friends, who were standing at the door, overheard the increasing vehemence of their voices, and began to tremble for the consequences,

[1] The capital of Lydia, in Asia Minor. It was one of the seven churches to which St. John wrote.

till Favo'nius, who valued himself upon a *cynical* boldness, that knew no restraint, entering the room with a jest, calmed their mutual animosity. 19. Cassius was ready enough to forego his anger, being a man of great abilities, but of an uneven disposition; not averse to pleasure in private company, and, upon the whole, of morals not quite correct. But the conduct of Brutus was perfectly steady. An even gentleness, a noble elevation of sentiment, a strength of mind over which neither vice nor pleasure could have an influence, and an inflexible firmness in the cause of justice, composed the character of this great man. This mixture of suavity of manner with inflexible strength of purpose is strongly marked in the features of the bust of Brutus, preserved in the Royal Museum of Paris.

20. After the conference between the leaders, night coming on, Cassius invited Brutus and his friends to an entertainment, where freedom and cheerfulness, for a while, took place of political anxiety, and softened the severity of wisdom. Upon retiring home it was that Brutus thought he saw a *spectre* in his tent. 21. He naturally slept but little, and was capable of bearing want of rest by long habit and great sobriety. He never allowed himself to sleep in the day-time, as was common in Rome;

and only gave so much of the night to repose as could barely renew the functions of nature. But now, oppressed with various cares, he allowed himself a still shorter time after his nightly repast; and, waking about midnight, generally read or studied till morning. 22. It was in the dead of the night, says Plutarch, when the whole camp was perfectly quiet, that Brutus was thus employed; reading by a lamp that was just expiring. On a sudden, he thought he heard a noise, as if somebody was approaching, and looking towards the door, perceived it open. A gigantic figure of frightful *aspect* stood before him, and continued to gaze upon him with silent severity. 23. Brutus is reported to have asked, "Art thou a demon or a mortal, and why comest thou to me?" "Brutus," answered the phantom, "I am thy evil genius —thou shalt see me again at Philippi[1]." "Well, then," replied Brutus, without being discomposed, "we shall meet again." Upon this the phantom vanished; when Brutus, calling to his servants, asked if they had seen any thing; to which they answering in the negative, he resumed his studies. 24. Struck with so strange an occurrence, he mentioned it to Cassius, who rightly considered it as the effect of an imagination disordered by vigilance and anxiety. 25. Brutus appeared satisfied with this *solution;* and as Antony and Augustus were now advanced into Macedonia, he and his colleague passed over into Thrace, and drew near to Philippi, where the forces of the Trium'viri were posted to receive them.

Questions for Examination.

1. Where was the first meeting of the Triumvirate, and why was it chosen?
2. What precautions did they take?
3. What farther was done?
4. What was the result of the conference?
5. Who were the proscribed?
6. What became of Brutus and Cassius?
7. What effect had this success on the minds of their party?
8. What was their first resolution?
9. Did they put it in execution?
10. What was the consequence to the Rhodians and Lycians?

[1] A city on the confines of Macedonia, noted for the battle between Brutus and Cassius, and Mark Antony and Augustus, A.D. 42; and also the Epistle of Paul to the people of Philip'pi.

11. What unfortunate accident hastened the fate of the town?
12. Did they not second the efforts of Brutus?
13. By what means did Brutus attempt to divert them from their purpose?
14, 15. By what method did he endeavour to save some of the Lycians?
16. Where did Brutus and Cassius meet, and what ensued?
17. Was their interview an *amicable* one?
18. Did no one interpose?
19. What were the characters of these great men?
20. What happened after the conference?
21. What were the peculiar habits of Brutus?
22. What happened to him while thus employed?
23. What conversation passed between them?
24. Did he mention the circumstance to any one?
25. Did Brutus assent to this opinion, and what followed?

SECTION V.

I dare assure thee, that no enemy
Shall ever take alive the noble Brutus;
The gods defend him from so great a shame!
When you do find him, or alive, or dead,
He will be found like Brutus, like himself.—SHAKSPEARE.

5. Commo'dious, *a.* convenient.
Maga'zine, *s.* storehouse.
7. Post'poning, *part.* putting off, delaying.
11. Sui'cide, *s.* self-murder.
13. Irrup'tion, *s.* an attack.
Intrepid'ity, *s.* boldness, courage.
16. Dena'rii, *s.* the chief silver coin among the Romans, each worth in our money about sevenpence three farthings.
18. Ar'rogant, *a.* saucy.
20. Inev'itable, *a.* not to be escaped, or avoided.
25. Riv'ulet, *s.* a small stream of water.

1. MANKIND now began to regard the approaching armies with terror and suspense. The empire of the world depended upon the fate of a battle. From victory, on the one side, they had to expect freedom; on the other, a sovereign with absolute command. 2. Brutus was the only man who looked upon these great events with calmness and tranquillity. Indifferent as to success, and satisfied with having done his duty, he said to one of his friends, "If I am victorious, I shall restore liberty to my country: if not, by dying, I shall myself be delivered from slavery. My condition is fixed; I run no hazards." 3. The republican army consisted of fourscore thousand foot, and twenty thousand horse. The army of the Trium'viri amounted to a hundred thousand foot and thirteen thousand horse. 4. Thus complete on both sides, they met and encamped near each other upon the plains of Philip'pi. Near th

town were two little hills, about a mile distant from each other; upon these hills Brutus and Cassius fixed their camps, and kept up a free communication, which mutually defended each other. 5. In this *commodious* situation they could act as they thought proper, and give battle just when it was thought to their advantage to engage. Behind was the sea, which furnished them with all kinds of provisions; and at twelve miles' distance, the island of Thasos, which served them for a general *magazine.* 6. The Trium'viri, on the other hand, were encamped on the plain below, and were obliged to bring provisions from fifteen leagues' distance; so that their scheme and interest were to forward a battle as soon as possible. This they offered several times, drawing out their men from their camp, and provoking the enemy to engage. 7. On the contrary, the enemy contented themselves with drawing up their troops at the head of their camps, without descending to the plain. This resolution of *postponing* the battle, was the chance that the republican army had for victory; and Cassius, sensible of his advantage, resolved to harass rather than engage the enemy. 8. But Brutus, who began to suspect the fidelity of some of his officers, used all his influence to persuade Cassius to change his resolution. "I am impatient," said he, "to put an end to the miseries of mankind; and in this I hope to succeed, whether I conquer or fall." 9. His wishes were soon gratified, for Antony's soldiers having, with great labour, made a road through the marsh, which lay to the left of Cassius's camp, by that means opened a communication with the island of Thasos, which lay behind him. Both armies, after several attempts to possess themselves of this road, resolved at length to come to a general engagement. 10. This, however, was contrary to the advice of Cassius, who found himself forced, as Pompey had formerly been, to expose the liberty of Rome to the hazard of a battle [1]. On the ensuing morning the two generals gave the signal for engaging, and conferred together a little while before the battle began. 11. Cassius desired to be informed how

[1] On the evening preceding the battle, Brutus gave an entertainment, at which he appeared very cheerful; but Cassius supped privately with a few of his most intimate friends, and, during the repast, was very thoughtful and silent, as though he had a presentiment of the fate that awaited him; it is rather remarkable that he was killed on his birth-day. (Plut. in Bruto. Appian, lib. 4 p. 655.)

Brutus intended to act in case they should be unsuccessful. To this Brutus replied, "Formerly, in my writings, I condemned the death of Cato; and maintained, that avoiding calamities by *suicide*, is an insolent attempt against Heaven, that allotted them; but I have altered my opinion; I have given up my life to my country; and I think I have a right to my own way of ending it[1]. I am resolved, therefore, to change a miserable being here for a better hereafter, if fortune turn against me." 12. "My friend," cried Cassius, embracing him, "now may we venture to face the enemy; for either we shall be conquerors, or we shall have no cause to fear those that be so." 13. Augustus being sick, the forces of the Triumviri were commanded by Antony alone, who began the engagement by a victorious attack upon the lines of Cassius. Brutus, on the other side, made a dreadful *irruption* on the army of Augustus: and drove forward with so much *intrepidity*, that he broke them upon the very first charge. Upon this, he penetrated as far as the camp, and slaughtering those that were left for its defence, his troops immediately began to plunder. 14. In the mean time, however, the lines of Cassius were forced, and his cavalry put to flight. There was no effort that this unfortunate general did not exert to make his infantry stand; stopping those that fled, and himself seizing the colours to rally them. But the valour of an individual was insufficient to inspire a timorous army. 15. At length, despairing of success, Cassius retired to his tent and killed himself[2]. Brutus was soon informed of the defeat of Cassius, and in a little time after of his death; he burst into tears, unable to restrain the excess of his grief for a man whom he lamented as the last of the Romans[3].

16. Brutus, now become sole general, assembled the dispersed troops of Cassius, and animated them with fresh hopes of victory. As they had lost their all from the plundering of their camp, he promised two thousand *denarii* to each man to make them amends. 17. Inspired with

[1] This is very erroneous reasoning; suicide is, no doubt, a heinous crime; but Brutus appears to have been governed by his apprehension of danger, instead of being convinced by the sober dictates of his judgment.

[2] This is the general opinion; but as the head of Cassius was found severed from his body, some have supposed that he was treacherously murdered by his freedman Pin'darus. (Plut. in Bruto.)

[3] Cassius was generally esteemed one of the best commanders of his age, and a man of strict probity and virtue.

new ardour, they admired the liberality of their general, and, with loud shouts, proclaimed his intrepidity. Still, however, he wanted confidence to face the adversary, who offered him battle the ensuing day. His aim was to starve the enemy, who were in extreme want of provisions, from their fleet having been lately defeated. 18. But his single opinion was overruled by the army, who now grew every day more confident of their strength, and more *arrogant* to their general. At last, therefore, after a respite of twenty days, he was obliged to comply with their solicitations to try the fate of a battle. Both armies were drawn out, and they remained a long while opposite to each other without offering to engage. It is said, that he himself had lost much of his ardour by having again seen, or fancied that he saw, the spectre, in the night preceding. However, he encouraged his men, and gave the signal for battle. As usual, he had the advantage where he commanded in person; bearing down the enemy at the head of his infantry, and, supported by his cavalry, making great slaughter. 19. But the forces which had belonged to Cassius were seized with a panic, and communicating their terror to the rest, the whole army at last gave way. Brutus, surrounded by the most valiant of his officers, fought long with amazing valour. The son of Cato, and the brother of Cassius, fell fighting by his side. At last he was obliged to yield to necessity, and fled. 20. In the mean time, the two Triumviri, assured of victory, expressly ordered that the general should by no means be suffered to escape. Thus, the whole body of the enemy being intent on the person of Brutus alone, his capture seemed *inevitable*. 21. In this deplorable exigence, Lucil'ius, his friend, resolved, by his own death, to effect his general's delivery. 22. Seeing a body of Thracian horse closely pursuing Brutus, and just upon the point of taking him, he boldly threw himself in their way, telling them that *he* was Brutus. The Thra'cians, overjoyed with so great a prize, immediately despatched some of their companions with the news of their success to the army. 23. Upon this, the ardour of the pursuit abating, Antony marched out to meet his prisoner, either to hasten his death, or insult his misfortunes. He was followed by a great number of officers and soldiers, some silently deploring the fate of so virtuous a man, others reproaching that mean desire of life for which he consented to undergo captivity. 24. Antony now seeing the Thra-

cians approach, began to prepare himself for the interview; out the faithful Lucilius, advancing with a cheerful air—"It is *not* Brutus," said he, "that is taken; fortune has not yet had the power of committing so great an outrage upon virtue. As for my life, it is well lost in preserving his honour; take it, for I have deceived you." Antony, struck with so much fidelity, pardoned him, loaded him with benefits, and honoured him with his friendship.

25. In the mean time, Brutus, with a small number of friends, passed over a *rivulet;* and night coming on, sat down under a rock, which concealed him from the pursuit of the enemy. After taking breath, and casting his eyes to heaven, he repeated a line from Eurip'ides [1], containing a wish to the gods, "That guilt should not pass in this life without punishment [2]." To this he added another from the same poet: "O unhappy virtue! I have worshipped thee as a real good, but thou art a vain, empty name, and the slave of fortune [3]." He then called to mind, with great tenderness, those whom he had seen perish in battle. 26. He sent out one Statil'ius to give him information of those that remained; but Statil'ius never returned, being killed by a party of the enemy's horse. Brutus, judging rightly of his fate, now resolved to die likewise; and entreated those who stood round him to give him their last sad assistance; but they all refused so melancholy a service. 27. He then retired aside with his friend Strato, requesting him to perform the last office of friendship. Upon Strato's refusal, he ordered one of his slaves to execute what he so ardently desired; but Strato crying out, "that it never should be said that Brutus, in his last extremity, stood in need of a slave for want of a friend," turned aside his head, and presenting the sword's point, Brutus threw himself upon it, and immediately expired, in the forty-third year of his age. A.U. 711.

[1] Eurip'ides was a celebrated tragic poet, born at Salamis*, 485 years before Christ. (For further particulars, see Col. Clas. Biog.)

[2] This sentiment arose from his ignorance of a future state.

[3] It seems rather improbable, from the known character of Brutus, that he should have repeated such a sentiment, particularly as Volum'nius, who was present, and from whose Memoirs Plutarch copied the account of his death, makes no mention of it.

* Salamis, an island near Athens.

Questions for Examination.

1. What great event was now depending?
2. What were Brutus's feelings on the occasion?
3. What was the respective strength of the armies?
4. Where did they meet and encamp?
5. What were the advantages of this situation?
6. Were the Triumviri equally well situated?
7. Were the enemy equally ready to engage?
8. What induced Brutus to combat this resolution?
9. Did he obtain his wish?
10. Did Cassius wish to engage?
11. What passed between the generals on this occasion?
12. What was the reply of Cassius?
13. What happened at the commencement of the battle?
14. Was Cassius equally successful?
15. What did he do in his extremity, and what effect had it on Brutus?
16. Did Brutus attempt to recover the victory?
17. What followed?
18. Were his intentions agreeable to his troops, and what was the consequence?
19. What decided the victory against him?
20. What orders were issued by the Triumviri on the occasion?
21. By whom was his deliverance attempted?
22. How did he accomplish this?
23. What was the consequence?
24. Relate the circumstances of their interview.
25. What happened to Brutus in the mean time?
26. How did he attempt to gain intelligence, and what followed his disappointment?
27. Relate the manner of his death.

SECTION VI.

But anxious cares already seiz'd the queen,
She fed within her veins a flame unseen:
The hero's valour, acts, and birth, inspire
Her soul with love, and fan the secret fire.
His words, his looks, imprinted in her heart,
Improve the passion, and increase the smart.

DRYDEN'S VIRGIL, Æn. b. 4.

6. Ho'mage, *s.* respect, obedience.
8. Contribu'tions, *s.* levies of money, arbitrary taxes.
Capri'cious, *a.* whimsical, fanciful.
9. Imputa'tion, *s.* censure, blame, any thing imputed.
Infidel'ity, *s.* unfaithfulness.
10. Sedu'cing, *part.* enticing, pleasing.
11. Sump'tuous, *a.* grand, magnificent.
Pa'geantry, *s.* pomp, splendid show.
Ve'nus, *s.* the goddess of love and beauty.
Cu'pid, *s.* the son of Ve'nus and Mars, and god of love.
Ne'reids, *s.* daughters of Ne'reus and Do'ris, nymphs of the sea.
Gra'ces, *s.* daughters of Bac'chus and Ve'nus, named Agla'ia, Thali'a, and Euphros'yne.
12. Luxu'rious, *a.* voluptuous, given to pleasure.
13. Assid'uously, *ad.* busily.
15. Dep'recate, *v.* to attempt to change by humble entreaties.
20. Leth'argy, *s.* sloth, supineness.
Dissen'sion, *s.* quarrel, disagreement.
21. Um'pires, *s.* deciders of a dispute.
26. Ne'gotiation, *s.* treaty for peace.
Ce'ment, *v.* to bind, to strengthen.

1. FROM the moment of Brutus's death, the Trium'viri began to act as sovereigns, and to divide the Roman dominions among them as their own by right of conquest. 2. However, though there were apparently three who participated all power, yet, in fact, only two were actually possessed of it, since Lep'idus was admitted at first merely to curb the mutual jealousy of Antony and Augustus, and was possessed neither of interest in the army, nor authority among the people. 3. Their earliest care was to punish those whom they had formerly marked for vengeance. Horten'sius, Dru'sus, and Quintil'ius Va'rus, all men of the first rank in the commonwealth, either killed themselves or were slain. A senator and his son were ordered to cast lots for their lives, but both refused; the father voluntarily gave himself up to the executioner, and the son stabbed himself before his face. Another begged to have the rites of burial after his death: to which Augustus replied, "that he would soon find a grave in the vultures that would devour him." 4. But chiefly the people lamented to see the head of Brutus sent to Rome to be thrown at the foot of Cæsar's statue. His ashes, however, were sent to his wife Portia, Cato's daughter, who following the example of both her husband and father, killed

herself by swallowing coals[1]. 5. It is observed, that of all those who had a hand in the death of Cæsar, not one died a natural death.

6. The power of the Triumviri being thus established upon the ruin of the commonwealth, they now began to think of enjoying that *homage* to which they had aspired. 7. Antony went into Greece, to receive the flattery of that refined people, and spent some time at A'thens, conversing with the philosophers, and assisting at their disputes in person. Thence he passed over into Asia, where all the monarchs of the East, who acknowledged the Roman power, came to pay him their obedience; while the fairest princesses strove to gain his favour, by the greatness of their presents, or the allurements of their beauty. 8. In this manner he proceeded from kingdom to kingdom, attended by a succession of sovereigns, exacting *contributions*, distributing favours, and giving away crowns with *capricious* insolence. He presented the kingdom of Cappado'cia[2] to Sy'senes, in prejudice of Ariara'thes, only because he found pleasure in the beauty of Glaph'yra, the mother of the former. He settled Herod in the kingdom of Judea[3], and supported him. But among all the sovereigns of the East, who depended upon Antony, Cleopa'tra, the celebrated queen of Egypt, was the most distinguished.

9. It happened that Sera'pion, her governor in the isle of Cy'prus[4], had formerly furnished some succours to Cassius and the conspirators; and it was thought proper that she should answer for his conduct. Accordingly,

[1] This appears to be a mere fable, since Plutarch assures us (Plut. in Bruto), that in his time, a letter of Brutus was still extant, in which he laments the death of Portia.

[2] Cappado'cia, a province of Asia Minor. Its ancient state is unknown. This country was famous for its fine breed of horses and mules, and also for furnishing the world with slaves. The Cappado'cians paid a yearly tribute of fifteen hundred horses, and two thousand mules, to the Persians. The people were anciently called Syr'i and Leucosyr'i. Strabo and Pausa'nias were natives of Cappado'cia.

[3] Judea, in the Roman History, generally denotes the whole of Palestine. It is also taken in this sense by Ptolemy, Rutilius, Eusebius, Jerome, and Origen. In sacred history it is considered to comprise about one-third part; which is also the opinion of the celebrated Jewish historian.

[4] Cyprus, an island in the Mediterranean Sea, near the coast of Syria. It was anciently sacred to Venus; hence the appellations Cypria, Cypris, Cyprigena, were given to that goddess

having received orders from Antony to clear herself of the *imputation* of *infidelity*, she readily complied, equally conscious of the goodness of her cause and the power of her beauty. 10. She was now in her twenty-seventh year, and consequently had improved those allurements by art, which in earlier age are seldom attended to. Her address and wit were still farther heightened, and though there were some women in Rome that were her equals in beauty, none could rival her in the powers of *seducing* conversation. 11. Antony was in Tarsus [1], a city of Cili'cia, when Cleopa'tra resolved to attend his court in person. She sailed down the river Cydnus to meet him, with the most *sumptuous pageantry*. The stern of her galley was covered with gold, its sails were purple silk, its oars silver, and they kept time to the sound of flutes and cymbals. She exhibited herself reclining on a couch spangled with stars of gold, and such other ornaments as poets and painters had usually ascribed to *Venus*. On each side were boys like *Cupids*, fanning her by turns: while beautiful nymphs dressed like *Nereids* and *Graces*, were placed at proper distances around her: the sweets that were burning on board her galley perfumed the banks of the river as she passed, while an infinite number of people gazed upon the exhibition with delight and admiration. 12. Antony soon became captivated with her beauty, and found himself unable to defend his heart against that passion which proved the cause of his future misfortunes [2]. When Cleopa'tra had thus secured her power, she set out on her return to Egypt. Antony, quitting every other object, presently hastened after her: and there gave himself up to all that ease and softness to which his vicious heart was prone, and which that *luxurious* people were able to supply.

13. While he remained thus idle in Egypt, Augustus, who took upon him to lead back the veteran troops, and settle them in Italy, was *assiduously* employed in providing for their subsistence. 14. He had promised them lands at home, as a recompense for their past services; but they

[1] Tarsus, an inland city, was great, populous, and powerful, and maintained the dignity of a metropolis. Its origin is disputed. For antiquity, populousness, and its many ornaments, it excelled all other cities. It was the native place of the Apostle Paul. It is now called Terasso.

[2] Antony, who had seated himself on a magnificent throne to receive her, was on this occasion left quite alone.

could not receive their new grants without turning out the former inhabitants. 15. In consequence of this, multitudes of women, with children in their arms, whose tender years and innocence excited universal compassion, daily filled the temples and the streets with their lamentations. Numbers of husbandmen and shepherds came to *deprecate* the conqueror's intention, or to obtain a habitation in some other part of the world. 16. Among this number was Virgil the poet, to whom mankind owe more obligations than to a thousand conquerors; who in a humble manner begged permission to retain his patrimonial farm. 17. Virgil obtained his request[1]; but the rest of his countrymen at Mantua[2], and Cremo'na[3], were turned out without mercy.

18. Italy and Rome now felt the most extreme miseries. The insolent soldiers plundered at will; while Sextus Pompey, being master of the sea, cut off all foreign communication, and prevented the people from receiving their usual supplies of corn. To these mischiefs were added the commencement of another civil war. 19. Fulvia, the wife of Antony, whom he had left behind at Rome, felt for some time all the rage of jealousy, and resolved to try every method of bringing back her husband from the arms of Cleopa'tra. 20. She considered a breach with Augustus as the only probable means of rousing him from his *lethargy*; and accordingly, with the assistance of Lucius, her brother-in-law, she began to sow the seeds of *dissension*. The pretext was, that Antony should have a share in the distribution of lands as well as Augustus. 21. This produced negotiations between them, and Augustus offered to make the veterans themselves *umpires* in the dispute. Lucius refused to acquiesce; and being at the head of more than six legions, mostly composed of such as were dispossessed of their lands, he resolved to compel Augustus to accept of whatever terms he should offer. Thus a new war was excited between Augustus and Antony: or at least

[1] On showing the order for the restoration of his property, he was nearly killed by the centurion who was in possession, and escaped only by swimming across a river. To these melancholy events he alludes in his first Eclogue.

[2] Mantua was a very ancient town, supposed to be older than Rome. It is still called Mantua, and is the capital of a duchy of the same name.

[3] Cremona was a very opulent and great commercial city. It suffered greatly in the civil wars of Augustus. It is now the capital of the Cremonese, in the duchy of Milan.

the generals of Antony assumed the sanction of his name. 22. Augustus was victorious; Lucius was hemmed in between two armies, and constrained to retreat to Peru'sia, where he was closely besieged by the opposite party. He made many desperate sallies, and Fulvia did all in her power to relieve him, but without success, so that being at last reduced to extremity by famine, he delivered himself up to the mercy of the conqueror. Augustus received him honourably, and generously pardoned him and all his followers [1].

23. Antony having heard of his brother's overthrow, and of his wife being compelled to leave Italy, was resolved to oppose Augustus. He accordingly sailed at the head of a considerable fleet, and had an interview with Fulvia at Athens. 24. He much blamed her for occasioning the late disorders; testified the utmost contempt for her person; and, leaving her upon her death-bed, hastened into Italy to fight Augustus. They both met at Brundu'sium; and it was now thought that the flames of civil war were going to blaze out once more. 25. The forces of Antony were numerous, but mostly newly raised: however, he was assisted by Sextus Pompei'us, who in those oppositions of interest was daily coming into power. Augustus was at the head of those veterans who had always been irresistible, but who seemed no way disposed to fight against Antony, their former general. 26. A *negotiation* was therefore proposed, and a reconciliation was effected: all offences and affronts were mutually forgiven; and, to *cement* the union, a marriage was concluded between Antony and Octavia, the sister of Augustus. 27. A new division of the Roman empire was made between them; Augustus was to have the command of the West; Antony of the East; while Lepidus was obliged to content himself with the provinces in Africa. As for Sextus Pompei'us, he was permitted to retain all the islands he already possessed, together with Peloponnesus [2]; he was also granted the privilege of demanding the consulship,

[1] He however displayed his usual cruelty towards the inhabitants, causing three hundred senators to be sacrificed at an altar erected to the memory of Julius Cæsar, and delivering up the city to plunder and the flames.

[2] Peloponne'sus, a large peninsula and province of Greece, to which it is joined by the isthmus of Corinth. It has received various names. It is now called the Morea.

though absent, and of discharging that office by a friend It was stipulated to leave the sea open, and to pay the people what corn was due out of Sicily. Thus a general peace was concluded, to the great satisfaction of the people, who now expected an end to all their calamities [1].

Questions for Examination.

1. What ensued on the death of Brutus?
2. Were the triumviri possessed of equal power?
3. What were their first measures?
4. By what were the people most affected?
5. What observation has been made on these events?
6. What was the consequence of the establishment of their power?
7. Whither did Antony betake himself for that purpose?
8. How was he employed?
9. By what means did Cleopatra incur his displeasure?
10. What personal advantages did she possess?
11. Did she appear before Antony as a humble suppliant?
12. What was the result of the interview?
13. How was Augustus employed in the mean time?
14. What recompense had he promised these troops?
15. What was the consequence of this tyranny?
16. What remarkable person was among the sufferers?
17. Was his request granted?
18. What was the state of Italy at this time?
19. What occasioned it?
20. What did she consider as the most probable means of reclaiming him?
21. Were terms of accommodation offered and accepted?
22. What was the event of the war?
23. What was Antony's conduct on the occasion?
24. Did he approve of his wife's proceedings?
25. Were the two armies of nearly equal strength?
26. What was the consequence?
27. What further measures were adopted?

[1] This treaty was made on board Pompey's ship, whither Antony and Augustus had repaired. While they were engaged in conference, Me'nas, one of Pompey's commanders, proposed to cut the cable privately, and put to sea, by which he would have his rivals completely in his power; but Pompey nobly rejected the perfidious counsel; preferring honour to the most splendid advantages. He hinted, however, that he would not have been displeased if Me'nas had perpetrated the crime on his own responsibility, without giving him any previous information on the subject.

SECTION VII.

Octavia and Cleopatra.

Oct.——You have been his ruin.
Who made him cheap at Rome, but Cleopatra?
Who made him scorned abroad, but Cleopatra?
At Actium who betrayed him? Cleopatra.
Who made his children orphans, and poor me
A wretched widow? only Cleopatra.

Cleo. Yet she, who loves him best, is Cleopatra.
If you have suffered, I have suffered more.
You bear the specious title of a wife,
To gild your cause, and draw the pitying world
To favour it; the world contemns poor me,
For I have lost my honour, lost my fame,
And stain'd the glory of my royal house,
And all to bear the branded name of mistress.

Dryden.

1. Contempt'ible, *a.* despicable, deserving of scorn.
2. Prodi'gious, *a.* amazingly large.
4. Bac'chanal, *s.* a priestess of Bacchus.
6. Complica'tion, *s.* a mixture, a folding together.
   Exag'gerate, *v.* to enlarge, heap up, aggravate.
9. Importu'nity, *s.* urgent solicitation.
   Repu'diate, *v.* to divorce, to put away.
11. Absurd'ities, *s.* follies, extravagances.
14. Sarcas'tic, *a.* severe, keen.
21. Precip'itately, *ad.* hastily, rashly.
25. Amass'ed, *v.* heaped together, collected.
    Confisca'tions, *s.* forfeits, fines.

1. The only obstacle to the ambition of Augustus was Antony, whom he resolved to remove; and for that purpose rendered his character at Rome as *contemptible* as he possibly could. In fact, Antony's conduct did not a little contribute to promote the endeavours of his ambitious partner. 2. He had marched against the Parthians with a *prodigious* army, but was forced to return with the loss of the fourth part of his forces, and all his baggage.

3. However, Antony seemed quite regardless of contempt: alive only to pleasure, and totally disregarding the business of the state, he spent his whole time in the company of Cleopa'tra, who studied every art to increase his passion, and vary his entertainments. 4. Few women have been so much celebrated for the art of giving novelty to pleasure, and making trifles important. Still ingenious in filling up the languid pauses of sensual delight with some new strokes of refinement, she was at one time a queen, then a *Bac'chanal,* and sometimes a huntress. 5. Not contented with sharing with her all the delights which Egypt could afford, Antony was resolved to enlarge his sphere of

luxury, by granting her some of those kingdoms which belonged to the Roman empire. He gave her all Pheni'cia[1], Cœlo-Sy'ria[2], and Cy'prus, with a great part of Cili'cia, Ara'bia, and Jude'a; gifts which he had no right to bestow, but which he pretended to grant in imitation of Hercules. 6. This *complication* of vice and folly at last totally exasperated the Romans, and Augus'tus, willing to take the advantage of their resentment, took care to *exaggerate* all his defects. 7. At length, when he found the people sufficiently irritated against him, he resolved to send Octa'via, who was then at Rome, to Antony, as if with a view of reclaiming her husband; but, in fact, to furnish a sufficient pretext for declaring war against him, as he knew she would be dismissed with contempt.

8. Antony was now in the city of Leucop'olis[3], revelling with his insidious paramour, when he heard that Octa'via was at Athens, upon her journey to visit him. This was very unwelcome news both to him and Cleopa'tra; the latter, fearing the charms of her rival, endeavoured to convince Antony of the strength of her passion, by her sighs, her looks, and well-feigned melancholy. He frequently caught her in tears, which she seemingly attempted to hide; and of which she appeared extremely reluctant to tell him the cause. 9. These artifices, together with the ceaseless flattery and *importunity* of her creatures, prevailed so much upon Antony's weakness, that he commanded Octa'via to return home, without seeing her; and still more to exasperate the people of Rome, he resolved to *repudiate* her, and take Cleopa'tra as his wife. 10. He accordingly assembled the people of Alexandria in the public theatre, where was raised an alcove of silver, under which were placed two thrones of gold, one for himself, and the other for Cleopa'tra. There he seated himself, dressed as Bacchus[4], while Cleopa'tra sat beside him, clothed in the orna-

[1] Pheni'cia, a province of Syria, celebrated for the invention of letters, and of navigation. The people of this country are the first upon record who traded with England for tin. It is written in the Greek and Latin authors, Phœ'nice. Varro is the only one among the ancients who writes Phœni'cia. This is so noble a part of Syria, as sometimes to be put in opposition to it, or mentioned distinct from it. (Strabo.)

[2] Cœlo-Syria, or the Hollow-Syria, was a province of Syria. (2 Macc. vi. 4.)

[3] Leucop'olis, a city of Ca'ria, in Asia Minor.

[4] The god of wine.

ments and attributes of I'sis [1], the principal deity of the Egyptians. 11. On that occasion he declared her Queen of all the countries which he had already bestowed upon her, while he associated Cæsa'rio, her son by Cæsar, as her partner in the government. To the two children he himself had by her, he gave the title of King of Kings, with very extensive dominions; and, to crown his *absurdities*, he next sent a minute account of his proceedings to the two consuls at Rome [2].

12. In the mean time, Augustus had a sufficient pretext for declaring war, and informed the senate of his intentions. However, he deferred the execution of his design for a while, being then employed in quelling an insurrection of the Illy'rians. 13. The following year was chiefly taken up in preparations against Antony, who, perceiving his intentions, remonstrated to the senate, that he had many causes of complaint against his colleague, who had seized upon Sicily without affording him a share; alleging that he had also dispossessed Lep'idus, and kept to himself the province he had commanded; and that he had divided all Italy among his own soldiers, leaving nothing to recompense those in Asia. 14. To this complaint Augustus was content to make a *sarcastic* answer, implying that it was absurd to complain of his distribution of a few trifling districts in Italy, when Antony, having conquered Par'thia, might now reward his soldiers with cities and provinces [3]. 15. This sarcasm provoked him to send his army without delay into Europe, to meet Augustus, while he and Cleopa'tra followed to Sa'mos [4], in order to prepare for carrying on the war with vigour. 16. When arrived there, it was ridiculous enough to behold the odd mixture of preparations for pleasure and for war. On one side, all the kings and

[1] In Egyptian mythology, supposed to have represented the moon.

[2] While Antony was thus revelling in Egypt, Augustus was engaged in a war with Pompey, whom, after many bloody battles, both by sea and land, he completely defeated and put to death. (Appian, p. 747. Strabo, l. iii. p. 141.) Soon after this, Lep'idus, being forsaken by his troops, was deposed from the Triumvirate, but permitted to enjoy his private estate in peace.

[3] The severity of this sarcasm lay in its being directly contrary to truth, as Antony had been defeated by the Par'thians.

[4] Samos, a celebrated island in the Archipel'ago. It has been rendered famous for the worship and a temple of Juno, with a noted Asylum. Its capital was of the same name, and is memorable for the birth of Pythag'oras.

princes from Egypt to the Euxine Sea had orders to send him supplies of men, provisions, and arms; on the other, comedians, dancers, buffoons, and musicians, were ordered to attend him.

17. His delay at Sa'mos, and afterwards at Athens, where he carried Cleopa'tra to receive new honours, proved extremely favourable to the arms of Augustus, who was at first scarcely in a situation to oppose him, had he gone into Italy; but he soon found time to put himself in a condition for carrying on the war; and shortly after declared it against him in form. At length both sides found themselves in readiness to begin, and their armies were suitable to the greatness of the empire for which they contended. 18. The one was followed by all the forces of the East; the other drew after him all the strength of the West. Antony's force composed a body of one hundred thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse, while his fleet amounted to five hundred ships of war. Augustus mustered but eighty thousand foot, but equalled his adversary in the number of cavalry: his fleet was but half as numerous as Antony's; however, his ships were better built, and manned with better soldiers.

19. The great decisive engagement, which was a naval one, was fought near Ac'tium[1], a city of Epi'rus, at the entrance of the gulf of Ambra'cia. Antony ranged his ships before the mouth of the gulf; and Augustus drew up his fleet in opposition. Neither general assumed any fixed station to command in, but went about from ship to ship, wherever his presence was necessary. In the mean time the two land armies, on the opposite sides of the gulf, were drawn up, only as spectators of the engagement, and encouraged the fleets, by their shouts, to engage. 20. The battle began on both sides after a manner not practised upon former occasions. The prows of their vessels were armed with brazen beaks, with which it was usual to drive furiously against each other: but Antony's ships being large, unwieldy, and badly manned, were incapable of the necessary swiftness, while those of Augustus, from the lightness of their construction, were fearful of the rude encounter: the battle, therefore, rather resembled a land-fight, the ships being brought alongside each other. They fought with great ardour, without advantage on either side, except from a small appearance of disorder in the centre

[1] Ac'tium is famous for a temple of Apollo.

of Antony's fleet. 21. But, all on a sudden, Cleopa'tra determined the fortune of the day. She was seen flying from the engagement with her sixty sail, struck, perhaps, with the terrors natural to her sex; and, to increase the general amazement, Antony himself *precipitately* followed, leaving his fleet at the mercy of the conquerors: while the army on land submitted, being thus abandoned by their general.

22. When Cleopa'tra fled, Antony pursued her in a quinquereme[1], and coming alongside her ship, entered it without any desire of seeing her. She was in the stern, and he went to the prow, where he remained silent and melancholy. In this manner he continued three whole days, during which, either through indignation or shame, he neither saw nor spoke to Cleopa'tra. The queen's female attendants, however, reconciled them, and every thing went on as before. 23. Still he had the consolation to suppose his army continued faithful to him; and accordingly despatched orders to conduct it into Asia. But he was soon undeceived when he arrived in Africa, where he was informed of their submission to his rival[2]. 24. This so transported him with rage, that with difficulty he was prevented from killing himself. At length, at the entreaty of his friends, he returned to Alexandria. 25. Cleopa'tra seemed to retain that fortitude in her misfortunes, which had utterly abandoned her admirer. Having *amassed* considerable riches, by means of *confiscations* and other acts of violence, she formed a very singular and unheard-of project. 26. This was to convey her whole fleet over the Isthmus of Su'ez into the Red Sea, and thereby save herself, with all her treasures, in another region beyond the power of Rome. 27. Some of her vessels were actually transported thither, pursuant to her orders; but the Arabians having burnt them, and Antony dissuading her from the design, she abandoned it for the more improbable scheme of defending Egypt against the conqueror. 28. She omitted nothing in her power to put this in practice, and made all kinds of preparations for war; hoping at least by

[1] A galley with five banks of oars.

[2] They continued unshaken in their fidelity for seven days after the battle of Actium, notwithstanding the advantageous offers made them by Augustus, in hopes Antony would return and put himself at their head; but finding themselves disappointed, and abandoned by their principal officers, they at length surrendered.

these means to obtain better terms from Augustus. In fact, she had been more in love with Antony's fortune than his person; and if she could have fallen upon any method of saving herself, though even at his expense, there is little doubt but she would have embraced it with gladness. 29. She had still hopes from the power of her charms, though she was almost arrived at the age of forty: and was desirous of trying upon Augustus those arts which had already been so successful. Thus, in three embassies which were sent from Antony to Augustus in Asia, the queen had always her secret agents, charged with proposals in her name. Antony desired no more than that his life might be spared, and to have the liberty of passing the remainder of his days in obscurity. To these requests Augustus made no reply. 30. Cleopa'tra also sent him public proposals in favour of her children; but at the same time privately resigned to him her crown, with all the ensigns of royalty. To the queen's public proposal no answer was given; to her private offer he replied, by giving her assurances of his favour, in case she would send away Antony, or put him to death. 31. These private negotiations were not so concealed but they came to the knowledge of Antony, whose jealousy and rage every occurrence now contributed to heighten. He built a small solitary house upon a mole in the sea, and shut himself up, a prey to those passions that are the tormentors of unsuccessful tyranny. There he passed his time, shunning all commerce with mankind, and professing to imitate Timon[1], the man-hater. 32. However, his furious jealousy drove him from this retreat into society; for hearing that Cleopa'tra had secret conferences with one Thyrsus, an emissary from Augustus, he seized upon him, ordered him to be cruelly scourged, and sent him back to his patron. At the same time he sent letters by him importing that Thyrsus had been chastised for insulting a man in misfortunes; but withal he gave Augustus permission to revenge himself by scourging Hippar'chus, Antony's freedman, in the same manner. The revenge, in this case, would have been highly pleasing to

[1] Ti'mon, the misanthrope, was born near Athens, A.D. 420. He declared himself the enemy of the human race, and had a companion named Apeman'tus, who possessed a similar disposition. The latter asking him one day, why he paid such respect to Alcibi'ades, "It is," said the churl, "because I foresee he will prove the ruin of the Athe'nians, my countrymen." (Plutarch.)

Antony, as Hippar'chus had left him to join the fortunes of his more successful rival.

Questions for Examination.

1. What obstacle remained to the ambition of Augustus, and how did he attempt its removal?
2. How was Antony at this time employed?
3. Did he keenly feel this misfortune?
4. Was she eminently skilled in the art of pleasing?
5. Was not Antony lavish in his favours to her?
6. What was the consequence of this folly?
7. By what means did he seek a quarrel?
8. How was this measure approved by Antony and Cleopatra?
9. What imprudent resolutions did he adopt?
10. Did he do this publicly?
11. What farther favours did he bestow on her?
12. Did Augustus immediately commence hostilities?
13. What complaints did Antony make of Augustus?
14. Did Augustus notice these accusations?
15. What effect had his reply on Antony?
16. Were these military preparations formidable?
17. What advantages did Antony offer Augustus?
18. What was the respective strength of the armies?
19. Describe the preparations for this great conflict.
20. Was the engagement well contested?
21. What extraordinary circumstance decided its fate?
22. Did he reproach Cleopatra for her timidity?
23. Had Antony any resources left?
24. How did he receive this news?
25. How did Cleopatra act in this exigence?
26. What was this project?
27. Was it put in execution?
28. How did she attempt this, and with what views?
29. What farther hopes had she of favour?
30. What proposals did she make, and how were they received?
31. Was Antony aware of these negotiations?
32. Did he persist in thus secluding himself?

SECTION VIII.

O sun, thy uprise I shall see no more;
Fortune and Antony part here; even here
Do we shake hands.—All come to this!—The hearts
That spaniel'd me at heels, to whom I gave
Their wishes, do discandy, melt their sweets
On blossoming Cæsar; and this pine is bark'd
That overtopp'd them all. SHAKSPEARE.

1. Retard'ed, *part.* delayed, kept back.
2. Despera'tion, *s.* despair, the resolution of despair.
4. Magnif'icently, *ad.* richly, nobly.
9. Ob'viating, *part.* preventing.
10. Se'pulchre, *s.* a tomb.
11. Capitula'tion, *s.* surrender.
24. Regi'men, *s.* a regulation of diet.
26. Pros'trated, *v.* threw themselves down.
28. Per'fidy, *s.* treachery, baseness.
31. Propi'tiate, *v.* to induce to favour, to conciliate.
Expa'tiated, *v.* spoke at length.
33. In'ventory, *s.* a list, a catalogue.

1. AUGUSTUS advanced with another army against Pelu'sium [1], which, by its strong situation, might have *retarded* his progress for some time. But the governor of the city, either wanting courage to defend it, or previously instructed by Cleopa'tra to give it up, permitted him to take possession; so that Augus'tus had now no obstacle in his way to Alexan'dria, whither he marched with all expedition. 2. Antony, upon his arrival, sallied out to oppose him, fighting with *desperation*, and putting the enemy's cavalry to flight. 3. This slight advantage once more revived his declining hopes: and, being naturally vain, he re-entered Alexandria in triumph. Then going, armed as he was, to the palace, and embracing Cleopa'tra, he presented to her a soldier who had distinguished himself in the engagement. 4. The queen rewarded him very *magnificently;* presenting him with a helmet and breastplate of gold. With these, however, the soldier deserted in the night to the other army, prudently resolving to secure his riches, by keeping on the strongest side. 5. Antony, not able to bear this defection without fresh indignation, resolved to make a bold expiring effort by sea and land; but previously offered to fight his adversary in single combat. Augus'tus, however, too well knew the inequality of their situations to comply with this forlorn proposal; he therefore coolly replied, "Antony has ways enough to die besides in single combat."

6. The next day, he posted the few troops he had re-

[1] A strong city of Egypt.

maining upon a rising ground near the city : whence he sent orders to his galleys to engage the enemy. There he waited to be a spectator of the combat : and at first he had the satisfaction to see them advance in good order. 7. But his joy was soon turned into rage, when he beheld his ships only saluting those of Augus'tus, and both fleets uniting together, and sailing back into the harbour; and at the same time his cavalry deserting him. He tried, however, to lead on his infantry; but these were easily vanquished; and he himself compelled to return into the town. 8. His fury was now ungovernable; crying out as he passed, that he was betrayed by Cleopa'tra, and delivered up to those who, for her sake alone, were his enemies. In these suspicions he was not deceived; for it was by secret orders from the queen that the fleet passed over to the enemy.

9. Cleopa'tra had for a long while dreaded the effects of Antony's jealousy; and had some time before prepared a method of *obviating* the effects of any sudden sallies it might produce. 10. Near the temple of I'sis she had erected a building, which was seemingly designed for a *sepulchre*. Hither she moved her treasure and most valuable effects, covering them with torches, fagots, and other combustible matter. 11. This sepulchre she designed to answer a double purpose, as well to screen her from the sudden resentments of Antony, as to make Augustus believe that she would burn all her treasure, in case he refused proper terms of *capitulation*. Here, therefore, she retired from Antony's fury : shutting the fortified gates; and giving orders to have it reported that she was dead. 12. This news soon reached Antony, and it recalled all his former love and tenderness. Subject to every gust of passion, and each of them in the extreme, he now lamented her death with the same violence that he had just before seemed to desire it. "Miserable man!" exclaimed he, "what is there now worth living for? since all that could soothe or soften my cares is departed! O Cleopa'tra! our separation does not so much afflict me, as the disgrace I suffer, in permitting a woman to instruct me in the ways of dying." 13. He now called to him one of his freedmen, named Eros, whom he had engaged, by oath, to kill him, whenever fortune should drive him to this last resource, and commanded him to perform his promise. This faithful follower drew his sword, as if going instantly to strike the

blow; when turning his face, he plunged it into his own bosom, and dropped at his master's feet. 14. Antony, for a while, hung over his faithful servant, charmed with his fidelity. Then snatching up the sword he stabbed himself in the belly, and fell backward upon a couch. 15. The wound was mortal; yet the blood stopping, he recovered his spirits; and earnestly conjured those who were come into the room to put an end to his life; but they all fled, seized with fright and horror. 16. He continued in this miserable condition till he was informed by one of the queen's secretaries, that his mistress was still alive; and begged that he would suffer himself to be transported to the monument where she was. He was accordingly brought to the sepulchre: but Cleopa'tra, attended by her two women only, durst by no means permit the gate to be opened, but from the window threw down cords, with which, with great difficulty, they drew him up. 17. Antony, bathed in his blood, held out his hands to Cleopa'tra, and faintly endeavoured to raise himself from the couch on which he had been laid. The queen gave way to sorrow, tore her clothes, beat her breast, and kissing the wound of which he was dying, called him her husband, her lord, her emperor. 18. Antony entreated her to moderate the transports of her grief, and to preserve her life, if she could be able to do it with honour. "As for me, lament not my misfortunes," he said, "but congratulate me upon the happiness which I have enjoyed; I have lived the greatest and most powerful of men; and though I fall, my fate is not ignominious; *a Roman myself, I am at last by a Roman overcome.*" Having thus said, he expired.

19. Proculei'us now made his appearance by command of Augus'tus, who had been informed of Antony's desperate conduct. He was sent to try all means of getting Cleopa'tra into his power. 20. Augus'tus had a double motive for his solicitude on this occasion; one was—to prevent her destroying the treasures she had taken with her into the tomb; the other—to preserve her person, as an ornament to grace his triumph. 21. Cleopa'tra, however, was upon her guard, and rejected any conference with Proculei'us, except through the gate, which was well secured. At length, having procured a ladder, he with two of Augustus's soldiers entered by the same window through which Antony had been drawn up. Cleopa'tra, perceiving what had happened, drew a poniard that hung

at her girdle, to stab herself, but Proculei'us forced it from her. 22. Augus'tus, pleased to find her in his power, sent Epaphrodi'tus to bring her to his palace, and to watch her with the utmost circumspection. He was ordered to use her, in every respect, with that deference and submission which were due to her rank, and to do every thing in his power to render her captivity tolerable.

23. Though kings and generals made interest for Antony's body, in order to pay the last honours to it, this consolation was reserved for Cleopa'tra. She alone was permitted to have the honour of granting Antony the rites of burial: and was furnished with every thing becoming his dignity to receive, or her love to offer. 24. Yet still she languished under her new confinement. Her many losses, her frantic sorrow, the blows which she had given her bosom, produced a fever which she wished to increase. She resolved, by abstaining from nourishment, to starve herself to death, under the pretence of a *regimen* necessary for her disorder. 25. But Augustus being made acquainted with the real motive by her physicians, began to threaten her with regard to the safety of her children, in case she should perish. The fear of being the cause of their death was a motive she could not resist. Cleopa'tra therefore allowed herself to be treated as was thought proper, and she recovered.

26. In the mean time Augustus made his entry into Alexan'dria; taking care to mitigate the fears of the inhabitants by conversing familiarly with Ar'cus, a philosopher, and a native of the place. The citizens, however, trembled at his approach. And when he placed himself upon the tribunal, they *prostrated* themselves, with their faces to the ground, before him, like criminals, who waited the sentence of their execution. 27. Augus'tus presently ordered them to rise, telling them that three motives induced him to pardon them:—his respect for Alexan'der, who was the founder of their city; his admiration of its beauty; and his friendship for Ar'cus, their fellow-citizen. 28. Two only of particular note were put to death upon this occasion; Antony's eldest son, Antyl'lus, and Cæsa'rio, the son of Julius Cæsar, both betrayed into his hands by their respective tutors; who themselves suffered for their *perfidy* shortly after. As for the rest of Cleopa'tra's children, he treated them with great gentleness, leaving them to the care of those who were entrusted with their education,

to whom he gave orders to provide them with every thing suitable to their birth. 29. Cleopa'tra being recovered, Augus'tus visited her in person: she received him lying on a couch; but upon his entering the apartment, rose up, habited in a loose robe, and prostrated herself before him. Her misfortunes had given an air of severity to her features: her hair was dishevelled, her voice trembling, her complexion pale, and her eyes swollen with weeping; yet, still her natural beauty seemed to gleam through the distresses that surrounded her; and the grace of her motions, and the alluring softness of her looks, still bore testimony to the former power of her charms. 30. Augus'tus raised her with his usual complaisance, and, desiring her to sit, placed himself beside her. 31. Cleopa'tra had been prepared for this interview, and made use of every art to *propitiate* the conqueror. She tried apologies, entreaties, and allurements, to obtain his favour and soften his resentment. She began by attempting to justify her conduct; and when her skill failed against manifest proofs, she turned her defence into supplications. She reminded him of Cæsar's humanity to those in distress; she read some of his letters to her, full of tenderness; and *expatiated* upon the intimacy that subsisted between them. "But of what service," cried she, "are now all his benefits to me! Why did I not die with him! Yet still he lives; methinks I see him still before me! he revives in you." 32. Augustus, who was no stranger to this method of address, remained firm against all attacks; answering with a cold indifference, which obliged her to give her attempts a different turn. 33. She now addressing his avarice, presented him with an *inventory* of her treasure and jewels. This gave occasion to a very singular scene, that may serve to show that the little decorums of breeding were then by no means attended to as in modern times. 34. One of her stewards having alleged that the inventory was defective, and that she had secreted a part of her effects, she fell into the most extravagant passion, started from her couch, and snatching him by the hair, gave him repeated blows on the face. Augus'tus, smiling at her indignation, led her to the couch, and desired her to be pacified. To this she replied, that it was insufferable to be insulted in the presence of one whom she so highly esteemed. "And admitting," cried she, "that I have secreted a few ornaments, am I to blame, when they are reserved, not for myself, but for Liv'ia and Octa'-

via, whom I hope to make my intercessors with you?" 35. The apology, which intimated a desire of living, was not disagreeable to Augustus, who politely assured her she was at liberty to keep whatever she had reserved, and that in every thing she should be indulged to the height of her expectations. He then took leave, and departed; imagining he had reconciled her to life, and to the indignity of being shown in the intended triumph, which he was preparing for his return to Rome: but in this he was deceived. 36. Cleopa'tra had all this time corresponded with Dolabel'la, a young Roman of high birth in the camp of Augustus, who, from compassion, or perhaps some stronger motives, was interested in her misfortunes. By him she was secretly informed, that Augustus determined to send her and her children, within three days, to Rome, to grace his triumphant entry. 37. She at length, therefore, determined upon dying; but first throwing herself upon Antony's coffin, bewailed her captivity, and renewed her protestations not to survive him. Having bathed, and ordered a sumptuous banquet, she attired herself in the most splendid manner. After partaking of the banquet, she commanded all, except her two women, to leave the apartment. She had contrived to have an asp secretly conveyed to her in a basket of fruit, and then wrote to Augustus to inform him of her fatal purpose, desiring to be buried in the same tomb with Antony. 38. Augustus, upon receiving the letter, instantly despatched messengers in hopes to stop the fulfilment of her intentions, but they arrived too late. Upon entering the chamber, they beheld Cleopa'tra lying dead upon her couch, arrayed in royal robes. Near her I'ras, one of her faithful attendants, was stretched at the feet of her mistress; and Char'mion [1], the other, scarcely alive, was placing the diadem upon Cleopa'tra's head. "Alas!" cried one of the messengers, "is this well done, Charmion?" "Yes," replied she, "it is well done; such a death becomes a glorious queen, descended from a race of glorious ancestors." Pronouncing these words, she dropped and expired with her much loved mistress [2].

[1] Pronounced Kar'mion.

[2] Cleopa'tra was forty years old at the time of her death, and had lived twelve years with Antony.

Questions for Examination.

1. What new conquest was achieved by Augustus?
2. What was Antony's conduct on his arrival?
3. Was he elated by this slight success?
4. How was he rewarded, and in what manner did he evince his gratitude?
5. What were Antony's feeling and conduct on the occasion?
6. Did he attempt farther hostilities?
7. Was this satisfaction well founded?
8. How was he affected by this ill success?
9. Was Cleopatra prepared for these misfortunes?
10. What precautions had she taken?
11. What was her design in building this sepulchre?
12. Was Antony affected by this news?
13. What followed?
14. Did Antony persist in his purpose?
15. Did he immediately expire?
16. Had he another interview with Cleopatra?
17, 18. Relate the particulars of this interview.
19. How did Augustus act on this occasion?
20. Why was Augustus anxious to preserve the life of Cleopatra?
21. Did he obtain ready admittance to her, and what was the consequence?
22. How was she treated?
23. By whom were the last honours paid to Antony?
24. Did this kindness reconcile her to her situation?
25. By what means did Augustus overcome her resolution?
26. What circumstances attended the entrance of Augustus into Alexandria?
27. Were their fears realized?
28. Who fell victims on the occasion?
29. Did Augustus visit Cleopatra, and how was he received?
30. What was his conduct towards her?
31. How did Cleopatra conduct herself at this interview?
32. Was Augustus moved by her artifices?
33. Mention her next attempt, and its consequence.
34. Relate the particulars.
35. Was the apology accepted?
36. With whom did Cleopatra correspond, and what did she learn?
37. What resolution did she form, and how did she accomplish it?
38. Did not Augustus attempt to prevent her resolution, and was he successful?

CHAPTER XXII.

SECT. I.

Happy Augustus! who so well inspired,
Couldst throw thy pomp and royalties aside,
Attentive to the wise, the great of soul,
And dignify thy mind. Thrice glorious days,
Auspicious to the muses! DYER.

1. Oblit'erate, *v.* to blot out, to cause to be forgotten.
Clem'ency, *s.* mercy, gentleness, mildness.
3. Devasta'tion, *s.* the act of laying waste, destruction.
5. Don'atives, *s.* gifts, largesses.
6. O'dium, *s.* hatred, blame.
10. Af'fable, *a.* free, condescending.
15. Conces'sions, *s.* grants, acts of yielding.
20. E'dicts, *s.* proclamations that have the force of laws.
24. Manumis'sion, *s.* the act of setting slaves free.
26. Disallow'ed, *part.* forbidden, not allowed.
27. Extir'pate, *v.* to root out, to destroy.
Dete'r, *v.* to frighten from.

1. BY the death of Antony, Augus'tus having become master of the Roman empire, returned to Rome in triumph; where, by feasts and magnificent shows, he began to *obliterate* the impressions of his former cruelty; and thenceforward resolved to secure, by his *clemency*, a throne, the foundations of which were laid in blood. 2. He was now at the head of the most extensive empire that mankind had ever beheld. The former spirit of the Romans, and those characteristic marks that distinguished them from others, were now totally lost. The city was inhabited by a concourse from all the countries of the world: and being consequently divested of all just patriotic principles, perhaps a monarchy was the best form of government that could be found to unite its members. 3. However, it was very remarkable, that during these long contentions among themselves, and these horrid *devastations* by civil war, the state was daily growing more formidable and powerful, and completed the destruction of all the kings who presumed to oppose it.

4. The first care of Augus'tus was to assure himself of the friends of Antony; for which purpose he publicly reported that he had burnt all Antony's letters and papers without reading them, convinced that, while any thought themselves suspected, they would be fearful of even offering him their friendship.

5. He had gained the kingdom by his army, but he resolved to govern it by the senate. This body, though

greatly fallen from its ancient splendour, he knew to be the best constituted, and most remarkable for wisdom and justice. To the senate, therefore, he gave the chief power in the administration of his government, while he himself secured the fidelity of the people and the army by *donatives*, and acts of favour. 6. By these means the *odium* of severity fell upon the senate, and the popularity of pardon was solely his own. Thus restoring splendour to the senate, and discountenancing corruption, he pretended to reserve to himself a very moderate share of authority, to which none could object: namely, power to compel all ranks of the state to do their duty. 7. This was, in fact, reserving absolute dominion in his own hands; but the misguided people began to look upon his moderation with astonishment: they considered themselves as restored to their former freedom, except the capacity of promoting sedition; and the senate supposed their power re-established in all things but their tendency to injustice. It was even said that the Romans, by such a government, lost nothing of the happiness that liberty could produce, and were exempt from all the misfortunes it could occasion. 8. This observation might have some truth under such a monarch as Augustus now appeared to be; but they were afterwards taught to change their sentiments under his successors, when they found themselves afflicted with all the punishments that tyranny could inflict, or sedition make necessary.

9. After having established this admirable order, Augustus found himself agitated by different passions; and considered, a long time, whether he should keep the empire, or restore the people to their ancient liberty. 10. But he adopted the advice of Mæce'nas, which was, to continue in power; and he was afterwards swayed by him on every occasion. By the advice of that minister, he became gentle, *affable*, and humane: he encouraged men of learning, and gave them much of his time and his friendship. These in their turn relieved his most anxious hours, and circulated his praise throughout the empire.

11. Thus having given peace and happiness to his subjects, and being convinced of the attachment of all orders of the state to his person, he resolved upon impressing the people with an idea of his magnanimity, by making a show of resigning his authority. 12. To this end, having previously instructed his creatures in the senate how to act,

he addressed them in a studied speech, importing the difficulty of governing so extensive an empire; a task to which, he said, none but the immortal gods were equal. He modestly urged his own inability, though impelled by every motive to undertake it; and then, with a degree of seeming generosity, freely gave up all that power which his arms had gained, and which the senate had confirmed, giving them to understand, that the true spirit of the Romans was not lost in him. 13. This speech operated upon the senate variously, as they were more or less in the secret. Many believed the sincerity of his conduct as an act of heroism unequalled by any thing that had hitherto appeared; others, though ignorant of his motives, distrusted his designs. Some there were, who having greatly suffered during the popular commotions, were fearful of their being renewed; but the majority, who were properly instructed by his ministers, frequently attempted to interrupt him while speaking, and received his proposals with pretended indignation. 14. These unanimously besought him not to resign the administration; and upon his continuing to decline the request, they in a manner compelled him to comply. However, that his person might be in greater security, they immediately decreed that the pay of his guard should be doubled. 15. On the other hand, that he might seem to make *concessions* on his side, he permitted the senate to govern the weak, internal provinces, while the most powerful provinces, and those that required the greatest armies for their defence, were taken entirely under his own command. Over these he assumed the government for ten years only, leaving the people still in hopes of regaining their ancient freedom; at the same time, however, laying his measures so well, that his government was renewed every ten years to his death.

16. This show of resignation only served to confirm him in the empire, and in the hearts of the people. New honours were heaped upon him. He was now first called Augustus (a name I have hitherto used, as that by which he is best known in history). A laurel was ordered to be planted at his gates. That house was called the palace wherever he made his abode. He was confirmed in the title of father of his country, and his person declared sacred and inviolable. 17. In short, flattery seemed on the rack to find out new modes of pleasing him; but, though he despised the arts of the senate, he permitted their homage,

well knowing that, among mankind, titles produce a respect, which enforces authority.

18. Upon entering into his tenth consulship, the senate, by oath, approved of all his acts, and set him wholly above the power of the laws. They, some time after, offered to swear not only to all the laws he had made, but such as he should make for the future. 19. It was customary with fathers upon their death-beds to command their children to carry oblations to the Capitol, with an inscription, that at the day of their deaths they left Augustus in health. It was determined that no man should be put to death on such days as the emperor entered the city. Upon a dearth of provisions, the people entreated him to accept of the dictatorship; but he would by no means assume the title of dictator, which had been abolished by law.

20. An accumulation of titles and employments did not in the least diminish his assiduity in fulfilling the duties of each. Several very wholesome *edicts* were passed by his command, tending to suppress corruption in the senate, and licentiousness in the people. 21. He ordained that none should exhibit a show of gladiators without an order from the senate, and then not oftener than twice a year; nor with more than a hundred and twenty at a time. This law was extremely necessary at so corrupt a period of the empire, when armies of these unfortunate men were brought at once upon the stage, and compelled to fight, often till half of them were slain. 22. It had been usual also with the knights, and women of the first distinction, to exhibit themselves as dancers upon the theatre: he ordered that not only these, but their children and grandchildren, should be restrained from such exercises for the future. 23. He fined many that had refused to marry at a certain age; and rewarded such as had many children. He ordained, that virgins should not be married till twelve years of age. He permitted any person to kill an adulterer, if taken in the fact. He enacted that the senators should be held in great reverence; adding to their dignity what he had taken from their power. 24. He made a law, that no man should have the freedom of the city without a previous examination into his merit and character. He appointed new rules and limits to the *manumission* of slaves; and was himself very strict in the observance of them. With regard to dramatic performers, of whom he was very fond, he severely examined their morals, not

allowing licentiousness in their lives, nor indecency in their actions. Though he encouraged the athletic exercises, he would not permit women to be present at them, holding it unbecoming the modesty of the sex to be spectators of these sports, which were performed by naked men. 25. In order to prevent bribery in suing for offices, he took considerable sums of money from the candidates, by way of pledge, and if any indirect practices were proved against them, they were obliged to forfeit all. 26. Slaves had been hitherto *disallowed* to confess any thing against their own masters; but he abolished the practice, and first sold the slave to another, which altering the property, his examination became free. 27. These, and other laws, all tending to *extirpate* vice, or *deter* from crimes, gave the manners of the people another complexion; and the rough character of the Roman soldier was now softened into that of the refined citizen[1]. Several statues were erected to his honour by the grateful people; we insert a representation of one that has escaped the ravages of time, in which he appears clothed in the robes of peace, and addressing some public assembly, probably the senate.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the consequence of the death of Antony?
2. What was the character of the Roman people at this time?
3. Did these convulsions weaken the empire?
4. What was the first care of Augustus?
5. In what way did he propose to govern?
6. What were the consequences of this conduct?

[1] In his sixth consulship, Augustus commanded a census to be made, when there was found the astonishing number of 4,060,000 inhabitants in Rome, which was fifty miles in circumference.

7. What advantages did the Romans fancy they enjoyed?
8. Was this observation correct?
9. What conflicting passions agitated the mind of Augustus?
10. Whose advice did he adopt, and what was that advice?
11. What artifice did he employ to confirm his power?
12. How did he make his intentions known?
13. What effect was produced by this proposal?
14. What was their conduct on this occasion?
15. What farther artifices did he employ?
16. What were the consequences of this affected moderation?
17. Was he imposed on by these arts?
18. What farther instances of abject servility did the senate display?
19. What else was done to his honour?
20. Did these honours render him remiss?
21. What salutary law did he enact?
22. What next?
23. What regulations concerning marriage, and respect to senators, did he enforce?
24. How did he improve the morals of the people?
25. How did he prevent bribery?
26. By what means did he promote justice?
27. What was the consequence of these regulations?

SECTION II.

The death of those distinguish'd by their station,
But by their virtue more, awakes the mind
To solemn dread, and strikes a saddening awe. YOUNG.

1. Condescen'sion, *s.* affability from persons in a superior station.
2. In'solent, *a.* haughty, saucy.
   Prox'y, *s.* a substitute, a person who acts for another.
6. Impe'rious, *a.* haughty, fond of command.
8. Noctur'nal, *a.* nightly.
10. Contem'poraries, *s.* persons living in the same age.
14. Porten'd, *v.* to foretoken, foreshow.
18. Adula'tion, *s.* flattery.
20. Erad'icated, *part.* rooted out, destroyed.

1. AUGUSTUS, by his own example, tended greatly to humanize his fellow-citizens; for being placed above all equality, he had nothing to fear from *condescension*. He was familiar with all, and suffered himself to be reprimanded with the most patient humility. Though, by his sole authority, he could condemn or acquit whomsoever he thought proper, he gave the laws their proper course; and even pleaded for persons he desired to protect. 2. When the advocate for Primus[1] desired to know with an *insolent*

[1] M. Primus, while governor of Macedon, had made an irruption into the country of the Odrysians; for this he was prosecuted, and pleaded that it was by the emperor's orders. Augustus denying this, L. Murena put the impudent question to him mentioned in the text.

air, what brought Augustus into court, the emperor calmly replied, "The public good." When one of his veteran soldiers entreated his protection, Augustus bid him apply to an advocate. "Ah!" replied the soldier, "it was not by *proxy* that I served you at the battle of Ac'tium." Augustus was so pleased, that he pleaded his cause and gained it for him. One day a petition was presented to him with so much awe as to displease him. "Friend," cried he, "you seem as if you were offering something to an elephant rather than to a man; be bolder." 3. Once, as he was sitting in judgment, Mæce'nas, perceiving that he was inclined to be severe, and not being able to get to him through the crowd, he threw a paper into his lap, on which was written, "Arise, executioner!" Augustus read it without displeasure, and immediately rising, pardoned those whom he was disposed to condemn. 4. But what most of all showed a total alteration, was his treatment of Corne'lius Cinna, Pompey's grandson. This nobleman had entered into a conspiracy against him: Augustus sent for the other conspirators, reprimanded them, and dismissed them. But resolving to mortify Cinna by the greatness of his generosity; "I have twice," says he, "given you your life, as an enemy and as a conspirator; I now give you the consulship: let us therefore be friends for the future; let us contend only in showing, whether my confidence or your fidelity shall be victorious."

5. In the practice of such virtues he passed a long reign. In fact, he seemed the first Roman who aimed at gaining a character by the arts of peace; and who obtained the affections of the soldiers, without any military talents of his own: nevertheless, the Roman arms, under his lieutenants, were crowned with success.

6. But he had uneasiness of a domestic nature that distressed him. He had married Liv'ia, the wife of Tibe'rius Ne'ro, by the consent of her husband, when she was six months advanced in her pregnancy. She was an *imperious* woman; and, conscious of being beloved, controlled him at her pleasure. 7. She had two sons, Tibe'rius the elder, and Cru'sus, who was born three months after she had been married to Augustus, and who was thought to be his own son. The elder of these, Tibe'rius, whom he afterwards adopted, and who succeeded him in the empire, was a good general, but of a suspicious and obstinate temper, and of a conduct so turbulent and restless, that he was, at last,

exiled for five years to the island of Rhodes, where he chiefly spent his time in a retired manner, conversing with the Greeks, and addicting himself to literature, of which, however, he afterwards made but a bad use.

8. But the greatest affliction that Augustus experienced was from the conduct of his daughter, Julia, whom he had by Scribo'nia, his former wife. Julia, whom he married to his general Agrip'pa, and afterwards to Tibe'rius, set no bounds to her lewdness. Not contented with enjoying her pleasures, she seemed also earnest in publishing the infamy of her prostitutions. She was arrived at that excess of wantonness, that she had her *nocturnal* appointments in the most public parts of the city: the very court where her father presided was not exempt from her debaucheries. 9. Augustus, at first, had thoughts of putting her to death, but, after consideration, he banished her to Pandata'tria[1], forbidding her the use of wine, and all inflammatory delicacies. He ordered that no person should come near her without his permission; and sent her mother Scribo'nia along with her to bear her company. When any one attempted to intercede for Julia, his answer was, "that fire and water should sooner unite than he with her." 10. Augustus, having survived most of his *contemporaries*, at length, in the seventy-fourth year of his age, began to think of retiring from the fatigues of state, and of constituting Tibe'rius his partner in the throne. He desired the senate to salute him no longer at the palace; nor take it amiss, if, for the future, he could not converse with them as formerly. 11. From that time Tibe'rius was joined in the government of the provinces with him, and invested with nearly the same authority. However, Augustus could not entirely forsake the administration, which habit had rendered a source of pleasure; and he still continued a watchful guardian, and showed himself, to the last, a lover of his people. 12. Finding it now, therefore, very inconvenient to come to the senate, by reason of his age, he desired to have twenty privy-counsellors assigned him for a year; and it was decreed, that whatever measures were resolved upon by them, and the consuls, should have entirely the force of a law. 13. He seemed apprehensive of his approaching end, for he made his will, and

U.C. 762.

[1] An island on the coast of Lucania, in Italy: now called Santa Mario.

delivered it to the vestal virgins. He then solemnized the census, or numbering the people, whom he found to amount to four millions one hundred and thirty-seven thousand; which shows Rome to be equal to four of the greatest cities of modern times. 14. While these ceremonies were performing, in the midst of a mighty concourse of people in the Cam'pus Mar'tius, it is said that an eagle flew round the emperor several times, and directing its flight to a neighbouring temple, perched over the name of Agrippa; this omen was, by the augurs, conceived to *portend* the death of the emperor. 15. Shortly after, having accompanied Tibe'rius in his march into Illyr'ia, he was taken ill. Returning thence, he sent for Tibe'rius, and his most intimate friends. A few hours before his death, he ordered a looking-glass to be brought, and his hair to be adjusted with more than usual care. He then addressed his friends, whom he beheld surrounding his bed, and desired to know whether he had properly played his part in life; to which, being answered in the affirmative, he cried out, with his last breath, "Then give me your applause." Thus at the age of seventy-six, after reigning forty-four years, he expired in the arms of Liv'ia; bidding her remember their marriage and their last farewell [1].

16. The death of the emperor caused inexpressible grief throughout the whole empire. It was, by some, supposed that his wife Liv'ia had some hand in hastening it, with a view to procure the succession more speedily for her son. However this was, she took care, for a time, to keep the important event concealed, by guarding all the passages to the palace; sometimes giving out that he was recovered, and then pretending a relapse. At length, having settled the succession to her mind, she published the emperor's death; and at the same time, the adoption of Tibe'rius to the empire. 17. The emperor's funeral was performed with great magnificence. The senators being in their places, Tibe'rius, on whom that care devolved, pronounced a consolatory oration. After this his will was read, wherein

[1] The date of Augustus's reign is here reckoned from the death of Antony, when he became sole monarch; but if it be reckoned from his first coming into power, soon after the death of Julius Cæsar, it is nearer 56 years. Augustus carried on his wars principally by his lieutenants, but he went personally into Spain and Gaul. His bravery, however, has been greatly called in question, and many flagrant instances of his cowardice recorded. How true they may be is not easy to determine.

he made Tibe'rius and Liv'ia his heirs. 18. He was studious of serving his country to the very last, and the sorrow of the people seemed equal to his assiduity. It was decreed, that all the women should mourn for him a whole year. Temples were erected to him, divine honours were allowed him, and one Nume'rius At'ticus, a senator, willing to convert the *adulation* of the times to his own benefit, received a large sum of money for swearing that he saw him ascending into heaven; so that no doubt remained among the people concerning his divinity.

19. Such were the honours paid to Augustus, whose power began in the slaughter, and terminated in the happiness of his subjects; so that it was said of him, "that it had been good for mankind if he had never been born, or if he had never died." 20. It is possible that the cruelties exercised in his triumvirate were suggested by his colleagues. In the case of Cæsar's death, he might think that revenge was virtue. Certain it is, that severities were necessary to restore public tranquillity; for, until the Roman spirit should be *eradicated*, no monarchy could be secure. 21. He indulged his subjects in the appearance of a republic, while he made them really happy in the effects of a most absolute monarchy, administered with the most consummate prudence. In this last quality he seems to have excelled most monarchs; and, indeed, could we separate Octavius from Augustus, he was one of the most faultless princes in history. 22. About this time our Saviour was born in Jude'a [1], "in the days of Herod the king." Herod was the first foreigner who became king of the Jews, and thus was fulfilled the prophecy, "the sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh (Christ the Prince of Peace) come."

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the general conduct of Augustus?
2. Mention some instances of his moderation.
3. What farther instance of his moderation is on record?
4. How did he most decidedly show the alteration in his disposition?
5. In what was he particularly remarkable?
6. Was he happy in domestic life?
7. What family had she, and what was the character of her son?

[1] The temple of Janus was now shut for the third time since the foundation of the city.

8. Had he no other domestic trials?
9. In what way was she punished?
10. Was the reign of Augustus of considerable length?
11. Did he associate Tiberius with him in the government?
12. By what means did he lighten the burden of government?
13. By what measure did he prepare for his approaching end?
14. What omen portended his death?
15. How did he meet his end?
16. How were the people affected by his death, and why was it for a time concealed?
17. How was his funeral celebrated?
18. What honours were decreed him?
19. Were those honours deserved?
20. What excuses may be made for his early cruelties?
21. By what means did he secure his power?
22. What remarkable event happened in his reign?

SECTION III.

Though young in years, in glory thou eclipsed
The oldest vet'rans of the state. Thy acts,
Thy fame, Germanicus, will long outlive
The venom'd shafts of envy; and the praise
Of patriot tongues will follow thee in death. CLARKE.

1. Dissimula'tion, *s.* a dissembling, hypocrisy.
2. Disgui'se, *s.* concealment.
5. Indefati'gable, *a.* unwearied.
6. Popular'ity, *s.* favour with the people.
8. Postpo'ne, *v.* to put off.
9. Spe'cious, *a.* plausible.
15. Defa'me, *v.* to calumniate, to speak evil of.
16. Machina'tions, *s.* artifices, schemes.
17. Appar'ent, *a.* evident, plain, visible.
25. Sui'cide, *s.* self-murder.
Cul'pable, *a.* blameworthy.
Appre'ciate, *v.* to value.

1. TIBE'RIUS was fifty-six years old when he took upon him the government of the Roman empire. He had lived in a state of profound *dissimulation* under Augustus, and was not yet hardy enough to show himself in his real character. In the beginning of his reign nothing appeared but prudence, generosity, and clemency[1]. 2. But the successes of his nephew, German'icus, son of his late brother Dru'sus, over the Germans, first brought his natural disposition to light, and discovered the malignity of his mind without *disguise*. 3. He was hardly settled on his throne, when he received intelligence that the legions in Panno'nia[2], hearing of the death

U.C. 762. A.D. 10.

[1] He began his reign, however, with the murder of Agrippa Posthumus, the grandson of Augustus.

[2] Panno'nia, an extensive country of Europe: comprising Carnio'la, Croa'tia, Sclavo'nia, Bos'nia, part of Aus'tria, Ser'via, and Hungary; but its boundaries were different at different periods.

of Augustus, and desirous of novelty, had revolted; but these were soon quieted, and Percen'nius, their leader, slain[1]. 4. A commotion in Germany was attended with much more important consequences. The legions in that part of the empire were conducted by German'icus, a youth of most admirable qualities, who had been at the late emperor's request adopted as his successor to the empire. These forces had taken the opportunity of his absence to revolt, and now began to affirm that the whole Roman empire was in their power, and that its principal grandeur was owing to the success of their arms; when German'icus returned, therefore, they unanimously resolved to choose him emperor. 5. This general was the darling of the soldiers, and almost idolized, so that he might with very little difficulty have raised himself to the highest dignity in the state; but his duty prevailed over his ambition; he rejected their offers with the utmost indignation, and used the most *indefatigable* endeavours to quell the sedition. This he effected, though with extreme hazard, by cutting off many of the principal revolters, and then by leading the troops against the Germans, who were considered as the common enemies of the empire[2].

6. Tibe'rius was as much pleased with the loyalty of German'icus, as he was distressed at his superior *popularity*; his success also, immediately after, against the Germans, still more excited the emperor's envy and private disgust. He overthrew the enemy in several battles, subduing many wild and extensive countries. 7. These victories, however, only served to inflame the emperor's jealousy: and every virtue in the general now became a

[1] Percen'nius was a private soldier, who possessed considerable eloquence, and was of a turbulent, seditious disposition. (Sueton.) An eclipse of the moon happening during the sedition, the soldiers were terrified, and returned to their duty. (Tacitus, An. 1.)

[2] It has frequently been remarked, that no wars are so bloody as civil wars, in which brother fights against brother. Some of the legions still continuing obstinate in sedition, German'icus sent those which had returned to their duty to put them to the sword; these, rushing unawares into the tents of the rebels, massacred them without mercy. Nothing was to be heard but dreadful outcries and groans from all parts of the camp; nothing to be seen but streams of blood and heaps of dead bodies; comrades were butchered by comrades, and friends by friends, in the same tents where they used to eat and sleep together. (Tacitus, An. l. i. c 40.)

new cause of offence. 8. This dislike began to appear by Tiberius's making use of every pretence to draw Germanicus from the legions; but he was obliged to *postpone* his purpose on account of a domestic insurrection made in Italy by one Clemens, whom he put to death by a private execution in a secret apartment of the palace [1].

9. Having thus got rid of his domestic enemy, he turned his thoughts to the most *specious* means of bringing home Germanicus from the legions in Germany. He began by procuring him a triumph for his late victories, and then writing to him to return, in order to enjoy those honours which the senate had decreed; adding, that he had reaped enough of glory in a country to which he had been sent nine times, and been each time victorious; concluding, that so great a number of triumphs was sufficient; and the most signal vengeance which could be inflicted on this turbulent people was to permit them to continue their intestine divisions. 10. Germanicus was met on his return, many miles from the city, by a vast multitude, who received him with marks of adoration rather than respect; the gracefulness of his person; his triumphal chariot, in which were carried his five children; and the recovered standards of the army of Varus, threw the people into a frenzy of joy and admiration [2].

11. Germanicus was now appointed to a new dignity. He departed from Rome on an expedition to the east, carrying with him his wife Agrippina, and his children. 12. But Tiberius, to restrain his power, had sent Cneius Piso governor into Syria. This Piso was a person of furious and headstrong temper, and in every respect fit to execute those fatal purposes for which he was designed. 13. His instructions were, to oppose Germanicus upon every occasion; to excite hatred against him; and even to procure his death, if an opportunity should offer. He accordingly took every opportunity of abusing Germanicus; and taxed him with diminishing the Roman glory, by his

[1] This Clemens was a slave of the late Agrippa Posthumus, and as he resembled that prince both in age and features, he took upon him his name, and brought over great numbers to support his cause. He was at length seized by stratagem, and executed as above related. (Tacitus, i. 2.)

[2] Varus had been surprised by the Germans, defeated, and his whole army cut to pieces. Augustus was so grieved at this disgrace and loss, that for a long time he wore mourning, and frequently was heard to cry out in an agony of grief, "Restore me my legions, Varus."

peculiar protection of the Athe'nians. 14. German'icus disregarded his invectives; being more intent on executing the business of his commission, than on counteracting the private designs of Pi'so. 15. Pi'so, however, and his wife Planci'na, who is recorded as a woman of an implacable and cruel disposition, continued to *defame* him. German'icus opposed only patience and condescension to all their invectives; and with that gentleness which was peculiar to him, repaid their resentments by courtesy. 16. He was not ignorant of their motives; and was rather willing to evade than oppose their enmity. He therefore took a voyage into Egypt, under pretence of viewing the celebrated antiquities of that country; but in reality, to avoid the *machinations* of Pi'so, and those of his wife, which were still more dangerous. 17. Upon his return he fell sick; and whether from a mind previously alarmed or from more *apparent* marks of treachery, he sent to let Pi'so know, that he broke off all further connexions. Growing daily worse, his death appeared to be inevitable. 18. Finding his end approaching, he addressed his friends, who stood around his bed, to the following effect: "Had my death been natural, I might have reason to complain of being thus snatched away from all the endearments of life, at so early an age; but my complaints are aggravated, in falling the victim of Pi'so's and Planci'na's treachery. Let the emperor, therefore, I conjure you, know the manner of my death, and the tortures I suffer. Those who loved me when living, those even who envied my fortune, will feel some regret, when they hear of a soldier who had so often escaped the rage of the enemy, falling a sacrifice to the treachery of a woman. Plead then my cause before the people; you will be heard with pity; and if my murderers should pretend to have acted by command, they will either receive no credit or no pardon." 19. As he spoke these words, he stretched forth his hand, which his weeping friends tenderly pressing, most earnestly vowed that they would lose their lives rather than their revenge. The dying prince then turning to his wife, conjured her, by her regard to his memory, and by all the bonds of nuptial love, to submit to the necessity of the times, and to evade the resentment of her more powerful enemies, by not opposing it[1]. 20. Nothing could exceed the distress of

[1] German'icus died in the 34th year of his age, and was universally mourned for, not only by the Roman people, but by the princes in

the whole empire, upon hearing of the death of German'icus, and the people of Rome seemed to set no bounds to it. 21. In this universal confusion, Pi'so seemed marked for destruction. He and his wife stood charged with the death of German'icus, by giving him a slow poison. Indeed, even the emperor himself, with his mother Liv'ia, incurred a share of the general suspicion. 22. This was soon after greatly increased by the arrival of Agrippi'na, the widow of German'icus, a woman of invincible courage, and in high esteem for her virtue. She appeared bearing the urn containing the ashes of her husband, and attended by all her children, to the tomb of Augustus. 23. When she approached the city, she was met by the senate and people of Rome, both with acclamations and expressions of sorrow. The veteran soldiers who had served under German'icus gave the sincerest testimonies of their concern. The multitude, while the ashes were depositing, regarded the ceremony in profound silence: but presently broke out into loud lamentations, crying out, The commonwealth is now no more.

24. Tibe'rius permitted the accusation of Pi'so, though he was justly supposed to be merely the instrument of his own vengeance. This general was accused before the senate of the death of German'icus, and of other crimes.

25. He put an end to his trial, which had been drawn out to a great length, by committing *suicide* [1]. His wife Planci'na, who was universally believed to be most *culpable*, escaped punishment by the interest of Liv'ia.

26. Tibe'rius, having now no object of jealousy to keep him in awe, began to pull off the mask, and appear more in his natural character than before. 27. In the beginning of his cruelties, he took into his confidence Seja'nus, a Roman knight, who found out the method of gaining his affection by the most refined degree of dissimulation, and was an overmatch for his master in his own arts [2]. It is

alliance with Rome; and even by the proud monarch of Parthia. (Suet. l. 4, c. 5.)

[1] He was found in the morning with his throat cut, and his sword lying by him; but whether this was done by his own hand, or by the orders of Tiberius, is not known. (Tacitus.)

[2] Seja'nus, though simply a Roman knight, was descended from an illustrious family, and was, in the very beginning of Tiberius's reign, associated with his father in the command of the prætorian guards. By removing these from their usual quarters in the city, and uniting them

not well known whether he was the adviser of all the cruelties that ensued: but certain it is, that from the beginning of his ministry, Tibe'rius seemed to become more fatally suspicious.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the age and character of Tiberius on his accession?
2. What first showed him in his true colours?
3. What was the first news he heard?
4. Was there not a more formidable revolt?
5. Did Germanicus accept this dignity?
6. Did Tiberius properly *appreciate* this conduct?
7. Was he pleased with his success?
8. How did this appear?
9. What followed this execution?
10. How was Germanicus received?
11. How was he next employed?
12. What restraints were imposed on him?
13. What were Piso's instructions, and how did he execute them?
14. How did Germanicus act on the occasion?
15. Did Piso persevere in his base attempts?
16. Was Germanicus aware of their design?
17. What happened on his return?
18. Repeat his speech on his death-bed.
19. What farther passed on this occasion?
20. Was his untimely end lamented?
21. Who incurred the popular hatred on this occasion?
22. How was this increased?
23. What honours were paid her?
24. Was the tyrant's vile agent rewarded for his services?
25. What was the issue?
26. How did Tiberius conduct himself after this?
27. Who was his prime minister?

---

in one body in a camp, he laid the foundation of that power, which they afterwards usurped, of disposing of the empire at their pleasure.

SECTION IV.

Some ask for envied power; which public hate
Pursues, and hurries headlong to their fate;
Down go the titles; and the statue crown'd,
Is by base hands in the next river drown'd.
The guiltless horses and the chariot wheel
The same effects of vulgar fury feel:
The smith prepares his hammer for the stroke,
While the lung'd bellows hissing fire provoke;
Sejanus, almost first of Roman names,
The great Sejanus crackles in the flames.

JUVENAL, Sat. 10.

1. Re'mote, *a.* distant.
6. Rapid'ity, *s.* swiftness, quickness.
8. Stat'ues, *s.* images.
10. De'fer, *v.* to delay, to put off.
12. Enor'mity, *s.* atrocious wickedness.
13. Prom'ontory, *s.* a cape, or headland.
18. Deprav'ity, *s.* corruption, wickedness.
19. Apothe'osis, *s.* the consecrating or deifying any person after death.
20. Deform'ity, *s.* ugliness.
24. Ex'quisite, *a.* excellent, costly
Op'ulent, *a.* rich, wealthy.
Absurd'ities, *s.* follies, extravagances.
26. Econ'omist, *s.* a frugal, careful person.
Per'manent, *a.* lasting.

1. SEJA'NUS began his administration by using all his address to persuade Tiberius to retire to some agreeable retreat, *remote* from Rome; from this he expected many advantages, since there could be no access to the emperor but through him. 2. The emperor, either prevailed upon by his persuasions, or pursuing the natural turn of his temper, left Rome, and went into Campa'nia [1], under pretence of dedicating temples to Ju'piter and Augustus. Growing weary, however, of places where mankind might follow him with their complaints and distresses, he withdrew himself into the delightful island of Ca'preæ [2]; and buried in this retreat, gave himself up to abandoned pleasures, regardless of the miseries of his subjects [3]. 3. From this time he became more cruel, and Seja'nus increased his distrusts. Secret spies and informers were placed in all parts

[1] Campa'nia, a considerable district of Italy, situated on the south of Latium (Cicero and Florus)—considered the most beautiful and fertile spot on the earth. Capua was the capital. (Strabo.)

[2] Ca'preæ, an island on the Tuscan Sea, opposite Soren'to.

[3] Tiberius having abolished the exhibitions of the amphitheatre at Rome, vast multitudes flocked to behold a show of gladiators given at Fidenæ by one Attilius; while they were intent on the combats, the building fell, and destroyed or maimed fifty thousand persons. (Tacitus, l. iv. c. 62.) Soon after a dreadful fire broke out on Mons Cœlius, and consumed all the houses in that quarter of the city. (Suetonius, Tacitus.)

of the city, who converted the most harmless actions into subjects of offence. 4. In consequence of this, Ne'ro and Dru'sus, the children of German'icus, were declared enemies to the state, and afterwards starved to death in prison; while Agrippi'na, their mother, was sent into banishment. Sab'inus, Asin'ius, Gal'lus, and Syria'cus, were, upon slight pretences, condemned and executed. 5. In this manner, Seja'nus proceeded, removing all who stood between him and the empire; and every day increasing his confidence with Tibe'rius, and his power with the senate. The number of his statues exceeded even those of the emperor; people swore by his fortune, in the same manner as they would have done had he been upon the throne; and he was more dreadful than even the tyrant who actually enjoyed the empire. 6. But the *rapidity* of his rise seemed only preparatory to the greatness of his downfal. All we know of his first disgrace with the emperor is, that Sati'rus Secun'dus was the man who had the boldness to accuse him of treason; and Anto'nia, the mother of German'icus, seconded the accusation. 7. The senate, who had long been jealous of his power, and dreaded his cruelty, immediately took this opportunity of going beyond the orders of Tibe'rius; instead of sentencing him to imprisonment, they directed his execution [1]. 8. Whilst he was conducting to his fate, the people loaded him with insult and execration: pursued him with sarcastic reproaches; and threw down his *statues*. He himself was strangled by the executioner [2].

9. His death only lighted up the emperor's rage for farther executions. Planci'na, the wife of Pi'so, and others, were put to death for being attached to Seja'nus. He began to grow weary of single executions, and gave

[1] To such a pitch of meanness were the Roman senators arrived, that when the emperor's letter arrived, the senators, thinking it contained orders for bestowing on Sejanus the tribunitial power, crowded around him, each striving to be the foremost in congratulating him on his new dignity; but they no sooner learnt the real contents of the fatal letter than all forsook him; even those who sat near him removed to another part of the house, lest they should be accounted his friends. (Dio.) The populace likewise broke in pieces those very statues which, a few hours before, they had adored.—(See the motto from Juvenal, at the beginning of the section.)

[2] His innocent children shared his fate; and his daughter, who had not reached the age of puberty, was subjected to the most indescribable barbarity before her execution.

orders that all the accused should be put to death together, without further examination. The whole city was, in consequence, filled with slaughter and mourning. 10. When one Carnu'lius killed himself, to avoid the torture, "Ah!" cried Tibe'rius, "how has that man been able to escape me!" When a prisoner earnestly entreated that he would not *defer* his death: "Know," said the tyrant, "I am not sufficiently your friend to shorten your torments."

11. In this manner he lived, odious to the world, and troublesome to himself; an enemy to the lives of others, a tormentor of his own [1]. At length, in the twenty-second year of his reign, he began to feel the approaches of dissolution, and his appetite totally forsook him. 12. He now, therefore, found it was time to think of a successor, and fixed upon Calig'ula [2]: willing, perhaps, by the *enormity* of Calig'ula's conduct, with which he was well acquainted, to lessen the obloquy of his own.

13. Still, however, he seemed desirous to avoid his end; and strove, by change of place, to cut off the inquietude of his own reflections. He left his favourite island, and went upon the continent; and at last fixed at the *promontory* of Mise'num [3]. There he fell into faintings, which all believed to be fatal. 14. Calig'ula supposing him actually dead, caused himself to be acknowledged by the Prætorian soldiers [4], and went forth from the emperor's apartment amidst the applauses of the multitude; when, all of a sudden, he was informed that the emperor was likely to recover. 15. This unexpected account filled the whole court

[1] It has been well said of Tiberius, "This great prince, this sovereign of Rome, with his numerous armies, his Prætorian bands, and his unlimited power, was in hourly fear of secret assassins, incessantly racked by his own apprehensions; with all the eclat of empire, the most miserable being in his dominions. His power, indeed, was unlimited, but so was his misery; the more he made others suffer, the faster he multiplied his own torments. Such was his situation and life, and such are the natural consequences of the abuse of power."

[2] He was so named from *caliga*, a sort of military boot, which he usually wore.

[3] A promontory, port, and town in Italy, near Naples.

[4] The Prætorian bands were instituted by Augustus, to guard his person and maintain his authority. Under bold and warlike emperors, they were kept in tolerable subjection; but when the reins of government were held by feeble hands, they became the disturbers, instead of preservers of the public peace; and at length deposed and set up emperors at their pleasure.

with terror and alarm; every one who had before been earnestly testifying his joy, now reassumed his pretended sorrow, and forsook the new emperor, through a feigned solicitude for the fate of the old. 16. Calig'ula seemed thunderstruck; he preserved a gloomy silence, expecting nothing but death, instead of the empire at which he had aspired. 17. Marco, however, who was hardened in crimes, ordered that the dying emperor should be despatched, by smothering him with pillows; or, as some will have it, by poison. Thus died Tibe'rius, in the seventy-eighth year of his age, after reigning twenty-two years.

U.C. 780. A.D. 37.

18. It was in the eighteenth year of this emperor's reign that Christ was crucified; as if the universal *depravity* of mankind wanted no less a sacrifice than this to reclaim them. Pi'late sent to Tibe'rius an account of Christ's passion, resurrection, and miracles, and the emperor made a report of the whole to the senate, desiring that Christ might be accounted a god by the Romans. 19. But the senate, displeased that the proposal had not come first from themselves, refused to allow of his *apotheosis;* alleging an ancient law which gave them the superintendence in all matters of religion. They even went so far as to command by an edict, that all Christians should leave the city; but Tibe'rius, by another edict, threatened death to such as should accuse them; by which means they continued unmolested during the rest of his reign.

20. The vices of Calig'ula were concealed under the appearance of virtue in the beginning of his reign [1]. In less than eight months, however, every trace of moderation and clemency vanished; while furious passions, unexampled avarice, and capricious cruelty, reigned uncontrolled; and pride, impiety, lust, and avarice, appeared in all their native *deformity*.

21. Calig'ula's pride first appeared in his assuming to himself the title of ruler; which was usually granted only

[1] In his first speech to the senate, he promised to govern with justice and moderation, to do nothing without their advice, and to follow their directions as their child and pupil. The virtues which he assumed so endeared him to the people, that on his being taken ill an universal sorrow pervaded all ranks; his palace was constantly besieged with inquiries; many passed whole nights at his gate, and some even devoted their lives for his. (Philo.) In proportion to the grief occasioned by his illness, was the joy his recovery diffused. Happy would it have been for Rome, happy for the fame of Caligula, had this recovery never taken place.

to kings. He would also have taken the crown and diadem, had he not been advised that he was already superior to all the monarchs of the world. 22. Not long after he assumed divine honours, and gave himself the names of such divinities as he thought most agreeable to his nature. For this purpose he caused the heads of the statues of Jupiter[1], and some other gods, to be struck off, and his own to be put in their places. He frequently seated himself between Castor and Pollux[2], and ordered that all who came to this temple to worship should pay their adorations only to himself. 23. However, such was the extravagant inconsistency of this unaccountable idiot, that he changed his divinity as often as he changed his clothes; being at one time a male deity, at another a female; sometimes Jupiter or Mars[3]; and not unfrequently Venus[4] or Diana[5]. 24. He even built and dedicated a temple to his own divinity, in which his statue of gold was every day dressed in robes similar to those which he himself wore, and worshipped by crowds of adorers. His priests were numerous; the sacrifices made to him were of the most *exquisite* delicacies that could be procured; and the dignity of the priesthood was sought by the most *opulent* men of the city. However, he admitted his wife and his horse to that honour; and to give a finishing stroke to his *absurdities*, became a priest to himself. 25. His method of assuming the manners of a deity, was not less ridiculous; he often went out at full moon, and courted it in the style of a lover. He employed many inventions to imitate thunder, and would frequently defy Jupiter, crying out with a speech of Homer, "Do you conquer me, or I will conquer you." He frequently pretended to converse in whispers with the statue of Jupiter, and usually seemed angry at its replies, threatening to send it back into Greece, whence it came. Sometimes, however, he would assume a better temper, and seemed contented that Jupiter and he should dwell together in amity.

26. Of all his vices, prodigality was the most remark-

[1] The supposed son of Saturn and Rhea, the supreme deity of the pagan world.

[2] Castor and Pollux, the twin sons of Jupiter, by Leda.

[3] The god of war.

[4] Venus, the goddess of beauty and love.

[5] Diana, the goddess of hunting, daughter of Jupiter and Lato'na, and sister of Phœbus, or the sun. On earth, she was called Diana; in heaven, Phœbe, or the moon; in hell, Hecate.

able, and that which in some measure gave rise to the rest. The luxuries of former emperors were simplicity itself when compared to those which he practised. He contrived new ways of bathing, when the richest oils and most precious perfumes were lavished with the utmost profusion. His luxuries of the table were of immense value, and even jewels, as we are told, were dissolved in his sauces. He sometimes had services of pure gold presented before his guests, instead of meat, observing that a man should be an *economist* or an emperor.

27. The manner in which he maintained his horse will give an idea of his domestic extravagance. He built a stable of marble, and a manger of ivory; and whenever the animal, which he called Incita'tus, was to run in the race, he placed sentinels near its stable, the night preceding, to prevent its slumbers from being broken [1].

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the first measure of Sejanus?
2. Did the emperor yield to his persuasions?
3. What consequences ensued from this measure?
4. Who were the first sufferers?
5. Did Sejanus increase his influence?
6. Was this elevation *permanent?*
7. To what punishment was he condemned?
8. What occurred at his execution?
9. Was this the only victim to the cruelty of Tiberius?
10. How did Tiberius aggravate his cruelties?
11. Did these cruelties long continue?
12. How did he act on this?
13. Was he resigned to his fate?
14. What followed on this?
15. How was this news received?
16. Did Caligula boldly meet the consequences?
17. How was this averted?
18. What highly remarkable event happened in this reign?
19. Was his desire gratified?
20. What was the conduct of Caligula on this occasion?
21. By what acts did he display his pride?

[1] Some still more extraordinary accounts are given of this horse: it is said that he appointed its house, furniture, and kitchen, in order to treat all its visitors with proper respect. Sometimes he invited Incita'tus to his own table, and presented it with gilt oats, and wine in a golden cup. He would often swear, "by the safety of his horse!" and it is even said that it was his intention to have appointed it to the consulship, had not his death prevented it.

22. Did his arrogance carry him farther than this
23. Under what name did he assume divine honours?
24. Of what farther absurdities was he guilty?
25. Relate other follies of his.
26. What was his principal vice?
27. Give an instance of his domestic extravagance.

SECTION V.

For him no prayers are pour'd, no pæans sung,
No blessings chanted from a nation's tongue:
Blood marks the path to his untimely bier;
The curse of widows and the orphan's tear
Cry high to Heaven for vengeance on his head:
Alive detested, and accurst when dead. BRERETON.

1. Subor'dinate, *a.* inferior.
Ci'ted, *v.* summoned.
13. Effem'inate, *a.* soft, womanish.
18. Dis'located, *part.* out of joint.
20. Divulg'ing, *part.* making known.
22. Transpi're, *v.* to become known.
Cri'sis, *s.* critical moment.

1. THE impiety, however, of Calig'ula, was but *subordinate* to his cruelties. He slew many of the senate, and afterwards *cited* them to appear. He cast great numbers of old and infirm men to the wild beasts, to free the state from such unserviceable citizens. He usually fed his wild beasts with the bodies of those wretches whom he condemned; and every tenth day sent off numbers of them to be thus devoured; which he jocosely called clearing his accounts. One of those who was thus exposed, crying out that he was innocent, Calig'ula ordered him to be taken up, his tongue to be cut out, and then thrown into the amphitheatre as before [1]. 2. He took delight in killing men with slow tortures, that, as he expressed it, they might feel themselves dying, being always present at such executions himself, directing the duration of the punishment, and mitigating the tortures merely to prolong them. 3. In fact he valued himself for no quality more than his unrelenting temper, and inflexible severity, when he presided at an execution. 4. Upon one occasion, being incensed with the citizens, he wished that the Roman

[1] One day visiting the amphitheatre, finding that there were no criminals condemned to fight with wild beasts, he ordered numbers of the spectators to be thrown to them, previously causing their tongues to be cut out, that they might not, by their cries, disturb his inhuman diversions.

people had but one neck, that he might despatch them at one blow [1].

5. Such insupportable and capricious cruelties produced many secret conspiracies against him; but they were for a while deferred upon account of his intended expedition against the Germans and Britons. 6. For this purpose he caused numerous levies to be made, and talked with so much resolution, that it was universally believed he would conquer all before him [2].

U.C. 793. A.D. 41.

7. His march perfectly indicated the inequality of his temper; sometimes it was so rapid, that the cohorts were obliged to leave their standards behind them; at other times it was so slow, that it more resembled a pompous procession than a military expedition. 8. In this disposition, he would cause himself to be carried on a litter on eight men's shoulders, and ordered all the neighbouring cities to have their streets well swept and watered, that he might not be annoyed with dust. 9. However, all these mighty preparations ended in nothing. Instead of conquering Britain, he merely gave refuge to one of its banished princes; and this he described, in his letter to the senate, as taking possession of the whole island. 10. Instead of conquering Germany, he only led his army to the sea-shore in Gaul: there, disposing his engines and warlike machines with great solemnity, and drawing up his men in order of battle, he went on board his galley, with which coasting along, he commanded his trumpets to sound, and the signal to be given as if for an engagement. 11. His men, who had previous orders, immediately fell to gathering the shells that lay upon the shore into their helmets, as their spoils of the conquered ocean, worthy of the palace and the capitol. 12. After this doughty expedition, calling his army together, like a general after victory, he harangued them in a pompous manner, and highly

[1] He frequently used this expression—*Oderint dum metuant*—(Let them hate while they fear).

[2] The following anecdote will sufficiently display how ill-founded these expectations were:—As he was passing in his chariot through a narrow lane, his troops were obliged to break their ranks, that he might proceed. One happening to observe on this, that should the enemy now appear, the confusion would be great, he was seized with such a panic, that, throwing himself out of his chariot, he fled on horseback, till coming to a bridge that was crowded with the servants and baggage of the army, he caused himself to be conveyed over their heads, not thinking himself safe till he got out of the enemy's country.

extolled their achievements; then, distributing money among them, and congratulating them upon their riches, he dismissed them with orders to be joyful. And, that such exploits should not pass without a memorial, he ordered a lofty tower to be erected by the sea-side [1].

13. Cassius Cher'ea, a tribune of the Prætorian bands, was the person who at last freed the world from this tyrant. Besides the motives which he had in common with other men, he had received repeated insults from Calig'ula, who took all occasions of turning him into ridicule, and impeaching him of cowardice, merely because he happened to have an *effeminate* voice. Whenever Cher'ea came to demand the watchword from the emperor, according to custom, he always gave him either Venus, Adonis, or some such, implying softness and effeminacy.

14. Cher'ea secretly imparted his design to several senators and knights whom he knew to have received personal injuries from Calig'ula. While these were deliberating upon the most certain and speedy method of destroying the tyrant, an unexpected incident gave new strength to the conspiracy. 15. Pempe'dius, a senator of distinction, being accused before the emperor of having spoken of him with disrespect, the informer cited one Quintil'ia, an actress, to confirm the accusation. 16. Quintil'ia, however, was possessed of a degree of fortitude not frequently found even in the other sex. She denied the fact with obstinacy; and being put to the torture, bore the severest tortures of the rack with unshaken constancy. 17. Indeed, so remarkable was her resolution, that though acquainted with all the particulars of the conspiracy, and although Cher'ea was the person appointed to preside at her torture, she revealed nothing; on the contrary, when she was led to the rack, she trod upon the toe of one of the conspirators, intimating at once her knowledge of their conspiracy, and her resolution not to divulge it. 18. Thus she suffered, until all her limbs were *dislocated;* and, in that deplorable state, was presented to the emperor, who ordered her a gratuity for what she had endured.

19. Cher'ea could no longer contain his indignation, at being thus made the instrument of a tyrant's cruelty. After several deliberations of the conspirators, it was at last re-

[1] It is said that the tower which stands at the entry of the port of Bologne, called *La tour d'ordre*, is that built by Calig'ula on this occasion.

solved to attack him during the Palatine games[1], which lasted four days; and to strike the blow when his guards should not have the opportunity to defend him. 20. The first three days of the games passed. Cher'ea began to apprehend, that deferring the completion of the conspiracy might be the means of *divulging* it: he even dreaded that the honour of killing the tyrant might fall to the lot of some other person, bolder than himself. At last he resolved to defer the execution of his plot only to the day following, when Calig'ula should pass through a private gallery, to some baths near the palace.

21. The last day of the games was more splendid than the rest; and Calig'ula seemed more sprightly and condescending than usual. He enjoyed the amusement of seeing the people scramble for the fruits and other rarities by his order thrown among them; being no way apprehensive of the plot formed for his destruction. 22. In the mean time the conspiracy began to *transpire:* and, had he had any friends remaining, it could not have failed of being discovered. A senator who was present, asking one of his acquaintance if he had heard any thing new, and the other replying in the negative, said, "You must know, that this day will be represented the death of a tyrant." The other immediately understood him, but desired him to be cautious. 23. The conspirators waited many hours with extreme anxiety; and Calig'ula seemed resolved to spend the whole day without any refreshment. So unexpected a delay exasperated Cher'ea; and, had he not been restrained, he would suddenly have perpetrated his design in the midst of all the people. 24. At that instant, while he was hesitating, Aspore'nus[2], one of the conspirators, persuaded Calig'ula to go to the bath, and take some slight refreshment, that he might the better enjoy the rest of the entertainment. 25. The emperor rising up, the conspirators used every precaution to keep off the throng, and to surround him themselves, under pretence of great assiduity. Upon his entering into a little vaulted gallery that led to the bath,

[1] Palatine games were so called from their being celebrated on the Palatine Hill, which was the most considerable of the seven hills on which Rome was built. This was the first hill occupied by Romu'lus, and where he fixed his residence, and kept his court; as also did Tul'lus Hostil'ius, Augus'tus, and all the succeeding emperors; and hence it is that the residence of princes is called Palatium, or Palace.

[2] He is by some called Am'pronus.

Cher'ea struck him to the ground with his dagger, crying out, "Tyrant, think upon this." The other conspirators closed in upon him; and while the emperor was resisting, and crying out that he was not yet dead, they despatched him with thirty wounds.

26. Such was the merited death of Calig'ula in the twenty-ninth year of his age, after a short reign of not four years. His character may be summed up in the words of Sen'eca; namely, "Nature seemed to have brought him forth, to show what mischief could be effected by the greatest vices supported by the greatest authority."

Questions for Examination.

1. Of what enormities was Caligula guilty?
2. How did he heighten his cruelties?
3. On what did he chiefly value himself?
4. What monstrous wish did he express?
5. What was the consequence of such atrocities?
6. What preparations did he make?
7. How did his disposition display itself on this occasion?
8. How did he sometimes travel?
9. What exploits did he perform?
10. Did he not make a show of some great enterprise?
11. How did it end?
12. Of what farther follies was he guilty?
13. By whom was he assassinated, and by what provocations was his fate hastened?
14. Were others made privy to the design?
15. Relate this incident.
16. Did Quintilia confirm the accusation?
17. What rendered this resolution more remarkable?
18. What was the result?
19. Was the *crisis* much longer deferred?
20. Was this resolution put in practice?
21. Was Caligula at all apprehensive of what was in agitation?
22. Was the secret inviolably kept?
23. How was the design nearly frustrated?
24. What induced Caligula to alter his intention?
25. Relate the manner of his death.
26. Repeat the summary of his character as given by Seneca.

SECTION VI.

U. C. 794.—A. D. 42.

Romans, methinks the malice of your tyrants
Might furnish heavier chains. Old as I am,
And withered as you see these war-worn limbs,
Trust me, they shall support the weightiest load
Injustice dares impose. MASON'S CARACTACUS.

2. Imbecil'ity, *s.* weakness of mind.
4. Obli'vion, *s.* forgetfulness.
6. Intes'tine, *s.* internal.
11. Commem'orate, *v.* to keep in remembrance, to celebrate.
16. Progen'itors, *s.* forefathers, ancestors in a direct line.
18. Dejec'tion, *s.* sadness.
21. Para'mour, *s.* a lover, a favourite.

1. As soon as the death of Calig'ula was made public, it produced the greatest confusion. The conspirators, who only aimed at destroying a tyrant, without attending to the appointment of a successor, had all sought safety by retiring to private places. 2. Some soldiers happening to wander about the palace, discovered Clau'dius, Calig'ula's uncle, lurking in a secret place where he had hid himself. Of this person, who had hitherto been despised for his *imbecility*, they resolved to make an emperor; and accordingly they carried him upon their shoulders to the camp, where they proclaimed him at a time when he expected nothing but death.

3. Clau'dius was now fifty years old. The complicated diseases of his infancy had, in some measure, affected all the faculties of his mind as well as body, and he seemed, both in public and domestic life, incapable of conducting himself with propriety [1].

4. The commencement of his reign, however, as had been the case with all the bad emperors, gave the most promising hopes. It began by an act of *oblivion* for all former words and actions, and by disannulling all the cruel edicts of Calig'ula. 5. He showed himself more moderate than his predecessors with regard to titles and honours.

[1] His mother, Anto'nia, used to call him a human monster; and his nephew, Calig'ula, when he had butchered many of his kindred, saved him merely for a laughing-stock. The kindest word Augus'tus gave him was that of Misel'lus (poor wretch). This example was followed by others. If he happened to come to table when the guests had taken their places, no one showed him the least civility; and when he slept, as he sometimes did after meals, they would divert themselves by throwing the stones of fruit at him, or by wakening him with a blow of a rod or whip.

He forbade all persons, under severe penalties, to sacrifice to him, as they had done to Calig'ula. He was assiduous in hearing and examining complaints; and frequently administered justice in person with great mildness. To his solicitude for the internal advantages of the state, he added that of a watchful guardianship over the provinces. He restored Jude'a to Her'od Agrip'pa [1], which Calig'ula had taken from Her'od Antipas, his uncle, the man who had put John the Baptist to death, and who was banished by order of the present emperor [2].

6. He even undertook to gratify the people by foreign conquest. The Britons, who had for nearly a hundred years been left in quiet possession of their own island, began to seek the mediation of Rome, to quell their *intestine* commotions. 7. The principal man who desired to subject his native country to the Roman dominion, was one Ber'icus, who persuaded the emperor to make a descent upon the island, magnifying the advantages that would attend the conquest of it. 8. In pursuance of his advice, therefore, Plau'tius, the prætor, was ordered to go into Gaul, and make preparations for this great expedition. At first, indeed, his soldiers seemed backward to embark, declaring that they were unwilling to make war beyond the limits of the world; for so they judged Britain to be. However, they were at last persuaded to go: and the Britons were several times overthrown.

9. These successes soon after induced Clau'dius to go into Britain in person, under pretence that the natives were still seditious, and had not delivered up some Roman fugitives, who had taken shelter among them. 10. However, this expedition seemed rather calculated for show than service; the time he continued in Britain, which was in all but sixteen days, was more taken up in receiving homage, than extending his conquests [3]. 11. Great re- A.D. 46.

[1] Her'od Agrip'pa was the grandson of Herod the Great; who, at the birth of our Saviour, caused all the infants of Bethlehem to be massacred, in hopes that he would fall in the number. Her'od Agrip'pa, to please the Jews, also persecuted the Christians; and put to death St. James the Great.

[2] He put to death Cher'ea, and some others of the murderers of his nephew.

[3] He was, in fact, so timorous, and devoid of personal courage, that he never admitted any one to his presence without his being first narrowly searched; nay, even women and children were sometimes subjected to this rude investigation. This excessive timidity was taken

joicings were made upon his return to Rome: the senate decreed him a splendid triumph, triumphal arches were erected to his honour, and annual games instituted to *commemorate* his victories. 12. In the mean time the war was vigorously prosecuted by Plau'tius, and his lieutenant Vespasian [1], who, according to Sueto'nius [2], fought thirty
A.D. battles, and reduced a part of the island into the
51. form of a Roman province. 13. However, this war broke out afresh under the government of Osto'rius, who succeeded Plau'tius. The Britons, either despising him for want of experience, or hoping to gain advantages over a person newly come to command, rose up in arms, and disclaimed the Roman power. 14. The Ice'ni, who inhabited Suffolk, Norfolk, Cambridge, and Huntingdonshire; the Can'gi, in Wiltshire and Somersetshire; and the Brigan'tes, in Yorkshire, &c., made a powerful resistance, though they were at length overcome; but the Silu'res, or inhabitants of South Wales, under their king Carac'tacus [3], were the most formidable opponents the Roman generals had ever yet encountered. 15. This brave barbarian not only made a gallant defence, but often claimed a doubtful victory. He, with great conduct, removed the seat of war into the most inaccessible parts of the country, and for nine years kept the Romans in continued alarm.

16. Upon the approach of Osto'rius, however, Carac'tacus finding himself obliged to come to a decisive engagement, addressed his countrymen with calm resolution; telling them, that this battle would either establish their liberty, or confirm their servitude; that they ought to remember the bravery of their ancestors, by whose valour they were delivered from taxes and tribute; and that this was the time to show themselves equal to their *progenitors*.

advantage of by his wife, Messali'na, and others; who, by playing on his fears, induced him frequently to be guilty of cruelties, of which he afterwards bitterly repented.

[1] Vespa'sian, a native of Ritti in Italy, was of obscure origin, and rose to public honours solely through his merit.

[2] Sueto'nius, a celebrated historian, a native of Rome. He was secretary to the emperor Adrian, and an intimate friend of Pliny the younger. Of his works, his lives of the First Twelve Emperors, and part of his Treatise concerning Illustrious Grammarians, only have been preserved. (Biog. Classica.)

[3] Carac'tacus, whose true name was Carra'dog, was the son of Branab Clvr. (Tacitus.)

17. But nothing that undisciplined valour could perform availed against the conduct of the Roman legions. After an obstinate fight, the Britons were entirely routed: the wife and daughter of Carac'tacus were taken prisoners; and he himself, seeking refuge from Cartisman'dua, queen of the Brigan'tes, was treacherously delivered up to the conquerors. 18. When he was brought to Rome, nothing could exceed the curiosity of the people to behold a man who had for so many years braved the power of the empire. Carac'tacus testified no marks of base *dejection*. When he was led through the streets, and observed the splendour of every object around him; "Alas!" cried he, "how is it possible, that people possessed of such magnificence at home, should think of envying Carac'tacus a humble cottage in Britain!" 19. When he was brought before the emperor, while the other prisoners sued for pity with the most abject lamentations, Carac'tacus stood before the tribunal with an intrepid air, and though willing to accept of pardon, was not mean enough to sue for it. "If," cried, he, "I had yielded immediately, and without opposing you, neither would my fortune have been remarkable, nor your glory memorable; you could not have been victorious; and I had been forgotten. If now, therefore, you spare my life, I shall continue a perpetual example of your clemency." Clau'dius generously pardoned him, and Osto'rius was decreed a triumph.

20. In the beginning of his reign Clau'dius gave the highest hopes of a happy continuance; but he soon began to lessen his care for the public, and to commit to his favourites all the concerns of the empire. This prince, weak from his infancy, was little able, when called to govern, to act but under the direction of others. 21. One of his chief instructors was his wife Messali'na: whose name is become a common appellation for women of abandoned character. By her was Clau'dius urged on to commit cruelties, which he considered only as wholesome severities; while her debaucheries became every day more notorious, and exceeded what had ever been in Rome. For her crimes and enormities, however, she, together with her *paramour*, Cai'us Sil'ius, suffered that death they both had so justly deserved [1].

[1] With such astonishing boldness did Messalina perpetrate her enormous crimes, that she compelled Silius to divorce his wife, and to marry her, with all the usual solemnities, in the most public manner.

22. Clau'dius afterwards married Agrippi'na, the daughter of his brother German'icus, a woman of a cruel and ambitious spirit, whose only aim being to procure the succession of Nero, her son by a former marriage, she treated Claudius with such haughtiness, that he was heard to declare, when heated with wine, that it was his fate to smart under the disorders of his wives, and to be their executioner. 23. This expression sunk deep in her mind, and engaged all her faculties to prevent the blow; she, therefore, resolved not to defer a deed, which she had meditated long before, which was to poison him. She, for some time, debated within herself in what quantity the poison should be administered; as she feared that too strong a dose would discover the treachery, while one too weak would fail of its effect. 24. At length she determined upon a poison of singular efficacy to destroy his intellects, and yet not suddenly to terminate his life; it was given among mushrooms, a dish the emperor was particularly fond of. 25. Shortly after he had eaten, he dropped down insensible; but this caused no alarm, as it was usual with him to eat till he had stupified his faculties, and been obliged to be carried from the table to his bed. 26. His constitution, however, seemed to overcome the effects of the potion; but Agrippi'na, resolving to make sure of him, directed a wretch of a physician, her creature, to introduce a poisoned feather into his throat, under pretence of making him vomit, and thus to despatch him, which had its intended effect. Thus died Clau'dius the First, the complicated diseases of whose infancy seemed to have affected and perverted all the faculties of his mind. He was succeeded by Nero, the son of Agrippi'na by her first husband. Nero had been adopted by Claudius.

For some time the emperor, who was at Os'tia, was ignorant of this enormity; fear of Messalina's influence over him preventing any one from mentioning it. Even when informed, after the first ebullitions of his rage had subsided, he would have pardoned his wife, had not Narcis'sus, by whom her crimes had been at length reported, caused her hastily to be despatched. When the news of her death was brought to Claudius, he appeared to take no notice, and even inquired some days after, why Messalina did not come to supper.

Questions for Examination.

1. What happened on the death of Caligula?
2. Who was appointed his successor?
3. What was the character of Claudius?
4. How did he conduct himself?
5. By what farther acts did he distinguish his accession?
6. Did he adopt any warlike measures?
7. By whom was he persuaded to interfere?
8. Who was sent into that country, and what occurred in consequence?
9. What resolution did Claudius form?
10. Did he perform any memorable exploits?
11. Was his return celebrated?
12. Was the war in Britain now at an end?
13. Did this finish the war?
14. Who were the most formidable adversaries of the Romans?
15. How did he distinguish himself?
16. By what means did he strengthen the courage of his troops?
17. Were his efforts successful?
18. What happened on his arrival at Rome?
19. What was his behaviour before the emperor?
20. Did Claudius continue to govern well?
21. Who was the chief instigator of his cruelties?
22. Who was the second wife of Claudius, and what was her conduct towards him?
23. What was the consequence of this unguarded expression?
24. On what did she at length resolve?
25. What effect did it produce?
26. Did he recover?

SECTION VII.

U.C. 793.—A.D. 55.

Thus cruel Nero once resolved
On Galba's insurrection, for revenge,
To give all France as plunder to the armies:
To poison the whole senate at a feast;
To burn the city, turn the wild beasts out,
Bears, lions, tigers, on the multitude;
That so, obstructing those that quench'd the fire,
He might at once destroy rebellious Rome. LEE.

3. Mounds, *s.* barriers, defences.
5. Conflagra'tion, *s.* a burning, great fire.
6. O'dium, *s.* disgrace.
7. Cir'cus, *s.* an area for the celebration of races and other sports.
9. Prematu'rely, *ad.* before it was ripe for execution.
13. Auster'ities, *s.* abstemiousness, severities.
Avid'ity, *s.* eagerness.
15. Swoon, *s.* a fainting fit.
16. Vi'tal, *a.* essential to life.

1. NERO, though but seventeen years old, began his reign with the general approbation of mankind. He appeared just, liberal, and humane. When a warrant for the execu-

tion of a criminal was brought to be signed, he would cry out with compassion, "Would to heaven that I had never learned to write!"

2. But as he increased in years, his native disposition began to show itself. The execution of his mother Agrippi'na was the first alarming instance he gave of his cruelty. After attempting to get her drowned at sea, he ordered her to be put to death in her palace; and coming to gaze upon the dead body, was heard to say, that he had never thought his mother so handsome a woman [1].

3. The *mounds* of virtue being thus broken down, Nero gave a loose to appetites that were not only sordid, but inhuman. There was a sort of odd contrast in his disposition, for while he practised cruelties sufficient to make the mind shudder with horror, he was fond of those amusing arts which soften and refine the heart. He was particularly addicted, even from childhood, to music, and not totally ignorant of poetry; chariot-driving was his favourite pursuit; and all these he frequently exhibited in public.

4. Happy had it been for mankind, had he confined himself to these; and contented with being contemptible, sought not to become formidable also. His cruelties exceeded all his other extravagancies. He seemed even studious of finding out pleasures, as well as crimes, against nature. 5. A great part of the city of Rome was consumed by fire in his time, and to him most historians ascribe the *conflagration*. It is said that he stood upon a high tower, during the continuance of the flames, enjoying the sight, and singing, in a theatrical manner, to his harp, verses upon the burning of Troy. None were permitted to lend assistance towards extinguishing the flames; and

[1] The manner of his attempt to drown his mother was extremely singular. He caused a vessel to be constructed that, by withdrawing some bolts, would separate in the open sea, and thus give her death the appearance of a shipwreck. Agrippi'na, naturally suspicious, at first refused to go on board: but, lulled into security by the artful blandishments of her son, she embarked. The attempt was made; but Agrippi'na was taken up by some fisher-boats, and conveyed to her own villa. The very great calmness of the sea prevented the possibility of its being considered as an accident. Agrippi'na, however, dissembled her suspicions, and informed the emperor of her wonderful escape. Three years after the death of his mother, he murdered his tutor Burrhus, and also his wife Octavia, a young princess of admirable virtue and beauty, that he might marry the infamous Poppæ'a.

several persons were seen setting fire to their houses, alleging that they had orders for so doing [1]. 6. However this be, the emperor used every art to throw the *odium* of so detestable an action from himself, and to fix it upon the Christians, who were at that time gaining ground in Rome. 7. Nothing could be more dreadful than the persecution raised against them upon this false accusation. Some were covered with the skins of wild beasts, and, in that disguise, devoured by the dogs; some were crucified, and others burnt alive. "When the day was not sufficient for their tortures, the flames, in which they perished," says Ta'citus, "served to illuminate the night;" while Nero, dressed in the habit of a charioteer, regaled himself with a view of their tortures from his gardens, and entertained the people at one time with their sufferings, at another with the games of the *circus*. 8. In this persecution St. Paul was beheaded, and St. Peter crucified, with his head downwards; a mode of death he chose, as being more dishonourable than that of his Divine Master.

9. A conspiracy formed against Nero, by Piso, a man of great power and integrity, which was *prematurely* discovered, opened a train of suspicions that destroyed many of the principal families in Rome. 10. The two most remarkable personages who fell on this occasion, were Sen'eca the philosopher, and Lucan the poet, his nephew [2].

[1] Of the fourteen quarters into which Rome was divided, only four remained entire. Upon the ruins of the demolished city, Nero founded a palace, which he called his Golden House. It contained within its inclosure, artificial lakes, large wildernesses, spacious parks, gardens, orchards, vineyards, &c. &c. The entrance of the stately edifice was sufficiently lofty to admit a colossal statue of Nero, 120 feet high. The galleries, erected on three rows of tall pillars, were each a mile in length. The palace itself was tiled with gold (probably gilding), the walls covered with the same metal, and richly adorned with precious stones and mother-of-pearl: and the ceiling of one of the banqueting rooms represented the firmament beset with stars, turning about incessantly night and day, and showering sweet waters on the guests.

[2] Epicha'ris, a woman of infamous character, who by some means was implicated in the conspiracy, deserves to be mentioned as an instance of female fortitude. She was condemned to the torture, but the united force of racks, stripes, and fire, could not extort a word from her. The next day, as she was conducted in a chair to be tortured afresh (for her limbs were so mangled and disjointed, that she could not stand), she hung herself with her girdle to the top of the chair, voluntarily suspending the whole weight of her body to the noose: thus a woman once a slave, cheerfully endured the most exquisite tor-

Nero, either having real testimony, or else hating him for his virtues, sent a tribune to Sen'eca[1], informing him that he was suspected as an accomplice. The tribune found the philosopher at table with Pauli'na, his wife; and informing him of his business, Sen'eca replied without emotion that his welfare depended upon no man; that he had never been accustomed to indulge the errors of the emperor, and would not do it now. 11. When this answer was brought to Nero, he demanded whether Sen'eca seemed afraid to die: the tribune replying that he did not appear in the least terrified: "Then go to him again," cried the emperor, "and give him my orders to die." Accordingly, he sent a centurion to Sen'eca, signifying that it was the emperor's pleasure that he should die. Sen'eca seemed no way discomposed, but displayed the fortitude of conscious integrity. He endeavoured to console his wife, and exhorted her to a life of persevering virtue. 12. She seemed resolved, however, not to survive him, and pressed her request to die with him so earnestly, that Sen'eca, who had long looked upon death as a benefit, at last gave his consent; and the veins of both their arms were opened at the same time. 13. As Sen'eca was old, and much enfeebled by the *austerities* of his life, the blood flowed but slowly; so that he caused the veins of his legs and thighs to be opened also. His pains were long and violent, but they were not capable of repressing his fortitude or his eloquence. He dictated a discourse to two secretaries, which was read with great *avidity* after his death, but which has since perished in the lapse of time. 14. His agonies being now drawn out to a great length, he at last demanded poison from his physician; but this also failed of its effect, his body being already exhausted, and incapable of exciting its operation. He was from this carried into a warm bath, which only served to prolong his sufferings; at length, therefore, he was put in a stove, the vapour of which quickly despatched him. 15.

tures, and even death, to save persons she scarcely knew, and from whom she had never received any favours.

[1] Seneca, a celebrated philosopher, and a son of Sen'eca the orator; was born at Corduba, in Spain, A.D. 8. This town was also the birthplace of his father. (Strabo and Lucan.) Corduba was founded by the Romans, B.C. 150: and in process of time it became the residence of the Moorish kings, where they continued till their expulsion into Africa. It was in the vicinity of this city that Cæsar fought his last battle with the sons of Pompey.

In the mean time, his wife Pauli'na having fallen into a *swoon* with the loss of blood, had her arms bound up by her domestics, and by this means survived her husband for some years; but by her conduct during the rest of her life, she seemed never to forget her affection and his example.

16. The death of Lucan[1] was not less remarkable. After he had lost a great quantity of blood from the veins of his arms, perceiving his hands and legs already dead, while the *vital* parts still continued warm and vigorous, he called to mind the description of his own poem of the Pharsa'lia, of a person dying in similar circumstances. He expired while he was repeating that beautiful passage:

——————— Nec, sicut vulnere sanguis
Emicuit lentus: Ruptis cadit undique venis,
——————— Pars ultima trunci
Tradidit in letum vacuos vitalibus artus.
At tumidus quâ pulmo jacet, quâ viscera fervent,
Hæserunt ibi fata diu: luctataque multum
Hâc cum parte, viri vix omnia membra tulerunt.

No single wound the gaping rupture seems,
When trickling crimson wells in slender streams;
But from an op'ning horrible and wide,
A thousand vessels pour the bursting tide;
Soon from the lower parts the spirit's fled,
And motionless th' exhausted limbs lay dead;
Not so the nobler regions, where the heart
And heaving lung their vital powers exert:
There lingering, late, and long conflicting, life
Rose against fate, and still maintain'd the strife:
Driven out at length, unwillingly and slow,
She left her mortal house, and sought the shades below.
ROWE, p. iii. v. 945.

17. The death of C. Petro'nius[2], about this time, is

[1] Marcus Annæus Lucan, a celebrated Latin poet, was of an equestrian family of Rome, and born at Corduba, in Spain, about A.D. 39. His father was Marcus Annæus Mela, brother to Seneca. His mother was the daughter of Acilius Lucanus, an eminent orator, and from him the poet took the name of Lucan. His "Pharsalia" is an epic poem of merit, though sometimes harsh and irregular. Rhetoric, however, seems to have been the art he excelled most in; and all writers acknowledge that he declaimed in public when but fourteen years old, both in Greek and Latin, with universal applause.

[2] Petro'nius, the Latin poet, was born at Marseilles, a maritime city in France. In this city was a temple dedicated to Apollo; and an univer-

U.C. 817. A.D. 66. too remarkable to be passed over in silence. This person, whom some historians supposed to be the author of the piece entitled T. Petro'nii Arbi'tri Saty'ricon, was an epicu'rean, both in principle and practice. In a court like that of Nero, he was esteemed for his refinements in luxury, and became the emperor's tutor in this exquisite art. 18. Accused of being privy to Piso's conspiracy, he was committed to prison. Petro'nius, who could not endure the anxiety of suspense, resolved upon putting himself to death, by causing his veins to be opened [1]. 19. In the mean time he conversed with his friends, not upon maxims of philosophy, or grave subjects, but upon such topics as had amused his gayest revels. He listened while they recited the lightest poems; and by no action, no word, no circumstance, showed the perplexity of a dying person. 20. Shortly after him, Numi'cius Thermus, Bare'a Sora'nus, and Pe'tus Thra'sea [2], were put to death. The valiant Cor'bulo [3], who had gained Nero so many victories over the Parthians, followed next. Nor did the empress Poppæ'a herself escape, whom he kicked when she was pregnant, by which she miscarried, and died. 21. At length human nature grew weary of bearing her persecutor; and the whole world seemed to rouse, as if by common consent, to rid the earth of a monster.

sity, remarkable for the frugality and civil behaviour of the students, to which the Romans sent their children to be educated, it being styled by Cicero the Athens of Gaul; and by Pliny the mistress of Education. Petro'nius's Satire against Nero is extremely well written, though very licentious. His other works are, a Poem on the Civil War between Cæsar and Pompey; on the Education of the Roman Youth; on the Corruption of Eloquence, and on the Cause of the Decline of the Arts, &c. (Biog. Classica.)

[1] So little eagerness did he show to put an end to his agonies, that after his veins were cut, he directed them to be closed again, and then opened at intervals, showing no sense of pain, nor apprehension of death.

[2] The most virtuous man of his time.

[3] Cor'bulo, the celebrated Roman general, subdued the Parthians, and also the Arme'nians, whose capital he destroyed, and placed Tigra'nes on the throne (of Arme'nia); Nero, jealous of his reputation, directed him to be murdered; Cor'bulo, hearing of it, fell upon his sword, A.D. 67. (Tacitus.)

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Nero's conduct at the commencement of his reign?
2. Did this disposition continue?
3. What was there peculiar in his disposition?
4. Were these his greatest faults?
5. Of what heinous crime is he accused?
6. On whom was the odium of this barbarous action cast?
7. What was the consequence to these unhappy men?
8. What eminent persons suffered on this occasion?
9. Did not these cruelties give birth to conspiracies?
10. What persons of note suffered in consequence?
11. Did this defence save his life?
12. Were his exhortations effectual?
13. Relate the circumstances of Seneca's death.
14. Were not other means resorted to?
15. Did not Paulina survive him?
16. Describe the death of Lucan.
17. What other victim of Nero's cruelty deserves mention?
18. What brought him into danger?
19. How did he meet death?
20. Were not other illustrious persons sacrificed?
21. Were these cruelties committed with impunity?

SECTION VIII.

O breath of public praise,
Short-lived and vain; oft gained without desert,
As often lost, unmerited: composed
But of extremes. HAVARD.

3. Va'ses, *s.* goblets, ornamental vessels.
7. Im'precating, *part.* desiring with curses.
14. Innox'ious, *a.* no longer hurtful.
17. Exche'quer, *s.* a modern name for the treasury.
28. Contam'inated, *part.* defiled, polluted.
31. Animos'ity, *s.* hatred.
Precipita'tion, *s.* unwise haste.

1. SERVIUS GALBA[1], at that time governor of Spain, was remarkable for his wisdom in peace, and his courage in war; but as a display of talents under corrupt princes is dangerous, he for some years had seemed to court obscurity, and an inactive life. 2. Willing, however, to rid his country of the monster that now occupied the throne, he accepted the invitation of Vindex, to march with an army towards Rome. 3. From the moment he

[1] Galba (Ser'vius Sulpi'cius) was descended from the ancient family of the Sulpi'tii. He was successively prætor, proconsul of Africa, and general of the Roman armies in Germany and Spain.

declared against Nero, the tyrant considered himself as fallen. He received the account as he was at supper, and instantly struck with terror, overturned the table with his foot, breaking two crystal *vases* of immense value. He fell into a swoon; and on his recovery, tore his clothes and struck his head, crying out, "that he was utterly undone." 4. He now called for the assistance of Locus'ta, a woman famous in the art of poisoning, to furnish him with the means of death; but being prevented in this, and the revolt becoming general, he went in person from house to house, but the doors were shut against him. Being reduced to a state of desperation, he desired that one of his favourite gladiators might despatch him; but even in this request not one would obey. "Alas," cried he, "have I neither friend nor enemy?" then running desperately forth, he seemed resolved to plunge headlong into the Ti'ber. 5. But his courage failed him; he made a sudden stop, as if willing to re-collect his reason; and asked for some sacred place, where he might reassume his courage, and meet death with becoming fortitude. 6. In this distress, Pha'on, one of his freedmen, offered him his country-house, about four miles distant, where he might for some time remain concealed. Nero accepted the offer; and with his head covered, hiding his face with his handkerchief, he mounted on horseback, attended by four of his domestics, of whom the wretched Sporus [1] was one. 7. His journey, though short, was crowded with adventures. An earthquake gave him the first alarm. The lightning from heaven next flashed in his face. Round him he heard nothing but confused noises from the camp, the cries of the soldiers *imprecating* a thousand evils upon his head. 8. A traveller, meeting him on the way, cried, "Those men are in pursuit of Nero." Another asked him if there was any news of Nero in that city. His horse taking fright at a dead body that lay near the road, he dropped his handkerchief: when a soldier addressing him by name, he quitted his horse, and forsaking the highway, entered a thicket that led towards the back part of Pha'on's house, making the best of his way among the reeds and brambles with

[1] Spo'rus was the companion and sharer of his unnatural pleasures Among other abominable follies, he publicly married this wretch, kept him in his palace, and carried him about with him in the same litter, in the attire of an empress.

which the place was overgrown. 9. During this interval, the senate, finding the Prætō'rian guards had taken part with Galba, declared him emperor, and condemned Nero to die, *mo're majo'rum;* that is, according to the rigour of the ancient laws. 10. When he was told of the resolution of the senate, he asked what was meant by being punished according to the rigour of the ancient laws? To this it was answered, that the criminal was to be stripped naked, his head was to be fixed in a pillory, and in that posture he was to be scourged to death. 11. Nero was so terrified at this, that he seized two poniards, which he had brought with him: after examining their points, he returned them, however, to their sheaths, pretending that the fatal moment was not yet arrived. 12. He then desired Sporus to begin the lamentations which were used at funerals; he next entreated that one of his attendants would die, to give him courage by his example; and afterwards began to reproach his own cowardice, crying out, "Does this become Nero? Is this trifling well-timed? No!—let me be courageous!" In fact, he had no time to spare: for the soldiers, who had been sent in pursuit of him, were just then approaching the house. 13. Upon hearing, therefore, the sound of the horses' feet, he set a dagger to his throat, with which, by the assistance of Epaphrod'itus, his freedman and secretary, he gave himself a mortal wound[1]. 14. However, he was not yet dead, when one of the centurions entering the room, and pretending that he came to his relief, attempted to stop the blood with his cloak. But Nero, regarding him with a stern countenance, said, "It is now too late! Is this your fidelity?" Upon which, with his eyes fixed and frightfully staring, he expired; exhibiting, even after death, a ghastly spectacle of *innoxious* tyranny. 15. He reigned thirteen years, seven months, and twenty-eight days, and died in the thirty-second year of his age.

16. Galba was seventy-two years old when he was declared emperor, and was then in Spain with his legions. He soon found that his being raised to the throne was but an inlet to new disquietudes. 17. He seemed to have three objects in view: to curb the insolence of the soldiers; to punish those vices which had

U.C. 820. A.D. 69.

[1] For this assistance Epaphrod'itus afterwards paid dear, being put to death by Domit'ian, for imbruing his hands in the blood of the Cæsars.

risen to an enormous height in the last reign; and to replenish the *exchequer*, which had been drained by the prodigality of his predecessors. 18. However, permitting himself to be governed by favourites, he at one time showed himself severe and frugal; at another, remiss and prodigal; condemning some illustrious persons without any hearing; and pardoning others, though guilty. In consequence of this, seditions were kindled, and factions promoted.

19. Galba was sensible that, besides his age, his want of an heir rendered him less respected: he resolved, therefore, to adopt a person, whose virtues might deserve such advancement, and protect his declining age from danger; but his favourites wished to give him an heir of their own choosing; so that there arose a great contention among them upon this occasion. 20. Otho [1] made earnest application for himself, alleging the great services he had done the emperor, as being the first man of note who came to his assistance, when he had declared against Nero. 21. However Galba, being fully resolved to consult the public good alone, rejected his suit; and, on a day appointed, ordered Piso Lucia'nus to attend him. The character given by historians of Piso is, that he was every way worthy of the honour designed him. 22. Taking this youth by the hand, Galba adopted him to succeed in the empire, giving him the most wholesome lessons for guiding his future conduct. Piso showed that he was highly deserving this distinction; in all his deportment there appeared such modesty, firmness, and equality of mind, as bespoke him rather capable of discharging, than ambitious of obtaining, his present dignity. 23. But the army and the senate did not seem equally disinterested upon this occasion; they had been so long used to bribery and corruption, that they could now bear no emperor who was not in a capacity of satisfying their avarice. The adoption, therefore, of Piso was coldly received: for his virtues were no recommendation in a time of universal depravity.

[1] Otho born at Rome, A.D. 32, was descended from the ancient kings of Tuscany. Nero, whose companion he was in all his debaucheries, had elevated him to the highest offices of the state. After Nero's death, he endeavoured to attach himself to Galba, but that emperor having made up his mind to appoint Piso his heir, Otho excited an insurrection, murdered Galba and Piso, and ascended the throne, A.D. 69, but was opposed by Vitel'lius, who was supported by the army, which he then commanded in Germany. (Crevier.)

24. Otho, who had long been a favourite of Galba, and hoped to be adopted a successor in the empire, finding himself disappointed, and stimulated by the immense load of debt, which he had contracted by his riotous way of living, resolved upon obtaining the empire by force, since he could not do it by peaceable succession. Having corrupted the fidelity of the army, he stole secretly from the emperor while he was sacrificing; and assembling the soldiers, he, in a short speech, urged the cruelties and the avarice of Galba. 25. Finding his invectives received with universal shouts by the army, he entirely threw off the mask, and avowed his intention of dethroning him. The soldiers, being ripe for sedition, immediately seconded his views, and taking Otho upon their shoulders, declared him emperor; and to strike the citizens with terror, carried him, with their swords drawn, into the camp.

26. Soon after, finding Galba in some measure deserted by his adherents, the soldiers rushed in upon him, trampling the crowds of people that then filled the forum under foot. 27. Galba, seeing them approach, seemed to recollect all his former fortitude; and bending his head forward, bid the assassins strike it off, if it were for the good of the people. 28. The command was quickly obeyed. The soldier who struck it off stuck it upon the point of a lance, and contemptuously carried it round the camp; his body remaining unburied in the streets till it was interred by one of his slaves. His short reign of seven months was as illustrious by his own virtues, as it was *contaminated* by the vices of his favourites, who shared in his downfal.

29. Otho, who was now elected emperor, began his reign by a signal instance of clemency, in pardoning Ma'rius Celsus, who had been highly favoured by Galba; and not content with barely forgiving, he advanced him to the highest honours, asserting, that "fidelity deserved every reward."

30. In the mean time, the legions in Lower Germany having been purchased by the large gifts and specious promises of Vitel'lius[1] their general, were at length induced to proclaim him emperor; and regardless of the senate, they declared that they had an equal right to appoint to that high station, with the cohorts at Rome.

[1] Au'lus Vitel'lius was descended from one of the most illustrious families of Rome, and brought up in the vicious court of Tiberius at Capræa.

31. Otho departed from Rome with all haste to give Vitel'lius battle. The army of Vitel'lius, which consisted of seventy thousand men, was commanded by his generals Va'lens and Cecin'na, he himself remaining in Gaul, in order to bring up the rest of his forces. Both sides hastened to meet each other with so much *animosity* and *precipitation*, that three considerable battles were fought in the space of three days; in all of which Otho and the Romans had the advantage. 32. These successes, however, were but of short continuance, for Va'lens and Cecin'na, who had hitherto acted separately, joining their forces, and strengthening their armies with fresh supplies, resolved to come to a general engagement. Otho's forces were partially overthrown at Bedria'cum, a village near Cremo'na, in Lombardy, in Italy; and though he had still numerous armies at his devotion, he killed himself shortly after, having reigned three months and five days[1], and was succeeded by Vitel'lius.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the character of Servius Galba?
2. Did he at length emerge from his obscurity?
3. Was he formidable to Nero?
4. What was the conduct of Nero on this emergency?
5. Did he actually do so?
6. Was his request complied with?
7. What befel him by the way?
8. What farther happened?
9. What occurred in the interval?
10. How did Nero receive this intelligence?
11. Did he resolve to await this terrible punishment?
12. How did he contrive to put off the fatal moment?
13. What at length put an end to this irresolution?
14. Was he dead when the soldiers arrived?
15. How long did he reign?
16. What was the age of Galba on his succession?
17. What were his principal views?
18. Was his conduct regular and consistent?
19. What important measure did he adopt?

[1] Although Otho appears to have been in the early part of his life a dissipated character, his death was truly heroic; as far as the mistaken principles of those times can render suicide excusable. His soldiers were entirely devoted to him. He had numerous garrisons in Bedria'cum and Placen'tia; the legions from Dalma'tia, Mœ'sia, and Panno'nia, and the Asiatic, Syrian, and Egyptian forces were readily advancing to his assistance; yet he nobly resolved to die, to save his country from the horrors of a civil war.

20. Who was the chief candidate on the occasion?
21. Was he chosen?
22. Was Piso the chosen successor, and what was his character?
23. Was this adoption generally approved?
24. Did not Otho attempt to set him aside?
25. Was he favourably received?
26. Did Galba suppress this rebellion?
27. What was his behaviour on the occasion?
28. Was this command obeyed, and what treatment did Galba experience?
29. How did Otho commence his reign?
30. Did he reign without a rival?
31. What was the consequence of this rivalship?
32. Was Otho finally successful?

SECTION IX.

A.D. 70.

Afflicted Israel shall sit weeping down,
Fast by the stream where Babel's waters run;
Their harps upon the neighbouring willows hung,
Nor joyous hymn encouraging their tongue,
Nor cheerful dance their feet; with toil oppress'd,
Their wearied limbs aspiring but to rest. PRIOR.

4. Unan'imously, *ad.* with one accord.
10. Fluctua'tion, *s.* change, uncertainty.
Prema'ture, *a.* too early.
19. Infat'uated, *part.* deprived of reason.
Impie'ties, *s.* wickedness, irreverence to the Supreme Being.
21. Impu'nity, *s.* freedom from punishment.
22. Incen'diary, *s.* a promoter of war and devastation (it literally means one who sets fire to buildings).
Fanat'ic, *s.* an enthusiast, one zealous in a wrong cause.
26. Rally'ing, *part.* returning to the combat.
27. Pre'cipices, *s.* steep rocky declivities.
30. Intim'idate, *v.* to alarm, to frighten.
32. Delu'ded, *v.* cheated, deceived.
36. Site, *s.* situation, place whereon any building stood.

1. VITEL'LIUS was declared emperor by the senate, and received the marks of distinction which were now accustomed to follow the appointments of the strongest side. 2. Upon his arrival at Rome, he entered the city, not as a place he came to govern with justice, but as a town that was become his own by the laws of conquest.

3. Vitel'lius soon gave himself up to all kinds of luxury and profuseness; but gluttony was so much his favourite vice, that he brought himself to a habit of vomiting, in order to be able to renew his meals at pleasure. His entertainments, seldom indeed at his own cost, were prodigiously expensive. He frequently invited himself to the tables of his subjects; in the same day breakfast-

ing with one, dining with another, and supping with a third. 4. By such vices, and by enormous cruelties, he became a burden to himself, and odious to all mankind. Having become insupportable to the inhabitants of Rome, the legions of the East *unanimously* resolved to make Vespa'sian [1] emperor.

5. During the preparations against him, Vitel'lius, though buried in sloth and luxury, resolved to make an effort to defend the empire; and his chief commanders, Va'lens and Cecin'na, were ordered to make all possible preparations to resist the invaders. 6. The first army that entered Italy with a hostile intention, was under the command of Anto'nius Pri'mus, who was met by Cecin'na, near Cremo'na. A battle was expected to ensue: but a negotiation taking place, Cecin'na was prevailed upon to change sides, and declared for Vespa'sian [2]. His army, however, quickly repented of what they had done, and imprisoning their general, attacked Anto'nius, though without a leader. 7. The engagement continued the whole night; and in the morning, after a short repast, both armies engaged a second time; when the soldiers of Anto'nius saluting the rising sun, according to custom, the Vitel'lians supposed that they had received new reinforcements, and betook themselves to flight with the loss of thirty thousand men.

8. In the mean time, Vitel'lius made offers to Vespa'sian of resigning the empire in his favour, provided his

[1] Vespa'sian was by no means of an illustrious family, his father being only a collector of the tax called quadragesima. Nor was his conduct, previous to his accession to the imperial throne, calculated to do him honour, as he was guilty of the meanest flattery and servility to ingratiate himself with men in power. Yet, as a general, he was indefatigable in his duties, and of unquestionable valour; abstemious in his diet, and plain in his dress. On attaining to the imperial dignity he appears to have laid aside every vice except avarice. His elevation neither induced him to assume arrogant and lofty airs, nor to neglect those friends who had shown themselves deserving of his favour. Desirous of convincing the world that he owed his good fortune to merit alone, he disdained to court the soldiers by largesses: in short, he displayed a nobleness of disposition worthy of the most illustrious birth, and befitting the exalted station to which he had arrived. This prince was the founder of the noble amphitheatre, called the Coliseum, which remains to this day. Twelve thousand Jewish captives were employed in its erection, and it was capable of containing 80,000 spectators seated, and 20,000 standing. It is now in ruins.

[2] Vespasian was at that time conducting the war in Jude'a, in Asia

life were spared, and a sufficient revenue allotted for his support. In order to enforce this proposal, he issued from his palace in deep mourning, with all his domestics weeping round him. 9. He then went to offer the sword of justice to Cecil'ius, the consul, which he refusing, the abject emperor prepared to lay down the ensigns of empire in the Temple of Concord; but being interrupted by some who cried out, that he himself was concord, he resolved, upon so weak an encouragement, still to maintain his power, and immediately prepared for his defence.

10. During this *fluctuation* of councils, one Sabi'nus, who had advised Vitel'lius to resign, perceiving his desperate situation, resolved by a bold step to favour Vespa'sian; and accordingly seized upon the capitol. But he was *premature* in his attempt: for the soldiers of Vitel'lius attacked him with great fury; and prevailing by their numbers, soon laid that beautiful building in ashes. 11. During this dreadful conflagration, Vitel'lius was feasting in the palace of Tibe'rius, and beheld all the horrors of the assault with satisfaction. 12. Sabi'nus was taken prisoner, and shortly after executed by the emperor's command. Young Domi'tian, his nephew, who was afterwards emperor, escaped by flight, in the habit of a priest; and the rest, who survived the fire, were put to the sword.

13. But Anto'nius, Vespa'sian's commander, being arrived before the walls of the city, the forces of Vitel'lius resolved upon defending it to the utmost extremity. It was attacked with fury; while the army within, sallying out upon the besiegers, defended it with equal obstinacy. The battle lasted the whole day; the besieged were driven back into the city, and a dreadful slaughter made of them in the streets, which they vainly attempted to defend.

14. Vitel'lius was soon found hidden in an obscure corner, whence he was taken by a party of the conquering soldiers. Still, however, desirous of adding a few hours to his miserable life, he begged to be kept in prison till the arrival of Vespa'sian at Rome, pretending that he nad secrets of importance to discover. 15. But his entreaties were vain; the soldiers binding his hands behind him, and throwing a halter round his neck, led him along, half naked, into the public forum, loading him with all the

bitter reproaches their malice could suggest, or his cruelty might deserve. At length, being come to the place of punishment, they put him to death with blows: and then dragging the dead body through the streets with a hook, they threw it with all possible ignominy into the river Tiber.

16. Vespa'sian was now declared emperor by the unani-
A.D. mous consent both of the senate and the army; and
70. dignified with all those titles which now followed rather the power than the merit of those who were appointed to govern. 17. Having continued some months at Alexan'dria, in Egypt, where it is said he cured a blind man and a cripple by touching them, he set out for Rome. Giving his son, Ti'tus, the command of the army that was to lay siege to Jerusalem [1], he himself went forward, and was met many miles from Rome by all the senate, and the inhabitants, who gave the sincerest testimony of their joy, in having an emperor of such great and experienced virtue. 18. Nor did he in the least disappoint their expectations; as he showed himself equally assiduous in rewarding merit and pardoning his adversaries; in reforming the manners of the citizens, and setting them the best example in his own.

19. In the mean time Titus carried on the war against the Jews with vigour. This obstinate and *infatuated* people had long resolved to resist the Roman power, vainly hoping to find protection from Heaven, which their *impieties* had utterly offended. 20. Their own historian [2] represents them as arrived at the highest pitch of iniquity; while famines, earthquakes, and prodigies, all conspired to forbode their approaching ruin. 21. Nor was it sufficient that heaven and earth seemed combined against them; they had the most bitter dissensions among themselves, and were divided into two parties, who robbed and destroyed each other with *impunity:* constantly pillaging, yet boasting their zeal for the religion of their ancestors.

22. At the head of one of these parties was an *incendiary*, whose name was John. This *fanatic* affected sovereign power, and filled the whole city of Jeru'salem, and all the towns around, with tumult and pillage. In a short time a new faction arose, headed by one Si'mon, who, gathering together multitudes of robbers and murderers, who

[1] Jeru'salem, the capital of Jude'a, in Asia. It has also had the several names of Je'bus, Sa'lem, Sol'yma, &c.

[2] Josephus.

had fled to the mountains, attacked many cities and towns, and reduced all Idume'a[1] under his power. 23. Jeru'salem, at length, became the theatre in which these two demagogues exercised their mutual animosity; John was possessed of the temple, while Si'mon was admitted into the city; both equally enraged against each other; while slaughter and devastation were the consequence of their pretensions. Thus did a city, formerly celebrated for peace and unity, become the seat of tumult and confusion.

24. In this miserable situation, Ti'tus began his operations within six furlongs of Jeru'salem, during the feast of the passover, when the place was filled with an infinite multitude of people, who had come from all parts to celebrate that great solemnity. 25. The approach of the Romans produced a temporary reconciliation between the contending factions within the city; so that they unanimously resolved to oppose the common enemy, and decide their domestic quarrels at a more convenient season. 26. Their first sally, which was made with much fury and resolution, put the besiegers into great disorder, and obliged them to abandon their camp and fly to the mountains: however, *rallying* immediately after, the Jews were forced back into the city, while Ti'tus, in person, showed surprising instances of valour and conduct.

27. The city was strongly fortified with three walls on every side, except where it was fenced by *precipices*. Ti'tus began by battering down the outward wall, which after much fatigue and danger, he effected; in the mean time showing the greatest clemency to the Jews, and offering them repeated assurances of pardon. Five days after the commencement of the siege, Titus broke through the second wall; and though driven back by the besieged, he recovered his ground, and made preparations for battering the third wall, which was their last defence. 28. But first he sent Jose'phus their countryman into the city, to exhort them to yield; who, using all his eloquence to persuade them, was answered only with scoffs and reproaches. 29. The siege was now therefore carried on with greater vigour

[1] Idume'a is the same as E'dom. It was called Idume'a by the Greeks, and E'dom by Moses. It was a district of Arabia Petræ'a, on the south of Judea. Its boundaries were different at different periods. When the Israelites passed through, on their way from Egypt to Ca'naan, this country appears to have been less than in the time of Solomon, when it extended to the Red Sea. (1 Kings ix. 26.)

than before; formidable engines for throwing darts and stones were constructed, and as quickly destroyed by the enemy. At length it was resolved in council to surround the whole city with a trench, and thus prevent all relief and succours from abroad. 30. This, which was quickly executed, seemed no way to *intimidate* the Jews. Though famine, and pestilence, its necessary attendant, began now to make the most horrid ravages among them, yet this desperate people still resolved to hold out. 31. Titus now cut down all the woods within a considerable distance of the city; and causing more batteries to be raised, he at length beat down the wall; and in five days entered the citadel by force. 32. The Jews, however, continued to deceive themselves with absurd expectations, while many false prophets *deluded* the multitude, by declaring that they should soon have assistance from God. The heat of the battle was now gathered round the inner wall of the temple, while the defendants desperately combated from the top. 33. Ti'tus was desirous of saving this beautiful structure; but a soldier casting a brand into some adjacent buildings, the fire communicated to the temple; and notwithstanding the utmost endeavours on both sides, the whole edifice was quickly consumed. 34. The sight of the temple in ruins effectually served to damp the ardour of the Jews. They now began to suppose that Heaven had forsaken them, while their cries and lamentations echoed from the adjacent mountains. Even those who were almost expiring, lifted up their dying eyes to bewail the loss of their temple, which they valued more than life itself. 35. The most resolute, however, still endeavoured to defend the upper and stronger part of the city, named Sion; but Ti'tus, with his battering engines, soon made himself entire master of the place. 36. John and Simon were taken from the vaults where they had concealed themselves; the former was condemned to perpetual imprisonment, and the latter reserved to grace the conqueror's triumph. The greatest part of the populace were put to the sword; and the city was, after a six months' siege, entirely razed, and its *site* ploughed up; so that, according to our Saviour's prophecy, not one stone remained upon another. Those who perished in this siege amounted to about a million; the captives to almost a hundred thousand [1].

[1] The destruction of Jerusalem happened in the year of our Lord 89.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Otho?
2. In what way did he assume the sovereignty?
3. How did he conduct himself in his new station?
4. What were the consequences of this conduct?
5. Did Vitellius tamely submit to his rival?
6. Who first commenced hostilities?
7. What followed?
8. What was the conduct of Vitellius on this occasion?
9. What farther measures did he adopt?
10. Were the friends of Vespasian idle at this juncture?
11. How was Vitellius engaged at the time of this disaster?
12. What became of Sabinus?
13. What was the consequence of this success on the part of Vitellius?
14. What became of the fallen emperor?
15. Was his request granted?
16. Did Vespasian quietly succeed?
17. What were his first measures?
18. Were they disappointed in their expectations?
19. What was the state of the Jewish war?
20. What was the state of the Jewish nation?
21. Were they united among themselves?
22. Who were at the head of these factions?
23. What was the chief theatre of their enormities?
24. At what remarkable season did Titus commence his attack?
25. What effect did this attack produce?
26. Did the Jews bravely defend their city?
27. What progress did Titus make in the siege?
28. Did he make no attempt to persuade the Jews to surrender?
29. What measures were then adopted?
30. Did these formidable measures terrify the Jews?
31. By what means did Titus gain the city?
32. Was all opposition now at an end?
33. Was the temple destroyed?
34. What effect did this sad event produce?
35. Were there none who attempted farther resistance?
36. What became of the inhabitants and their chiefs?

SECTION X.

This world, 'tis true,
Was made for Cæsar—but for Titus too;
And which more blest? who chain'd his country, say,
Or, he whose virtue sigh'd to lose a day! POPE.

3. Profu'sion, *s.* abundance.
5. Rapa'city, *s.* greediness, seizing by violence.
   Im'post, *s.* a tax.
9. Bri'dling, *part.* restraining.
10. Discard'ed, *v.* dismissed.
14. Court'esy, *s.* civility, politeness.
15. Erup'tion, *s.* a breaking forth with violence.
16. Refrac'tory, *s.* obstinate, disobedient.
26. Ostenta'tion, *s.* show, magnificence.
27. Malev'olence, *s.* ill will, spite, hatred.

Note.—Exche'quer, *s.* the treasury.

1. UPON the taking of Jerusalem, the soldiers would

have crowned Titus as conqueror; but he modestly refused the honour, alleging, that he was only an instrument in the hand of Heaven, that manifestly declared its wrath against the Jews. 2. At Rome, however, all men's mouths were filled with the praises of the conqueror, who had not only showed himself an excellent general, but a courageous combatant. His return therefore in triumph, with Vespa'sian his father, was marked with all the magnificence and joy in the power of men to express. All things that were esteemed valuable or beautiful, were brought to adorn this great occasion. 3. Among the rich spoils were exposed vast quantities of gold, taken out of the temple; but the Book of the Holy Law was not the least remarkable among the magnificent *profusion*. 4. This was the first time that ever Rome saw the father and the son triumphant together. A triumphal arch was erected upon this occasion, on which were described the victories of Titus over the Jews; and it remains almost entire to this day.

5. Few emperors have received a better character from historians than Vespa'sian; yet his numerous acts of generosity and magnificence could not preserve his character from the imputation of *rapacity* and avarice [1]; for it is well known that he descended to some very unusual and dishonourable *imposts*.

6. Having reigned ten years, beloved by his subjects, and deserving their affection, he was seized with an indisposition at Campa'nia, which he perceived would be fatal. 7. Finding his end approaching, he exerted himself, and cried out, "An emperor ought to die standing;" whereupon, raising himself upon his feet, he expired in the arms of those who sustained him.

[1] Even that avarice, with which he stands charged, has found its advocates, who assert that it did not arise from a sordid disposition, but from the emptiness of the *exchequer*, and the necessities of the state, for he always employed his revenues to great and noble purposes, and expended them with uncommon generosity. His abhorrence of effeminacy was so great, that on a certain nobleman's coming to return him thanks for his appointment to a considerable command, and smelling fragrantly of rich oils and perfumes, the emperor sternly told him, that he had rather he had smelt of garlic, and he immediately deprived him of his commission. He was of so merciful a disposition, that it was with great reluctance he adjudged the most atrocious criminals to death. He was affable to all, and so far from attempting to conceal the meanness of his origin, that he frequently discoursed of it himself.

8. Ti'tus was joyfully received as emperor[1], and began his reign with the practice of every virtue that became a sovereign and a man. During the life of his father, there had been many imputations against him both for cruelty, lust, and prodigality; but upon his exaltation to the throne, he seemed to have entirely taken leave of his former vices, and became an example of the greatest moderation and humanity. 9. His first step towards gaining the affections of his subjects, was the moderating of his passions, and *bridling* his inclinations. 10. He had long loved Bereni'ce, sister to Agrip'pa, king of Judea, a woman of the greatest beauty and refined allurements; but knowing that the connexion was entirely disagreeable to the people of Rome, he gained the victory over his affections, and sent her away, notwithstanding their mutual passion, and the arts she used to induce him to change his resolution. He next *discarded* those who had been the ministers of his pleasures, though he had formerly taken great pains in the selection. 11. This moderation, added to his justice and generosity, procured him the love of all good men, and the appellation of the *Delight of Mankind;* which all his actions seemed calculated to ensure. A.D. 79.

12. Ti'tus took particular care to punish all informers, false witnesses, and promoters of dissension. Wretches who had their rise in the licentiousness and *impunity* of former reigns, were now become so numerous, that their crimes called loudly for punishment. 13. Of these he daily made public example; condemning them to be scourged in the public streets, dragged through the theatre, and then banished into the uninhabited parts of the empire, or sold as slaves. 14. His *courtesy* and readiness to do good have been celebrated even by Christian writers; his principal rule being, not to send away a petitioner dissatisfied. One night recollecting that he had done nothing beneficial to mankind during the day, he cried out, "I have lost a day!" A sentence too remarkable not to be had in remembrance.

15. In the first year of his reign, an *eruption* of Mount Vesu'vius overwhelmed many towns[2], throwing its ashes

[1] This is denied by Sueto'nius, who affirms that his former profligate life gave rise to gloomy apprehensions on his accession, but they were soon dissipated by the correctness of his subsequent conduct.

[2] Hercula'neum, Pompe'ii, &c. This eruption happened August 24, A.D. 79. These towns, after having been buried under the lava for more than 1600 years, were discovered in the beginning of the last century: Hercula'neum in 1713, about 24 feet under ground, by labourers dig-

into countries more than a hundred miles distant. Upon this memorable occasion, Pliny, the naturalist, lost his life; being impelled by too eager a curiosity to observe the eruption, he was suffocated in the flames. 16. This and other disasters were, in some measure, counterbalanced by the successes in Britain under Agric'ola. This excellent general, having been sent into Britain towards the latter end of Vespasian's reign, showed himself equally expert in quelling the *refractory*, and civilizing those who had formerly submitted to the Roman power. 17. The Ordovi'ces, or inhabitants of North Wales, were the first that were subdued. He then made a descent upon the isle of An'glesey, which surrendered at discretion. 18. Having thus rendered himself master of the whole country, he took every method to restore discipline to his own army, and to introduce politeness among those whom he had conquered. He exhorted them, both by advice and example, to build temples, theatres, and stately houses. He caused the sons of their nobility to be instructed in the liberal arts, and to be taught the Latin language; and induced them to imitate the Roman modes of dress and living. 19. Thus, by degrees, this barbarous people began to assume the luxurious manners of their conquerors, and even to outdo them in all the refinements of sensual pleasure. 20. Upon account of the successes in Britain, Ti'tus was saluted Impera'tor [1] for

ging a well; and Pompe'ii 40 years after, about 12 feet below the surface: and from the houses and streets which, in a great measure, remain perfect, have been drawn busts, statues, manuscripts, paintings, &c. which contribute much to enlarge our notions concerning the ancients, and develope many classical obscurities. (Mala.) In the year following this dreadful eruption, a serious fire happened at Rome, which consumed the Capitol, the Pantheon, the library of Augustus, the theatre of Pompey, and a great many other buildings. In the ruins of Hercula'neum there have lately been found loaves which were baked under the reign of Titus, and which still bear the baker's mark, indicating the quality of the flour, which was probably prescribed by the regulation of the police. There have also been found utensils of bronze, which, instead of being tinned, like ours, are well silvered. The ancients doubtless preferred this method, as more wholesome and more durable. The excavations at Pompe'ii continue to furnish the royal museum at Naples with all kinds of valuable objects; some buildings have lately been discovered at Pompe'ii, remarkable for the richness of their architecture. At Paggo'ia, another town buried by the lava from Vesuvius, some sepulchres have been found which are stated to be magnificently adorned with sculpture of the finest kind.

[1] Impera'tor, a title of honour among the Romans, conferred on victorious generals by their armies, and afterwards by the senate.

the fifteenth time; but he did not long survive this honour, being seized with a violent fever at a little distance from Rome. He expired shortly after, but not without suspicion of treachery from his brother Domi'tian [1], who had long wished to govern. He died in the forty-first year of his age, having reigned two years, two months, and twenty days.

Several statues were erected to his honour; that which we have copied is one of the few armed statues that have been preserved to modern times: it represents Titus addressing his soldiers, and probably was executed before his accession to the empire.

21. The beginning of Domi'tian's reign was universally acceptable to the people, as he appeared equally remarkable for his clemency, liberality, and justice [2]. A.D. 81.

[1] Domi'tian is supposed to have caused the death of his brother by poison.

[2] It is a remarkable fact, that the most odious tyrants that ever sat on the Roman throne, commenced their reigns with a display of all the virtues that adorn humanity: on the contrary, Augustus, who was then the father of his people, began his reign with cruelties that afforded but a melancholy presage of his future administration.

22. But he soon began to show the natural deformity of his mind. Instead of cultivating literature, as his father and brother had done, he neglected all kinds of study, addicting himself wholly to meaner pursuits, particularly archery and gaming. 23. He was so very expert an archer, that he would frequently cause one of his slaves to stand at a great distance, with his hand spread as a mark, and would shoot his arrows with such exactness, as to stick them all between his fingers. 24. He instituted three sorts of contests to be observed every five years, in music, horsemanship, and wrestling; but at the same time he banished all philosophers and mathematicians from Rome. 25. No emperor before him entertained the people with such various and expensive shows. During these diversions, he distributed great rewards, sitting as president himself, adorned with a purple robe and crown, with the priests of Ju'piter, and the college of Fla'vian priests about him. 26. The meanness of his occupations in solitude, was a just contrast to his exhibitions of public *ostentation*. He usually spent his hours of retirement in catching flies, and sticking them through with a bodkin; so that one of his servants, being asked if the emperor were alone, answered that he had not so much as a fly to bear him company. 27. His vices seemed every day to increase, and his ungrateful treatment of Agric'ola afforded a convincing proof of his natural *malevolence*. 28. Domi'tian was always particularly fond of obtaining a military reputation, and therefore felt jealous of it in others. He had marched some time before into Gaul, upon a pretended expedition against the Catti, a people of Germany, and without even seeing the enemy, resolved to have the honour of a triumph upon his return to Rome. For that purpose he purchased a number of slaves, whom he dressed in German habits, and at the head of this miserable procession entered the city, amid the apparent acclamations and concealed contempt of all his subjects.

Questions for Examination.

1. How did Titus conduct himself after this important conquest?
2. How was he received at Rome?
3. What were the most remarkable among the spoils?
4. What peculiarity attended this triumph?
5. What was the character of Vespasian?

6. How many years did Vespasian reign?
7. Did he not display great resolution at the hour of death?
8. How did Titus commence his reign?
9. By what means did he gain the love of his subjects?
10. What sacrifices did he make for this purpose?
11. Did he succeed in his views?
12. What class of delinquents met his most decided disapprobation?
13. What punishment was inflicted on them?
14. What were his chief virtues?
15. What remarkable event occurred in this reign? and what eminent personage became its victim?
16. By what successes was this disaster counterbalanced?
17. What were his first enterprises?
18. What methods did he take to civilize the conquered countries?
19. Were his measures successful?
20. Did Titus long enjoy the glory of this conquest?
21. How did Domitian commence his reign?
22. Did he persevere in this meritorious conduct?
23. In what exercise did he excel?
24. Did he encourage the arts and sciences?
25. Was he magnificent in his exhibitions?
26. How did he employ himself in private?
27. Did time render him less vicious?
28. By what means did he attempt to acquire military fame?

SECTION XI.

What wretch would groan
Beneath the galling load of power, or walk
Upon the slippery pavements of the great! SOMERVILLE.

2. Ta'cit, *a.* silent.
8. Appella'tions, *s.* names, titles.
9. Nov'elty, *s.* newness.
Poig'nancy, *s.* sharpness, quickness of wit.
Astrol'oger, *s.* a person who foretels future events by the stars.
11. Junc'ture, *s.* point of time, critical time.
13. Hypoc'risy, *s.* deceit.
Comp'troller, *s.* one who has the power of overruling or governing the actions of another.
14. Extir'pate, *v.* to root out, to destroy.
21. Circumspec'tion, *s.* care, caution.
22. Alac'rity, *s.* cheerfulness, readiness.
24. Sub'altern, *a.* inferior.
25. Incred'ible, *a.* difficult to be believed.
Magi'cian, *s.* one who performs miracles by the power of the devil.
26. Pris'tine, *a.* ancient.
Impos'ture, *s.* deceit, imposition.

1. THE success of Agric'ola in Britain affected Domi'tian with an extreme degree of envy. This excellent general pursued the advantages which he had already obtained; he subdued the Caledo'nians [1], and overcame Gal'gacus, the British chief, who commanded an army of thirty thou-

[1] Caledo'nians, the ancient inhabitants of Scotland. Caledo'nia, the ancient name of Scotland; Caledo'nii, the people.

sand men; afterwards sending out a fleet to scour the coast, he discovered Great Britain to be an island. He likewise discovered and subdued the Orkneys[1]; and thus reduced the whole into a civilized province of the Roman empire. 2. When the account of these successes was brought to Domi'tian, he received it with a seeming pleasure, but real uneasiness. He thought Agric'ola's rising reputation a *tacit* reproach upon his own inactivity; and instead of attempting to emulate, he resolved to suppress the merits of his services. 3. He ordered him, therefore, external marks of approbation, and took care that triumphal ornaments, statues, and other honours should be decreed him; but at the same time he removed him from his command, under a pretence of appointing him to the government of Syria. 4. By these means Agric'ola surrendered up his province to Sallus'tius Lucul'lus, but soon found that Syria was otherwise disposed of. Upon his return to Rome, which was privately and by night, he was coolly received by the emperor; and dying some time after in retirement, it was generally supposed that his end was hastened by Domi'tian's direction.

5. Domi'tian soon found the want of so experienced a commander, in the many irruptions of the barbarous nations that surrounded the empire. The Sarma'tians[2] in Europe, joined with those of Asia, made a formidable invasion, at once destroying a whole legion and a general of the Romans. The Da'cians[3], under the conduct of Dece'balus, their king, made an irruption, and overthrew the Romans in several engagements. 6. At last, however, the barbarians were repelled, partly by force, and partly by the assistance of money, which only served to enable them to make future invasions with greater advantage. 7. But in whatever manner the enemy might have been repelled, Domi'tian was resolved not to lose the honours of a triumph. He returned in great splendour to Rome; and not contented with thus triumphing

[1] Ork'neys, anciently called the Or'cades. They are about 30 in number, of which 26 are inhabited. They are situated to the north of Scotland; and contain about 24,000 inhabitants.

[2] Sarma'tians, the inhabitants of Sarma'tia. This country in its full extent, was divided into two parts, European and Asiatic. It was sometimes called Scythia; Sarma'tæ, the people.

[3] Da'cians, the inhabitants of Da'cia. This country comprises part of Hungary, all Transylvania and Walachia, and part of Moldavia.

twice without a victory, he resolved to take the surname of German'icus, for his conquests over a people with whom he never contended.

8. In proportion as the ridicule increased against him, his pride seemed every day to demand greater homage. He would permit his statues to be made only of gold and silver; he assumed to himself divine honours: and ordered that all men should address him by the same *appellations* which they gave to the Divinity. 9. His cruelty was not inferior to his arrogance; he caused numbers of the most illustrious senators, and others, to be put to death, upon the most trifling pretences. One Æ'lius La'ma [1] was condemned and executed only for jesting, though there was neither *novelty* nor *poignancy* in his humour. Occea'nus was murdered only for celebrating the nativity of O'tho. Pomposia'nus shared the same fate, because it was foretold by an *astrologer* that he should be emperor. Sallus'tius Lucul'lus, his lieutenant in Britain, was destroyed only for having given his name to a new sort of lances of his own invention. Ju'nius Rus'ticus died for publishing a book, in which he commended Thra'sea and Priscus, two philosophers who opposed Vespa'sian's coming to the throne.

10. Lu'cius Anto'nius, governor of Upper Germany, knowing how much the emperor was detested at home, resolved upon striking for the throne; and accordingly assumed the ensigns of imperial dignity. 11. As he was at the head of a formidable army, his success remained a long time doubtful; but a sudden overflow of the Rhine dividing his army, he was set upon at that *juncture* by Norman'dus, the emperor's general, and totally routed. The news of this victory, we are told, was brought to Rome by supernatural means, on the same day that the battle was fought. 12. Domi'tian's severity was greatly increased by this short-lived success. In order to discover the accomplices of the adverse party, he invented new tortures: sometimes cutting off the hands, at other times thrusting fire into the bodies of those whom he suspected of being his enemies. 13. In the midst of these severities, he aggravated his guilt by *hypocrisy*, never pronouncing a sentence without a preamble full of gen-

[1] Domi'tian had previously taken from him his wife Domitia, and married her himself; the jest for which he suffered was an allusion to this.

tleness and mercy. The night before he crucified the *comptroller* of his household, he treated him with the most flattering marks of friendship, and ordered him a dish of meat from his own table. He carried Areti'nus Cle'mens with him in his own litter the day he resolved upon his death. 14. He was particularly terrible to the senate and nobility; the whole body of whom he frequently threatened to *extirpate* entirely. At one time he surrounded the senate-house with his troops, to the great consternation of the senators. At another, he resolved to amuse himself with their terrors in a different manner. 15. Having invited them to a public entertainment, he received them all very formally at the entrance of his palace, and conducted them into a spacious hall, hung round with black, and illuminated by a few melancholy lamps, that diffused no more light than was just sufficient to show the horrors of the place. All around were to be seen coffins, with the name of each of the senators written upon them, together with other objects of terror, and instruments of execution. 16. While the company beheld all these preparations with silent agony, several men, having their bodies blackened, each with a drawn sword in one hand, and a flaming torch in the other, entered the hall, and danced round them. 17. After some time, when, from their knowledge of Domi'tian's capricious cruelty, the guests expected nothing less than instant death, the doors were set open, and one of the servants came to inform them, that the emperor gave all the company leave to withdraw.

18. His cruelties were rendered still more odious by his lust and avarice. Frequently after presiding at an execution, he would retire with the lewdest prostitutes, and use the same baths which they did. 19. The last part of the tyrant's reign was more insupportable than any of the preceding. Ne'ro exercised his cruelties without being a spectator; but a principal part of the Roman miseries, during Domi'tian's reign, was to see and to be seen; to behold the stern air and fiery visage of the tyrant, which he had armed against sensibility by continued intemperance, directing the tortures, and maliciously pleased with adding poignance to every agony.

20. But a period was soon to be put to this monster's cruelties. Among the numbers of those whom he at once caressed and suspected, was his wife Domi'tia, whom he

had taken from Æ'lius La'ma, her former husband. 21. It was the tyrant's method to put down the names of all such as he intended to destroy in his tablets, which he kept about him with great *circumspection*. Domi'tia, fortunately happening to get a sight of them [1], was struck at finding her own name in the catalogue of those destined to destruction. 22. She showed the fatal list to Norba'nus and Petro'nius, præfects of the prætorian bands, who found themselves among the number of devoted victims; as likewise to Steph'anus, the comptroller of the household, who came into the conspiracy with *alacrity*. They fixed upon the eighteenth day of September for the completion of their great attempt. 23. Upon the emperor's preparing to go to the bath on the morning of that day, Petro'nius his chamberlain came to inform him that Steph'anus desired to speak upon an affair of the utmost importance. The emperor, having given orders that his attendants should retire, Steph'anus entered with his hand in a scarf, which he had worn thus for some days, the better to conceal a dagger, as none were permitted to approach the emperor with arms. 24. He began by giving information of a pretended conspiracy, and exhibited a paper, in which the particulars were specified. While Domi'tian was reading the contents with eager curiosity, Steph'anus drew his dagger and struck him with much violence; but the wound not being mortal, Domi'tian caught hold of the assassin and threw him upon the ground, calling out for assistance. But Parthe'nius, with his freedman, a gladiator, and two *subaltern* officers, now coming in, they ran furiously upon the emperor, and despatched him: Steph'anus, however, was slain by the guards, but the other conspirators escaped in the tumult.

25. It is rather *incredible* what some writers relate concerning Apollo'nius Tyane'us, who was then at Ephesus. This person, whom some call a *magician*, and some a philosopher, but who more probably was only an impostor, was, just at the minute in which Domi'tian was slain, lecturing in one of the public gardens of the city; but stopping short, on a sudden he cried out, "Courage, Steph'-

[1] The manner in which she obtained these tablets was as follows: a young child, with whom Domi'tian frequently amused himself, happening one day to enter his chamber while he was asleep, took the tablets from under his pillow; but being soon after met by the empress she desired to see them, and thus became acquainted with the fate destined for her and many others.

anus, strike the tyrant!" then, after a pause, "Rejoice, my friends, the tyrant dies this day;—this day do I say?—the very moment in which I kept silence he suffered for his crimes! he dies!"

26. Many prodigies are said to have portended his death; and if the Roman historians are to be credited, more preternatural appearances and predictions announced this event, than its importance deserved. The truth seems to be, that a belief in omens and prodigies was again become prevalent, as the people were evidently relapsing into *pristine* barbarity, ignorance being ever the proper soil for a harvest of *imposture*[1].

Questions for Examination.

1. What advantages did Agricola gain in Britain?
2. How did Domitian receive the account of Agricola's success?
3. In what way did the emperor treat him?
4. To whom did Agricola surrender up his province?
5. What nations afterwards made irruptions into the Roman provinces?
6. By what means were the barbarians at length repelled?
7. What surname did Domitian assume?
8. To what extravagance did his pride lead him?
9. What trifling pretexts were made use of by Domitian to put to death some of the most illustrious Romans?
10. Who now assumed the ensigns of the imperial dignity?
11. By what general was Lucius Antonius defeated?
12. What new cruelties were resorted to by the emperor?
13. By what hypocritical conduct was he distinguished?
14. To whom was he particularly terrible?
15, 16, 17. What terrific ceremonies did he invent on one occasion?
18. Was the result fatal to them?
19. Did not his cruelties become still more insupportable at the latter part of his reign?
20. Who was among the number that he at the same time caressed and suspected?
21. Whose name did Domitia discover among his list of victims?
22. To whom did she show the fatal list, and what was resolved on?
23. What means were used by Stephanus to assassinate the emperor?
24. Relate the particulars of the assassination.
25. What exclamation is Apollonius Tyaneus said to have made at Ephesus, at the time of Domitian's death?
26. Did not the Romans relapse into their pristine state of barbarity about this period?

---

[1] In the reign of Domi'tian, a violent persecution raged against the Christians. During this persecution St. John was confined to the Isle of Patmos, in the Archipelago, where he wrote the Apoc'alypse, or Revelation.

CHAPTER XXIII.

SECT. I.

THE FIVE GOOD EMPERORS OF ROME.

These slaves, whom I have nurtur'd, pamper'd, fed,
And swoln with peace, and gorg'd with plenty, till
They reign themselves—all monarchs in their mansions,
Now swarm forth in rebellion, and demand
His death, who made their lives a jubilee. BYRON.

1. Ob'sequies, *s.* rites, ceremonies.
2. Lar'gesses, *s.* presents, gifts.
5. Imbecil'ity, *s.* weakness.
12. Ignomin'ious, *a.* disgraceful.
Co'horts, *s.* subdivisions of the legions, a body of soldiers.
17. Panegy'ric, *s.* praise.
20. Vas'sal, *s.* dependent.
23. Ar'chitects, *s.* (pron. *arkitects*), builders.

1. WHEN it was publicly known that Domi'tian [1] was slain, the senate began to load his memory with every reproach. His statues were commanded to be taken down, and a decree was made, that all his inscriptions should be erased [2], his name struck out of the registers of fame, and his funeral *obsequies* omitted. 2. The people, who now took but little part in the affairs of government, looked on his death with indifference; the soldiers alone, whom he had loaded with favours, and enriched by *largesses*, sincerely regretted their benefactor.

3. The senate, therefore, resolved to provide a successor before the army could have an opportunity of taking the appointment upon itself, and Cocce'ius Ner'va was chosen to the empire the same day on which the tyrant was slain. 4. He is said to have been of an illustrious family in Spain [3], and above sixty-five years old when he was called to the throne, an elevation which he owed solely to his virtues, moderation, respect to the laws, and the blameless tenor of his life.

[1] Domi'tian was the last of those emperors commonly called the Twelve Cæsars.

[2] Some ancient inscriptions, with the name of Domi'tian erased, remain to this day.

[3] This is a mistake; his family was originally of Crete, now called Candia.

5. The people, long accustomed to tyranny, regarded Nerva's gentle reign with rapture, and even gave to his *imbecility* (for his humanity was carried too far for justice) the name of benevolence. 6. Upon coming to the throne, he solemnly swore, that no senator of Rome should be put to death by his command during his reign, though guilty of the most heinous crimes. 7. This oath he so religiously observed, that when two senators had conspired his death, he used no kind of severity against them; but, sending for them, to let them see he was not ignorant of their designs, he carried them with him to the public theatre; there, presenting each a dagger, he desired them to strike, assuring them that he should make no resistance. 8. He had so little regard for money, that when one of his subjects found a large treasure, and wrote to the emperor for instructions how to dispose of it, he received for answer, that he might use it; the finder, however, replying, that it was a fortune too large for a private person to use, Nerva, admiring his honesty, wrote him word that then he might abuse it [1].

9. A sovereign of such generosity and mildness was not, however, without his enemies. Vigil'ius Ru'fus, who had opposed his accession, was not only pardoned, but made his colleague in the consulship. Calpur'nius Cras'sus also, with some others, formed a conspiracy to destroy him; but Nerva was satisfied with banishing those who were culpable, though the senate were for inflicting more rigorous punishments. 10. But the most dangerous insurrection was that of the prætorian bands, who, headed by Caspa'rius Olia'nus, insisted upon revenging the late emperor's death, whose memory was still dear to them, from his frequent liberalities. 11. Nerva, whose kindness to good men rendered him more obnoxious to the vicious, did all in his power to stop the progress of this insurrection; he presented himself to the mutinous soldiers, and laying bare his bosom, desired them to strike there rather than be guilty of so much injustice. 12. The soldiers, however, paid no regard to his remonstrances; but seizing upon Petro'nius and Parthe'nius, slew them in the most *ignominious* manner. Not content with this, they even compelled the emperor to approve of their sedition, and to

[1] Nerva, the most remarkable man in Rome for his virtues, recalled all the Christians who had been banished or had emigrated, under the persecution of Domi'tian.

make a speech to the people, in which he thanked the *cohorts* for their fidelity.

13. So disagreeable a constraint upon the emperor's inclinations was in the end attended with the most happy effects, as it caused the adoption[1] of Trajan to succeed him; for, perceiving that in the present turbulent disposition of the times, he stood in need of an assistant in the empire, setting aside all his own relations, he fixed upon Ul'pius Tra'jan, an utter stranger to his family, who was then governor in Upper Germany, as his successor. 14. About three months after this, having put himself into a violent passion with one Reg'ulus, a senator, he was seized with a fever of which he died, after a reign of one year, four months, and nine days.

15. He was the first foreigner that ever reigned in Rome, and justly reputed a prince of great generosity and moderation. He is also celebrated for his wisdom, though with less reason; the greatest instance given of it during his reign being the choice of his successor.

16. On hearing of the death of Nerva, Tra'jan[2] prepared to come to Rome from Germany, where he was governor. He received upon his arrival a letter from Plutarch[3], the philosopher, who had the honour of being his master, to the following purport:— "Since your merits, and not your importunities, have advanced you to the empire, permit me to congratulate you on your virtues, and my own good fortune. If your future government proves answerable to your former

U.C. 851. A.D. 98.

[1] It was customary among the Romans, for a person destitute of a son to adopt one from another family, and the son thus adopted became immediately invested with the same rights and privileges as if he had been born to that station; but he had no longer any claim on the family to which he originally belonged.

[2] Tra'jan was a Spaniard by birth, and of an ancient but not very illustrious family. He possessed, in an eminent degree, all those qualities which form a great and excellent prince. His skill in military affairs was equal to that of the greatest generals of antiquity; and he had rendered himself, by warlike exercises, capable of enduring all the fatigues incident to the most rigorous campaign.

[3] Plu'tarch, a celebrated historian, was a native of Cheronea, a city of Bœo'tia, in Greece, where he died, A.D. 140. The most celebrated of his works are, his Lives of Illustrious Men, and his Morals; (both these works have been translated into English; the former by Dryden and Langhorne;) in delineating which, Plu'tarch has shown great impartiality, an abhorrence of tyranny and vice, and an accurate acquaintance with the human mind. (Vossius de Hist. Græc.)

worth, I shall be happy; but if you become worse for power, yours will be the danger, and mine th[illegible]ominy of your conduct. The errors of the pupil will be charged upon his instructor. Sen'eca[1] is reproached for the enormities of Nero; and Soc'rates[2] and Quintil'ian[3] have not escaped censure for the misconduct of their respective scholars. But you have it in your power to make me the most honoured of men by continuing what you are. Retain the command of your passions; and make virtue the rule of all your actions. If you follow these instructions, then will I glory in having presumed to give them; if you neglect what I advise, then will this letter be my testimony, that you have not erred through the counsel and authority of Plu'tarch." I insert this letter, because it is a striking picture of this great philosopher's manner of addressing the best of princes.

17. This good monarch's application to business, his moderation towards his enemies[4], his modesty in exaltation, his liberality to the deserving, and his frugal management of the resources of the state, were the subjects of *panegyric* among his contemporaries, and continue to be the admiration of posterity.

18. The first war he was engaged in after his coming to the throne, was with the Da'cians, who during the reign of Domi'tian had committed numberless ravages upon the provinces of the empire. To avenge these, he raised a powerful army, and with great expedition marched into those barbarous countries, where he was vigorously opposed by Deceb'alus, the Da'cian king; who for some time withstood his boldest efforts. The Dacians were aided by the Sarmatians, whose formidable cavalry wore scale armour, as

[1] Sen'eca, a famous philosopher, was born at Cor'duba, in Spain, sometimes written Cordo'va.

[2] Soc'rates, the most celebrated philosopher of all antiquity, was a native of Athens, in Greece. He was the son of a sculptor, and followed the same profession for some years. The actions, sayings, and opinions of this great man, have been carefully and faithfully recorded by two of the most celebrated of his pupils, Xeno'phon and Pla'to.

[3] Quintil'ian, a celebrated orator and critic, was a native of Spain, but became a public teacher at Rome. His Institutiones Oratoricæ may be justly pronounced the finest system of rhetoric ever written.

[4] He used to say, that it was better a thousand criminals should escape than one innocent person suffer; yet he was rigorous towards himself. On presenting a sword to the captain of the guard on his appointment to that office, he made use of these memorable words:—"Employ this sword for me, but turn it against me if I deserve it."

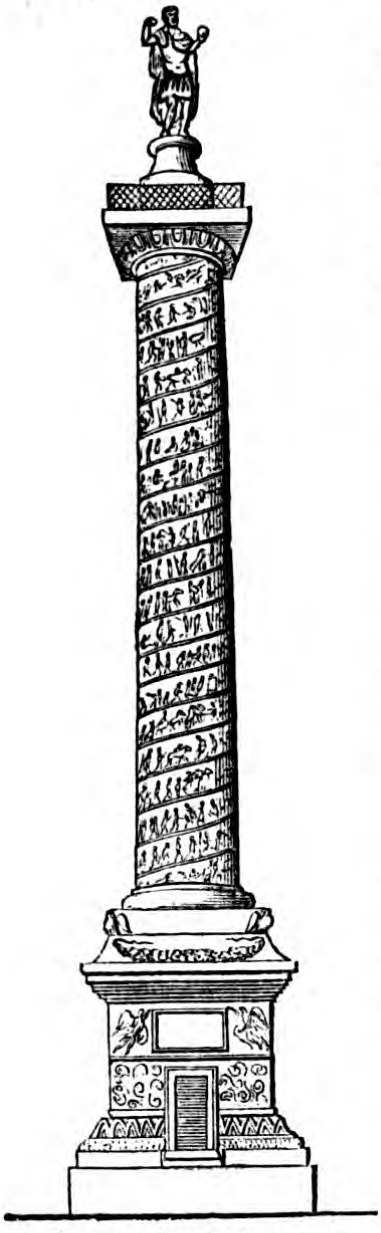
appears from the accompanying sketch, copied from the column of Trajan, in which a skirmish between the Roman and Sarmatian cavalry is depicted.

19. At length, however, this monarch being constrained to come to a general battle, and no longer able to protract the war, was routed with great slaughter. The Roman soldiers upon this occasion wanting linen to bind up their wounds, the emperor tore his own robes to supply them. 20. This victory compelled the enemy to sue for peace, which they obtained upon very disadvantageous terms; their king coming into the Roman camp, and acknowledging himself a *vassal* of the Roman empire.

21. Upon Trajan's return, after the usual triumphs and rejoicings, he was surprised with an account that the Da'cians had renewed hostilities. Deceb'alus, their king, was a second time adjudged an enemy to the Roman state, and Tra'jan again entered his dominions. 22. In order to be enabled to invade the enemy's territories at pleasure, he undertook a most stupendous work, which was no less than building a bridge across the Dan'ube [1]. 23. This amazing structure, which was built over a deep, broad,

[1] The Dan'ube, usually called by the Romans Danu'bius, the noblest river of Europe. (Herodotus.) It was the boundary to Germany on the south. (Ptolemy.) It was called by the Greeks, Is'tros; and by the Germans, Do'nau.

and rapid river, consisted of more than twenty-two arches; the ruins which remain to this day, show modern *architects* how far they were surpassed by the ancients, both in the greatness and boldness of their designs. 24. Upon finishing this work, Trajan continued the war with great vigour, sharing with the meanest of his soldiers the fatigues of the campaign, and continually encouraging them to their duty by his own example. 25. By these means, notwithstanding the country was spacious and uncultivated, and the inhabitants brave and hardy, he subdued the whole, and added the kingdom of Da'cia as a province to the Roman empire. Deceb'alus made some attempts to escape; but being surrounded, he slew himself. A splendid column was raised to commemorate these triumphs, on which the whole history of Trajan's victorious career is represented in a spiral line extending over the entire shaft; it is still one of the ornaments of modern Rome, and one of the chief authorities for the military costume and habits of the ancient Roman soldiers.



26. These successes seemed to advance the empire to a greater degree of splendour than it had hitherto acquired. Ambassadors came from the interior parts of India, to congratulate Trajan on his successes, and solicit his friendship[1]. On his return he entered Rome in triumph, and the rejoicings for his victories lasted a hundred and twenty days.

[1] India, an extensive country of the eastern world, divided by the Ganges into two great parts; namely, India intra Gangem, and India extra Gangem. (Ptolemy.) It was anciently, and still is, a rich country. (Strabo.) Indi, the people. (Ovid.)

27. Having given peace and prosperity to the empire, he was loved, honoured, and almost adored. He adorned the city with public buildings; he freed it from such men as lived by their vices; he entertained persons of merit with familiarity; and so little did he fear his enemies, that he could scarcely be induced to suppose that he had any.

Questions for Examination.

1. How was the account of Domitian's death received?
2. Was he regretted by any description of his subjects?
3. What consequences ensued from this regret?
4. Who was Cocceius Nerva?
5. Was his government acceptable to the people?
6. What afforded a presage of his future mild administration?
7. Did he keep this oath inviolate?
8. Was Nerva avaricious?
9. Was his reign free from disturbances?
10. Were all conspiracies repressed from this time?
11. Did Nerva exert himself to quell it?
12. Were his endeavours successful?
13. What important consequences ensued from these commotions?
14. What occasioned his death?
15. What was his character?
16. How did Trajan act on his accession, and what advice did he receive?
17. What sentiments did his subjects entertain of their new emperor?
18. With whom did he commence hostilities?
19. What was the event of the campaign?
20. What was the consequence of this victory?
21. Did peace continue long?
22. What great undertaking did he accomplish in this expedition?
23. Was it a difficult work?
24. What followed the building of the bridge?
25. What was the event of this second campaign?
26. What advantages arose from this conquest?
27. Did Trajan suffer prosperity to make him neglectful of his duties?

SECTION II.

O war, what art thou?—
At once the proof and scourge of man's fall'n state.
After the brightest conquest what appears
Of all thy glories? for the vanquish'd, chains!
For the proud victor, what? alas! to reign
O'er desolated nations. H. More.

1. Judi'cial, *a.* legal, belonging to trial.
3. Mas'sacre, *v.* to kill.
6. Retalia'tion, *s.* a return of like for like.
Outra'geous, *a.* violent.
Pests, *s.* plagues.
8. Predeces'sor, *s.* the former emperor, Trajan, literally an ancestor.
11. Contrast'ed, *part.* opposed.
Devia'tion, *s.* a departure from.
19. Molesta'tion, *s.* disturbance, interruption.
Ini'tiated, *part.* instructed.
24. Ag'gravate, *v.* to heighten, to make worse.
25. Insur'gents, *s.* rebels, seditious persons.
Demoli'tion, *s.* destruction.

1. It had been happy for Trajan's memory had he shown equal clemency to all his subjects; but about the ninth
U.C. year of his reign, he was persuaded to look upon
167. the Christians with a suspicious eye, and great
A.D. numbers of them were put to death, by popular
107. tumults and *judicial* proceedings. 2. However, the persecution ceased after some time; for the emperor, finding that the Christians were an innocent and inoffensive people, suspended their punishments.

3. During this emperor's reign there was a dreadful insurrection of the Jews in all parts of the empire. This wretched people, still infatuated, and ever expecting some signal deliverance, took the advantage of Trajan's expedition to the east, to *massacre* all the Greeks and Romans whom they could get into their power. 4. This rebellion first began in Cyre'ne[1], a Roman province in Africa; from thence the flame extended to Egypt, and next to the

[1] Cyre'ne, a city of great note in Libya, in the north of Africa, and one of those called Pentap'olis; distant eleven miles from the Mediterranean Sea. (Pliny.) It was once so powerful as to contend with Carthage for pre-eminence. It was situated in the western part of Libya, properly so called; and as it was the chief city, it sometimes gave the name of Cyrena'ica to the whole country; which, by the sacred writer, is called Libya about Cyre'ne. (Acts ii. 10.) The city itself is famous in profane history for being the birth-place of Eratosthe'nes, the mathematician; of Callim'achus, the poet; and (in sacred history) of Simon, who was compelled to bear our Saviour's cross, after himself had fainted under it. This country has been in the possession of the Persians, Egyptians, Grecians, Romans, Saracens, and lastly Turks, under whom it has become almost a desert. The greater part of the country is now called Barca; Cyre'ne, the city, now Carin.

island of Cy'prus. Dreadful were the devastations committed by these infatuated people, and shocking the barbarities exercised on the unoffending inhabitants. 5. Some were sawn asunder, others cast to wild beasts, or made to kill each other, while the most unheard-of torments were invented and exercised on the unhappy victims of their fury. Nay, to such a pitch was their animosity carried, that they actually ate the flesh of their enemies, and even wore their skins. 6. However, these cruelties were of no long duration: the governors of the respective provinces, making head against their tumultuous fury, caused them to experience the horrors of *retaliation*, and put them to death, not as human beings, but as *outrageous pests* of society. In Cy'prus it was made capital for any Jew to set foot on the island.

7. During these bloody transactions, Tra'jan was prosecuting his successes in the east, where he carried the Roman arms farther than they had ever before penetrated; but resolving to visit Rome once more, he found himself too weak to proceed in his usual manner. He, therefore, determined to return by sea; but on reaching the city of Seleu'cia, he died of an apoplexy, in the sixty-third year of his age, after a reign of nineteen years, six months, and fifteen days [1]. A.D. 117.

8. A'drian, the nephew of Tra'jan, was chosen to succeed him. He began his reign by pursuing a course opposite to that of his *predecessor*, taking every method of declining war, and promoting the arts of peace. His first care was to make peace with the Par'thians, and to restore Chos'roes, for he was satisfied with preserving the ancient limits of the empire, and seemed no way ambitious of extensive conquest.

9. A'drian was one of the most remarkable of the Roman emperors for the variety of his endowments. He was highly skilled in all the accomplishments both of body and mind. He composed with great beauty, both in prose and verse: he pleaded at the bar, and was one of the best ora-

[1] Trajan was not only a just, wise, and warlike prince, but a great benefactor to the empire, by the useful and magnificent works which he undertook and completed; the limits of a note will not admit of an enumeration and description of them. Suffice it to mention, that he levelled a hill in Rome, 144 feet high, and erected the famous pillar, already noticed, which is exactly the height of the hill. It is generally supposed that Trajan's ashes were deposited at its base.

tors of his time. 10. Nor were his virtues fewer than his accomplishments. His moderation and clemency appeared by pardoning the injuries which he had received when he was yet but a private man [1]. One day, meeting a person who had formerly been his most inveterate enemy: "My good friend," said he, "you have escaped; for I am made emperor." He was affable to his friends, and gentle to persons of meaner stations: he relieved their wants, and visited them in sickness; it being his constant maxim, that he had been elected emperor, not for his own good, but for the benefit of mankind at large.

11. These virtues were, however, *contrasted* by vices of considerable magnitude [2]; or rather, he wanted strength of mind to preserve his rectitude of character without *deviation*.

12. He was scarcely settled on the throne, when several of the northern barbarians began to devastate the frontier provinces of the empire. These hardy nations, who now found the way to conquer, by issuing from their forests, and then retiring on the approach of a superior force, began to be truly formidable to Rome. 13. A'drian had thoughts of contracting the limits of the empire, by giving up some of the most remote and least defensible provinces; in this, however, he was overruled by friends, who wrongly imagined that an extensive frontier would intimidate an invading enemy. 14. But though he complied with their remonstrances, he broke down the bridge over the Danube, which his predecessor had built, sensible that the same passage which was open to him, was equally convenient to the incursions of his barbarous neighbours.

15. Having stayed a long time at Rome, to see that all things were regulated and established for the safety of the public, he prepared to make a progress through his whole empire. 16. It was one of his maxims, that an emperor ought to imitate the sun, which diffuses warmth and vigour over all parts of the earth. He, therefore, took with him a splendid court and a considerable force, and entered the province of Gaul, where he caused the inhabitants to be numbered. 17. From Gaul he went into Germany, thence

[1] This moderation and clemency were not lasting.

[2] Among these cruelty was not the least conspicuous, particularly in the latter part of his reign; when a painful distemper rendered him furious, he not only put to death many illustrious persons, but even attempted to lay violent hands on himself.

to Holland[1], and afterwards passed over into Britain; where, reforming many abuses, and reconciling the natives to the Romans, he, for the better security of the southern parts of the kingdom, built a wall of wood and earth, extending from the river E'den, in Cumberland, to the Tyne, in Northumberland, to prevent the incursions of the Picts, and other barbarous nations of the north. 18. From Britain, returning through Gaul, he directed his journey to Spain, his native country, where he was received with great joy. 19. Returning to Rome, he continued there for some time, in order to prepare for his journey into the east, which was hastened by a new invasion of the Par'thians. His approach compelling the enemy to peace, he pursued his travels without *molestation*. He visited the famous city of Athens[2]; there making a considerable stay, he was *initiated* into the Eleusin'ian mysteries[3], which were accounted the most sacred in the Pagan mythology; and took upon him the office of archon, or chief magistrate. 20. In this place also, he remitted the severity of the Christian persecution. He was even so far reconciled to this sect, as to think of introducing Christ among the number of the gods. 21. From thence he crossed over into Africa, and spent much time in reforming abuses, regulating the government, deciding controversies, and erecting magnificent buildings. Among the rest, he ordered Carthage[4] to be rebuilt, calling it after his own name, Adrian'ople[5]. 22. Again he returned to Rome; travelled a

[1] The seven united provinces, which are so called from the chief province.

[2] Athens, the celebrated capital of Attica in Greece. It was generally called by the Grecians, As'tu, The City, by way of eminence, as Rome was called Urbs; and as Urbanus, or urbanity, denoted politeness of manners, expressed either in behaviour or language, among the Romans, so As'teum did among the Greeks.

[3] These were mysteries instituted in honour of Ceres. The initiated, after performing many previous ceremonies, were first terrified with the most appalling scenes, and afterwards gratified with the most delightful visions which it was possible for the ingenuity of men to present to the eyes of the deluded votaries.

[4] Car'thage, the celebrated capital of Africa Pro'pria, was built by the Tyr'ians, under Dido. This city, the mistress of Spain, Si'cily, and Sardin'ia, was long the rival of Rome, till it was totally destroyed by Scip'io the Second, surnamed Africa'nus, B.C. 147. In its height of prosperity it contained upwards of 700,000 inhabitants.

[5] This must be distinguished from Adrian'ople, the second city of European Turkey, which was founded about A.M. 2782, and repaired by the emperor Adrian, A.D. 122. Hence its name.

second time into Greece [1]; passed over into Asia Minor [2], from thence into Syr'ia [3]; gave laws and instructions to all the neighbouring kings; entered Pa'lestine [4], Arabia [5], and Egypt [6], where he caused Pompey's tomb, that had been long neglected, and almost covered with sand, to be repaired and beautified. 23. He gave orders for the rebuilding of Jerusalem; which was performed with great expedition by the assistance of the Jews, who now began to conceive hopes of being restored to their long lost kingdom. 24. But these expectations only served to *aggravate* their calamities: for, being incensed at the privileges which were granted the Pagan worshippers in their new city, they fell upon the Romans and Christians that were dispersed throughout Jude'a, and unmercifully put them all to the sword. 25. A'drian, sending a powerful body of men against them, obtained many signal, though bloody, victories over the *insurgents*. The war was concluded in two years, by the *demolition* of above one thousand of their best towns, and the destruction of nearly six hundred thousand men in battle.

26. Having thus effectually quelled this dangerous insurrection, he banished all those who remained in Judea; and by a public decree forbade them to come within view of their native soil. But he was soon after alarmed by a dangerous irruption of the barbarous nations to the northward of the empire; who entering Me'dia [7] with great fury, and passing through Arme'nia, carried their devastations as far as Cappado'cia. Preferring peace, however,

[1] Greece comprising the greater part of European Turkey.

[2] Asia Minor, now called Anato'lia, comprised Bithyn'ia, Paphlag'onia, Gala'tia, Pon'tus, My'sia, Ly'dia, Cari'a, Ly'cia, Pamphyl'ia with Pisid'ia, Isau'ria, Fili'cia, Phry'gia, and Cappado'cia.

[3] Syr'ia, a very considerable country of Asia, generally including with it Pal'estine, Mesopota'mia, and Phœni'cia.

[4] Pal'estine properly denotes the country of the Philistines, which name was given them by the Hebrews. (Josephus.) By the Greeks and Romans they were generally called Pal'estines. The country has had the several names of Canaan, the Land of Promise, the Land of Israel, and Judea; but more generally the Holy Land.

[5] Ara'bia, an extensive country in Asia, extending from Egypt to Chalde'a, and from Syria to the ocean.

[6] Egypt, a celebrated country in the north-east part of Africa, and on the south-west of Canaan. It was anciently called Che'mia, or the Land of Ham. The Hebrews called it Miz'raim; and the Arabs, to this day, call it Meii, from Miz'raim, the son of Ham, who peopled it.

[7] Me'dia, a very extensive country of Asia, on the south of the Cas'pian Sea, and to the north of ancient Persia.

upon any terms, to an unprofitable war, A'drian bought them off by large sums of money; so that they returned peaceably into their native wilds, to enjoy their plunder, and to meditate fresh invasions.

Questions for Examination.

1. Was Trajan uniformly merciful?
2. Was the persecution of long duration?
3. What remarkable event happened in this reign?
4. Where did the rebellion principally rage?
5. What were these barbarities?
6. Were no steps taken to repress this insurrection?
7. How was Trajan employed at this time, and what was his end?
8. Who succeeded him?
9. What was the character of Adrian?
10. Was he a virtuous character?
11. Were not his virtues counterbalanced?
12. By whom was the empire now invaded?
13. What wise measure did Adrian contemplate?
14. What remarkable edifice did he destroy?
15. Was he attentive to the concerns of the empire?
16. Why did he do this?
17. What places did he next visit?
18. Whither did he next proceed?
19. Mention his further progress, and the incidents that occurred.
20. Was he merciful to the Christians?
21. Whither did he next repair, and how did he employ himself?
22. Proceed in the description of his route.
23. Did he not favour the Jews?
24. Did they profit by this favourable disposition in the emperor?
25. Was this cruelty punished?
26. What followed this dangerous insurrection?

SECTION III.

Trajan and he[1], with the mild sire and son,
His son of virtue; eased awhile mankind;
And arts revived beneath their gentle beam. THOMSON.

5. Len'ity, *s.* mildness, mercy.
7. Ve'hemently, *ad.* earnestly, ardently.
9. Re'gimen, *s.* rule of diet, &c.
14. Ar'rogantly, *ad.* proudly.
23. Volup'tuous, *a.* luxurious, fond of pleasure.
30. Feign'ing, *part.* pretending.
32. Dissem'inated, *v.* spread, scattered as seed.
33. Inunda'tions, *s.* floods.
34. Lectis-ter'nia, *s.* funeral banquets to the gods.
35. Perse'cution, *s.* the act of harassing or punishing with malignity; the act of punishing for the sake of religion.
Mar'tyrdom, *s.* the act of suffering death for the cause of virtue or religion.

1. HAVING spent thirteen years in travelling and reforming the abuses of the empire, A'drian at last resolved to end his fatigues at Rome. 2. Nothing could be more grateful to the people than his resolution of coming to reside for the rest of his days among them; they received him with the loudest demonstrations of joy; and though he now began to grow old and unwieldy, he remitted not the least of his former assiduity and attention to the public welfare. 3. His chief amusement was in conversing with the most celebrated men in every art and science, frequently asserting, that he thought no kind of knowledge inconsiderable, or to be neglected, either in his private or public capacity. 4. He ordered the knights and senators never to appear in public, but in the proper habits of their orders. He forbade masters to kill their slaves, as had been before allowed; but ordained that they should be tried by the laws. 5. He still further extended the *lenity* of the laws to those unhappy men, who had long been thought too mean for justice: if a master was found killed in his house, he would not allow all his slaves to be put to the torture as formerly, but only such as might have perceived and prevented the murder.

6. In such employments he spent the greatest part of his time; but at last finding the duties of his station daily increasing, and his own strength proportionally upon the decline, he resolved on adopting a successor, and accordingly chose Antoni'nus to that important station.

7. While he was thus careful in providing for the future welfare of the state, his bodily infirmities became so insup-

[1] The poet here alludes to Titus, whom he has before been commending: his actions are described in Chap. XXII. Sect. x.

portable, that he *vehemently* desired some of his attendants to despatch him. 8. Antoni'nus, however, would by no means permit any of the domestics to be guilty of so great an impiety, but used all the arts in his power to reconcile the emperor to sustain life. 9. His pain daily increasing, he was frequently heard to cry out, "How miserable a thing it is to seek death, and not to find it!" After enduring some time these excruciating tortures, he at last resolved to observe no *regimen*, saying, that kings sometimes died merely by the multitude of their physicians. 10. This conduct served to hasten that death he seemed so ardently to desire; and it was probably joy upon its approach which dictated the celebrated stanzas that are so well known [1]; and while repeating which he expired, in the sixty-second year of his age, after a prosperous reign of twenty-one years and eleven months.

11. Titus Antoni'nus, his successor, was born at Lavin'ium, near Rome, but his ancestors came originally from Nismes [2], in Gaul. His father was a noble- U.C. man, who had enjoyed the highest honours of 891. the empire. At the time of his succeeding to the throne he was above fifty years old, and had passed through many of the most important offices of the state with great integrity and application. 12. His virtues in private life were no way impaired by his exaltation, as he showed himself one of the most excellent princes for justice, clemency, and moderation: his morals were so pure, that he was usually compared to Numa, and was surnamed the Pious, both for his tenderness to his predecessor A'drian,

[1] These stanzas are—

Animula, vagula, blandula,
Hospes comesque corporis,
Quæ nunc abibis in loca,
Pallidula, rigida, nudula?
Nec, ut soles, dabis jocos.

Thus imitated by Prior:—

Poor little pretty fluttering thing,
Must we no longer live together?
And dost thou prune thy trembling wing
To take thy flight thou know'st not whither?
Thy hum'rous vein, thy pleasing folly,
Lie all neglected, all forgot;
And pensive, wav'ring, melancholy,
Thou dread'st and hop'st thou know'st not what.

[2] Nismes, anciently called Nemau'sus. Here are the remains of a Roman amphitheatre, and several other vestiges of its former magnificence.

when dying, and his particular attachment to the religion of his country.

13. He was an eminent rewarder of learned men, to whom he gave large pensions and great honours, collecting them around him from all parts of the world. 14. Among the rest, he sent for Apollo'nius, the famous stoic [1] philosopher, to instruct his adopted son, Mar'cus Aure'lius. Apollo'nius being arrived, the emperor desired his attendance; but the other *arrogantly* answered, that it was the scholar's duty to wait upon the master, not the master upon the scholar. 15. To this reply, Antoni'nus only returned with a smile, "That it was surprising how Apollo'nius, who made no difficulty of coming from Greece to Rome, should think it hard to walk from one part of Rome to another;" and immediately sent Mar'cus Aure'lius to him [2]. 16. While the good emperor was thus employed in making mankind happy, in directing their conduct by his own example, or reproving their follies by the keenness of rebuke, he was seized with a violent fever, and ordered his friends and principal officers to attend him. 17. In their presence he confirmed the adoption of Mar'cus Aure'lius; then commanding the golden statue of Fortune, which was always in the chamber of the emperors, to be removed to that of his successor, he expired in the seventy-fourth year of his age, after a prosperous reign of twenty-two years and almost eight months [3].

18. Mar'cus Aure'lius, though left sole successor to the throne, took Lu'cius Ve'rus as his associate and equal, in governing the state. 19. Aure'lius was the son of An'nius Ve'rus, of an ancient and illustrious family, which claimed its origin from Nu'ma. Lu'cius Ve'rus was the son of Com'modus, who had been adopted by A'drian, but died before he succeeded to the throne. 20. Aure'lius

U.C. 914.

[1] A stoic philosopher is one who follows the sect of Zeno, holding all things indifferent, being void of passions, and destitute of mental feelings. This sect received its name from a Greek word, signifying *a porch*, because Zeno taught his disciples in a common porch of the city of Athens.

[2] Antoni'nus being made a model of wisdom and virtue, he was as much respected by foreigners as by his own people.

[3] This emperor was remarkably favourable to the Christians, and wrote thus to his governors in Asia:—"If any one shall, for the future, molest the Christians, and accuse them merely on account of their religion, let the person who is arraigned be discharged, though he is found to be a Christian, and the accuser be punished according to the rigour of the law."

was as remarkable for his virtues and accomplishments, as his partner in the empire was for his ungovernable passions and debauched morals. The one was an example of the greatest goodness and wisdom; the other of ignorance, sloth, and extravagance [1].

21. The two emperors were scarcely settled on the throne, when the empire was attacked on every side, from the barbarous nations by which it was surrounded [2]. The Cat'ti [3] invaded Germany and Rhœ'tia [4], ravaging all with fire and sword; but were repelled by Victori'nus. The Britons likewise revolted, but were repressed by Capur'-nius. 22. But the Parthians, under their king Volog'esus, made an irruption still more dreadful than either of the former; destroying the Roman legions in Arme'nia; then entering Syria, they drove out the Roman governor, and filled the whole country with terror and confusion. To repel this barbarous irruption, Ve'rus went in person, being accompanied by Aure'lius part of the way.

23. Ve'rus, however, proceeded no further than An'-tioch [5], and there gave an indulgence to every appetite, rioting in excesses unknown even to the *voluptuous* Greeks; leaving all the glory of the field to his lieutenants, who were sent to repress the enemy. 24. These, however, fought with great success; for in the four years that the war lasted, the Romans entered far into the Parthian

[1] The only reproach that can be made against Aurelius is for having associated Verus in the empire, and suffered the Christians to be persecuted under his reign.

[2] A little time previous to this invasion, a domestic calamity occurred of no small importance: a dreadful inundation of the Tiber overturned many private and public edifices in the city, carried away great numbers of people and cattle, and laid the neighbouring country under water to a great distance. This inundation was followed by earthquakes, conflagrations, and a general infection of the air, which produced an infinite number of insects, that destroyed what the flood had spared, and caused a grievous famine.

[3] Cat'ti; these people were very extensive, and widely spread throughout Germany, occupying Hesse, the territory on the Rhine, &c. The Hercyn'ian forest began and ended in their territory. (Tacitus.)

[4] Rhœ'tia was situated partly in Germany, and partly in Italy. It was peopled by Rhœ'tis, B.C. 185, who left Tuscany to avoid the oppression of the Gauls, and planted a colony between the Tyrol and Helve'tia, to which he gave the name of Rhœtia. (Justin, Pliny, Stephanus.)

[5] Anti'och the capital of Syria: there were no less than sixteen cities of this name in Asia, which were all founded by Seleu'cus Nica'nor, the first Sy'ro-Grecian monarch, to perpetuate the name of Anti'ochus, his father.

country, and entirely subdued it; but upon their return their army was wasted to less than half its original number by pestilence and famine[1]. 25. This, however, was no impediment to the vanity of Ve'rus, who resolved to enjoy the honours of a triumph, so hardly earned by others. Having appointed a king over the Arme'nians, and finding the Parthians entirely subdued, he assumed the titles of Arme'nius and Parthi'cus; and on his return to Rome, he partook of a triumph with Aure'lius, which was solemnized with great pomp and splendour.

26. While Ve'rus was engaged in this expedition, Aure'lius was sedulously intent upon distributing justice and happiness to his subjects at home. He first applied himself to the regulation of public affairs, and to the correcting of such faults as he found in the laws and policy of the state. 27. In this endeavour he showed a singular respect for the senate, often permitting them to determine without appeal[2]; so that the commonwealth seemed in a manner once more revived under his equitable administration. 28. Besides, such was his application to business, that he often employed ten days together on the same subject, maturely considering it on all sides, and seldom departing from the senate-house till the assembly was dismissed by the consul. 29. But he was daily mortified with accounts of the enormities of his colleague; being repeatedly assured of his vanity, lewdness, and extravagance. 30. However, *feigning* himself ignorant of these excesses, he judged marriage to be the best method of reclaiming him; and, therefore, sent him his daughter Lucil'la, a woman of great beauty, whom Ve'rus married at Antioch. 31. But even this was found ineffectual, for Lucil'la proved of a disposition very unlike her father; and, instead of correcting her husband's extravagances, only contributed to inflame them. 32. Aure'lius still hoped that, upon the return of Ve'rus to Rome, his presence would keep him in awe, and that happiness would at length be restored to the state. In this also he was disappointed. His return seemed fatal to the empire; for his army carried back the plague from Par'thia, and

[1] We may be ready to consider this as a just judgment on them for their atrocious cruelties. The city of Seleucia, on the Ti'gris, opened its gates to Cas'sius, and received him in a friendly manner, yet he inhumanly ordered the whole of the inhabitants, amounting to 400,000 persons, to be slaughtered.

[2] He used to say, that it was more reasonable for him to follow the advice of so many wise men, than for so many wise men to follow his.

disseminated the infection into the provinces through which it passed.

33. Nothing could exceed the miserable state of things upon the return of Ve'rus. In this horrid picture were represented an emperor, unawed by example or the calamities surrounding him, giving way to unheard-of debaucheries[1]; a raging pestilence spreading terror and desolation through all parts of the western world; earthquakes, famines, and *inundations*, almost unexampled in history; the products of the earth through all Italy devoured by locusts; the barbarous nations around the empire taking advantage of its various calamities, and making their irruptions even into Italy itself. 34. The priests doing all they could to put a stop to the miseries of the state, by attempting to appease the gods[2], vowing and offering numberless sacrifices; celebrating all the sacred rites[3] that had ever been known in Rome; and exhibiting the solemnity called *lectis-ternia* seven days together. 35. To crown the whole, these enthusiasts, as if the impending calamities had not been sufficient, ascribed the distresses of the state to the impieties of the Christians. A violent *persecution* ensued in all parts of the empire; and Justin Martyr, Polycarp'us, and a prodigious number of less note, suffered *martyrdom*.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did Adrian enjoy repose from this time?
2. Was this resolution agreeable to the people?
3. How did he amuse himself?
4. What new edicts did he issue?
5. Did he not ameliorate the condition of slaves?
6. Was he still equal to the fatigues of the empire?
7. Were not his sufferings great?
8. Were his wishes complied with?
9. Were these arts successful?
10. What was the consequence of this conduct?
11. Who was his successor?
12. Did he preserve his virtue on his exaltation?
13. Was he a favourer of learning?
14. What anecdote is related of one of these?

---

[1] Among other follies he erected a statue of gold to his horse Celer, fed him with raisins and almonds, covered him with purple, ordered him to be kept in a room in the palace, and, when he died, erected a stately monument to him in the Vatican.

[2] False deities, idols. [3] Religious ceremonies.

15. What was the emperor's reply?
16. Did he experience a long and prosperous reign?
17. Whom did he appoint as his successor?
18. Was Marcus Aurelius sole emperor?
19. Who were Aurelius and Lucius Verus?
20. Were their characters similar?
21. Was their reign peaceable?
22. Was there not a more formidable invasion still?
23. Did Verus show himself worthy of the trust?
24. Were they successful?
25. Did Verus appear to feel this misfortune?
26. How was Aurelius employed in the mean time?
27. Did he do this solely by his own authority?
28. Was he hasty in his decisions?
29. Was he acquainted with the follies of his colleague?
30. How did he attempt his reformation?
31. Was this effectual?
32. What farther hopes did Aurelius entertain?
33. What was the state of the empire at this period?
34. What were the means made use of to avert these calamities?
35. To whom were they imputed?

SECTION IV.

And wise Aurelius, in whose well-taught mind,
With boundless power unbounded virtue join'd,
His own strict judge, and patron of mankind. POPE.

5. Col'league, *s.* a partner or associate in the same office.
8. Pa'gan, *a.* heathen, idolatrous.
Mira'culous, *a.* supernatural, above the powers of human nature.
9. Subli'mely, *ad.* nobly, greatly.

1. In this scene of universal tumult, desolation, and distress, there was nothing left but the virtues and the wisdom of one man to restore tranquillity and happiness to the empire. 2. Aure'lius began his endeavours by marching against the Marcoman'ni[1] and Qua'di[2], taking Ve'rus with him, who reluctantly left the sensual delights of Rome for the fatigues of a camp. 3. They came up with the Marcoman'ni near the city of Aquile'ia[3], and after a furious en-

[1] Marcoman'ni, (the same as Mora'vi, Mora'vians,) a people of Germany, occupying the territory on the eastern part of the Rhine, and on the north of the Dan'ube. (Tacitus, Cæsar.) Cluverius allots to them the duchy of Wurtemburg, part of Sua'bia, the Brisgau, &c., who, on being expelled their country, took up their abode in Bohe'mia. (Strabo, Velleius.)

[2] Qua'di, or Qua'dians, a people of Germany, who inhabited part of Mora'via, Bohe'mia, and Hun'gary. (Tacitus.)

[3] Aquile'ia, a celebrated city in the north of Italy. It was a place of

gagement, routed their whole army; then pursuing them across the Alps, overcame them in several contests; U.C. and, at last, entirely defeating them, returned into 922. Italy without any considerable loss. 4. As the A.D. winter was far advanced, Ve'rus was determined on 169. going to Rome, in which journey he was seized with an apoplexy that put an end to his life, at the age of thirty-nine, having reigned in conjunction with Aure'lius nine years.

5. Aure'lius, who had hitherto sustained the fatigues of governing, not only an empire, but his *colleague*, began to act with greater diligence and more vigour than ever. After thus subduing the Marcoman'ni, he returned to Rome, where he resumed his attempts to benefit mankind, by a farther reformation.

6. But his good endeavours were soon interrupted by a renewal of the former wars. In one of the engagements that ensued, he is said to have been miraculously relieved when his army was perishing with thirst, by the prayers of a Christian legion [1] which had been levied in his service; for we are told that there fell such a shower of rain, as instantly refreshed the fainting army. The soldiers were seen holding their mouths and their helmets towards heaven, to catch the water which came so wonderfully to their relief. 7. The same clouds which served for their rescue, discharged so terrible a storm of hail, accompanied with thunder, against the enemy, as astonished and confused them. By this unlooked-for aid, the Romans, recovering strength and courage, renewed the engagement with fresh vigour, and cut the enemy in pieces. 8. Such are the circumstances of an event, acknowledged by *Pagan* as well as Christian writers; only with this difference, that the latter ascribe the miracle to their own, the former to the prayers of their emperor [2]. However this be, Aure'lius seemed so sensible of *miraculous* assistance, that he immediately relaxed the persecution against the Christians, and wrote to the senate in their favour.

great renown in the time of Julius Cæsar. It was destroyed by At'tila. In this city St. Mark wrote his Gospel, which manuscript is said to be preserved with great care at Venice.

[1] Legion, a body of soldiers in the Roman army, consisting of 300 horse, and 4000 foot. Figuratively, an army, a military force, or any great number.

[2] Very cogent reasons have, by some critics, been brought to prove that this deliverance of the Roman army was no miracle, but merely the result of a natural occurrence.

9. Soon after this event, Avid'ius Cas'sius [1], one of the generals who had fought with such success against the Parthians, assumed the imperial purple, but was shortly after killed in an engagement. When his head was brought to Aure'lius, he expressed great sorrow, turned his eyes away, and caused it to be honourably interred; complaining that he had been robbed of an opportunity of showing mercy. On being blamed for his too great lenity to the relatives and friends of Cas'sius, he *sublimely* replied, "We have not lived nor served the gods so ill, as to think that they would favour Cas'sius."

10. He usually called philosophy his mother, in opposition to the court, which he considered as his step-mother. He also frequently said, "the people are happy whose kings are philosophers." He was, independent of his dignity, one of the most considerable men then existing; and though he had been born in the meanest station, his merits as a writer (for his works remain to this day) would have ensured him immortality.

11. Having thus restored prosperity to his subjects, and peace to mankind, news was brought him that the Scyth'ians [2], and other barbarous nations of the north, were up in arms, and invading the empire. 12 He once more, therefore, resolved to expose his aged person in the defence of his country, and made speedy preparations to oppose them. He went to the senate, and desired to have money out of the public treasury. He then spent three days in giving the people lectures on the regulation of their lives: and having finished, departed upon his expedition, amidst the prayers and lamentations of his subjects. 13. Upon going to open his third campaign, he was seized at Vienna [3] with

[1] This Cas'sius was remarkable as a strict disciplinarian, of which the following is an instance:—As he was encamped near the Danube, some of his soldiers, understanding that the enemy lay carelessly on the banks of that river, attacked them without orders, killed 3000 of them, and returned to the camp loaded with booty. Instead, however, of receiving from Cas'sius the praises they expected, their centurions, who had promoted this enterprise, were seized and crucified. This severity occasioned mutiny; but Cas'sius undauntedly appeared, unarmed, amidst the incensed soldiers, crying out, "Kill me; and to your neglect of duty add, if you dare, the murder of your general." This intrepidity put an end to the tumult, and firmly established his authority.

[2] Scyth'ians, the inhabitants of Tartary, now Asiatic Russia, were for the greater part wanderers.

[3] Vienna, (so called even in the time of Cæsar,) now the metropolis of the Austrian empire.

the plague, which stopped his farther progress. Nothing, however, could abate his desire of being beneficial to mankind. 14. His fears for the youth and unpromising disposition of Com'modus, his son and successor, seemed to give him great uneasiness. He therefore addressed his friends and the principal officers that were gathered round his bed, expressing his hope, that as his son was now losing his father, he would find many in them. 15. While thus speaking, he was seized with a weakness which stopped his utterance, and brought on death. He died in the fifty-ninth year of his age, having reigned nineteen years. It seemed as if the glory and prosperity of the empire died with this greatest of the Roman emperors.

Questions for Examination.

1. To whom did the Romans look for a restoration of the tranquillity of the empire?
2. Against whom did Aurelius march, and who accompanied him?
3. Where did they come up with the Marcomanni, and what was the result of the engagement?
4. What was the fate of Verus?
5. How did Aurelius act on his return to Rome?
6. What miraculous event was ascribed to the prayers of a Christian legion?
7. How did it operate on the enemy?
8. Did not Aurelius in consequence interest himself in favour of the Christians?
9. What reply did Aurelius make to those who blamed him for his lenity to the friends of Cassius?
10. What sayings are recorded of him, and what was his character?
11. What news was brought to Aurelius soon after peace had been restored?
12. In what way did he occupy himself previous to his departure to oppose the enemy?
13. At what place was he seized with the plague?
14. What seemed to give him great uneasiness?
15. How old was Aurelius when he died, and how many years had he reigned?

CHAPTER XXIV.

SECT. I.

U.C. 933.—A.D. 180.

FROM COMMODUS TO THE TRANSFERRING OF THE SEAT OF EMPIRE, UNDER CONSTANTINE, FROM ROME TO CONSTANTINOPLE.

O name of country, once how sacred deem'd!
O sad reverse of manners, once esteem'd!
While Rome her ancient majesty maintain'd,
And in his capitol while Jove imperial reign'd.
HORACE, B. 3. Ode 5.

2. Tis'sue, *s.* a continued series.
Simil'itude, *s.* likeness, resemblance.
3. Chap'man, *s.* a dealer, a tradesman.
13. Par'ricide, *s.* one who kills either of his parents.
15. Pro'fusion, *s.* too great liberality, extravagance.
Par'simony, *s.* frugality, sparingness.
21. Lacon'ic. *a.* brief, short.
24. Impreca'tions, *s.* curses.
28. Timid'ity, *s.* fearfulness.

1. THE merits of Aure'lius procured Com'modus an easy accession to the throne[1]. He was acknowledged emperor by the army, by the senate and people, and afterwards by all the provinces.

2. But his whole reign was a *tissue* of wantonness and folly, cruelty and injustice, rapacity and corruption. So strong a *similitude* was there between his conduct and that of Domi'tian, that a reader might imagine he was going over the history of the same reign. 3. He went with his associates to brothels; spent the day in feasting, and the night in the most abominable debaucheries. He would sometimes go about the markets in a frolic, with small wares, as a petty *chapman;* sometimes he affected to be a horse-courser: at other times he drove his own chariot, in a slave's habit. Those he promoted resembled himself, being the companions of his pleasures, or the ministers of his cruelties.

4. If any person desired to be revenged on an enemy, by bargaining with Com'modus for a sum of money, he was permitted to destroy him in any manner he thought proper.

[1] Com'modus was the first emperor that was born in his father' reign, and the second that succeeded his father in the empire.

He commanded a person to be cast to the wild beasts for reading the life of Calig'ula in Sueto'nius. He ordered another to be thrown into a burning furnace, for accidentally overheating his bath [1]. He would sometimes, when he was in a pleasant humour, cut off men's noses, under pretence of shaving their beards; and yet he was himself so jealous of all mankind, that he thought it necessary to be his own barber.

5. At length, upon the feast of Janus [2], resolving to fence naked before the people as a common gladiator, three of his friends remonstrated with him upon the indecency of such behaviour [3]; these were Læ'tus, his general; Elec'tus, his chamberlain; and Mar'cia, a concubine of whom he always appeared excessively fond. 6. Their advice was attended with no other effect than that of exciting him to resolve upon their destruction. 7. It was his method, like that of Domi'tian, to set down the names of all such as he intended to put to death in a roll, which he carefully kept by him. However, at this time, happening to lay the roll on his bed, while he was bathing in another room, it was taken up by a little boy whom he passionately loved. The child, after playing with it some time, brought it to Mar'cia, who was instantly alarmed at the contents. 8. She immediately discovered her terror to Læ'tus and Elec'tus, who perceiving their dangerous situation, instantly resolved upon the tyrant's death. 9. After some deliberation, it was agreed to despatch him by poison; but this not succeeding, Mar'cia hastily introduced a young man, called Narcis'sus, whom she prevailed upon to assist in strangling the tyrant [4]. Com'modus died in the thirty-

[1] This barbarous command was not executed, though Com'modus was made to believe that it was.

[2] Ja'nus, (in heathen mythology,) supposed to be the first king of Italy, was deified at his death, and depicted with two faces. The temple dedicated to him at Rome was always kept shut in time of peace, and open in time of war.

[3] He was of such uncommon strength, that he is said to have killed, in the amphitheatre, a hundred lions, each with one blow; and to have conquered seven hundred and thirty-five times in combat with gladiators. Hence he often subscribed himself the conqueror of a thousand gladiators.

[4] These circumstances so nearly resemble what has been related of the death of Domi'tian, as to lead to a suspicion that they are wrongly applied. Indeed Dio Cas'sius, who relates these particulars of the death of Domi'tian, mentions nothing of the kind on the present occasion, but merely that Com'modus was cut off by a conspiracy of Læ'tus, Elec'tus and Mar'cia.

first year of his age, after an impious reign of twelve years and nine months.

10. Such were the secrecy and expedition with which Com'modus was assassinated, that few were acquainted with the real circumstances of his death. His body was wrapt up as a bale of useless furniture, and carried through the guards, most of whom were either drunk or asleep[1]. U.C. 945. A.D. 192.

11. Hel'vius Per'tinax, whose virtues and courage rendered him worthy of the most exalted station, and who had passed through many changes of fortune, had been previously fixed upon to succeed him[2]. When, therefore, the conspirators repaired to his house, to salute him emperor, he considered it as a command from the emperor Com'modus for his death. 12. Upon Læ'tus entering his apartment, Per'tinax, without any show of fear, cried out, that for many days he had expected to end his life in that manner, wondering that the emperor had deferred it so long. He was not a little surprised when informed of the real cause of their visit; and being strongly urged to accept of the empire, he at last complied. 13. Being carried to the camp, Per'tinax was proclaimed emperor, and soon after was acknowledged by the senate and citizens. They then pronounced Com'modus a *parricide*, an enemy to the gods, his country, and all mankind; and commanded that his corpse should rot upon a dunghill. 14. In the mean time they saluted Per'tinax as emperor and Cæsar, with numerous acclamations, and cheerfully took the oaths of obedience. The provinces soon after followed the example of Rome; so that he began his reign with universal satisfaction to the whole empire, in the sixty-eighth year of his age.

[1] The senate, on hearing of the death of Com'modus, assembled the same night, and declared him a public enemy: loaded him with curses, ordered his statues to be broken, his name to be erased out of all public inscriptions, and demanded his body, that it might be dragged through the streets, and thrown into the Tiber. Being told that it was already buried, they expressed great indignation that such an honour should be paid to so vile a wretch.

[2] Hel'vius Per'tinax was of low extraction; his father, an enfranchised slave, procured his livelihood by making charcoal. This mean employment Per'tinax followed for some time, but afterwards kept a grammar-school in Rome. Finding little encouragement, he renounced this profession and entered the army, where, by his courage and conduct, he rose to eminence, and at length ascended the imperial throne.

15. Nothing could exceed the justice and wisdom of this monarch's reign, during the short time it continued. But the prætorian soldiers, whose manners he attempted to reform, having been long corrupted by the indulgence and *profusion* of their former monarch, began to hate him for his *parsimony*, and the discipline he had introduced among them. 16. They therefore resolved to dethrone him; and accordingly, in a tumultuous manner, marched through the streets of Rome, entered his palace without opposition, where a Tungrian soldier[1] struck him dead with a blow of his lance. 17. From the number of his adventures he was called the tennis-ball of fortune; and certainly no man ever went through such a variety of situations with so blameless a character. He reigned but three months.

18. The soldiers having committed this outrage, made proclamation, that they would sell the empire to whoever would purchase it at the highest price. 19. In consequence of this proclamation, two bidders were found, namely, Sulpicia'nus and Did'ius: the former, a consular person, prefect of the city, and son-in-law to the late emperor Per'tinax; the latter a consular person likewise, a great lawyer, and the wealthiest man in the city. 20. Sulpicia'nus had rather promises than treasure to bestow. The offers of Did'ius, who produced immense sums of ready money, prevailed. He was received into the camp, and the soldiers instantly swore to obey him as emperor. 21. Upon being conducted to the senate-house, he addressed the few that were present in a *laconic* speech, "Fathers, you want an emperor, and I am the fittest person you can choose." The choice of the soldiers was confirmed by the senate, and Did'ius was acknowledged emperor, in the fifty-seventh year of his age. 22. It should seem, by this weak monarch's conduct when seated on the throne, that he thought the government of an empire rather a pleasure than a toil. Instead of attempting to gain the hearts of his subjects, he gave himself up to ease and inactivity, utterly regardless of the duties of his station. He was mild and gentle indeed, neither injuring any, nor expecting to be injured. 23. But that avarice by which he became opulent, still followed him in his

U.C. 954. A.D. 201.

[1] Tun'grian soldier, one of the Tungri, a people of Gal'lia Bel'gica, the northern part of Gaul.

exaltation; so that the very soldiers who elected him, soon began to detest him, for qualities so very opposite to a military character. 24. The people also, against whose consent he was chosen, were not less his enemies. Whenever he issued from his palace, they openly poured forth their *imprecations* against him, crying out, that he was a thief, and had stolen the empire. 25. Did'ius, however, patiently bore all their reproach, and testified his regard by every kind of submission. 26. Soon after Seve'rus, an African by birth, being proclaimed by his army [1], began his reign by promising to revenge the death of Per'tinax.

27. Did'ius, upon being informed of his approach towards Rome, obtained the consent of the senate to send him ambassadors, offering to make him a partner in the empire. 28. But Seve'rus rejected this offer, conscious of his own strength, and of the weakness of the proposer. The senate appeared to be of the same sentiment; and perceiving the *timidity* and weakness of their present master, abandoned him. 29. Being called together, as was formerly practised in the times of the commonwealth, by the consuls, they unanimously decreed, that Did'ius should be deprived of the empire, and that Seve'rus should be proclaimed in his stead. They then commanded Did'ius to be slain, and sent messengers for this purpose to the palace, who having found him with a few friends that still adhered to his interest, they struck off his head.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did Commodus succeed peaceably?
2. Did he imitate his father's virtues?
3. Mention some of his follies.
4. Mention some of his wanton cruelties.
5. Who remonstrated with him on this conduct?
6. What effect did this remonstrance produce?
7. How was this discovered?
8. What was the consequence?
9. How was it effected?
10. Were the circumstances of his death generally known?
11. Who succeeded him?
12. Did Pertinax discover any signs of fear?

[1] Seve'rus was now commanding his army in Illyr'ia, the north-west part of European Turkey.

13. What ensued on his compliance?
14. Was he acceptable to the Roman people?
15. How did he govern?
16. What was the consequence?
17. By what appellation was he distinguished, and why?
18. How was the imperial purple next disposed of?
19. Who were the candidates?
20. Who was the successful candidate?
21. Was he acknowledged by the senate?
22. What was his conduct as emperor?
23. What gained him the hatred of the soldiers?
24. Was he a favourite of the people?
25. How did Didius bear this?
26. What new competitor for the throne appeared?
27. How did Didius act on this occasion?
28. Was his offer accepted?
29. What was the event?

SECTION II.

There's nought so monstrous but the mind of man,
In some conditions, may be brought to approve;
Theft, sacrilege, treason, and parricide,
When flattering opportunity enticed,
And desperation drove, have been committed
By those who once would start to hear them named.

LILLO.

1. Compet'itors, *s.* rivals.
2. Ex'ecrated, *part.* hated, detested, cursed.
   Per'fidy, *s.* breach of faith, treachery.
3. Ar'biters, *s.* deciders.
11. Ingen'uously, *ad.* openly.
15. In'tricate, *a.* entangled.
30. Mu'tinying, *part.* rebelling.
Note. Eques'trian, *a.* of the degree of a knight; such being privileged to serve on horseback in the Roman armies.

1. SEVE'RUS having overcome Niger[1], A.D. 194, and Albi'nus[2], A.D. 198, who were his *competitors* for the

[1] Percen'nias Niger was proclaimed emperor on the death of Per'tinax; he was of an *equestrian* family, and served originally as a centurion, but rose by his merits to the first military employments in the empire. He was a gallant soldier, an excellent officer, an experienced general, an illustrious consul, but an unfortunate emperor.

[2] Clodius Albi'nus, though a native of Africa, was descended from the most illustrious families in Rome, and distinguished for his learning and knowledge. His martial genius, however, did not allow him to pursue the peaceable profession of letters. He filled many important posts, and was governor of Britain at the time that he assumed the imperial purple.

empire, assumed the reins of government, uniting great vigour with the most refined policy; yet his African cunning was considered as a singular defect in him. 2. He is celebrated for his wit, learning, and prudence; but *execrated* for his *perfidy* and cruelty [1]. In short, he seemed equally capable of the greatest acts of virtue, and the most bloody severities.

3. He loaded his soldiers with rewards and honours, giving them such privileges as strengthened his own power, while they destroyed that of the senate; for the soldiers, who had hitherto showed the strongest inclination to an abuse of power, were now made *arbiters* of the fate of emperors.

4. Being thus secure of his army, he resolved to give way to his natural desire of conquest, and to turn his arms against the Parthians, who were then invading the frontiers of the empire. 5. Having, therefore, previously given the government of domestic policy to one Plau'tian, a favourite, to whose daughter he married his son Caracal'la, he set out for the east, and prosecuted the war with his usual expedition and success. 6. He compelled submission from the king of Arme'nia, destroyed several cities of Ara'bia Felix, landed on the Parthian coast, took and plundered the famous city of Ctes'iphon [2], marched back through Pal'estine and Egypt, and at length returned to Rome in triumph.

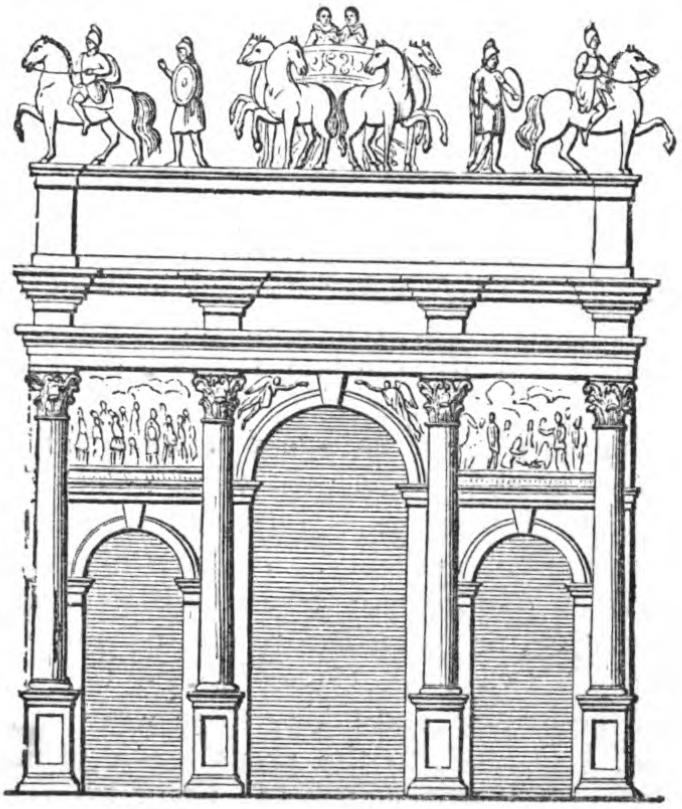
A splendid triumphal arch was erected to commemorate his success; it is still in a good state of preservation, and

He was extremely severe, never pardoning the least fault, and even crucified the centurions who were remiss in their duty. He is said to have possessed an extraordinary appetite, having ate at one breakfast 500 figs, 100 peaches, 10 melons, 20 bunches of grapes, 100 beccaficos, and 400 oysters. On being completely defeated by Seve'rus in Gaul, he killed himself; and such was the hatred that emperor bore him, that he rode over his dead body repeatedly, causing his horse to tread it under foot; then leaving it to be torn by dogs, he at last ordered the miserable remains to be cast into the Rhone. His wife and children were likewise inhumanly massacred.

[1] Within a few days forty-two senators were put to death, and many other persons, whose only crime was their great wealth. Narcissus, the wrestler, who strangled Com'modus, was thrown to be devoured by wild beasts. All the partisans of Albinus were cut off, and the city was said to have been floating in blood.

[2] Ctes'iphon, a fine city of Chaloni'tis, the most southern province of Assyria. It was situated on the east side of the Tigris, opposite to Seleu'cia. Here the Parthian kings passed their winter: and their summer at Ecbat'ana, the capital of Media.

is calculated to give us a high idea of the magnificence of imperial Rome.



7. During this interval Plau'tian[1], who was left to direct the affairs of Rome, began to think of aspiring to the empire himself. Upon the emperor's return, he employed a tribune of the prætorian cohorts, of which he was commander, to assassinate him and his son Caracal'la.

8. The tribune informed Seve'rus of his favourite's treachery. He at first received the intelligence as an improbable story, and as the artifice of one who envied his favourite's fortune. However, he was at last persuaded to permit the tribune to conduct Plau'tian to the emperor's apartments to be a testimony against himself. 9. With this intent the tribune went and amused him with a pretended account of his killing the emperor and his son; desiring him, if he thought fit to see them dead, to go with him to the palace. 10. As Plau'tian ardently desired their death, he readily gave credit to the relation, and, following

[1] Plau'tian, or Plautia'nus, was captain of the prætorian guards, and possessed of vast power and riches. His table was better served than the emperor's, and his equipages far more magnificent. All orders of men paid court to him; and he frequently put to death persons of the highest rank, without consulting Seve'rus.

the tribune, was conducted at midnight into the innermost apartments of the palace. But what must have been his surprise and disappointment, when, instead of finding the emperor lying dead, as he expected, he beheld the room lighted up with torches, and Seve'rus surrounded by his friends, prepared in array to receive him. 11. Being asked by the emperor, with a stern countenance, what had brought him there at that unseasonable time, he *ingenuously* confessed the whole, entreating forgiveness for what he had intended. 12. The emperor seemed inclined to pardon; but Caracal'la, his son, who from the earliest age showed a disposition to cruelty, ran him through the body with his sword.

13. After this, Seve'rus spent a considerable time in visiting some cities in Italy, permitting none of his officers to sell places of trust or dignity, and distributing justice with the strictest impartiality. He then undertook an expedition into Britain, where the Romans were in danger of being destroyed, or compelled to fly the province. After appointing his two sons, Caracal'la and Ge'ta, joint successors in the empire, and taking them with him, he landed in Britain, A.D. 208, to the great terror of such as had drawn down his resentment. 14. Upon his progress into the country, he left his son Ge'ta in the southern part of the province, which had continued in obedience, and marched, with his son Caracal'la, against the Caledo'nians. 15. In this expedition, his army suffered prodigious hardships in pursuing the enemy; they were obliged to hew their way through *intricate* forests, to drain extensive marshes, and form bridges over rapid rivers; so that he lost fifty thousand men by fatigue and sickness. 16. However, he surmounted these inconveniences with unremitting bravery, and prosecuted his successes with such vigour, that he compelled the enemy to beg for peace; which they did not obtain without the surrender of a considerable part of their country. 17. It was then that, for its better security, he built the famous wall, which still goes by his name, extending from Solway Frith on the west, to the German Ocean on the east. He did not long survive his successes here, but died at York, in the sixty-sixth year of his age, after an active, though cruel reign of about eighteen years.

18. Caracal'la[1] and Ge'ta, his sons, being acknowledged

[1] Caracal'la was merely a nickname, in consequence of his having

as emperors by the army, began to shew a mutual hatred to each other, even before their arrival at Rome. But this opposition was of no long continuance; for Caracal'la, being resolved to govern alone, furiously entered Ge'ta's apartment, and, followed by ruffians, slew him in his mother's arms [1]. U.C. 964. A.D. 211.

19. Being thus sole emperor, he went on to mark his course with blood. Whatever was done by Domi'tian or Ne'ro, fell short of this monster's barbarities [2].

20. His tyrannies at length excited the resentment of Macri'nus, the commander of the forces in Mesopota'mia, who employed one Mar'tial, a man of great strength, and a centurion of the guards, to despatch him. 21. Accordingly, as the emperor was riding out one day, near a little city called Carræ [3], he happened to withdraw himself privately, upon a natural occasion, with only one page to hold his horse. This was the opportunity Mar'tial had so long and ardently desired: when, running to him hastily, as if he had been called, he stabbed the emperor in the back, and killed him instantly. 22. Having performed this hardy attempt, he, with apparent unconcern, returned to his troop; but, retiring by insensible degrees, he endeavoured to secure himself by flight. His companions, however, soon missing him, and the page giving information of what had been done, he was pursued by the German horse, and cut in pieces.

23. During the reign of this execrable tyrant, which continued six years, the empire was every day declining; the soldiers were entirely masters of every election; and as there were various armies in different parts, so there were as many interests opposed to each other.

24. The soldiers, after remaining without an emperor two days, fixed upon Macri'nus, who took all possible methods to conceal his being privy to Caracal'la's murder. The senate confirmed their choice U.C. 970. A.D. 217.

introduced a kind of short cassock, called in the Gaulish language, by that name among the Romans. His real name was Bassia'nus.

[1] His murderer afterwards ordered that he should be worshipped as a god.

[2] Being offended by the Alexan'drians, he commanded them to be put to the sword, without distinction of sex, age, or condition; every house was filled with carcasses, and the streets were obstructed with dead bodies: this was merely in revenge for some lampoons which they had published against him.

[3] This place is ever memorable for the defeat and death of Cras'sus.

shortly after; and likewise that of his son Diadumenia nus, whom he took as a partner in the empire. 25. Macri'nus was fifty-three years old when he entered upon the government. He was of obscure parentage: some say by birth a Moor, who, by the mere gradation of office, being made first prefect of the prætorian bands, was now, by treason and accident, called to fill the throne.

26. He was opposed by the intrigues of Mosa, and her grandson Heliogab'alus; and being conquered by some seditious legions of his own army, he fled to Chalce'don where those who were sent in pursuit overtook him, and put him to death, together with his son Diadumenia'nus, after a short reign of one year and two months.

27. The senate and citizens of Rome being obliged to
U.C. submit as usual to the appointment of the army,
971. Heliogab'alus ascended the throne at the age of
A.D. fourteen. His short life was a mixture of effeminacy,
218. lust, and extravagance. 28. He married six wives in the short space of four years, and divorced them all. He was so fond of the sex, that he carried his mother with him to the senate-house, and demanded that she should always be present when matters of importance were debated. He even went so far as to build a senate-house for women, appointing them suitable orders, habits, and distinctions, of which his mother was made president. 29. They met several times; all their debates turned upon the fashions of the day, and the different formalities to be used at giving and receiving visits. To these follies he added cruelty and boundless prodigality; he used to say, that such dishes as were cheaply obtained were scarcely worth eating. It is even said that he attempted to foretel what was to happen, by inspecting the entrails of young men; and that he chose the most beautiful youths throughout Italy to be slain for that horrid purpose.

30. However, his soldiers *mutinying*, as was now usual with them, they followed him to his palace, pursuing him from apartment to apartment, till at last he was found concealed in a privy. Having dragged him from thence through the streets, with the most bitter invectives, and despatched him, they attempted once more to squeeze his pampered body into a privy; but not easily effecting this, they threw it into the Tiber, with heavy weights, that none

[1] A city of Bithyn'ia, in Asia Minor, opposite to Constantinople.

might afterwards find it, or give it burial. This was the ignominious death of Heliogab'alus, in the eighteenth year of his age, after a detestable reign of four years.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Didius Julianus?
2. What was the character of Severus?
3. By what means did he strengthen his power?
4. What were his first acts?
5. To whom did he commit the government in his absence?
6. What were his exploits?
7. How did Plautian conduct himself in his important post?
8. How was this treachery discovered?
9. How was this effected?
10. Did Plautian fall into the snare?
11. How did he act on the occasion?
12. Was he pardoned?
13. How did Severus next employ himself?
14. What were his first measures in Britain?
15. Was it a difficult campaign?
16. Did he overcome these difficulties?
17. What famous work did he execute, and where did he die?
18. Who succeeded him, and how did the two emperors regard each other?
19. What was the conduct of Caracalla on thus becoming sole emperor?
20. Were these cruelties tamely suffered?
21. How was this effected?
22. Did the assassin escape?
23. What was the state of the empire during this reign?
24. Who succeeded Caracalla?
25. Who was Macrinus?
26. By whom was he opposed, and what was his fate?
27. How did Heliogabalus govern?
28. Give a few instances of his folly.
29. Did they enter into his views, and of what farther follies and vices was he guilty?
30. What was his end?

SECTION III.

I know that there are angry spirits
And turbulent mutterers of stifled treason
Who lurk in narrow places, and walk out
Muffled, to whisper curses in the night;
Disbanded soldiers, discontented ruffians,
And desperate libertines who brawl in taverns. BYRON.

1. Adula'tion, *s.* flattery.
2. Sculp'ture, *s.* the art of making statues.
7. Sym'metry, *s.* proportion.
9. Athlet'ic, *a.* robust, strong.
14. Alie'nated, *v.* changed, estranged.
19. Mu'tineers, *s.* rebels, seditious soldiers.
21. Foment'ed, *v.* encouraged.
Note. Ver'sed, *part.* instructed, skilful.
Def'erence, *s.* respect.

1. HELIOGAB'ALUS was succeeded by Alexander, his cousin-german [1], who being declared emperor without opposition, U.C. 975. A.D. 222. the senate, with their usual *adulation*, were for conferring new titles upon him: but he modestly declined them all. 2. To the most rigid justice he added the greatest humanity. He loved the good, and was a severe reprover of the lewd and infamous. His accomplishments were equal to his virtues. He was an excellent mathematician, geometrician, and musician; he was equally skilful in painting and *sculpture;* and in poetry few of his time could equal him. In short, such were his talents, and such the solidity of his judgment, that though but sixteen years of age, he was considered equal in wisdom to a sage old man [2].

3. About the thirteenth year of his reign the Upper Germans, and other northern nations, began to pour down in immense swarms upon the more southern parts of the empire. They passed the Rhine and the Danube with such fury, that all Italy was thrown into the most extreme consternation. 4. The emperor, ever ready to expose his

[1] A term generally applied to the children of brothers or sisters.

[2] To compensate for the inexperience of extreme youth, he chose sixteen senators for his council, all men of known probity, and long *versed* in public affairs, by whose advice he constantly acted; he paid likewise the utmost *deference* to his mother Ju'lia Mamme'a, and his grandmother Mæ'sa, both women of great understanding, experience, and honour. Alexander was considered one of the best princes ever seated on the throne. Artaxerx'es, king of Persia, having made irruptions upon some of the Roman provinces, Alexander marched against him, and after a successful war of four years, returned to Rome in triumph. Soon after this followed the incursions of the Germans into Illyr'ia, Gaul, &c.

person for the safety of his people, made what levies he could, and went in person to stem the torrent; which he speedily effected. It was in the course of his successes against the enemy that he was cut off by a mutiny among his own soldiers. He died in the twenty-ninth year of his age, after a prosperous reign of thirteen years and nine days [1].

5. The tumults occasioned by the death of Alexander being appeased, Max'imin, who had been the chief promoter of the sedition, was chosen emperor. 6. This extraordinary man, whose character deserves a particular attention, was born of very obscure parentage, being the son of a poor herdsman of Thrace [2]. He followed his father's humble profession, and had exercised his personal courage against the robbers who infested that part of the country in which he lived. Soon after, his ambition increasing, he left his poor employment, and enlisted in the Roman army, where he soon became remarkable for his great strength, discipline, and courage. 7. This gigantic man, we are told, was eight feet and a half high: he had strength corresponding to his size, being not more remarkable for the magnitude than the *symmetry* of his person. His wife's bracelet usually served him for a thumb ring; and his strength was so great, that he was able to draw a carriage which two oxen could not move. He could strike out the teeth of a horse with a blow of his fist, and break its thigh with a kick. 8. His diet was as extraordinary as his endowments: he generally ate forty pounds' weight of flesh every day, and drank six gallons of wine, without committing any debauch in either. 9. With a frame so *athletic*, he was possessed of a mind undaunted in danger, and neither fearing nor regarding any man. 10. The first time he was made known to the emperor Seve'rus, was while he was celebrating games on the

U.C. 988. A.D. 235.

[1] One instance of the noble-mindedness of Alexander ought not to be omitted. Hearing that Ovin'ius Camil'lus was making interest to raise himself to the empire, he sent for him, thanked him for offering to take upon him so great a burden, styled him his colleague, offered him the command of the army, and took him with him on an expedition. They both set out together on foot, but Camil'lus soon growing fatigued, was allowed a horse, and afterwards a chariot: ashamed of conspiring against a prince of such magnanimity, he resigned all pretensions to sovereignty, and returned to his former private station.

[2] Thrace, an extensive province of ancient Greece, now called Roma'nia, in Turkey.

birth-day of his son Ge'ta. He overcame sixteen in running, one after the other; he then kept up with the emperor on horseback; and having fatigued him in the course, he was opposed to seven of the most active soldiers, and overcame them with the greatest ease. 11. These extraordinary exploits caused him to be particularly noticed; he had been taken into the emperor's body guard, and by the usual gradation of preferment came to be the chief commander. In this situation he had been equally remarkable for his simplicity, discipline, and virtue; but upon coming to the empire, was found to be one of the greatest monsters of cruelty that ever disgraced power; fearful of nothing himself, he seemed to sport with the terrors of all mankind [1].

12. However, his cruelties did not retard his military operations, which were carried on with a spirit becoming a better monarch. He overthrew the Germans in several battles, wasted all their country with fire and sword for four hundred miles together, and formed a resolution of subduing all the northern nations, as far as the ocean. 13. In these expeditions, in order to attach the soldiers more firmly to him, he increased their pay: and in every duty of the camp, he himself took as much pains as the meanest sentinel in his army, showing incredible courage and assiduity. In every engagement, where the conflict was hottest Max'imin was seen fighting in person and destroying all before him; for, being bred a barbarian, he considered it his duty to combat as a common soldier, while he commanded as a general.

14. In the mean time, his cruelties had so *alienated* the minds of his subjects, that several conspiracies were secretly aimed against him [2]. None of them, however, succeeded, till at last his own soldiers, long harassed by famine and fatigue, and hearing of revolts on every side, resolved to terminate their calamities by the tyrant's death. 15. His great strength, and his being always armed, at first deterred them from assassinating him: but at length the soldiers,

[1] So ashamed was he of the meanness of his origin, that he is said to have privately put to death all those who knew his parents, or any of his family; a sure way to reveal it more effectually to the world.

[2] Of these, the most formidable was that of the two Gordians, father and son; who after wearing the imperial diadem for little more than a month, with the entire approbation of the senate and people, were slain in battle by the troops of Maximin (who were commanded by Capel'lian, governor of Maurita'nia), near Carthage, in Africa.

having made his guards accomplices in their designs, set upon him, while he slept at noon in his tent, and without opposition slew both him and his son, whom he had made his partner in the empire. 16. Thus died this most remarkable man, after an usurpation of about three years, in the sixty-fifth year of his age. His assiduity when in a humble station, and his cruelty when in power, serve to evince, that there are some men whose virtues are fitted for obscurity; as there are others who only show themselves great when placed in an exalted station.

17. The tyrant being dead, and his body thrown to dogs and birds of prey, Pupie'nus [1] and Balbie'nus, U.C. who had usurped the imperial purple, continued 991. for some time emperors, without opposition. 18. A.D. But, differing between themselves, the prætorian 238. soldiers, who were the enemies of both, set upon them in their palace, at a time when their guards were amused with seeing the Capit'oline games [2], and dragging them from the palace towards the camp, slew them both, leaving their dead bodies in the street, as a dreadful instance of unsuccessful ambition.

19. In the midst of this sedition, as the *mutineers* were proceeding along, they by accident met Gor'dian, U.C. the grandson of him who was slain in Africa: him 991. they declared emperor on the spot. 20. This prince A.D. was but sixteen years old when he began to reign, 238. but his virtues seemed to compensate for his want of experience. His principal aims were to unite the opposing members of government, and to reconcile the soldiers and citizens to each other. 21. The army, however, began as usual to murmur; and their complaints were artfully *fomented* by Philip, an Arabian, who was prætorian prefect, and aspired to the sovereignty. Things thus proceeded from bad to worse. 22. Philip was at first made equal to Gor'dian in the command of the empire; shortly after he was invested with the sole power,

[1] Pupie'nus was of low birth, the son of a blacksmith, but of extraordinary merit; Balbienus, of an illustrious family: the former was celebrated for his military, the latter for his political talents. They were chosen to the empire by the senate, but were soon afterwards killed, as mentioned in the text.

[2] Capit'oline games were those which were celebrated in honour of Jupiter Capitoli'nus, who was so named from Capito'lium, a superb temple at Rome, situated on the Tarpeian Rock, which was dedicated to Jupiter.

and at length, finding himself capable of perpetrating his long meditated cruelty, Gor'dian was by his order slain, in the twenty-second year of his age, after a successful reign of nearly six years [1].

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Heliogabalus?
2. What was his character?
3. Was his reign peaceable?
4. How did Alexander act on the occasion?
5. Who succeeded Alexander?
6. Who was Maximin?
7. Describe his person.
8. What farther distinguished him?
9. Was his mind proportioned to his body?
10. How did he attract the notice of Severus?
11. By what means did he attain rank in the army?
12. Was he equally a terror to his foreign enemies?
13. By what means did he gain the confidence of his soldiers?
14. What effect had his cruelties on the minds of his subjects?
15. How did they accomplish their purpose?
16. How long did he reign, and what inference may be drawn from his conduct?
17. Who next mounted the imperial throne?
18. What was their end?
19. Who succeeded Pupienus and Balbienus?
20. What were the character and views of this prince?
21. Was his administration approved of by all?
22. Did Philip accomplish his ambitious designs?

---

[1] Two years preceding this event, the frontiers of the Roman empire were invaded by Sapor, king of Persia, when Gordian advanced against him, and after having, in his way through Illyr'ia, reduced the Goths and Sarma'tians, he gained a great victory over Sapor, and retook several cities. It was on his return from this successful campaign against the Persians, in 244, that his army revolted, and he was slain.

SECTION IV.

U.C. 996.—A.D. 243.

What rein can hold licentious wickedness,
When down the hill he holds his fierce career?
We may as bootless spend our vain command
Upon th' enraged soldiers in their spoil,
Or send precepts to the Leviathan
To come ashore. SHAKSPEARE.

4. Irrup'tions, *s.* inroads, invasions.
5. Ambusca'de, *s.* an ambush, or secret place in which men conceal themselves for the purpose of falling on an enemy by surprise.
13. At'titude, *s.* posture.
21. Grada'tion, *s.* regular progress; an advance step by step.

1. PHILIP having thus murdered his benefactor, was so fortunate as to be immediately acknowledged emperor by the army. Upon his exaltation he associated his son, a boy of six years of age, as his partner in the empire; and, in order to secure his power at home, made peace with the Persians, and marched his army towards Rome. 2. However, the army revolting in favour of De'cius, his general, and setting violently upon him, one of his sentinels at a blow cut off his head, or rather cleft it asunder, separating the under jaw from the upper. He died in the forty-fifth year of his age, after a reign of about five years [1].

3. De'cius was universally acknowledged as his successor. His activity and wisdom seemed, in some measure, to stop the hastening decline of the Roman empire. The senate seemed to think so highly of his merits, that they voted him not inferior to Tra'jan; and indeed he appeared in every instance to consult their dignity, and the welfare of all the inferior ranks of people. 4. But no virtues could now prevent the approaching downfal of the state; the obstinate disputes between the Pagans and the Christians within the empire, and the unceasing *irruptions* of barbarous nations from without, enfeebled it beyond the power of remedy. 5. He was killed in an *ambuscade* of the enemy, in the fiftieth year of his age, after a short reign of two years and six months [2].

U.C. 1001. A.D. 248.

[1] Philip the Arabian was the son of a chief of banditti. He commanded in Mesopotamia: and, with a view of expediting his journey to Rome, he gave it up to the Persians. He celebrated the secular games with a magnificence exceeding all that had been seen before. De'cius revolted in Panno'nia, where Philip was defeated, and killed by his own soldiers.

[2] Though De'cius was in other respects, as here described, a good

6. Gallus, who had betrayed the Roman army, had
U.C. address enough to get himself declared emperor
1004. by that part of it which survived the defeat: he was
A.D. forty-five years old when he began to reign [1], and
251. was descended from an honourable family in Rome.
7. He was the first who bought a dishonourable peace from the enemies of the state, agreeing to pay a considerable annual tribute to the Goths, whom it was his duty to repress. He was regardless of every national calamity, and was lost in debauchery and sensuality. The Pagans were allowed a power of persecuting the Christians through all parts of the state. 8. These calamities were succeeded by a pestilence from Heaven, that seemed to have spread over every part of the earth, and continued raging for several years, in an unheard-of manner; as well as by a civil war, which followed shortly after between Gallus and his general Æmilia'nus, who, having gained a victory over the Goths, was proclaimed emperor by his conquering army. 9. Gallus, hearing this, soon roused from the intoxications of pleasure, and prepared to oppose his dangerous rival: but both he and his son were slain by Æmilia'nus, in a battle fought in Mœsia. His death was merited, and his vices were such as to deserve the detestation of posterity. He died in the forty-seventh year of his age, after an unhappy reign of two years and four months, in which the empire suffered inexpressible calamities.

10. The senate refused to acknowledge the claims of
U.C. Æmilia'nus [2]; and an army that was stationed near
1006. the Alps chose Vale'rian [3], who was their com-
A.D. mander, to succeed to the throne. 11. He set
253. about reforming the state with a spirit that seemed

and virtuous prince, he was a furious persecutor of the Christians, many thousands of whom were tortured and put to cruel deaths. Great numbers betook themselves to barren mountains, rocks, and deserts, choosing rather to dwell among wild beasts, than with men who had divested themselves of reason and humanity.

[1] He took his son Valu'sian as his associate. The dishonourable peace which he made with the Goths was soon broken by the latter; and about the same time, Sapor, the king of the Persians, invaded Mesopota'mia and Syria, and conquered Armenia. It was from his not seeming to notice these invasions, that his soldiers were exasperated at his indolence, and killed him with his son.

[2] He was slain by his own troops, after a short reign of three or four months, as he was marching against Vale'rian, who had been proclaimed emperor in Rhœ'tia.

[3] Vale'rian was of an illustrious family, and adored by all ranks for his

to mark a good and vigorous mind. But reformation was now grown almost impracticable. 12. The Persians under their king Sapor, invading Syr'ia, took the unfortunate Vale'rian prisoner [1], as he was making preparations to oppose them; and the indignities as well as the cruelties, which were practised upon this unhappy monarch, thus fallen into the hands of his enemies, are almost incredible. 13 Sapor, we are told, used him as a footstool for mounting his horse; he added the bitterness of ridicule to his insults, and usually observed, that an *attitude* like that to which Vale'rian was reduced, was the best statue that could be erected in honour of his victory. 14. This horrid life of insult and sufferance continued for seven years; and was, at length, terminated by the cruel Persian commanding his prisoner's eyes to be plucked out, and afterwards causing him to be flayed alive [2].

15. When Vale'rian was taken prisoner, Galie'nus, his son, promising to revenge the insult, was chosen emperor, being then about forty-one years old. However, it was soon discovered that he sought rather the splendours than the toils of empire; for, after having overthrown Ingen'uus, who had assumed the title of emperor, he sat down, as if fatigued with conquest, and gave himself up to ease and luxury [3]. 16. At this time, no less than thirty pretenders were seen contending with each other for the dominion of the state, and adding the calamities of civil war to the rest of the misfortunes of

U.C. 1012. A.D. 259.

integrity, prudence, modesty, and extraordinary accomplishments. He was a friend to virtue, and an enemy to all wickedness and tyranny.

[1] Some say that this disaster was occasioned by the treachery of one Macria'nus, a celebrated magician, who persuaded Vale'rian to engage on disadvantageous ground; others affirm that, after his defeat, being prevailed upon to confer in person with Sapor, he was by that treacherous prince seized and carried into Persia.

[2] That he was flayed, and his skin, dressed, dyed red, and exposed as a monument of the Persian monarch's triumph, is allowed by all historians; but that he was flayed alive, rests merely on the authority of Aga'thias, who is contradicted by all the rest.

[3] The cruelty of his disposition may be inferred from the following letter to one of his officers: "I shall not be satisfied with your putting to death only such as have borne arms against me, and might have fallen in the field; you must, in every city, destroy all the males, old and young; spare none who have wished ill to me, none who have spoken ill of me, the son of Vale'rian, the father and brother of princes. Tear, kill, and cut in pieces without mercy; do as you know I would do, who have written to you with my own hand" He was too well obeyed.

this devoted empire. These are usually mentioned in history by the name of the thirty tyrants. 17. In this general calamity, Galie'nus, though at first seemingly insensible, was at length obliged for his own security to take the field, and led an army to besiege the city of Milan [1], which had been taken by one of the thirty usurping tyrants. In this expedition he was slain by his own soldiers: Mar'tian, one of his generals, having conspired against him.

18. Fla'vius Clau'dius being nominated to succeed, was U.C. joyfully accepted by all orders of the state, and 1021. his title confirmed by the senate and the people. A.D. 19. He was a man of great valour and conduct, 268. having performed the most excellent services against the Goths, who had long continued to make irruptions into the empire; but after a great victory over that barbarous people [2], he was seized with the pestilential fever at Ser'mium in Panno'nia, of which he died, to the great regret of his subjects, and the irreparable loss of the Roman empire.

20. Upon the death of Clau'dius, Aure'lian was acknow- U.C. ledged by all the states of the empire, and assumed 1023. the command with a greater share of power than A.D. his predecessors had enjoyed for a long time be- 270. fore. 21. This active monarch was of mean and obscure parentage in Da'cia, and about fifty-five years old at the time of his coming to the throne [3]. He had spent the early part of his life in the army, and had risen through all the *gradations* of military rank. He was of unshaken courage and amazing strength. He, in one engagement, killed forty of the enemy with his own hand; and at different times above nine hundred. In short, his valour and expedition were such, that he was compared to Julius Cæsar; and, in fact, only wanted mildness and clemency to be every way his equal. 22. Among those who were compelled to submit to his power, was the famous Zeno'bia, queen of Palmy'ra. He subdued her country, destroyed her city, and took her prisoner [4]. Longi'nus, the celebrated

[1] A considerable city of Italy, now forming a part of the Austrian dominions.

[2] With a comparatively small body of men, he defeated and destroyed 320,000 of the barbarians; and for this memorable victory the emperor took the surname of Gothi'cus.

[3] At the time of his being chosen emperor, he was general of the armies of Thrace and Illyr'ia.

[4] This was but an ungrateful return for the services her husband

critic, who was secretary to the queen, was by Aure'lian's order put to death. Zeno'bia was reserved to grace his triumph; and afterwards was allotted such lands, and such an income, as served to maintain her in almost her former splendour. 23. But the emperor's severities were at last the cause of his own destruction. Mnes'theus, his principal secretary, having been threatened by him for some fault which he had committed, formed a conspiracy against him, and as the emperor passed, with a small guard, from Ura'clea, in Thrace, towards Byzantium[1], the conspirators set upon him at once and slew him, in the sixtieth year of his age, after a very active reign of almost five years.

24. After some time[2] the senate made choice of Ta'citus, a man of great merit, and no way ambitious of the honours that were offered him, being at that time seventy-five years old. 25. A reign begun with much moderation and justice, only wanted continuance to have made his subjects happy: but after enjoying the empire about six months, he died of a fever in his march to oppose the Persians and Scyth'ians, who had invaded the eastern parts of the empire. 26. During this short period, the senate seemed to have possessed a large share of authority, and the historians of the times are liberal of their praises to such emperors as were thus willing to divide their power.

U.C. 1028. A.D. 275.

27. Upon the death of Ta'citus, his half-brother took upon himself the title of emperor, in Cili'cia: but being twice defeated by Pro'bus, he killed himself in despair, when the whole army, as if by common consent, cried out that Pro'bus[3] should be emperor. 28. He was then forty-four years old; was born of noble parentage, and bred a soldier. He began early to distinguish himself for his discipline and valour: being frequently the first man that scaled the walls, or that burst into the enemy's camp. He was equally remarkable for single combat, and for having saved the lives of many eminent citizens. Nor were his activity and courage when elected to the empire less apparent than in his private station. 29. Every year now

Odenatus, had rendered the empire; who for his victories over the Persians, had been associated with Galie'nus in the imperial throne.

[1] Byzan'tium, a noble city of Thrace, now called Constantinople.

[2] The interregnum was eight months.

[3] A native of Panno'nia.

produced new calamities to the state: and fresh irruptions on every side threatened universal desolation. Perhaps at this time no abilities, except those of Pro'bus, were capable of opposing such united invasions. 30. However, in the end, his own mutinous soldiers, taking their opportunity, as he was marching into Greece, seized and slew him, after he had reigned six years and four months with general approbation [1]. He was succeeded by Ca'rus.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did Philip succeed without opposition?
2. Was his reign of long duration?
3. What was the character of Decius?
4. Did he restore the empire to its former grandeur?
5. What was his end?
6. Who succeeded him?
7. What was his character?
8. What farther calamities distinguished this reign?
9. What effect had this news on Gallus?
10. Who succeeded Gallus?
11. What were his first acts and their effects?
12. What disaster befel him
13. How was he treated in captivity?
14. Did he long survive this cruelty?
15. Who succeeded him?
16. Was Galienus the only pretender to the throne?
17. What measures did Galienus adopt on this?
18. Who succeeded Galienus?
19. What were his character and end?
20. Who succeeded Claudius?
21. Who was Aurelian?
22. Over whom did he triumph?
23. What occasioned his destruction
24. Who succeeded Aurelian?
25. Did he govern well?
26. What distinguished his reign?
27. Who succeeded Tacitus?
28. What were the qualifications of Probus?
29. What was the state of the empire at this time?
30. What was the end of Probus?

[1] Probus was every where victorious, and Vara'nes II., king of Persia was so much terrified by his triumph over the Sarmatians, in Illyr'ia, that he went in person to meet him, and ask for peace. Probus having restored tranquillity to his empire, paid particular attention to agriculture, when he was taken off, as mentioned in the text.

SECTION V.

U. C. 1035.—A. D. 282.

Forbid it, gods! when barbarous Scythians come
From their cold north to prop declining Rome,
That I should see her fall, and sit secure at home.

LUCAN.

1 Su'lied, *v.* soiled, defiled.
3. Inconso'lable, *a.* not to be comforted.
4. Mer'cenary, *a.* acting for hire.
7. Saga'city, *s.* wisdom, acuteness.
8. Inacces'sible, *a.* not to be approached.
9. Perseve'rance, *s.* steadiness in purpose.
13. Dispar'ity, *s.* inequality.
Baf'fled, *v.* confounded.
16. Sub'lunary, *a.* terrestrial, earthly.
Ejacula'tions, *s.* short but fervent prayers.
17. Arus'pices, *s* diviners who foretold future events from the entrails of the victim sacrificed.
Inauspi'cious, *a.* unlucky.
18. Celes'tial, *a.* heavenly.

1. CA'RUS, who was prætorian prefect to the deceased emperor, was chosen by the army to succeed him; and he, to strengthen his authority, united his two sons, Cari'nus and Nume'rian, with him in command; the elder of whom was as much *sullied* by his vices, as the younger was remarkable for his virtues, his modesty, and courage.

2. The next object of Ca'rus was to punish the murderers of Pro'bus, and procure public tranquillity. Several nations of the west having revolted, he sent his son Cari'nus against them, and advanced himself against the Sarma'tians, whom he defeated, with the loss of sixteen thousand men killed, and twenty thousand prisoners. Soon after this he entered Persia, and recovered Mesopota'mia. Vara'nes the Second, king of Persia, advancing against him, was defeated, and lost Ctes'iphon, his capital. This conquest gained Ca'rus the surname of Per'sicus; but he had not enjoyed it long, when he was struck dead by lightning, in his tent, with many of his attendants, after a reign of about sixteen months. Upon the death of Ca'rus, the imperial power devolved on his sons Cari'nus and Nume'rian, who reigned jointly. In the first year of their accession, having made peace with the Persians, Cari'nus advanced against Ju'lian, who had caused himself to be proclaimed in Vene'tia[1], and whom he defeated; when he returned again into Gaul.

3. Cari'nus was at this time in Gaul, but Nume'rian, the younger son, who accompanied his father in his expedition,

[1] Now called Venice.

was *inconsolable* for his death, and brought such a disorder upon his eyes with weeping, that he was obliged to be carried along with the army, shut up in a close litter. 4. The peculiarity of his situation, after some time, excited the ambition of A'per, his father-in-law, who supposed that he could now without any great danger aim at the empire himself. He therefore hired a *mercenary* villain to murder the emperor in his litter; and, the better to conceal the fact, gave out that he was still alive, but unable to endure the light. 5. The offensive smell, however, of the body, at length discovered the treachery, and excited an universal uproar throughout the whole army. 6. In the midst of this tumult, Diocle'sian, one of the most noted commanders of his time, was chosen emperor, and with his own hand slew A'per; having thus, as it is said, fulfilled a prophecy, that Diocle'sian should be emperor after he had slain a boar [1].

7. Diocle'sian was a person of mean birth; he received his name from Dio'clea [2], the town in which he was born, and was about forty years old when he was elected to the empire [3]. He owed his exaltation entirely to his merit, having passed through all the gradations of office, with *sagacity*, courage, and success.

U.C. 1057. A.D. 284.

8. In his time, the northern hive, as it was called, poured down its swarms of barbarians upon the Roman empire [4]. Ever at war with the Romans, they issued forth whenever the army that was to repress their invasions was called away; and upon its return, they as suddenly withdrew into their cold, barren, and *inaccessible* retreats, which themselves alone could endure. 9. In this manner the Scyth'ians, Goths, Sarma'tians, Ala'ni, Car'sii, and Qua'di, came down in incredible numbers, while every defeat

[1] A'per signifies a boar.

[2] A town on the coast of Dalma'tia, on the eastern shore of the gulf of Ven'ice.

[3] Cari'nus, on hearing of his brother's death, and Diocle'sian's accession, hastened from Gaul to oppose the usurper, and completely routed him in a general engagement; but, while pursuing the enemy, was killed by his own soldiers.

[4] On account of the numerous enemies which Dioclesian had to oppose on every side, he made Maxim'ian his associate; and, in 292, took two other colleagues, Constan'tius Chlo'rus and Gale'rius. In 296, Diocle'sian went into Egypt, against the tyrant Achil'leus, whom he defeated and took prisoner. In 303, he began to persecute the Christians; and his great cruelty against them has been justly branded with the appellation of unbounded tyranny and insolent wantonness.

seemed but to increase their strength and *perseverance*. 10. After gaining many victories over these, and in the midst of his triumphs, Diocle'sian and Maxim'ian [1], his partner in the empire, surprised the world by resigning their dignities on the same day, and both retiring into private stations. 11. In this manner Diocle'sian lived some time, and at length died either by poison or madness, but by which of them is uncertain. His reign of twenty years was active and useful; and his authority, which was tinctured with severity, was adapted to the depraved state of morals at that time.

12. Upon the resignation of the two emperors, the two Cæsars, whom they had before chosen, were univer- U.C. sally acknowledged as their successors, namely, 1057. Constan'tius Chlo'rus, so called from the paleness A.D. of his complexion, a man virtuous, valiant, and 304. merciful; and Gale'rius [2], who was brave, but brutal, incontinent, and cruel. 13. As there was such a *disparity* in their tempers, they readily agreed, upon coming into full power, to divide the empire. Constan'tius was appointed to govern the western parts, and died at York, in Britain, A.D. 306, appointing Con'stantine, his son, as his successor. Gale'rius was seized with a very extraordinary disorder, which *baffled* the skill of his physicians, and carried him off.

14. Con'stantine, afterwards surnamed the Great, had

[1] Maxim'ian was of mean extraction, and of a savage and cruel disposition, but a valiant, experienced, and trusty commander, which was also a reason why Diocle'sian chose him for his colleague. Soon after his association in sovereign power, he went into Gaul, where he subdued the Bau'gaudi, a faction of peasants, who had rebelled. Afterwards he made war against the Burgun'dians, He'ruli, and Germans. In 297 he went into Africa, and reduced five towns of Libya. Diocle'sian and Maxim'ian abdicated the throne the 1st of May, A.D. 304; this was not done willingly, but to avoid a civil war, which was threatened by Galie'nus, if they refused. Diocle'sian retired to his palace near Salo'na, now Spala'to, where he amused himself by cultivating his garden. Maxim'ian, after his death, resumed the empire, and reigned with great glory twenty years; but making some unsuccessful attempts on Con'stantine, his colleague, he was arrested, condemned, and nothing left him but to choose his own death, when he strangled himself at Marseilles, A.D. 310, in the 60th year of his age. His body was found fresh and entire in a leaden coffin about the middle of the last century.

[2] Gale'rius was originally a cowherd, afterwards a common soldier; but by his valour and conduct rose by degrees to the imperial throne. He governed principally over the provinces of Thra'cia and Illy'ria.

U.C. 1064. A.D. 311. some competitors at first for the throne. Among the rest was Maxen'tius, who was at that time in possession of Rome, and a stedfast assertor of Paganism. 15. It was in Con'stantine's march against that usurper, we are told, that he was converted to Christianity, by a very extraordinary appearance. 16. One evening, the army being on its march towards Rome, Con'stantine was intent on various considerations, upon the fate of *sublunary* things, and the dangers of his approaching expedition. Sensible of his own incapacity to succeed without divine assistance, he employed his meditations upon the opinions that were then agitated among mankind, and sent up his *ejaculations* to Heaven to inspire him with wisdom to choose the path he should pursue. As the sun was declining there suddenly appeared a pillar of light in the heavens, in the fashion of a cross, with this inscription, ΕΝ ΤΟΥΤΩ ΝΙΚΑ, IN THIS OVERCOME. 17. So extraordinary an appearance did not fail to create astonishment, both in the emperor and his whole army, who reflected on it as their various dispositions led them to believe. Those who were attached to Paganism, prompted by their *aruspices*, pronounced it to be a most *inauspicious* omen, portending the most unfortunate events; but it made a different impression on the emperor's mind; who, as the account goes, was farther encouraged by visions the same night. 18. He therefore, the day following, caused a royal standard to be made, like that which he had seen in the heavens, and commanded it to be carried before him in his wars, as an ensign of victory and *celestial* protection. After this he consulted with the principal teachers of Christianity, and made a public avowal of that holy religion.

19. Con'stantine having thus attached his soldiers to his interest, who were mostly of the Christian persuasion, lost no time in entering Italy, with ninety thousand foot and eight thousand horse, and soon advanced almost to the very gates of Rome. Maxen'tius advanced from the city with an army of a hundred and seventy thousand foot, and eighteen thousand horse. 20. The engagement was fierce and bloody, till the cavalry of the latter being routed, victory declared upon the side of his opponent, and he himself was drowned in his flight by the breaking down of a bridge, as he attempted to cross the Tiber.

21. In consequence of this victory, Con'stantine entered the city, but disclaimed all the praises which the senate and

people were ready to offer; and ascribed his success to a superior power. He even caused the cross, which he was said to have seen in the heavens, to be placed at the right hand of all his statues, with this inscription: "That under the influence of that Victorious Cross, Con'stantine had delivered the city from the yoke of tyrannical power, and had restored the senate and people of Rome to their ancient authority." He afterwards ordained that no criminal should, for the future, suffer death upon the cross, which had formerly been the most usual way of punishing slaves convicted of capital offences. 22. Edicts were soon after issued, declaring that the Christians should be eased of all their grievances, and received into places of trust and authority.

23. Things continued in this state for some time, Constantine contributing every thing in his power to the interest of religion, and the revival of learning, which had long been upon the decline, and was almost wholly extinct in his dominions. 24. But in the midst of these assiduities, the peace of the empire was again disturbed by the preparations of Maxim'ian, who governed in the east; and who, desirous of a full participation of power, marched against Licin'ius with a very numerous army. 25. In consequence of this step, after many conflicts, a general engagement ensued, in which Maxim'ian suffered a total defeat; many of his troops were cut to pieces, and those that survived submitted to the conqueror. Having, however, escaped the general carnage, he put himself at the head of another army, resolving to try the fortune of the field; but his death prevented the design. 26. As he died by a very extraordinary kind of madness, the Christians, of whom he was the declared enemy, did not fail to ascribe his end to a judgment from Heaven. But this was the age in which false opinions and false miracles made up the bulk of every history.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Probus?
2. Mention the actions of Carus and the manner of his death.
3. How were his sons affected by this catastrophe?
4. What was the consequence?
5. How was this atrocious act discovered?
6. Did Aper reap the reward of his treachery?
7. Who was Dioclesian?

8. By whom was the empire now invaded?
9. Were they effectually repelled?
10. What remarkable event now occurred?
11. What was the end of Dioclesian?
12. Who succeeded Dioclesian and Maximian?
13. How did they conduct the administration?
14. Did Constantine succeed without any opposition?
15. Did not a remarkable occurrence happen about this time?
16. Repeat the particulars.
17. What effect had this appearance on the emperor and his men?
18. What orders did he issue in consequence?
19. What was the respective strength of the hostile armies?
20. What was the result of the engagement?
21. What use did Constantine make of his victory?
22. What edicts did he publish on the occasion?
23. How was Constantine employed after this?
24. Did the peace long continue?
25. What was the consequence?
26. To what was his death ascribed?

SECTION VI.

A crown? what is it?
It is to bear the miseries of a people!
To hear their murmurs, feel their discontents,
And sink beneath a load of splendid care!
To have your best success ascribed to Fortune
And Fortune's failures all ascribed to you!
It is to sit upon a joyless height,
To every blast of changing fate exposed!
Too high for hope! too great for happiness! H. More.

8. Impli'citly, *ad.* without hesitation, without resistance.
Her'esy, *s.* an error in religion.
9. Pres'byters, *s.* priests or elders.
Dea'cons, *s.* inferior priests, officers of the Church.
11. Plau'sible, *a.* specious, likely.

1. Con'stantine and Licin'ius thus remaining undisputed possessors of, and partners in, the empire, all things promised a peaceable continuance of friendship and power. 2. However, it was soon found that the same ambition that aimed after a part, would be content with nothing less than the whole. Pagan writers ascribe the rupture between these two potentates to Constantine; while the Christians, on the other hand, impute it wholly to Licin'ius. 3. Both sides exerted all their power to gain the ascendancy; and at the head of very formidable armies came to an engagement near Cy'balis, in Panno'nia. 4. Con'stantine, previous to the battle, in the midst of his Christian bishops, begged the assistance of Heaven; while Licin'ius,

with equal zeal, called upon the Pagan priests to intercede with the gods in their favour [1]. 5. The success was on the side of truth. Con'stantine, after experiencing an obstinate resistance, became victorious, took the enemy's camp, and after some time compelled Licin'ius to sue for a truce, which was agreed upon. 6. But this was of no long continuance; for, soon after, the war breaking out afresh, the rivals came once more to a general engagement, and it proved decisive. Licin'ius was entirely defeated, and pursued by Con'stantine into Nicome'dia, where he surrendered himself up to the victor; having first obtained an oath that his life should be spared, and that he should be permitted to pass the remainder of his days in retirement. 7. This, however, Con'stantine shortly after broke; for either fearing his designs, or finding him actually engaged in fresh conspiracies [2], he commanded him to be put to death, together with Mar'tian, his general, who some time before had been created Cæsar.

8. Con'stantine being thus become sole monarch, resolved to establish Christianity on so sure a basis that no new revolution should shake it. He commanded that, in all the provinces of the empire, the orders of the bishops should be *implicitly* obeyed. He called also a general council [3], in order to repress the *heresies* that had already crept into the church, particularly that of A'rius [4]. 9. To this council, at which he presided in person, repaired about three hundred and eighteen bishops, besides a multitude of *presbyters* and *deacons;* who all, except about seventeen, concurred in condemning the tenets of A'rius, who, with his associates, was banished into a remote part of the empire.

10. Thus he restored universal tranquillity to his dominions, but was not able to ward off calamities of a more domestic nature. As the wretched historians of this period are entirely at variance with each other, it is not easy to explain the motives which induced him to put his wife Faus'ta, and his son Cris'pus, to death. 11. The most *plausible* account is this: Faus'ta, the empress, who was a

[1] Writers of credit assert, that Licin'ius designed, if victorious, to commence a most furious persecution against the Christians.

[2] Soc'rates, the historian, asserts that this was actually the case.

[3] Called, from the place where it assembled, the Council of Nice.

[4] A'rius was the head of the sect who denied the proper divinity of Christ.

woman of great beauty, but of extravagant desires, had long, though secretly, loved Cris'pus, Con'stantine's son by a former wife. 12. She had tried every art to inspire this youth with a mutual passion; and, finding her more distant efforts ineffectual, had even the confidence to make him an open confession of her desires. 13. This produced an explanation which was fatal to both. Cris'pus received her addresses with detestation; and she, to be revenged, accused him to the emperor. 14. Con'stantine, fired at once with jealousy and rage, condemned him to death without a hearing; nor did his innocence appear till it was too late for redress[1]. 15. The only reparation, therefore, that remained, was the putting Faus'ta to death, which was accordingly executed upon her, together with some others, who had been accomplices in her falsehood and treachery.

16. But it is supposed, that all the good he did was not equal to the evil the empire sustained by his transferring the imperial seat from Rome to Byzan'tium, or Constantino'ple, as it was afterwards called. 17. Whatever might have been the reasons which induced him to this undertaking; whether it was because he was offended at some affronts he had received at Rome, or that he supposed Constantino'ple more in the centre of the empire, or that he thought the eastern parts more required his presence, experience has shown that they were all weak and groundless. 18. The empire had long before been in a most declining state; but this, in a great measure, gave precipitation to its downfal. After this, it never resumed its former splendour, but like a flower transplanted into a foreign clime, languished by degrees, and at length sunk into nothing.

9. At first, his design was to build a city, which he might make the capital of the world: and for this purpose he made choice of a situation at Chal'cedon, in Asia Minor; but we are told that in laying out the ground-plan, an eagle caught up the line, and flew with it over to Byzantium, a city which lay upon the opposite side of the Bosphorus. 20. Here, therefore, it was thought expedient to fix the seat of empire; and, indeed, nature seemed to have

[1] Cris'pus was a prince of extraordinary endowments, and was universally beloved by the people and soldiery, on account of his bravery, his obliging behaviour, generosity, and other excellent qualities. This cruel execution is a sad blot in the character of Con'stantine.

formed it with all the conveniences, and all the beauties which might induce power to make it the seat of residence. 21. It was situated on a plain that rose gently from the water: it commanded that strait which unites the Mediterranean with the Euxine Sea, and was furnished with all the advantages which the most indulgent climate could bestow. 22. The city, therefore, he beautified with the most magnificent edifices; he divided it into fourteen regions; built a capitol, an amphitheatre, many churches, and other public works; and having thus rendered it equal to the magnificence of his idea, he dedicated it in a very solemn manner to the God of Martyrs; and in about two years after repaired thither with his whole court. U.C. 1084. A.D. 330.

23. This removal produced no immediate alteration in the government of the empire. The inhabitants of Rome, though with reluctance, submitted to the change; nor was there, for two or three years, any disturbance in the state, until at length the Goths, finding that the Romans had withdrawn all their garrisons along the Danube, renewed their inroads, and ravaged the country with unheard-of cruelty. 24. Con'stantine, however, soon repressed their incursions, and so straitened them, that nearly a hundred thousand of their number perished by cold and hunger.

25. Another great error ascribed to him is, the dividing the empire among his sons. Con'stantine, the emperor's eldest son, commanded in Gaul and the western provinces; Constan'tius, the second, governed Africa and Illyr'icum; and Con'stans, the youngest, ruled in Italy. 26. This division of the empire still further contributed to its downfal; for the united strength of the state being no longer brought to repress invasion, the barbarians fought with superior numbers, and conquered at last, though often defeated. When Con'stantine was above sixty years old, and had reigned about thirty, he found his health decline. 27. His disorder, which was an ague, increasing, he went to Nicome'dia, where, finding himself without hopes of a recovery, he caused himself to be baptized. He soon after received the sacrament, and expired [1].

[1] The character of Con stantine is variously represented, according to the affections or passions of the writers. By the Heathens, he is represented as a compound of every vice; by the Christians, as pious and virtuous in the extreme: but all agree, that he possessed the qualities requisite to form a great, if not a good prince.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the state of the empire at this period?
2. Was this peace lasting, and by whom was it broken?
3. Was the contest likely to be vigorous?
4. In what way did the two emperors prepare for the conflict?
5. What was the result?
6. Was this truce religiously observed?
7. Did Constantine fulfil his engagement?
8. What was Constantine's resolution on becoming sole monarch, and what steps did he take?
9. By whom was it attended, and what was the result?
10. Was he happy in his domestic relations?
11. What is the most plausible account?
12. Was Crispus aware of her love?
13. How was it received?
14. How did Constantine act on the occasion?
15. What reparation was made for this injustice?
16. Was the removal of the seat of the empire beneficial to the state?
17. Were his reasons for doing so well grounded?
18. What was the consequence?
19. What was his original intention, and what induced him to alter it?
20. Was it a convenient spot?
21. Describe its situation.
22. What alteration did he make, and to whom was it dedicated?
23. What was the immediate effect of this transfer?
24. Were they vigorously opposed?
25. Of what error is Constantine accused besides?
26. What was the consequence of this division?
27. Relate the particulars of his death.

Dr. Goldsmith having concluded his History too abruptly, it has been thought advisable to cancel his last Chapter, and substitute the following brief notice of the events which occurred from the death of Constantine to the final extinction of the Empire of the West.

CHAPTER XXV.

SECT. I.

FROM THE DEATH OF CONSTANTINE TO THE REUNION OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE UNDER THEODOSIUS THE GREAT.

Talents, angel bright,
If wanting worth, are shining instruments
In false ambition's hands, to finish faults
Illustrious, and give infamy renown. YOUNG.

1. Legisla'tor, *s.* a lawgiver.
7. Fatal'ity, *s.* any thing supposed to be decreed by fate.
9. Protract'ed, *part.* lengthened out.
13. Pre'fectures, *s.* provinces governed by a prefect or lieutenant.
16. Compe'titors, *s.* hostile rivals.
Cuiras'siers, *s.* cavalry wearing cuirasses or breast-plates.
Orien'tal, *a.* eastern.
19. Emer'gencies, *s.* difficulties.
21. Apos'tate, *s.* one who abandons his religion.
24. Ag'gravated, *part.* increased.

1. THE character of the prince who removed the seat of empire and made a complete revolution in the civil and religious institutions of his country, is naturally one on which the opinions of historians are divided, according to their sentiments respecting the great changes that he effected. The heathen writers describe him as a monster of tyranny; the Christian fathers are anxious to conceal his faults and exaggerate his virtues, as if the nature of Christianity was in some degree affected by the character of its first and greatest patron. The truth is, that the character of Constantine, like that of other great conquerors, varied with the circumstances of his life. While engaged in the contest for empire, while employed in making unparalleled political changes, he displayed the fortitude of a hero, and wisdom of a *legislator;* but when complete success reduced him to inactivity, when his vigorous mind was no longer stimulated by fear or hope, prosperity roused all his bad passions by affording an opportunity for their indulgence; and the virtues which had ensured victory disappeared when there was no longer any stimulus to rouse them into action. The fourteen years of profound peace that preceded the emperor's death, form a period of great external splendour, but of real and rapid decay; the court was distinguished at once by avarice and prodigality; the money raised by heavy taxes, unknown in former ages, was lavished on unworthy favourites or wasted in idle ex-

hibitions of magnificence. 2. A mind relaxed by prosperity is peculiarly open to suspicion; the ears of the monarch were greedily lent to every tale brought to him by malignant spies and informers; such encouragement increased the number of those wretches; every street and almost every house in the capital contained some one ever on the watch to pick up any unguarded expression which might be distorted into treason or sedition. It was not likely that a monarch who had consented to the murder of his own son, on the most groundless charges, would be more merciful to those who had no natural claims upon his forbearance; execution followed execution with fearful rapidity, until the bonds of society were broken, and every man dreaded his neighbour, lest by misinterpreting a word or look, he should expose him to the indiscriminate cruelty of the sovereign.

3. The example of their father's tyranny produced an effect on the minds of his sons, which no education, however excellent or judicious, could remove. Pious Christian pastors, learned philosophers, and venerable sages of the law, were employed to instruct the three princes, Con'stantine, Constan'tius, and Con'stans; but the effects of their labours never appeared in the lives of their pupils.

4. For some reasons which it is now impossible to discover, the great Constantine had raised two of his nephews to the rank of princes, and placed them on an equality with his own children. Before the emperor's body was consigned to the tomb, this impolitic arrangement brought destruction on the entire Flavian family. A forged scroll was produced by the bishop of Nicome'dia, purporting to be Constantine's last will, in which he accused his brothers of having given him poison, and besought his sons to avenge his death. 5. Constan'tius eagerly embraced such an opportunity of destroying the objects of his jealousy; his two uncles, seven of his cousins, the patrician Opta'tus, who had married the late emperor's sister, and the prefect Abla'vius, whose chief crime was enormous wealth, were subjected to a mock trial, and delivered to the executioner. Of so numerous a family Gal'lus and Julian alone were spared; they owed their safety to their concealment, until the rage of the assassins had abated. 6. After this massacre, the three brothers, similar in name, and more alike in crime, proceeded to divide their father's dominions: Constantine took for his share the new capital and the

central provinces: Thrace and the East were assigned to Constan'tius: Con'stans received Italy, Africa, and the western Illyr'icum.

7. The weakness produced by this division encouraged the enemies of the Romans, whom the dread of Constantine's power had hitherto kept quiet, to take up arms. Of these the most formidable was Sa'por, king of Persia, a monarch whose reign, by a strange *fatality*, commenced before his birth. Hormis'das, king of Persia, died, leaving his wife pregnant; the uncertainty of the event threatened the country with the horrors of civil war, which was averted by the prudence of the Magi. These priests proclaimed that it had been revealed to them that the queen had conceived a son, and they actually went through a strange form of coronation, in which the queen was crowned as her son's representative. Superstition made this curious farce effective: Sapor on his birth was received as a king sent from Heaven, and though his minority was not undisturbed by rival pretenders, he was rescued from all dangers by the enthusiastic love of his subjects. 8. The abilities of Sapor showed that he merited a throne; he had scarcely arrived at maturity when he led an army against Tha'ir, king of Arabia, who had harassed Persia during his minority; the expedition was completely successful. Tha'ir was slain, and the kingdom subdued. The young conqueror did not abuse his victory; he treated the vanquished with such clemency, that the Arabs gave him the title of *Doulacnaf* or protector of the nation.

9. On the death of Constantine, Sa'por invaded the eastern provinces of the Roman empire; he was A.D. vigorously opposed by Constan'tius, and the war 338. was *protracted* during several years with varying fortune. At the battle of Sin'gara, the Romans surprised the Persian camp, but were in their turn driven from it with great slaughter by the troops which Sapor had rallied. The eldest son of the Persian king was, however, brought off as a prisoner by the Romans, and the barbarous Constan'tius ordered him to be scourged, tortured, and publicly executed. 10. Though Sapor had been victorious in the field, he failed in his chief design of seizing the Roman fortresses in Mesopota'mia; during twelve years he repeatedly besieged Ni'sibis, which had been long the great eastern bulwark of the empire, but was invariably baffled by the strength of the place, and the valour of the garrison. At length both

parties became wearied of a struggle which exhausted their resources, and new enemies appearing, they resolved to conclude a peace. Sa'por returned home to repel an invasion of the Scythians; Constan'tius, by the death of his two brothers, found himself involved in a civil war which required his undivided attention.

11. Con'stantine had scarcely been seated on his throne, when he attempted to wrest from Con'stans some of the provinces which had been assigned as his portion. He rashly led his army over the Julian Alps, and devastated the country round Aquile'ia[1], where falling into an ambuscade, he perished ingloriously. Con'stans seized on the inheritance of the deceased prince, and retained it during ten years, obstinately refusing to give any share to his brother Constan'tius. 12. But the tyranny of Con'stans at last became insupportable. Magnen'tius, an enterprising general, proclaimed himself emperor, and his cause was zealously embraced by the army. Con'stans was totally unprepared for this insurrection; deserted by all except a few favourites, whom dread of the popular hatred they had justly incurred prevented from desertion, he attempted to escape into Spain, but was overtaken at the foot of the Pyrenees and murdered. 13. The *prefectures* of Gaul and Italy cheerfully submitted to the usurpation of Magnen'tius; but the legions of Illyr'icum elected their general, Vetra'nio, emperor, and his usurpation was sanctioned by the princess Constanti'na, who, regardless of her brother's rights, placed the diadem upon his head with her own hands. 14. The news of these events hastened the return of Constan'tius to Europe; on his arrival at the capital, he received embassies from the two usurpers, offering terms of accommodation; he rejected the terms of Magnen'tius with disdain, but entered into a negotiation with Vetra'nio. The Illyrian leader, though a good general, was a bad politician; he allowed himself to be duped by long discussions, until the greater part of his army had been gained over by Constan'tius; he then consented to a personal interview, and had the mortification to see his soldiers, with one accord, range themselves under the banners of their lawful sovereign. Vetra'nio immediately fell at the feet of Constan'tius, and tendered his homage, which was cheerfully accepted; he was not only

[1] A city on the northern confines of Italy.

pardoned, but rewarded; the city of Pru'sa, in Bithynia, was allotted to him as a residence, and a pension assigned for his support. 15. The war against Magnen'tius was maintained with great obstinacy, but at first with little success; the emperor was confined in his fortified camp, while the troops of the usurper swept the surrounding country, and captured several important posts. Constan'tius was so humbled, that he even proposed a treaty, but the terms on which Magnen'tius insisted were so insulting, that the emperor determined to encounter the hazard of a battle. Scarcely had he formed this resolution, when his army was strengthened by the accession of Sylva'nus, a general of some reputation, who, with a large body of cavalry, deserted from the enemy.

16. The decisive battle between the *competitors* for the empire, was fought under the walls of Mur'sa [1], a city on the river Drave. Magnen'tius attempted to take the place by storm, but was repulsed; and almost at the same moment, the imperial legions were seen advancing to raise the siege. The army of Magnen'tius consisted of the western legions that had already acquired fame in the wars of Gaul; with battalions of Germans and other barbarous tribes, that had of late years been incorporated with the regular forces. In addition to the imperial guards, Constan'tius had several troops of those oriental archers, whose skill with the bow was so justly celebrated; but far the most formidable part of his army were his mail-clad *cuirassiers*, whose scaly armour, and ponderous lances, made their charge almost irresistible. The cavalry on the emperor's left wing commenced the engagement, and broke through the Gallic legions in the first charge; the hardy veterans again rallied, were again charged, and again broken; at length, before they could form their lines, the light cavalry of the second rank rode, sword in hand, through the gaps made by the cuirassiers, and completed their destruction. Meantime, the Germans and barbarians stood exposed, with almost naked bodies, to the destructive shafts of the *oriental* archers; whole troops, stung with anguish and despair, threw themselves into the rapid stream of the Drave, and perished. Ere the sun had set, the army of Magnen'tius was irretrievably ruined; fifty-four thousand of the vanquished were slain, and the loss of the conqueror is said to have been even greater.

[1] Now called Essek, in Hungary.

17. From this battle the ruin of the Roman empire may be dated; the loss of one hundred thousand of its best and bravest soldiers could not be repaired, and never again did any emperor possess a veteran army equal to that which fell on the fatal plains of Mur'sa. The defeat of Magnen'tius induced the Italian and African provinces to return to their allegiance; the Gauls, wearied out by the exactions which distress forced the usurper to levy, refused to acknowledge his authority, and at length his own soldiers raised the cry of "God save Constan'tius.' To avoid the disgrace of a public execution, Magnen'tius committed suicide, and several members of his family imitated his example. The victor punished with relentless severity all who had shared in the guilt of this rebellion; and several who had been compelled to join in it by force shared the fate of those by whom it had been planned.

18. The Roman empire was now once more united under a single monarch; but as that prince was wholly destitute of merit, his victory served only to establish the reign of worthless favourites. Of these the most distinguished was the chamberlain, Euse'bius, whose influence was so great, that he was considered the master of the emperor; and to whose instigation many of the crimes committed by Constan'tius must be attributed.

19. Gal'lus and Ju'lian, who had escaped in the general massacre of the Flavian family, were detained as prisoners of state in a strong castle, which had once been the residence of the kings of Cappado'cia. Their education had not been neglected, and they had been assigned a household proportionate to the dignity of their birth. At length the *emergencies* of the state compelled Constan'tius to nominate an associate in the government of the empire; and Gal'lus, now in the twenty-fifth year of his age, was summoned from his retirement, invested with the title of Cæsar, and married to the princess Constanti'na. 20. The latter circumstance proved his ruin; stimulated by the cruel ambition of his wife, he committed deeds of tyranny, which alienated the affections of his subjects, and acts bordering on treason, that roused the jealousy of Constan'tius. He was summoned to appear at the imperial court to explain his conduct, but was seized on his journey, made a close prisoner, and transmitted to Po'la, a town in Ist'ria, where he was put to death. 21. Julian, the last remnant of the Flavian family, was, through the powerful intercession of

the empress, spared, and permitted to pursue his studies in Athens. In that city, where the Pagan philosophy was still publicly taught, the future emperor imbibed the doctrines of the heathens, and thus acquired the epithet of *Apostate*, by which he is unenviably known to posterity. Julian was soon recalled from his retirement, and elevated to the station which his unfortunate brother had enjoyed. His investiture with the royal purple took place at Milan [1], whither Constan'tius had proceeded to quell a new insurrection in the western provinces. 22. Before the emperor returned to the east, he determined to revisit the ancient capital, and Rome, after an interval of more than thirty years, became for a brief space the residence of the sovereign. He signalized his visit by presenting to the city an obelisk, which at a vast expense he procured to be transported from Egypt. 23. The renewed efforts of the Persians and other enemies of the empire in the East, recalled Constan'tius to Constantinople, while Julian was employed in driving from Gaul the barbarous tribes by which it had been invaded. The conduct of the young Cæsar, both as a soldier and a statesman, fully proved that literary habits do not disqualify a person from discharging the duties of active life; he subdued the enemies that devastated the country, and forced them to seek refuge in their native forests; he administered the affairs of state with so much wisdom, temperance, and equity, that he acquired the enthusiastic love of his subjects, and richly earned the admiration of posterity. 24. The unexpected glory obtained by Julian, awakened the jealousy of Constan'tius; he sent to demand from him a large body of forces, under the pretence that reinforcements were wanting in the East; but the soldiers refused to march, and Julian after some affected delays sanctioned their disobedience. A long negotiation, in which there was little sincerity on either side, preceded any hostile steps; both at length began to put their armies in motion, but the horrors of civil war were averted by the timely death of Constan'tius, who fell a victim to fever, *aggravated* by his impatience, at a small village near Tar'sus in Cili'cia.

[1] A celebrated city in the north of Italy.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the character of Constantine the Great?
2. Did any evil result from the employment of spies?
3. In what manner were the sons of Constantine educated?
4. What conspiracy was formed against part of the imperial family?
5. Did any of the Flavian family escape from the massacre?
6. How was the empire divided between the sons of Constantine?
7. Was there any thing remarkable in the birth of Sapor?
8. How did the king of Persia behave in the Arabian war?
9. What were the chief events in the war between Sapor and Constantius?
10. How were Sapor and Constantius forced to make peace?
11. What was the fate of the younger Constantine?
12. By whom was Constans dethroned?
13. What parties embraced the cause of Vetranio?
14. How did Constantius treat the Illyrian general?
15. Was Magnentius deserted by any of his forces?
16. What were the circumstances of the battle of Mursa?
17. What important results were occasioned by this great battle?
18. Who was the prime minister of Constantius?
19. Whom did the emperor select as an associate?
20. How was Gallus brought to an untimely end?
21. Were was Julian educated?
22. Did Constantius visit Rome?
23. How did Julian conduct himself in Gaul?
24. What led to the war between Julian and Constantius?

SECTION II.

To him, as to the bursting levin,
Brief, bright, resistless course was given;
Till burst the bolt on yonder shore,
Burn'd, blaz'd, destroy'd—and was no more. SCOTT.

1. Delu'sive, *a.* causing deception. Expa'tiates, *v.* dwells upon.
8. Dismem'berment, *s.* separation of a whole into parts.
11. A'rius, *s.* a heretic teacher, who denied the doctrine of the Trinity.
15. Rup'tured, *v.* burst.
22. Exu'berant, *a.* too abundant, excessive.
28. Impe'ded, *part.* hindered.
29. Alter'nate, *a.* changing from one to the other.

1. JULIAN was in his thirty-second year when by the death of his cousin he became undisputed sovereign of the Roman empire; his worst error was his apostasy from Christianity; he hated the religion which he had deserted, and laboured strenuously to substitute in its place an idle system which combined the most rational part of the

old heathen system with the *delusive* philosophy of the schools. Vanity was his besetting sin; he chose to be considered a philosopher rather than a sovereign, and to acquire that title he thought fit to reject the decencies of this life, and the best guide to that which is to come. A treatise is extant from Julian's pen, in which he *expatiates* with singular complacency on the filth of his beard, the length of his nails, and the inky blackness of his hands, as if cleanliness was inconsistent with the philosophic character! In every other respect, the conduct of Julian merits high praise; he was just, merciful, and tolerant; though frequently urged to become a persecutor, he allowed his subjects that freedom of opinion which he claimed for himself, unlike Constan'tius, who, having embraced the Arian heresy, treated his Catholic subjects with the utmost severity. 2. But though Julian would not inflict punishment for a difference of opinion, he enacted several disqualifying laws, by which he laboured to deprive the Christians of wealth, of knowledge, and of power; he ordered their schools to be closed, and he jealously excluded them from all civil and military offices. 3. To destroy the effects of that prophecy in the Gospel to which Christians may appeal as a standing miracle in proof of revelation,—the condition of the Jews,—Julian determined to rebuild the temple of Jerusalem, and restore the children of Israel to the land of their fathers. Historians worthy of credit inform us that his plan was defeated by a direct miraculous interposition, and there are few historical facts supported by more decisive testimony; but even if the miracle be denied, the prophecy must be considered as having received decisive confirmation from the acknowledged fact that the emperor entertained such a design, and was unable to effect its accomplishment. 4. The mutual hatred of the Pagans and Christians would probably have rekindled the flames of civil war, had not Julian fallen in an expedition against the Persians. 5. The emperor triumphantly advanced through the dominions of Sa'por as far as the Ti'gris; but the Asiatics, though defeated in the field, adopted means of defence more terrible to an invader than arms. They laid waste the country, destroyed the villages, and burned the crops in the Roman line of march; a burning sun weakened the powers of the western veterans, and when famine was added to the severity of the climate, their suffering became intolerable.

6. With a heavy heart Julian at last gave orders to commence a retreat, and led his exhausted soldiers back over the desert plains which they had already passed with so much difficulty. The retrograde march was terribly harassed by the light cavalry of the Persians, a species of troops peculiarly fitted for desultory warfare. The difficulties of the Romans increased at every step, and the harassing attacks of their pursuers became more frequent and more formidable; at length, in a skirmish which almost deserved the name of a battle, Julian was mortally wounded, and with his loss the Romans dearly purchased a doubtful victory.

7. In the doubt and dismay which followed the death of Ju'lian, a few voices saluted Jo'vian, the first of the imperial domestics, with the title of emperor, and the army ratified the choice. The new sovereign successfully repelled some fresh attacks of the Persians, but despairing of final success, he entered into a treaty with Sa'por, and purchased a peace, or rather a long truce of thirty years, by the cession of several frontier provinces. 8. The first care of Jo'vian was to fulfil the stipulated articles; the Roman garrisons and colonies, so long settled in the frontier towns that they esteemed them as their native soil, were withdrawn; and the Romans beheld with regret the omen of their final destruction in the first *dismemberment* of the empire. The first edict in the new reign contained a repeal of Julian's disqualifying laws, and a grant of universal toleration. This judicious measure at once showed how ineffectual had been the efforts of the late emperor to revive the fallen spirit of paganism; the temples were immediately deserted, the sacrifices neglected, the priests left alone at their altars; those who, to gratify the former sovereign, assumed the dress and title of philosophers, were assailed by such storms of ridicule, that they laid aside the designation, shaved their beards, and were soon undistinguished in the general mass of society. 9. Jo'vian did not long survive this peaceful triumph of Christianity; after a reign of eight months, he was found dead in his bed, having been suffocated by the mephitic vapours which a charcoal fire extracted from the fresh plaster on the walls of his apartment.

A.D. 364. 10. During ten days the Roman empire remained without a sovereign, but finally the soldiers elevated to the imperial purple Valentinian, the

son of count Gratian, an officer of distinguished merit. He chose as his associate in the government his brother Valens, whose only claim seems to have rested on fraternal affection; to him he entrusted the rich prefecture of the East, while he himself assumed the administration of the western provinces, and fixed the seat of his government at Milan. 11. Though in other respects cruel, Valentinian was remarkable for maintaining a system of religious toleration; but Valens was far from pursuing such a laudable course. He had imbibed the errors of *Arius*, and bitterly persecuted all who remained faithful to the Catholic doctrines. By this unwise conduct he provoked a formidable rebellion, which was headed by Proco'pius, an able general, whom unjust persecution had stimulated to revolt. 12. The success of the usurper was at first so great, that Va'lens was ready to yield up his throne, but being dissuaded from this inglorious resolution, he entrusted the conduct of the war to the aged prefect Sallust, who had twice refused the imperial diadem. The followers of Proco'pius soon deserted to those leaders, whose names were endeared to their recollections by the remembrance of former glories, and the unfortunate leader, forsaken by all, was made prisoner and delivered to the executioner.

13. In the mean time, Valentin'ian was engaged in a desperate warfare with the German and other barbarous nations, who had recovered from the losses which they had suffered under Ju'lian. On every frontier of the western empire hordes of enemies appeared, eager for plunder, regardless of their own lives, and merciless to those of others. 14. The Picts and Scots rushed from the mountains of Caledo'nia upon the colonies of North Britain, and devastated the country with fire and sword, almost to the walls of London. The task of quelling these incursions was entrusted to the gallant Theodo'sius, and the event proved that Valentinian could not have made a better choice. In the course of two campaigns, the invaders were driven back to their forests, and a Roman fleet sweeping the coasts of Britain, made them tremble for the safety of their own retreats.

15. The success of the emperor against the Saxons, the Franks, the Alleman'ni, [1], the Qua'di, and other tribes

[1] From this powerful tribe Germany is still called, by the French *Allemagne*.

on the Rhine and Danube, was not less conspicuous than that of Theodo'sius in Britain. 16. The Quadi, humbled by a severe defeat, sent ambassadors to deprecate his displeasure; but while Valentin'ian was angrily upbraiding the deputies for their unprovoked hostility, he *ruptured* a blood-vessel, and died almost instantaneously. He was succeeded by his sons Gra'tian and Valentin'ian II.

A.D. 376. 17. A much more important change took place in the eastern world; the first admission of the barbarian tribes into the empire, which they finally destroyed. The nation of the Goths had been from remote ages settled on the banks of the Danube, and were by that river divided into two nations, the Ostrogoths on the east, and the Visigoths on the west. They had for many years enjoyed the blessings of profound peace under the government of their king Herman'ric, when they were suddenly alarmed by the appearance of vast hordes of unknown enemies on their northern and eastern frontiers. These were the Huns, a branch of the great Mongolian race, which, from the earliest time, has possessed the vast and wild plains of Tartary. Terrified by the numbers, the strength, the strange features, and implacable cruelty of such foes, the Goths deserted their country, almost without attempting opposition, and supplicated the emperor Va'lens to grant them a settlement in the waste lands of Thrace. This request was cheerfully granted, and the eastern empire was supposed to be strengthened by the accession of a million of valiant subjects, bound both by interest and gratitude to protect its frontiers. 18. But the avarice of Va'lens and his ministers defeated these expectations: instead of relieving their new subjects, the Roman governors took advantage of their distress to plunder the remains of their shattered fortunes, and to reduce their children to slavery. Maddened by such oppression, the Goths rose in arms, and spread desolation over the fertile plains of Thrace. Va'lens summoned his nephew, Gra'tian, to his assistance; but before the emperor of the west arrived, he imprudently engaged the Goths near Adrianople [1], and with the greater part of his army fell on the field. 19. This was the most disastrous defeat which the Romans had sustained for several centuries; and there was reason to dread that it

[1] The second city in the Turkish empire.

would encourage a revolt of the Gothic slaves in the eastern provinces, which must terminate in the ruin of the empire. To prevent such a catastrophe, the senate of Constantinople ordered a general massacre of these helpless mortals, and their atrocious edict was put into immediate execution. 20. The Goths attempted to besiege both Adrianople and Constantinople, but, ignorant of the art of attacking fortified places, they were easily repelled; but they however succeeded in forcing their way through the Thracian mountains, and spread themselves over the provinces to the west, as far as the Adriatic Sea and the confines of Italy. The march of the emperor Gratian had been delayed by the hostility of the Alleman'ni, whom he subdued in two bloody engagements; but as he advanced towards Adrianople, fame brought the news of his uncle's defeat and death, which he found himself unable to revenge. 21. Feeling that the affairs of the East required the direction of a mind more energetic than his own, he determined to invest with the imperial purple Theodo'sius, the son of that general who had rescued Britain from the barbarians. How great must have been his confidence in the fidelity of his new associate, who had a father's death to revenge; for the elder Theodo'sius, notwithstanding his splendid services, had fallen a victim to the jealous suspicions of the emperor!

22. The reign of Theodo'sius in the East lasted nearly sixteen years, and was marked by a display of unusual vigour and ability. He broke the power of the Goths by many severe defeats, and disunited their leading tribes by crafty negotiations. But the continued drain on the population caused by the late destructive wars, compelled him to recruit his forces among the tribes of the barbarians, and a change was thus made in the character and discipline of the Roman army, which in a later age produced the most calamitous consequences. The *exuberant* zeal, which led him to persecute the Arians and the pagans, occasioned some terrible convulsions, which distracted the empire, and were not quelled without bloodshed. He, however, preserved the integrity of the empire, and not a province was lost during his administration.

23. The valour which Gratian had displayed in the early part of his life, rendered the indolence and luxury to which he abandoned himself after the appointment of Theodo'sius more glaring. The general discontent of the

army induced Max'imus, the governor of Britain, to raise the standard of revolt, and passing over to the continent, he was joined by the greater part of the Gallic legions. When this rebellion broke out, Gratian was enjoying the sports of the field in the neighbourhood of Paris, and did not discover his danger until it was too late to escape. He attempted to save his life by flight, but was overtaken by the emissaries of the usurper, near Lyons [1], and assassinated. 24. Theodo'sius was induced to make peace with Max'imus, on condition that the latter should content himself with the prefecture of Gaul, and should not invade the territories of the younger Valentin'ian. 25. Ambition hurried the faithless usurper to his ruin; having by perfidy obtained possession of the passes of the Alps, he led an overwhelming army into Italy, and Valentin'ian, with his mother Justi'na, were scarcely able, by a hasty flight, to escape to the friendly court of Theodo'sius.

26. The emperor of the East readily embraced the cause of the fugitives; the numerous troops of Barbarian cavalry which he had taken into pay, enabled him to proceed with a celerity which baffled all calculation. 27. Before Max'imus could make any preparations for his reception, Theodo'sius had completely routed his army, and was already at the gates of Aquile'ia, where the usurper had taken refuge. The garrison, secretly disinclined to the cause of Max'imus, made but a faint resistance, the town was taken, and the unfortunate ruler led as a captive into the presence of his conqueror, by whom he was delivered to the executioner.

Theodo'sius, having re-established the authority of the youthful Valentin'ian, returned home. But the emperor of the West did not long enjoy his restored throne; he was murdered by Arbogas'tes, his prime minister, who dreaded that the abilities displayed by the young prince would enable him, when arrived to maturity, to shake off the authority of an unprincipled servant. 28. The assassin was afraid himself to assume the purple, but he procured the election of Euge'nius, a man not wholly unworthy of empire. Theodo'sius was recalled by these events a second time to Italy; he passed the Alps, but found his further progress *impeded* by the judicious disposition which Arbogas'tes had made of his forces. Defeated in his first at-

[1] The second city of France.

tack, Theodo'sius renewed the engagement on the following day, and being aided by the seasonable revolt of some Italian legions, obtained a complete victory. Euge'nius was taken prisoner, and put to death by the soldiers: Arbogas'tes, after wandering some time in the mountains, lost all hope of escape, and terminated his life by suicide.

29. The empire was thus once more reunited under the government of a single sovereign, but he was already stricken by the hand of death. The fatigues of the late campaign proved too much for a constitution already broken by the *alternate* pleasures of the palace and toils of the camp; four months after the defeat of Euge'nius, he died at Milan, universally lamented [1].

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the character of Julian?
2. To what disqualifications did he subject the Christians?
3. How was Julian frustrated in his attempt to weaken the prophetic evidence of Christianity?
4. How was a civil contest between the Pagans and Christians averted?
5. What success had Julian in the Persian invasion?
6. How did Julian die?
7. Who succeeded Julian?
8. What were the most important occurrences in the reign of Jovian?
9. What caused Jovian's death?
10. Who were the successors of Jovian?
11. How did Valens provoke a revolt?
12. By what means was the rebellion of Procopius suppressed?
13. What barbarous nations attacked the Roman empire?
14. In what state was Britain at this period?
15. Over what enemies did the emperor triumph?
16. What occasioned the death of Valentinian?
17. What caused the introduction of the Goths into the Roman empire?
18. How did the imprudence of Valens cause his destruction?
19. What atrocious edict was issued by the senate of Constantinople?
20. How was Gratian prevented from avenging his uncle's death?
21. To whom did Gratian entrust the eastern provinces?
22. How did Theodosius administer the government of the East?

[1] During the reign of Theodosius, the Roman soldiers laid aside defensive armour, which was too heavy for their enervated bodies, and changed the ponderous weapons of the ancient legions for others of a lighter description. The barbarian cavalry adopted the improvements which their degraded conquerors had laid aside, and were henceforth superior in almost every engagement.

23. By whom was Gratian deposed and slain?
24. On what conditions did Theodosius make peace with Maximus.
25. Were these conditions observed?
26. How did the war between Theodosius and Maximus terminate?
27. Did Valentinian long survive his restoration?
28. How did Theodosius act on the news of Valentinian's murder?
29. What caused the death of Theodosius?

CHAPTER XXVI.

SECT. I.

FROM THE DEATH OF THEODOSIUS TO THE SUBVERSION OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE.

"Woe to the lands!" the minstrel sang,
"That hear the northern warrior's clang,
Their bloody doom is seal'd:
With eye of flame, and voice of fear,
He comes, the breaker of the spear,
The scorner of the shield!" ANON.

1. Nom'inal, *a.* existing only in name.
3. Metrop'olis, *s.* a capital city.
5. Prompt'itude, *s.* readiness.
6. Sanc'tuary, *s.* a consecrated place, where it was deemed impious to offer violence to any who sought refuge in it.
10. Sub'sidy, *s.* a grant of money.
13. Capit'ulating, *part.* surrendering on terms.
15. Noto'riety, *s.* the being publicly known.
21. Rack'ed, *part.* tortured on the rack.

1. THE memory of their father's virtues protected the feeble youth of Arca'dius and Hono'rius, the sons of Theodo'sius; by the unanimous consent of mankind, they were saluted emperors of the East and West, and between them was made the final and permanent division of the Roman empire. Though both parts were never reunited under a single ruler, they continued for several centuries to be considered as one empire, and this opinion produced important consequences even in a late period of the middle ages. The dominions of Arca'dius extended from the lower Danube to the confines of Æthiopia and Persia; including Thrace[1], Greece, Asia Minor, Syria, and Egypt. Hono'rius, a youth in his eleventh year, received the *nominal* sovereignty of Italy, Africa, Gaul, Spain, and Britain, with the provinces of No'ricum, Panno'nia, and Dalmatia,

[1] See Introduction, Chapter X.

The great and martial prefecture of Illyr'icum was divided equally between the two princes; the boundary line of whose dominions consequently nearly coincided with that which separates the Austrian states from the Turkish provinces. 2. The Western empire, to the history of which we must now confine ourselves, though equal to the Eastern in extent, wealth, and population, was incomparably weaker, and already appeared rapidly tending to decay. The Caledonians in Britain, and the German tribes on the northern frontiers, harassed the imperial troops by frequent incursions; on the east the Goths were hourly becoming more formidable, and the African provinces were threatened by the Moors. 3. The internal state of the empire furnished little ground for hope that these various enemies could be subdued; the principle of union no longer existed; the proud title of Roman citizen was an empty name; Rome itself had ceased to be the *metropolis*, and was now only protected by the memory of her former greatness.

4. Stil'icho, a general of superior abilities, and a statesman of profound wisdom, acted as the guardian of Hono'rius. He was descended from the perfidious race of the Vandals, and unfortunately possessed, in an eminent degree, the cunning, treachery, and cruelty that characterized his nation. The administration of the Eastern empire was entrusted by Arca'dius to Rufi'nus, who possessed all the bad qualities of Stil'icho, without his redeeming virtues. The ministers of the two empires hated each other most cordially, and each secretly sought to remove his powerful r val; but the superior craft of Stil'icho, and his great influence over the soldiers, made him conquer. 5. He was ordered to lead into the East a fair proportion of the army which Theodo'sius had assembled, and in obedience to the requisition, he marched towards Constantinople, at the head of the Gothic legions. The approach of his great rival with a powerful army alarmed the timid Rufi'nus; he obtained a peremptory edict from Arca'dius, commanding Stil'icho to return to Italy, and the *promptitude* with which the order was obeyed, lulled the Eastern minister into fatal negligence. The troops arrived near Constantinople, under the guidance of Gai'nas, a Gothic leader, and the emperor, accompanied by his minister, came out to welcome and review the soldiers. As Rufi'nus rode along the ranks, endeavouring to conciliate favour by studied courtesy, the wings gradually advanced, and enclosed the devoted victim within

the fatal circle of their arms. Before he was aware of his danger, Gaï'nas gave the signal of death, a soldier rushing forward plunged his sword into his breast, and the bleeding corpse fell at the very feet of the alarmed emperor. 6. His mangled body was treated with shocking indignity, and his wife and daughter would have shared his fate, had they not placed themselves under the protection of religion, and sought refuge in the *sanctuary*. 7. Stil'icho derived no advantage from this crime, which he had planned, but not executed; Arca'dius chose for his new minister Eutro'pius, one of his servants, and Gaï'nas declared himself the determined enemy of his former general. 8. The national hatred between the Greeks and the Romans was excited by the rival ministers, and thus at a moment when union alone would delay ruin, the subjects of Arca'dius and Hono'rius were induced to regard each other not only as foreigners, but as enemies. 9. The revolt of Gil'do, in Africa, under the pretence of transferring his allegiance from the Western to the Eastern empire, was sanctioned by the court of Constantinople. Such an event was peculiarly alarming, as Italy at the time imported most of the corn necessary to the subsistence of the people from the African provinces. The vigour of Stil'icho warded off the danger; he sent a small but veteran army into Africa, before which Gil'do's hosts of unarmed and undisciplined barbarians fled almost without a blow. The usurper was taken and executed; his partisans were persecuted with merciless impolicy.

10. The Goths, who had remained quiet during the reign of the great Theodo'sius, disdained submission to his unwarlike successors; under the pretence that the *subsidy* prudently paid them by the late emperor was withheld, they raised the standard of revolt, and chose for their leader Alaric, the most formidable enemy that the Romans had hitherto encountered. Instead of confining his depredations to the northern provinces, already wasted by frequent incursions, Alaric resolved to invade Greece, where the din of arms had not been heard for centuries. 11. The barbarian encountered little or no resistance; the memorable pass of Thermop'ylæ[1] was abandoned by its garrison; Athens purchased inglorious safety by the sacrifice of the greater part of its wealth; the Corinthian isthmus was un-

[1] See Pinnock's Grecian History.

defended, and the Goths ravaged without opposition the entire Peloponne'sus. Unable to protect themselves, the Greeks sought the aid of Stil'icho, and that great leader soon sailed to their assistance: he inflicted a severe defeat on the Goths, but neglected to improve his advantages, and before he could retrieve his error, news arrived that the faithless court of Constantinople had concluded a treaty of peace with Alaric. Stil'icho, of course, returned to Italy; while the Eastern emperor, with incomprehensible folly, nominated the Gothic leader master-general of eastern Illyr'icum.

12. Italy soon excited the ambition and cupidity of Alaric; he determined to invade that country, and after surmounting all impediments, appeared with his forces before the imperial city of Milan. The feeble Hono'rius would have fled with his effeminate court into some remote corner of Gaul, had not the indignant remonstrances of Stil'icho induced him to remain, until he could assemble forces sufficient to protect the empire. For this purpose the brave general hurried into Gaul, assembled the garrisons from the frontier towns, recalled a legion from Britain, and strengthened his forces by taking several German tribes into pay. 13. But before Stil'icho could return, the empire had been brought to the very brink of ruin; Hono'rius, affrighted by the approach of the Goths, fled from Milan to As'ta, and was there closely besieged. When the town was on the point of *capitulating*, the emperor was saved by the opportune arrival of Stil'icho, before whom Alaric retired. He was closely pursued, and the armies of the Romans and Barbarians came to an engagement nearly on the same ground where Marius had so many years before defeated the Cimbri. 14. The Goths were completely beaten, and a second victory obtained over them near Vero'na seemed to ensure the deliverance of Italy; but Al'aric was still formidable, and the favourable terms granted him by Stil'icho proved, that in the opinion of that general, the Gothic king, though defeated, was unconquered [1].

15. The late invasion so alarmed the timid Hono'rius, that he resolved to fix his residence in some remote and strong fortress, and for this purpose he selected Raven'na [2],

[1] See Chapter XXVII.

[2] Raven'na is a town in Italy, on the Adria'tic Sea; and though but a poor place, it was formerly remarkable for its strength and beauty; but particularly for its noble harbour, which was capable of containing

an ancient city, but which had not previously obtained *notoriety*. 16. Before Italy had recovered from the terrors of the Gothic invasion, a new host of Barbarians rushed from the shores of the Baltic, bore down before them all opposition in Germany and Gaul; and had passed the Alps, the Po, and the Apennines, ere an army could be assembled to resist them. 17. Radagai'sus, the leader of these hordes, was a more formidable enemy even than Al'aric; the Goths had embraced Christianity, and their fierce passions were in some degree moderated by the mild precepts of the Gospel; but Radagai'sus was a stranger to any religion but the cruel creed of his fathers, which taught that the favour of the gods could only be propitiated by human sacrifices. 18. The wealthy city of Florence was besieged by the Barbarians; but its bishop, St. Ambrose, by his zealous exhortations, and by holding out the hope of divine assistance, prevented the garrison from yielding to despair. Stil'icho a second time earned the title of the Deliverer of Italy: Radagai'sus was defeated and slain; but the remains of his forces escaped into Gaul, and spread desolation over that entire province, from which the garrisons had been withdrawn for the defence of Italy. 19. An usurper, named Constantine, about this time appeared in Britain, and soon established his authority both in Gaul and Spain, which had been virtually deserted by the emperor. Al'aric offered his services to repress the rebellion, and to purchase either his assistance or his forbearance; a large subsidy was voted to him by the senate, through the influence of Stil'icho. 20. But the reign of this great man was drawing fast to a close: Olym'pius, a miserable favourite, who owed his first elevation to Stil'icho, filled the emperor's mind with suspicion, and a secret resolution to destroy the minister was adopted. 21. By exciting the jealousy of the legions against the auxiliary forces that Stil'icho employed, Olym'pius was enabled to gain the army to his side, and the last great supporter of the Roman name fell by the swords of those soldiers whom he had so often led to victory. His friends, including the best and bravest generals of the army, shared his fate; many of them were *racked*, to extort from them a confession of a conspiracy which never existed; and their

250 ships. The sea appears to have gradually retreated, as Raven'na is now four miles from it, and surrounded with swamps and marshes.

silence under the tortures at once proved their own innocence and that of their leader.

Questions for Examination.

1. What division was made of the Roman empire between the sons of Theodosius?
2. By what enemies was the western empire assailed?
3. What was the internal condition of the state?
4. To what ministers did the emperors trust the administration?
5. How did Stilicho prevail over Rufinus?
6. What instances of savage cruelty were exhibited by the murderers of Rufinus?
7. Did Stilicho derive any advantage from the death of his rival?
8. What rivalry broke out between the subjects of the eastern and western empire?
9. How did the revolt of Gildo in Africa end?
10. Why did the Goths attack the eastern empire?
11. How did the Gothic invasion of Greece end?
12. Did the western emperor display any courage when Italy was invaded?
13. How was Honorius saved from ruin?
14. Was this defeat destructive of the Gothic power?
15. Where did Honorius fix the seat of his government?
16. What new hordes invaded Italy?
17. Why were the northern barbarians more formidable than the Goths?
18. How was Florence saved?
19. On what occasion was a subsidy voted to Alaric?
20. Who conspired against Stilicho?
21. In what manner was Stilicho slain?

SECTION II.

Oh! where are now the dreams of fame,
The promise of a deathless name?
Alas! the deep delusion's gone!
And all, except the mouldering stone.
The wreath that deck'd the victor's hair,
Hath, like his glory, wither'd there,
And Time's immortal garlands twine
O'er desolation's mournful shrine,
Like youth's embrace around decline. MALCOLM.

7. Ruth'less, *a.* cruel, void of pity.
9. Pre'mature, *a.* occurring before the ordinary natural time.
16. Dow'ry, *s.* marriage portion.
17. Invei'gled, *v.* enticed by false representations.
19. Coin'cidence, *s.* the concurrence in time of two events, not necessarily connected.
25. Obse'quious, *a.* slavishly obedient.
30. Mos'lem, *a.* professing the religion of Mohammed.

1. AL'ARIC, posted on the confines of Italy, watched the

distractions of the peninsula with secret joy; he had been unwisely irritated by the delay of the subsidy which had formerly been promised him, and when payment was finally refused, he once more led his followers into Italy. 2. The A.D. 408. feeble successors of Stil'icho had made no preparations for resistance; they retired with their master into the fortress of Raven'na, while the Goths, spreading ruin in their march, advanced to the very walls of Rome. Six hundred years had now elapsed since an enemy had appeared to threaten the ETERNAL CITY; a worse foe than Hannibal was now at their gates, and the citizens were more disabled by luxury from attempting a defence, than their ancestors had been by the carnage of Can'næ [1]. 3. The strength of the walls deterred the Goth from attempting a regular siege, but he subjected the city to a strict blockade. Famine and its usual attendant, pestilence, soon began to waste the miserable Romans; but even the extreme of misery could not induce them to sally forth, and try their fortune in the field. They purchased the retreat of Al'aric by the sacrifice of their wealth; and the victorious Goth formed his winter quarters in Tuscany, where his army was reinforced by more than forty thousand of his countrymen who had been enslaved by the Romans.

4. The presence of a victorious leader, with one hundred thousand men, in the very centre of Italy, ought to have taught the imperial court at Raven'na prudence and moderation; but such was their incredible folly, that they not only violated their engagements with Al'aric, but added personal insult to injury. Rome was once more besieged, and as Al'aric had seized the provisions at Os'tia, on which the citizens depended for subsistence, the Romans were forced to surrender at discretion. 5. At the instigation of the Gothic king, At'talus, the prefect of the city, was invested with the imperial purple, and measures were taken to compel Hono'rius to resign in his favour. But At'talus proved utterly unworthy of a throne, and after a brief reign was publicly degraded; the rest of his life was passed in obscurity under the protection of the Goths. 6. A favourable opportunity of effecting peace was now offered, but it was again insolently rejected by the wretched Hono'rius, and a herald publicly proclaimed that in consequence of the

[1] See Chapter XV. Sect. ii.

guilt of Al'aric, he was for ever excluded from the friendship and alliance of the emperor.

7. For the third time Al'aric proceeded to revenge the insults of the emperor on the unfortunate city of Rome. The trembling senate made some preparations for defence, but they were rendered ineffectual by the treachery of a slave, who betrayed one of the gates to the Gothic legions. That city, which had been for ages the mistress of the world, became the prey of *ruthless* barbarians, who spared, indeed, the churches and sanctuaries, but placed no other bound to their savage passions. For six successive days the Goths revelled in the sack of the city; at the end of that period they followed Al'aric to new conquests and new devastations. 8. The entire south of Italy rapidly followed the fate of the capital, and Al'aric determined to add Sicily to the list of his triumphs. Before, however, his army could pass the Strait, he was seized with an incurable disease, and his *premature* death protracted for a season the existence of the Western empire[1]. 9. Al'aric was succeeded by his brother Adol'phus, who immediately commenced negotiations for a treaty; the peace was cemented by a marriage between the Gothic king and Placid'ia, the sister of the emperor. The army of the invaders evacuated Italy, and Adol'phus, leading his soldiers into Spain, founded the kingdom of the Visigoths. 10. Adol'phus did not long survive his triumphs, Placid'ia returned to her brother's court; and was persuaded to bestow her hand on Constan'tius, the general who had suppressed the rebellion of Con'stantine. Britain, Spain, and part of Gaul, had been now irrecoverably lost; Constan'tius, whose abilities might have checked the progress of ruin, died, after the birth of his second child, Placid'ia retired to the court of Constantinople, and at length Hono'rius, after a disgraceful reign of twenty-eight years, terminated his wretched life.

11. The next heir to the throne was Valentin'ian, the

[1] The ferocious character of the barbarians was displayed in the funeral of their chief. The unhappy captives were compelled to divert the stream of the river Busenti'nus, which washed the walls of Consen'tia (now Cosenza, in farther Cala'bria, Italy), in the bed of which the royal sepulchre was formed: with the body were deposited much of the wealth, and many of the trophies obtained at Rome. The river was then permitted to return to its accustomed channel, and the prisoners employed in the work were inhumanly massacred, to conceal the spot in which the deceased hero was entombed.

son of Placid'ia, but John, the late emperor's secretary, took advantage of Placid'ia's absence in the East to seize on the government. The court of Constantinople promptly sent a body of troops against the usurper, and John was surprised and taken prisoner in Raven'na. 12. Valentinian III., then in the sixth year of his age, was proclaimed emperor, and the regency entrusted to his mother, Placid'ia. The two best generals of the age, Æ'tius and Boni'face, were at the head of the army, but, unfortunately, their mutual jealousies led them to involve the empire in civil war. 13. Boni'face was recalled from the government of Africa through the intrigues of his rival, and when he hesitated to comply, was proclaimed a traitor. Unfortunately the African prefect, unable to depend on his own forces, invited the Vandals to his assistance. Gen'seric, the king of that nation, passed over from Spain, which his barbarous forces had already wasted, and the African provinces were now subjected to the same calamities that afflicted the rest of the empire. 14. Boni'face became too late sensible of his error; he attempted to check the progress of the Vandals, but was defeated, and Africa was finally wrested from the empire. He returned to Italy, and was pardoned by Placid'ia, but the jealous Æ'tius led an army to drive his rival from the court: a battle ensued in which Æ'tius was defeated, but Boni'face died in the arms of victory. Placid'ia was at first determined to punish Æ'tius as a rebel; but his power was too formidable, and his abilities too necessary in the new dangers that threatened the empire; he was not only pardoned, but invested with more than his former authority.

15. The hordes of Huns that had seized on the ancient territory of the Goths, had now become united under the ferocious At'tila, whose devastations procured him the formidable designation of "The Scourge of God." The Eastern empire, unable to protect itself from his ravages, purchased peace by the payment of a yearly tribute, and he directed his forces against the western provinces, which promised richer plunder. He was instigated also by secret letters from the princess Hono'ria, the sister of the emperor, who solicited a matrimonial alliance with the barbarous chieftain. Æ'tius, being supported by the king of the Goths, and some other auxiliary forces, attacked the Huns in the Catalaunian plains, near the modern city of Chalons in France. 16. After a fierce engagement the

Huns were routed, and it was not without great difficulty that At'tila effected his retreat. The following year he invaded Italy with more success; peace, however, was purchased by bestowing on him the hand of the princess Hono'ria, with an immense *dowry*. Before the marriage could be consummated, At'tila was found dead in his bed, having burst a blood-vessel during the night.

17. The brave Æ'tius was badly rewarded by the wretched emperor for his eminent services; Valentinian yielding to his cowardly suspicions, assassinated the general with his own hand. This crime was followed by another; Max'imus, an eminent senator, had a wife whose beauty was only equalled by her virtue; the licentious emperor artfully *inveigled* this noble lady into his palace, and, by force, made her the victim of his licentious passions. 18. The injured husband, eager for revenge, joined in a conspiracy with the friends of Æ'tius; they attacked the emperor publicly in the midst of his guards, and slew him.

19. The twenty years which intervened between the assassination of Valentinian, and the final destruction of the Western empire, were nearly one continued series of intestine revolutions. 20. Even in the age of Cicero, when the empire of Rome seemed likely to last for ever, it was stated by the augurs that the *twelve vultures* seen by Romulus [1], represented the *twelve centuries* assigned for the fatal period of the city. This strange prediction, forgotten in ages of peace and prosperity, was recalled to the minds of men when events, at the close of the twelfth century, showed that the prophecy was about to be accomplished. It is not, of course, our meaning that the ominous flight of birds, the prophetic interpretation, and its almost literal fulfilment, were any thing more than an accidental *coincidence*, but it must be confessed, that it was one of the most remarkable on record.

21. Max'imus succeeded to the imperial throne, and found that the first day of his reign was the last of his happiness. On the death of his wife, whose wrongs he had so severely revenged, he endeavoured to compel Eudox'ia, the widow of the murdered emperor, to become his spouse. In her indignation at this insulting proposal, Eudox'ia did not hesitate to apply for aid to Gen'seric, king of those Vandals that had seized Africa, and the bar-

[1] See Chapter I.

barian king, glad of such a fair pretence, soon appeared with a powerful fleet in the Tiber. 22. Max'imus was murdered in an insurrection, occasioned by these tidings; and Gen'seric, advancing to Rome, became master of the city, which was for fourteen days pillaged by the Moors and Vandals. Eudox'ia had reason to lament her imprudent conduct; she was carried off a captive by the ferocious Vandal, along with her two daughters, the last of the family of the great Theodo'sius, and many thousand Romans were at the same time dragged into slavery.

23. The army in Gaul saluted their general, Avi'tus, emperor, and the Roman senate and people at first acquiesced in the choice. But Avi'tus was soon found unfit to hold the reins of power at a time of so much danger and difficulty; the senate, influenced by Ri'cimer, the commander of the barbarian auxiliaries, voted his deposition. He died shortly after; whether by disease or violence is uncertain.

24. The powerful Ri'cimer now placed upon the throne Ju'lian Majo'rian, who united in an eminent degree the qualities of a brave soldier and a wise statesman. The coasts of Italy had long been wasted by Gen'seric, king of the Vandals, and in order to put an end to their incursions, the emperor determined to attack the pirates in Africa, the seat of their power. The judicious preparations which he made were disconcerted by treason; Ri'cimer, who had hoped to rule the empire while Majo'rian enjoyed the empty title of monarch, was disappointed by the abilities which the new emperor displayed. Some of his creatures betrayed the Roman fleet to the torches of the Vandals; and Ri'cimer took advantage of the popular discontent occasioned by this disaster, to procure the dethronement of his former friend. Majo'rian died five days after his deposition, and the humble tomb which covered his remains was consecrated by the respect and gratitude of succeeding generations.

25. Ri'cimer's next choice was more prudent; at his instigation the *obsequious* senate raised to the throne Lib'ius Sev'erus, of whom history records little more than his elevation, and his death, which occurred in the fifth year after his election. During the nominal reign of Sev'erus and the interregnum that followed, the entire power of the state was possessed by Ri'cimer, whom barbarian descent alone prevented from being acknowledged emperor. He

was unable, however, to protect Italy from the devastations of the Vandals; and to obtain the aid of Le'o, the Eastern emperor, he was forced to acknowledge Anthe'mius, who was nominated to the throne of the West by the court of Constantinople.

26. The perfidious Ri'cimer soon became dissatisfied with Anthe'mius, and raised the standard of revolt. Marching to Rome he easily became master of the city, and Anthe'mius was slain in the tumult. The unhappy Romans were again subjected to all the miseries that military licentiousness could inflict; for forty days Ri'cimer exulted in the havoc and ruin of the imperial city, but a disease, occasioned by excessive intemperance, seized on his vitals, and death freed Rome from the tyrant.

27. Olyb'ius, the successor of Anthe'mius, dying after a short reign of three months, Glyce'rius, an obscure soldier, assumed the purple at Ravenna, but was soon dethroned by Ju'lius Ne'pos, whom the court of Constantinople supported. A treaty, by which the most faithful provinces of Gaul were yielded to the Visigoths, produced so much popular discontent, that Ores'tes, a general of barbarian auxiliaries, was encouraged to revolt, and Ne'pos, unable to defend the throne, abdicated, and spent the remainder of his unhonoured life in obscurity.

28. Ores'tes placed the crown on the head of his son Rom'ulus Momyl'lus, better known in history by the name of Augus'tulus. He was the last of the emperors; before he had enjoyed his elevation many months, he was dethroned by Odoa'cer, a leader of the barbarian troops, and banished to a villa, that once belonged to the wealthy Lucul'lus, where he was supported by a pension allowed him by the conqueror[1]. 29. Odoa'cer assumed the title A.D. of king of Italy; but after a reign of fourteen 476. years, he was forced to yield to the superior genius of Theod'oric, king of the Ostrogoths, under whose prudent government Italy enjoyed the blessings of peace and prosperity, to which the country had been long a stranger.

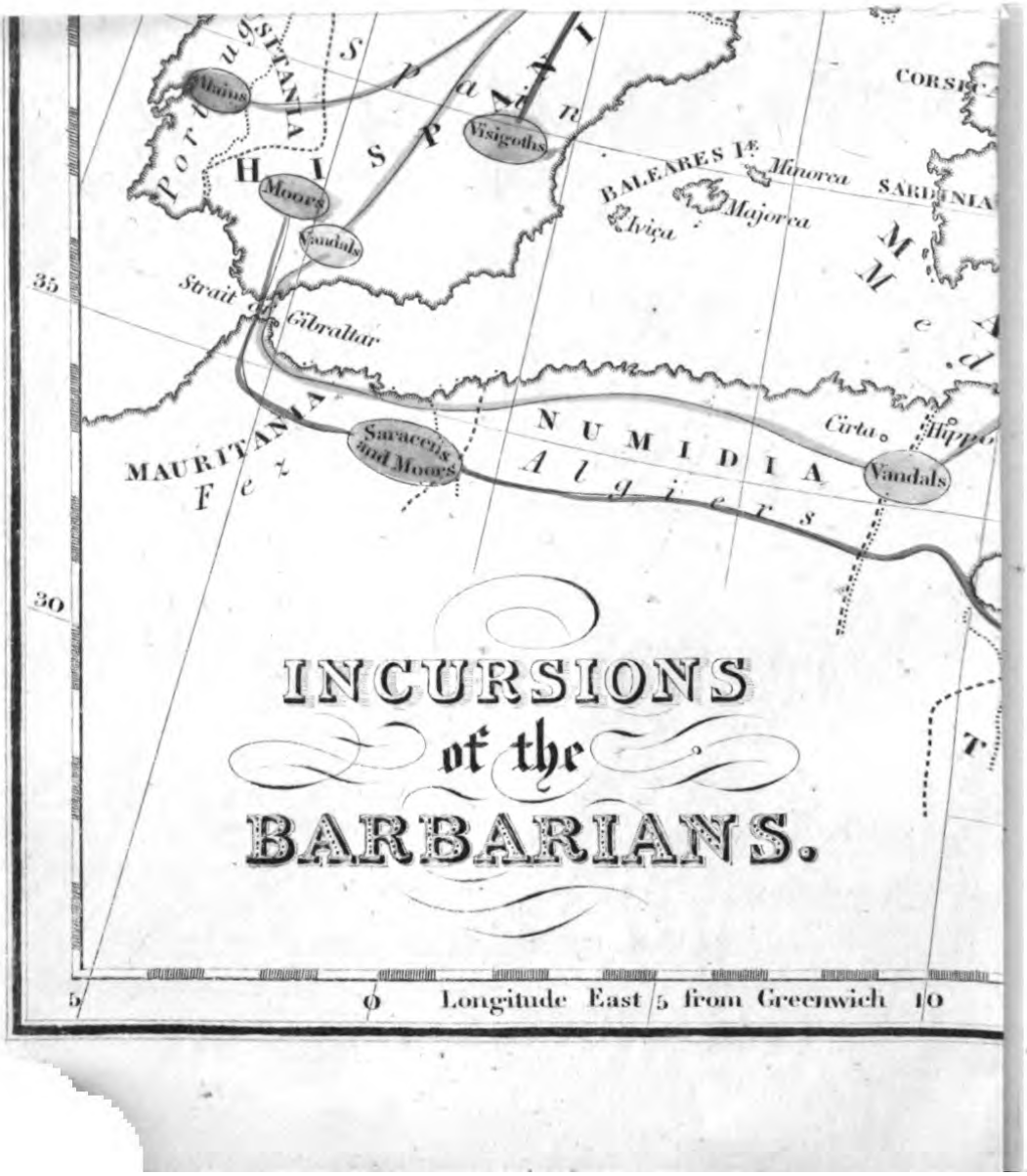
30. Thus finally fell the Roman empire of the West, while that of the East survived a thousand years, notwithstanding its fierce internal dissensions, which alone would have sufficed to destroy any other; and the host of bar-

[1] See Chapter XXVII.

barians by which it was assailed. The almost impregnable situation of its capital, whose fate usually decides that of such empires, joined to its despotism, which gave unity to the little strength it retained, can alone explain a phenomenon unparalleled in the annals of history. At length, on the 29th of May, 1453, Constantinople was taken by Mohammed the Second, and the government and religion established by the great Con'stantine trampled in the dust by the *Moslem* conquerors.

Questions for Examination.

1. What induced Alaric to invade Italy a second time?
2. Did the emperor and his ministers make adequate preparations for resistance?
3. How was Alaric induced to raise the siege of Rome?
4. Why did Alaric besiege Rome a second time?
5. Whom did the Goths make emperor?
6. What favourable opportunity of making peace did Honorius lose?
7. By what means did the Goths become masters of Rome?
8. Where did Alaric die?
9. What events marked the reign of Adolphus?
10. What remarkable persons died nearly at the same time?
11. What was the fate of the usurper John?
12. To whom was the government entrusted during Valentinian's minority?
13. By whom were the Vandals invited to Africa?
14. What was the fate of Boniface?
15. How were the Huns instigated to invade Italy?
16. Under what circumstances did Attila die?
17. Of what great crimes was Valentinian III. guilty?
18. How was Valentinian slain?
19, 20. What strange prophecy was now about to be fulfilled?
21. What terminated the brief reign of Maximus?
22. Had Eudoxia reason to lament her invitation to the Vandals?
23. Why was the emperor Avitus dethroned?
24. How did Ricimer procure the deposition of Majorian?
25. What changes followed on the death of Majorian?
26. How did Ricimer terminate his destructive career?
27. What changes took place after the death of Anthemius?
28. Who was the last Roman emperor?
29. What kingdoms were founded on the ruins of the Western empire?
30. How was the existence of the Eastern empire prolonged?


Suevi
Alains
Visigoths
Moors
Vandals
HISPANIA
Portugal
BALEARES Ie.
Minorca
Majorca
Iviça
SARDINIA
CORSICA
Strait of Gibraltar
35
30
MAURITANIA
Fez
Saracens and Moors
NUMIDIA
Algiers
Vandals
Cirta
Hippo
INCURSIONS of the BARBARIANS.
5
0
Longitude East 5 from Greenwich 10

CHAPTER XXVII.

HISTORICAL NOTICES OF THE DIFFERENT BARBAROUS TRIBES THAT AIDED IN DESTROYING THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

Lo! from the frozen forests of the north,
The sons of slaughter pour in myriads forth!
Who shall awake the mighty?—Will thy woe,
City of thrones, disturb the world below?
Call on the dead to hear thee! let thy cries
Summon their shadowy legions to arise,
Array the ghosts of conquerors on thy walls!
Barbarians revel in their ancient halls!
And their lost children bend the subject knee,
'Midst the proud tombs and trophies of the free! ANON.

2. Toc'sin, *s.* an alarm-bell, metaphorically, a signal of war.
4. Confed'erate, *a.* joined in alliance.
13. Vacat'ed, *part.* left vacant, deserted.
17. Migrat'ed, *part.* removed from.
24. Mercen'aries, *s.* foreign soldiers, serving only for pay.

1. WE have already mentioned that the barbarous nations which joined in the destruction of the Roman empire, were invited to come within its precincts through the weakness or folly of successive sovereigns, who recruited their armies from those hardy tribes, in preference to their own subjects, enervated by luxury and indolence. The grants of land, and the rich donations by which the emperors endeavoured to secure the fidelity of these dangerous auxiliaries, encouraged them to regard the Roman territories as their prey; and being alternately the objects of lavish extravagance and wanton insult, their power was increased at the same time that their resentment was provoked. 2. Towards the close of the year 406, the Vandals, the Sue'vi, and the Alans, first sounded the *tocsin* of invasion, and their example was followed by the Goths, the Burgundians, the Alleman'ni, the Franks, the Huns, the Angli, the Saxons, the Her'uli, and the Longobar'di, or Lombards. The chief of these nations, with the exception of the Huns, were of German origin. It is not easy in every instance to discover the original seat of these several tribes, and trace their successive migrations, because, being ignorant of letters, they only retained some vague traditions of their wanderings.

THE VANDALS AND ALANS.

3. This tribe was, like the Burgundians and Lombards, a

branch of the ancient Sue'vi, and inhabited that part of Germany which lies between the Elbe and the Vis'tula. Being joined by some warriors from Scandinavia, they advanced towards the south, and established themselves in that part of Da'cia which included the modern province of Transylva'nia, and part of Hungary. Being oppressed in their new settlement by the Goths, they sought the protection of Con'stantine the Great, and obtained from him a grant of lands in Pannonia, on condition of their rendering military service to the Romans. 4. About the commencement of the fifth century, they were joined by the ALANS, a people originally from Mount Cau'casus, and the ancient Scythia; a branch of which having settled in Sarma'tia, near the source of the Borys'thenes (*Dnieper*), had advanced as far as the Danube, and there made a formidable stand against the Romans. In their passage through Germany, the Vandals and Alans were joined by a portion of the Sue'vi, and the *confederate* tribes entering Gaul, spread desolation over the entire country. 5. From thence the barbarians passed into Spain, and settled in the province, from them named Vandalu'sia, since corrupted to Andalusia. On the invitation of Count Boniface, the Vandals proceeded from Spain to Africa, where they founded a formidable empire. After remaining masters of the western Mediterranean for nearly a century, the eastern emperor Justinian sent a formidable force against them under the command of the celebrated Belisa'rius. This great leader not only destroyed the power of these pirates, but erased the very name of Vandals from the list of nations.

THE GOTHS.

6. The Goths, the most powerful of these destructive nations, are said to have come originally from Scandina'via; but when they first began to attract the notice of historians, we find them settled on the banks of the Danube. Those who inhabited the districts towards the east, and the Euxine Sea, between the Ty'ras (*Dniester*), the Borys'thenes (*Dnieper*), and the Tan'ais (*Don*), were called Ostrogoths; the Visigoths extended westwards over ancient Da'cia, and the regions between the Ty'ras the Danube, and the Vistula. 7. Attacked in these vast countries by the Huns, as has been mentioned in a preceding chapter, some were subjugated, and others compelled to abandon

their habitations. They obtained settlements from the emperors, but being unwisely provoked to revolt, they became the most formidable enemies of the Romans. After having twice ravaged Italy and plundered Rome, they ended their conquests by establishing themselves in Gaul and Spain.

8. The Spanish monarchy of the Visigoths, which in its flourishing state comprised, besides the entire peninsula, the province of Septima'nia (*Languedoc*) in Gaul, and Maurita'nia, Tingeta'na (*north-western Africa*), on the opposite coasts of the Mediterranean, lasted from the middle of the fifth to the commencement of the eighth century, when it was overthrown by the Moors. 9. The Thuringians, whom we find established in the heart of Germany, in the middle of the fifth century, appear to have been a branch of the Visigoths.

THE FRANKS.

10. A number of petty German tribes having entered into a confederacy to maintain their mutual independence, took the name of Franks, or Freemen. The tribes which thus associated, principally inhabited the districts lying between the Rhine and Weser, including the greater part of Holland and Westphalia. 11. In the middle of the third century, they invaded Gaul, but were defeated by Aurelian, who afterwards became emperor. In the fourth, and towards the beginning of the fifth century, they permanently established themselves as a nation, and gave the name of *Francia*, or *France*[1], to the provinces lying between the Rhine, the Weser, the Maine, and the Elbe; but about the sixth century that name was transferred to ancient Gaul, when it was conquered by the Franks.

THE ALLEMANNI.

12. The Alleman'ni were another confederation of German tribes, which took its name from including a great variety of nations. It is scarcely necessary to remark, that the name is compounded of the words *all* and *man*, which still continue unchanged in our language. Their territories extended between the Danube, the Rhine, and the Maine, and they rendered themselves formidable to the Romans by their frequent inroads into Gaul and Italy during the third and fourth centuries.

[1] See below.

THE SAXONS AND ANGLES.

13. The Saxons began to be conspicuous about the close of the second century. They were then settled beyond the Elbe, in modern Holstein; having for their neighbours the ANGELI, or ANGLES, inhabiting Sleswick. These nations were early distinguished as pirates, and their plundering expeditions kept the shores of western Europe in constant alarm. Being invited by the Britons to assist in repelling the invasions of the Picts, they subdued the southern part of the island, which has ever since retained the name of England, from its conquerors the An'gli. When the Franks penetrated into Gaul, the Saxons passed the Elbe, and seizing on the *vacated* territory, gave the name of Saxony to ancient France.

THE HUNS.

14. The Huns were the most ferocious and sanguinary of the barbarians. They seem to have been originally Kalmuck or Mongolian Tartars, and, during the period of their supremacy, seem never to have laid aside the savage customs which they brought from their native deserts. 15. After having expelled the Goths from the banks of the Danube, they fell upon the Eastern empire, and compelled the court of Constantinople to pay them tribute. They then, under the guidance of Attila, invaded Italy, and after devastating the peninsula, captured and plundered Rome. After the death of Attila, the Huns were broken up into a number of petty states, which maintained their independence until the close of the eighth century, when they were subdued by Charlemagne.

THE BURGUNDIANS.

16. The Burgundians were originally inhabitants of the countries situated between the Oder and the Vistula. They followed nearly the track of the Visigoths, and at the beginning of the fifth century had established themselves on the Upper Rhine and in Switzerland. On the dissolution of the empire, they seized on that part of Gaul, which from them retains the name of Burgundy.

THE LOMBARDS, THE GEPIDÆ, AND THE AVARS.

17. The Lombards, more properly called Longo-bardi, from the length of their *bards* or spears, are supposed

by some to have been a branch of the Sue'vi, and by others to have *migrated* from Scandina'via. They joined with the Avars, a fierce Asiatic people, in attacking the Gep'idæ, then in possession of that part of Dacia lying on the left bank of the Danube, but who are supposed to have come thither from some more northern country. The Avars and Lombards triumphed, but the former soon turned their arms against their allies, and compelled them to seek new habitations. 18. About the middle of the sixth century they invaded Italy, which the Eastern emperors had just before wrested from the Turks, and made themselves masters of the northern part, which has since borne the name of Lombardy.

THE SLA'VI.

19. These were the last of the barbarian hordes, and are not mentioned by any author before the sixth century. They first appeared in the east of Europe, and spreading themselves over the central provinces, occupied the greater part of the countries that now constitute the dominions of Austria. The Sla'vi warred chiefly against the Eastern empire, and their contest with the Grecian forces on the Danube, in the sixth and seventh centuries, shook the throne of Constantinople. The VENE'DI and the AN'TES were tribes of the Sla'vi.

THE NORMANS.

20. The piratical inhabitants of Norway and Denmark were called by the Franks, Normans, or, Men of the North; in Ireland they were named, Ostmen, or, Men of the East. Their depredations began to attract notice early in the seventh century, but did not become formidable before the ninth, when they obtained possession of that part of France now called Normandy. In the two following centuries they wrested England from the Saxons, and established kingdoms in Sicily and southern Italy.

THE BULGARIANS.

21. The Bulgarians were of Scythian or Tartar origin, and became formidable to the Eastern empire in the latter part of the seventh century. In the beginning of the ninth, Cruni'nus, their king, advanced to the gates of Constantinople, but the city proving too strong, he

seized Adrianople, and returned home loaded with booty. The successors of Cruni'nus did not inherit his abilities, and the Bulgarians soon sunk into comparative insignificance.

THE SARACENS, MOORS, AND TURKS.

22. In concluding this chapter, it may be proper to give some account of the subverters of the Eastern empire, and of their irruption into Europe. The Arabs, called in the middle ages Saracens, are supposed to be descended from Ishmael, the son of Abraham and Hagar. During all the changes of dynasties and empires in the Eastern and Western world, they retained their independence, though almost constantly at war with the surrounding states. "Their hand was against every man, and every man's hand against them." In the beginning of the seventh century, Mohammed, a native of Mecca, descended from a noble family, laid claim to the title of a prophet, and being aided by a renegade Christian, formed a religious system, which, after encountering great opposition, was finally adopted by the principal tribes of Arabia. The successors of Mohammed, called Caliphs, resolved to propagate the new religion by the sword, and conquered an empire more extensive than that of the Romans had been. The entire of central and southern Asia, including Persia, India, and the provinces of the Eastern empire, owned their sway, Northern Africa was soon after subdued, and in the beginning of the eighth century, the Saracenic Moors established their dominion in Spain. 23. It is probable, even, that all Europe would have submitted to their yoke, if the French hero, Charles Martel[1], had not arrested their victorious career, and defeated their numerous armies on the plains of *Poitiers* (A.D. 732)[2].

24. The empire of the Caliphs soon declined from its original splendour, and its ruin finally proceeded from the same cause that produced the downfal of Rome, the employment of barbarian *mercenaries*. The soldiers levied by the Caliphs were selected from the Tartar tribes that had embraced the religion of Mohammed; they were called Turcomans or Turks, from Turkistan, the proper name of western Tartary. These brave, but ferocious warriors

[1] See Taylor's History of France.

[2] Here also the heroic Black Prince took John, king of France, prisoner. See Taylor's France.

soon wrested the sceptre from the feeble caliphs, and completed the conquest of Western Asia. The crusades for a time delayed the fate of the Greek empire, but finally the Turks crossed the Hellespont, and having taken Constantinople (A.D. 1453), established their cruel despotism over the fairest portion of Europe.

Questions for Examination.

1. How were the barbarians first brought into the Roman empire?
2. When did the first great movement of the Northern tribes take place?
3. Where did the Vandals first settle?
4. From whence did the Alans come?
5. In what countries did the Vandals establish their power?
6. Where did we first find the Goths settled?
7. To what countries did the Goths remove?
8. How long did the kingdom of the Visigoths continue?
9. What branch of the Goths settled in Germany?
10. From what did the Franks derive their name?
11. Which was the ancient, and which the modern France?
12. What is the history of the Allemanni?
13. In what countries did the Saxons and Angles settle?
14. Whence did the Huns come?
15. How far did their ravages extend?
16. What territory did the Burgundians seize?
17. How did the alliance between the Lombards and Avars injure the former people?
18. Where was the kingdom of the Lombards established?
19. What is told respecting the Slavi?
20. Who were the Normans?
21. What is the history of the Bulgarians?
22. What great conquests were achieved by the Arabs under Mohammed and his successors?
23. By whom was the Saracenic career of victory checked?
24. How was the empire of the Turks established?

CHAPTER XXVIII.

THE PROGRESS OF CHRISTIANITY.

Waft, waft, ye winds, his story,
And you, ye oceans, roll,
Till, like a sea of glory,
It spreads from pole to pole:
Till o'er our conquer'd nature,
The Lamb for sinners slain,
Redeemer, King, Creator,
Returns in bliss to reign. HEBER.

1. Conspic'uous, *a.* remarkable.
2. Osi'ris, *s.* an Egyptian deity.
4. Syna'gogues, *s.* Jewish places of worship.
5. Athe'ists, *s.* persons who do not believe in the existence of a God.
6. In'nate, *a.* born with us.
Conjec'ture, *s.* guess.
9. Sacer'dotal, *a.* priestly, belonging to the priesthood.
11. Suc'cessive, *a.* following each other.
13. Imped'iment, *s.* hindrance.
Consum'mated, *part.* completed.

1. JUDEA became a Roman province some years before the birth of Jesus Christ, and the Jews, who had hitherto been *conspicuous* for their attachment to their native land, were induced, by the spirit of trade, to spread themselves over the empire. 2. The exclusive nature of their religion kept them in a marked state of separation from their fellow-subjects; the worshippers of *Osi'ris* scrupled not to offer sacrifices to Jupiter; the Persian, the Indian, and the German, bowed before the Roman altars, but the sons of Abraham refused to give the glory of their God to graven images, and were regarded by their idolatrous neighbours at first with surprise, and afterwards with contempt. 3. The appearance of the Messiah in Palestine, and the miraculous circumstances of his life, death, and resurrection, did not fill the world with their fame, because his preaching was principally addressed to his countrymen, the first object of his mission being "the lost sheep of the house of Israel."

4. The disciples, after their Divine Master was taken from them, proceeded to fulfil his last commandments, by preaching the Gospel "to every nation," and an opportunity of spreading its blessings was afforded by Jewish *synagogues* having been previously established in most of the great cities through the empire. Independent of the sustaining providence of its Almighty Author, there were many circumstances that facilitated the progress and

prepared the way for the final triumph of Christianity. 5. In the first place, Paganism had lost its influence; men secretly laughed at the fabulous legends about Jupiter and Rom'ulus, the sacrifices had become idle forms, and the processions a useless mockery. Philosophers had not scrupled to cover with ridicule the whole system of Heathenism, and there were not a few who professed themselves *Atheists*. 6. Without some system of religion, society cannot exist; for a sanction stronger than human laws is necessary to restrain the violence of passion and ardent desires. The *innate* feeling that our existence is not dependent on our mortal frame, disposes men to search for some information respecting a future state; the heathen system was at once obscure and absurd, the philosophers avowedly spoke from *conjecture*, but by the Gospel "life and immortality were brought to light." 7. The influence of a purer faith was discernible in the lives and actions of the first Christians; they lived in an age of unparalleled iniquity and debauchery, yet they kept themselves "unspotted from the world;" those who were once conspicuous for violence, licentiousness, and crime, became when they joined the new sect, humble, temperate, chaste, and virtuous; the persons who witnessed such instances of reformation were naturally anxious to learn something of the means by which so great a change had been effected. 8. A fourth cause was, that Christianity offered the blessings of salvation to men of every class; it was its most marked feature, that "to the poor the Gospel was preached,"—and the wretch who dared not to come into the Pagan temple, because he had no rich offering to lay upon the altar, was ready to obey the call of Him who offered pardon and love "without money and without price."

9. In the course of the first century of the Christian era, Churches were established in the principal cities of the empire, but more especially in Asia Minor; and the progress of Christianity, which had been at first disregarded, began to attract the notice of the ruling powers. Too indolent to investigate the claims of Christianity, and by no means pleased with a system which condemned their vices, the Roman rulers viewed the rapid progress of the new religion with undisguised alarm. The union of the *sacerdotal* and magisterial character in the Roman policy added personal interest to the motives that urged them to crush this rising sect; and the relentless Ne'ro at length

kindled the torch of persecution. 10. But "the blood of the martyrs proved the seed of the Church;" the constancy with which they supported the most inhuman tortures, their devotion and firm reliance on their God in the moments of mortal agony, increased the number of converts to a religion which could work such a moral miracle. Persecution also united the Christians more closely together, and when the reign of terror ended with the death of Nero, it was found that Christianity had derived additional strength from the means taken to ensure its destruction.

11. The *successive* persecutions inflicted by the policy or the bigotry of the following emperors had precisely the same results; and at length the Christians had acquired such strength, that their aid, as a body, became a matter of importance in contests for the empire.

12. The mild administration of Constantine, while he was only prefect of Gaul, the protection which he afforded to the Christians, and the favour that he showed to their religion, induced them to aid him with all their might in his struggle for the throne. Brought thus into contact with the professors of the new doctrine, Constantine was induced to examine the foundations of its high claims; perfect conviction was the result, and on his accession to the imperial purple the Christian Church was legally established. 13. During the reign of the apostate Julian, Christianity was discouraged but not persecuted; his premature death, however, removed the last *impediment* to its final triumph, which was *consummated* in the reign of the great Theodo'sius. 14. Under that emperor the last vestiges of the Pagan worship were destroyed, its idols overthrown, its altars demolished, and its temples closed. The world had become ripe for such a revolution, as the temples had been long before almost universally abandoned.

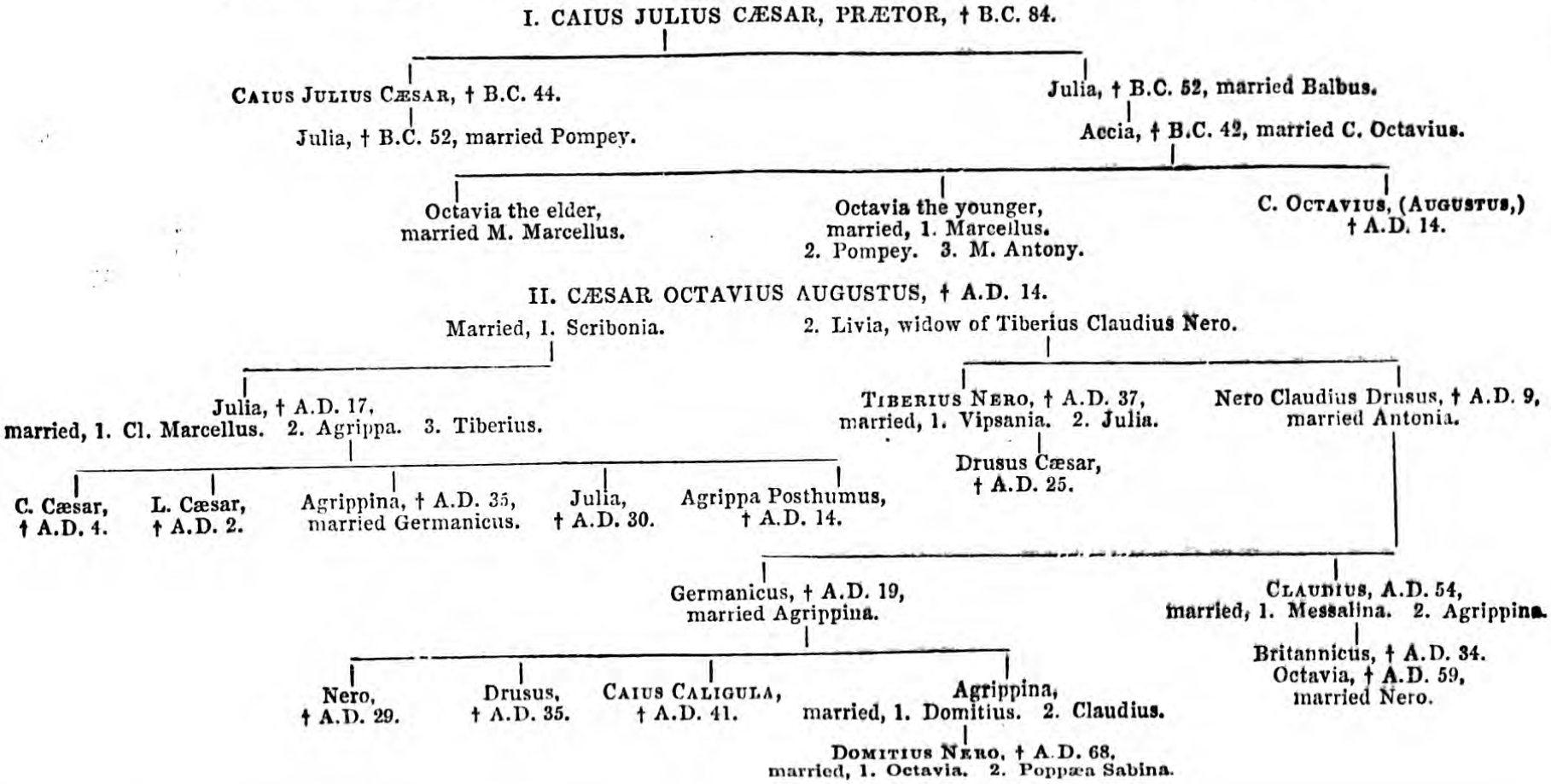
15. Since that period Christianity has prevailed in Europe, and formed the great bond of the social happiness, and the great source of the intellectual eminence enjoyed in that quarter of the globe. Let us hope that the exertions now made to diffuse its blessings over the benighted portions of the earth will prove successful, and that "peace and happiness, truth and justice, religion and piety" will prevail from pole to pole.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the state of the Jews at the coming of Christ?
2. How were the Jews preserved separate from other nations?
3. What probable cause may be assigned for the neglect of the Christian miracles?
4. How did the dispersion of the Jews afford an opportunity for the propagation of Christianity?
5. What was the state of Paganism when Christianity was first preached?
6. What great mystery is brought to light by the Gospel?
7. How did the lives of the first Christians contribute to the rapid progress of Christianity?
8. To what class of the people was the Gospel more particularly addressed?
9. What induced the rulers of the Roman empire to persecute Christianity?
10. Was Christianity crushed by persecution?
11. What proves the great strength early acquired by the Christians?
12. By whom was Christianity legally established?
13. Under whose government did it receive a slight check?
14. When were the last vestiges of Paganism abolished?
15. What have been the political effects of the establishment of Christianity?

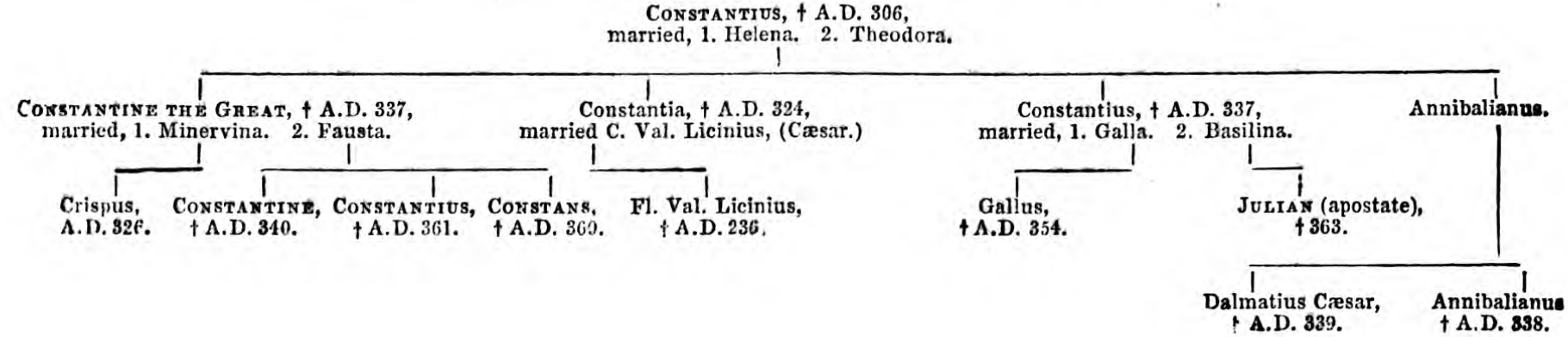
GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE CÆSARS.

The names in Capitals are those of Emperors, the numbers following † denote the time of death.



GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF CONSTANTINE.

The names in Capitals are those of Emperors, the numbers following † denote the time of death.



CHRONOLOGICAL INDEX.

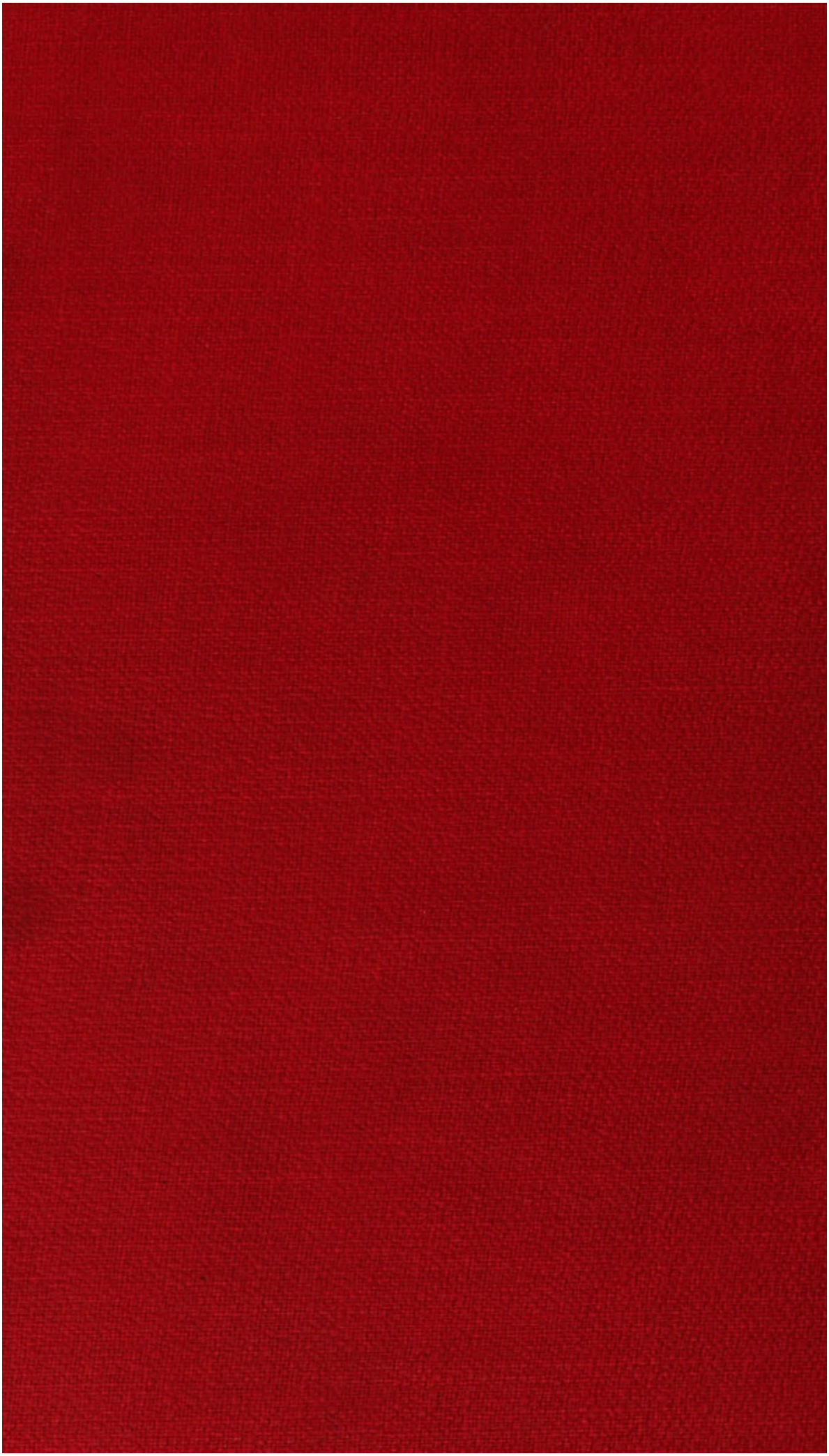
B.C.		PAGE
1230	(Supposed) Pelasgic migration to Italy	4
1184	(Supposed) Arrival of Æneas in Latium	9. 59
753	(Supposed) Foundation of the city of Rome	14. 63
750	Union of the Romans and Sabines	68
716	Death of Romulus	ib.
714	Virtuous Administration of Numa	71
671	Accession of Tullus Hostilius	72
665	Duel between the Horatii and Curiatii—Destruction of the Albans	73
639	Accession of Ancus Martius	75
616	——— Tarquinius Priscus	76
	The Augurs acquire importance in the state	78
578	Death of Tarquinius Priscus	79
	Accession of Servius Tullius	80
	The establishment of the Centuries	25. 81
534	Murder of Servius Tullius	83
	Accession of Tarquinius Superbus	85
	Gabii taken by stratagem	86
509	Expulsion of Tarquinius Superbus	90
	Establishment of Consuls	92
508	Conspiracy for the restoration of the Tarquinii	93
	Death of Brutus	95
507	War with Porsenna	ib.
498	Lartius the first Dictator created	97
493	The Roman populace retire to Mons Sacer	100
	Tribunes of the people appointed	27. 102
487	Exile of Coriolanus	104
	Rome besieged by Coriolanus	105
	His retreat and death	107
484	Condemnation and death of Cassius	ib.
459	First Dictatorship of Cincinnatus	108
457	Second ditto	110
454	The Romans send to Athens for Solon's laws	27. 113
451	The laws of the Twelve Tables—The Decemviri	114
449	The expulsion of the Decemviri	122
443	Military Tribunes chosen instead of Consuls	125
442	The Censorship instituted	ib.
439	Mælius murdered by Ahala	126
406	The siege of Veii begun	128
396	Veii taken by Camillus	130
391	The Gauls invade Italy	132

B.C.		PAGE
390	The battle of Allia. Rome sacked by the Gauls	134
	The Gauls defeated by Camillus	138
383	Manlius put to death on a charge of treason	140
361	Curtius devotes himself in the Forum	ib.
342	Beginning of the Samnite war	142
339	Manlius puts his son to death for disobedience	145
	Decius devotes himself for his country	ib.
322	A Roman army forced to surrender to the Samnites in the Caudine Forks	148
280	Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, invades Italy	149
272	——— finally defeated by Curius Dentatus	155
270	Tarentum surrendered to the Romans	156
264	Commencement of the first Punic war	157
260	The Carthaginian fleet defeated by Duillius	159
256	Regulus defeated by Xanthippus	160
252	Regulus sent to negotiate peace. His death	162
241	End of the first Punic war	164
234	The temple of Janus shut, and Rome at peace for the first time since the death of Numa	166
	Literature cultivated at Rome	167
229	War with the Illyrians	ib.
225	The Gauls invade Italy a second time	ib.
	——— are defeated by Marcellus, who gains the *spolia opima*	168
218	The second Punic war begins	ib.
	Hannibal invades Italy	169
	Battle of the Ticinus	171
	—— of the Trebia	172
217	—— of the lake Thrasymene	ib.
216	—— of Cannæ	176
214	The Romans begin an auxiliary war against Philip of Macedon	186
212	Syracuse taken by Marcellus	182
207	Asdrubal defeated and slain	180
202	Battle of Zama and end of the second Punic war	183
197	Philip conquered by the Romans	186
192	The Romans wage war against Antiochus	ib.
189	Death of Hannibal	189
171	Commencement of the second Macedonian war	ib.
168	Macedon became a Roman province	ib.
149	The third Punic war begins	191
147	Carthage destroyed by Scipio, and Corinth by Mummius	ib.
132	Sedition of Tiberius Gracchus	193
126	Revolt of the slaves in Sicily	194
122	Seditions of Caius Gracchus	195
121	Murder of Caius Gracchus. Persecution of the popular party	197
111	The Jugurthine war begins, and lasts five years	202
91	The social war begins, and lasts three years	204
89	The Mithridatic war begins, and lasts twenty-six years	205
88	The civil war between Marius and Sylla	ib.
86	Cruelties of Marius	208
	Death of Marius	209

B.C.		PAGE
82	Sylla created dictator	210
78	Death of Sylla	211
73	The insurrection of the slaves under Spartacus	ib.
66	Mithridates conquered by Pompey	213
63	Catiline's conspiracy detected	214
60	The first Triumvirate.—Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus	216
55	Cæsar invades Britain	219
53	Crassus slain in Parthia	221
50	Civil war between Cæsar and Pompey	223
48	The battle of Pharsalia	233
	Death of Pompey	242
47	Alexandria taken by Cæsar	244
46	The war in Africa	250
	Death of Cato	251
45	The war in Spain	253
	The battle of Munda	ib.
44	Cæsar murdered in the senate-house	258
43	Formation of the second Triumvirate—Antony, Octavius (Augustus), and Lepidus	261
	The Proscription. The murder of Cicero	262
42	The battle of Philippi	267
32	Octavius (Augustus,) and Antony prepare for war	279
31	The battle of Actium	282
30	The death of Antony	288
	Alexandria surrendered	289
	Death of Cleopatra	291
27	The title of Augustus given to Octavius	295
A.D.		
4	Birth of JESUS CHRIST (four years before the vulgar era)	302
14	Death of Augustus	301
19	Death of Germanicus by poison	306
26	The retreat of Tiberius to Capreæ	309
31	Disgrace and downfal of Sejanus	310
33	THE CRUCIFIXION	312
37	The accession of Caligula	ib.
41	Caligula murdered by Cherea	319
43	Claudius invades Britain	321
51	Caractacus carried captive to Rome	323
54	Nero succeeds Claudius	324
59	Nero murders his mother	326
64	First general persecution of the Christians	ib.
65	Seneca, Lucan, and others, executed for conspiracy	327
68	Suicide of Nero. Accession of Galba	333
69	Death of Galba	335
	Defeat and death of Otho	336
	Defeat and death of Vitellius. Accession of Vespasian	339
70	Siege and capture of Jerusalem	341
79	Death of Vespasian. Accession of Titus	344
	Eruption of Vesuvius: destruction of Herculaneum	345
81	Death of Titus. Accession of Domitian	347
88	The Dacian war	350
96	Assassination of Domitian	353
	Accession of Nerva	355

A.D.		PAGE
98	Death of Nerva. Accession of Trajan	357
107	Third general persecution of the Christians	362
117	Death of Trajan. Accession of Adrian	363
121	A wall to restrain the incursions of the Picts and Scots erected in Britain by Adrian	365
131	Great rebellion of the Jews	366
138	Death of Adrian. Accession of Antoninus Pius	369
161	Accession of Marcus Aurelius, and Lucius Verus	370
162	The Parthian war	371
169	The war with the Marcomanni	374
180	Death of Marcus Aurelius	377
	Accession of Commodus	378
192	Commodus murdered by Marcia and Lætus	379
	Assassination of Pertinax	381
200	The Roman empire offered for sale	ib.
	Severus subdues the Parthians	384
211	Death of Severus at York. Accession of Caracalla and Geta	386
217	Assassination of Caracalla	387
218	Accession of Heliogabalus	388
222	His miserable death	ib.
	Accession of Alexander Severus	390
235	Death of Alexander. Maximin elected emperor	391
236	Assassination of Maximin	393
238	Accession of Gordian	ib.
244	His murder by Philip	394
248	Philip killed by his soldiers; succeeded by Decius	395
251	Decius slain in an ambuscade; succeeded by Gallus	395, 396
254	Death of Gallus: a disputed succession	396
270	Accession of Aurelian	398
275	Brief reign of Tacitus	399
282	Assassination of the emperor Probus	400
284	Accession of Dioclesian	402
304	The reign of Constantius and Galerius	403
312	Victory of Constantine over Maxentius	404
319	Favour shown to the Christians	405
324	Defeat of Licinius	407
325	Legal establishment of Christianity	407. 448
328	The seat of government removed from Rome to Byzantium, which city from thenceforward takes the name of Constantinople from the emperor Constantine	408
337	Death of Constantine, and division of the empire among his sons	409
	Destruction of the Flavian family	412
338	War between Constantius and Sapor	413
340	Constantine the younger defeated and slain by his brother Constans	414
359	Constans killed by Magnentius	ib.
331	Magnentius totally defeated at the fatal battle of Mursa	416
354	Gallus put to death by Constantius	ib.
360	The civil war between Constantius and Julian prevented by the death of the former	417
362	Julian's attempt to rebuild the temple of Jerusalem defeated	419

A.D.		PAGE
363	Death of Julian in the Persian war. Brief reign of Jovian	420
364	The empire divided between Valentinian and Valens	421
376	The Goths permitted to settle in Thrace ..... 422.	440
	First appearance of the Huns in Europe	422
378	The emperor Valens defeated by the Goths at Adrianople	ib.
379	Theodosius becomes emperor of the East	423
388	The usurper Maximus defeated and slain	424
392	Reunion of the eastern and western empires, under Theodosius	425
395	Death of Theodosius, and final separation of the eastern and western empires.....425,	426
398	Revolt of Gildo in Africa	428
405	Stilicho obtains two victories over the Goths	429
406	The Vandals and Alans settle in Gaul ..... 437.	439
408	Alaric, king of the Goths, besieges Rome.....	432
410	Rome taken and plundered by the Goths	433
412	Beginning of the Vandal kingdom in Spain	439
415	Commencement of the kingdom of the Visigoths ....433.	441
423	Death of Honorius. Accession of Valentinian.....	433
430	The Vandals invited to Africa by Count Boniface ....434.	440
447	The Huns, under the guidance of Attila, ravage Europe..	434
449	The Britons, deserted by the Romans, invite the Saxons and Angles to their assistance	442
455	Rome taken and plundered by Genseric, the king of the African Vandals	*436*
476	Augustulus, the last emperor of the West, deposed. Odoacer takes the title of king of Italy	437
1453	Subversion of the eastern empire ..... 437.	449

THE END.

GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS, ST. JOHN'S SQUARE, LONDON.